

ROBOTICS

# Product manual

## IRB 7720



Trace back information:  
Workspace 26-1 version a6  
Checked in 2026-04-13  
Skribenta version 5.6.019



## **Product manual**

**IRB 7720-620/2.9**

**IRB 7720-530/3.1**

**IRB 7720-510/3.3**

**IRB 7720-450/3.5**

**IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID**

**IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID**

**IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID**

**IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID**

**OmniCore**

**Document ID: 3HAC089605-001**

**Revision: G**

The information in this manual is subject to change without notice and should not be construed as a commitment by ABB. ABB assumes no responsibility for any errors that may appear in this manual.

Except as may be expressly stated anywhere in this manual, nothing herein shall be construed as any kind of guarantee or warranty by ABB for losses, damage to persons or property, fitness for a specific purpose or the like.

In no event shall ABB be liable for incidental or consequential damages arising from use of this manual and products described herein.

This manual and parts thereof must not be reproduced or copied without ABB's written permission.

Keep for future reference.

Additional copies of this manual may be obtained from ABB.

Original instructions.

# Table of contents

|                                                                              |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Overview of this manual .....                                                | 9          |
| Product documentation .....                                                  | 12         |
| How to read the product manual .....                                         | 14         |
| <b>1 Safety</b> .....                                                        | <b>15</b>  |
| 1.1 Safety information .....                                                 | 15         |
| 1.1.1 Limitation of liability .....                                          | 15         |
| 1.1.2 Requirements on personnel .....                                        | 16         |
| 1.2 Safety signals and symbols .....                                         | 17         |
| 1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual .....                                     | 17         |
| 1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels .....                             | 19         |
| 1.3 Robot stopping functions .....                                           | 25         |
| 1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning .....                       | 26         |
| 1.5 Safety during operation .....                                            | 29         |
| 1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair .....                               | 30         |
| 1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair .....                             | 30         |
| 1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes .....                              | 33         |
| 1.6.3 Brake testing .....                                                    | 34         |
| 1.7 Safety during troubleshooting .....                                      | 35         |
| 1.8 Safety during decommissioning .....                                      | 36         |
| <b>2 Manipulator description</b> .....                                       | <b>37</b>  |
| 2.1 Technical data .....                                                     | 37         |
| 2.2 Working range .....                                                      | 41         |
| 2.3 The unit is sensitive to ESD .....                                       | 54         |
| <b>3 Installation and commissioning</b> .....                                | <b>55</b>  |
| 3.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning .....                     | 55         |
| 3.2 Unpacking .....                                                          | 56         |
| 3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure .....                                       | 56         |
| 3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability .....                                        | 57         |
| 3.3 On-site installation .....                                               | 59         |
| 3.3.1 Brief installation procedure .....                                     | 59         |
| 3.3.2 Installing a base plate .....                                          | 60         |
| 3.3.3 Lifting the robot .....                                                | 69         |
| 3.3.3.1 Lifting the robot with fork lift .....                               | 69         |
| 3.3.3.2 Lifting the robot with roundslings .....                             | 70         |
| 3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes .....                                    | 75         |
| 3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot .....                                 | 77         |
| 3.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances .....   | 80         |
| 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions) .....                | 81         |
| 3.3.8 Installing the motor cooling fan (option 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1) ..... | 88         |
| 3.3.9 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair .....              | 94         |
| 3.4 Working range alterations .....                                          | 95         |
| 3.4.1 Adjusting the working range .....                                      | 95         |
| 3.4.2 Safe supervision of working range limitations (space limiting) .....   | 97         |
| 3.4.3 Installing movable mechanical stops on axis 1 (option 3323-1) .....    | 100        |
| 3.4.4 Extended working range, axis 1 (option) .....                          | 104        |
| 3.5 Electrical connections .....                                             | 106        |
| 3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points .....                              | 106        |
| <b>4 Maintenance</b> .....                                                   | <b>109</b> |
| 4.1 Introduction .....                                                       | 109        |
| 4.2 Maintenance schedule and expected component life .....                   | 110        |
| 4.2.1 Specification of maintenance intervals .....                           | 110        |

|          |                                                                                |            |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 4.2.2    | Maintenance schedule .....                                                     | 111        |
| 4.2.3    | Expected lifetime .....                                                        | 113        |
| 4.3      | Inspection activities .....                                                    | 114        |
| 4.3.1    | Inspecting the motor seal .....                                                | 114        |
| 4.3.2    | Inspecting the balancing device .....                                          | 116        |
| 4.3.3    | Inspecting the cable harness .....                                             | 122        |
| 4.3.4    | Inspecting the dampers .....                                                   | 125        |
| 4.3.5    | Inspecting the information labels .....                                        | 127        |
| 4.3.6    | Inspecting the axis-1 mechanical stop .....                                    | 130        |
| 4.3.7    | Inspecting the oil level in axis-1 gearbox .....                               | 132        |
| 4.3.8    | Inspecting the oil level in axis-2 gearbox .....                               | 135        |
| 4.3.9    | Inspecting the oil level in axis-3 gearbox .....                               | 138        |
| 4.3.10   | Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 primary gearbox .....                       | 141        |
| 4.3.11   | Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 gearbox .....                               | 144        |
| 4.3.12   | Inspecting the oil level in axis-5 gearbox .....                               | 147        |
| 4.3.13   | Inspecting the oil level in axis-6 gearbox .....                               | 150        |
| 4.4      | Replacement/changing activities .....                                          | 153        |
| 4.4.1    | Type of lubrication in gearboxes .....                                         | 153        |
| 4.4.2    | Changing the oil in axis-1 gearbox .....                                       | 155        |
| 4.4.3    | Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox .....                                       | 160        |
| 4.4.4    | Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox .....                                       | 165        |
| 4.4.5    | Changing the oil in axis-4 primary gear .....                                  | 170        |
| 4.4.6    | Changing the oil in axis-4 gearbox .....                                       | 174        |
| 4.4.7    | Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox .....                                       | 179        |
| 4.4.8    | Changing the oil in axis-6 gearbox .....                                       | 184        |
| 4.4.9    | Replacing the SMB battery .....                                                | 189        |
| 4.5      | Lubrication activities .....                                                   | 192        |
| 4.5.1    | Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod ..... | 192        |
| 4.6      | Cleaning activities .....                                                      | 196        |
| 4.6.1    | Cleaning the IRB 7720 .....                                                    | 196        |
| <b>5</b> | <b>Repair</b> .....                                                            | <b>201</b> |
| 5.1      | Introduction .....                                                             | 201        |
| 5.2      | Definition of spare part levels .....                                          | 202        |
| 5.3      | General procedures .....                                                       | 203        |
| 5.3.1    | Performing a leak-down test .....                                              | 203        |
| 5.3.2    | Mounting instructions for bearings .....                                       | 204        |
| 5.3.3    | Mounting instructions for sealings .....                                       | 206        |
| 5.3.4    | Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts .....             | 210        |
| 5.4      | Counter balancing weight .....                                                 | 211        |
| 5.4.1    | Replacing the counter balancing weight .....                                   | 211        |
| 5.5      | Lower arm .....                                                                | 219        |
| 5.5.1    | Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings .....                     | 219        |
| 5.5.2    | Replacing the lower arm / parallel arm .....                                   | 240        |
| 5.6      | Balancing device .....                                                         | 241        |
| 5.6.1    | Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings .....             | 241        |
| 5.6.2    | Replacing the balancing device guide ring .....                                | 261        |
| 5.7      | Upper arm excluding wrist .....                                                | 265        |
| 5.7.1    | Replacing the upper arm / upper arm shafts and bearings .....                  | 265        |
| 5.7.2    | Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing .....      | 266        |
| 5.7.3    | Replacing the axis-4 motor flange .....                                        | 296        |
| 5.8      | Wrist .....                                                                    | 314        |
| 5.8.1    | Replacing the wrist .....                                                      | 314        |
| 5.8.2    | Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing .....                     | 335        |
| 5.8.3    | Replacing the turning disc .....                                               | 350        |
| 5.9      | Electronic parts .....                                                         | 359        |
| 5.9.1    | Removing the cable harness .....                                               | 359        |
| 5.9.2    | Refitting the cable harness .....                                              | 382        |
| 5.9.3    | Replacing the brake release unit .....                                         | 411        |

|          |                                                                   |            |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| 5.9.4    | Replacing the SMB unit .....                                      | 418        |
| 5.10     | Motors .....                                                      | 424        |
| 5.10.1   | Replacing the axis-1 motor .....                                  | 424        |
| 5.10.2   | Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor .....                        | 439        |
| 5.10.3   | Replacing the axis-4 motor .....                                  | 459        |
| 5.10.4   | Replacing the axis-5 motor .....                                  | 473        |
| 5.10.5   | Replacing the axis-6 motor .....                                  | 486        |
| 5.11     | Gearboxes .....                                                   | 498        |
| 5.11.1   | Replacing the axis-1 gearbox .....                                | 498        |
| 5.11.2   | Replacing the axis-2 gearbox .....                                | 544        |
| 5.11.3   | Replacing the axis-3 gearbox .....                                | 587        |
| 5.11.4   | Replacing the axis-4 gearbox and gear .....                       | 629        |
| 5.11.5   | Replacing the axis-6 gearbox .....                                | 630        |
| <b>6</b> | <b>Calibration</b> .....                                          | <b>653</b> |
| 6.1      | Introduction to calibration .....                                 | 653        |
| 6.1.1    | Introduction and calibration terminology .....                    | 653        |
| 6.1.2    | Calibration methods .....                                         | 654        |
| 6.1.3    | When to calibrate .....                                           | 656        |
| 6.2      | Synchronization marks and axis movement directions .....          | 657        |
| 6.2.1    | Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes ..... | 657        |
| 6.2.2    | Calibration movement directions for all axes .....                | 659        |
| 6.3      | Updating revolution counters .....                                | 660        |
| 6.3.1    | Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots .....             | 660        |
| 6.4      | Calibrating with Axis Calibration method .....                    | 661        |
| 6.4.1    | Description of Axis Calibration .....                             | 661        |
| 6.4.2    | Calibration tools for Axis Calibration .....                      | 664        |
| 6.4.3    | Installation locations for the calibration tools .....            | 666        |
| 6.4.4    | Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure .....        | 668        |
| 6.4.5    | Reference calibration .....                                       | 672        |
| 6.5      | Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method .....                  | 674        |
| 6.6      | Verifying the calibration .....                                   | 676        |
| 6.7      | Checking the synchronization position .....                       | 677        |
| 6.7.1    | Checking the synchronization position on OmniCore robots .....    | 678        |
| <b>7</b> | <b>Troubleshooting</b> .....                                      | <b>679</b> |
| 7.1      | Introduction to troubleshooting .....                             | 679        |
| 7.2      | Oil and grease stains on motors and gearboxes .....               | 681        |
| 7.3      | Mechanical noise or dissonance .....                              | 682        |
| 7.4      | Troubleshooting too hot gearboxes .....                           | 683        |
| 7.5      | Manipulator collapses on power down .....                         | 684        |
| <b>8</b> | <b>Decommissioning</b> .....                                      | <b>685</b> |
| 8.1      | Introduction to decommissioning .....                             | 685        |
| 8.2      | Environmental information .....                                   | 686        |
| 8.3      | Scrapping of robot .....                                          | 688        |
| 8.4      | Decommissioning of balancing device .....                         | 689        |
| <b>9</b> | <b>Reference information</b> .....                                | <b>693</b> |
| 9.1      | Introduction .....                                                | 693        |
| 9.2      | Applicable standards .....                                        | 694        |
| 9.3      | Unit conversion .....                                             | 695        |
| 9.4      | Screw joints .....                                                | 696        |
| 9.5      | Weight specifications .....                                       | 700        |
| 9.6      | Standard toolkit .....                                            | 701        |
| 9.7      | Special tools .....                                               | 702        |
| 9.8      | Lifting accessories and lifting instructions .....                | 706        |

|       |     |
|-------|-----|
| Index | 707 |
|-------|-----|

---

# Overview of this manual

---

## About this manual

This manual contains instructions for:

- mechanical and electrical installation of the IRB 7720
- maintenance of the IRB 7720
- mechanical and electrical repair of the IRB 7720

The robot described in this manual has the following protection types:

- *Standard*
- *Foundry Plus*

---

## Product manual scope

The manual covers all variants and designs of the IRB 7720. Some variants and designs may have been removed from the business offer and are no longer available for purchase.

---

## Usage

This manual shall be used during:

- installation and commissioning, from lifting the product to its work site and securing it to the foundation, to making it ready for operation
- maintenance work
- repair work
- decommissioning work



### Note

It is the responsibility of the integrator to conduct a risk assessment of the final application.

It is the responsibility of the integrator to provide safety and user guides for the robot system.

---

## Who should read this manual?

This manual is intended for:

- installation personnel
- maintenance personnel
- repair personnel.

---

## Prerequisites

A maintenance/repair/installation craftsman working with an ABB robot shall:

- be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/repair/maintenance work.
- be trained to respond to emergencies or abnormal situations.

*Continues on next page*

### References

Documentation referred to in the manual, is listed in the table below.

| Document name                                                            | Document ID    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| <i>Product manual, spare parts - IRB 7720</i>                            | 3HAC089606-001 |
| <i>Product specification - IRB 7720</i>                                  | 3HAC089607-001 |
| <i>Product manual - DressPack IRB 7720</i>                               | 3HAC089608-001 |
| <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>             | 3HAC042927-001 |
| <i>Product manual - OmniCore V250XT Type B</i>                           | 3HAC087112-001 |
| <i>Product manual - OmniCore V400XT</i>                                  | 3HAC081697-001 |
| <i>Circuit diagram - IRB 7710/IRB 7720</i>                               | 3HAC089629-001 |
| <i>Technical reference manual - System parameters (RobotWare 7)</i>      | 3HAC065041-001 |
| <i>Technical reference manual - System parameters (RobotWare 8)</i>      | 3HAC098390-001 |
| <i>Operating manual - OmniCore (RobotWare 7)</i>                         | 3HAC065036-001 |
| <i>Operating manual - OmniCore (RobotWare 8)</i>                         | 3HAC098383-001 |
| <i>Operating manual - Integrator's guide OmniCore (RobotWare 7)</i>      | 3HAC065037-001 |
| <i>Operating manual - Integrator's guide OmniCore (RobotWare 8)</i>      | 3HAC098381-001 |
| <i>Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove (RobotWare 7)</i> | 3HAC066559-001 |
| <i>Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove (RobotWare 8)</i> | 3HAC098577-001 |



#### Tip

All documents can be found via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

### Revisions

| Revision | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A        | First edition.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| B        | <p>Published in release 24C. The following updates are made in this revision:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Added information about KM sleeve for balancing device lock nut.</li><li>• Added illustration for reduced working range on axis 1 with movable mechanical stops and corrected the limitation angles.<br/>And added note about the orientation of the spring washers for the movable mechanical stops.</li><li>• Added a third lifting point to lift the counter balancing weight.</li><li>• Added lubrication of the piston rod to the maintenance schedule and the lubrication section.</li><li>• Added inspection of the balancing device guide ring to the inspection section, and also added a replacement procedure to the repair chapter for replacing the guide ring.</li><li>• Updated procedure for replacement of the parallel rod with an additional protection ring at both upper and lower end.</li></ul> |

Continues on next page



| Revision | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| C        | <p>Published in release 24D. The following updates are made in this revision:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minor updates and corrections made in repair procedures.</li> <li>• Corrected the indication of degrees for axes 2 and 3 positions when removing the axis-3 gearbox.</li> <li>• Updated the figures and the refitting procedures of arm house cable guide due to changed design.</li> <li>• Added information about removing transportation grease and checking the lubrication of the balancing device piston rod after first installation.</li> <li>• Changed article number for movable mechanical stop set for axis 1.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                       |
| D        | <p>Published in release 25A. The following updates are made in this revision:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Corrected axis 2 and axis 3 position for arm house cover replacement.</li> <li>• Added section <a href="#">Troubleshooting too hot gearboxes on page 683</a>.</li> <li>• Added flange sealant to refitting of axis-1 cable harness protection ring. Also added spare part number for protection ring o-ring.</li> <li>• Updated spare part number for lubrication label.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| E        | <p>Published in release R25.2. The following updates are made in this revision:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Added the section <a href="#">Safe supervision of working range limitations (space limiting) on page 97</a>.</li> <li>• Updated the section <a href="#">Expected lifetime on page 113</a>.</li> <li>• Updated the dimension drawing for lower arm and frame.</li> <li>• Added touch up kit for rust preventive, for robot attachment screw holes.</li> <li>• Added OmniCore V250XT Type B as an available robot controller for the manipulator.</li> <li>• Changed recommendation from always using a new o-ring for the oil plugs, to only replace them if damaged.</li> <li>• Updated the installation (mounting) angle for the manipulator.</li> </ul> |
| F        | <p>Published in release R25.3. The following updates are made in this revision:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clarified the installation (mounting) angle for the manipulator.</li> <li>• Corrected spare part number for calibration protection set.</li> <li>• Updated cooling fan orientation on the axis-2 and axis-3 motor.</li> <li>• Added action to remove transportation strap for DressPack in the pre-installation procedure.</li> <li>• Company name updated to reflect current legal entities.</li> <li>• Updated portal name from myABB to ABB Robotics One.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| G        | <p>Published in release R26.1. The following updates are done in this revision:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Updated spare part number for wrist cover gasket and battery cover.</li> <li>• Updated spare part number of the movable mechanical stop set for axis 1.</li> <li>• Updated tightening torque of R1.MP connector in manipulator base.</li> <li>• Added wrist optimization method to the calibration chapter.</li> <li>• Updated guide pin length for axis-6 gearbox replacement.</li> <li>• Added procedure for replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing.</li> <li>• Company name updated to reflect current legal entities.</li> <li>• Added support for RobotWare 8.</li> </ul>                                                              |

# Product documentation

### Categories for user documentation from ABB Robotics

The user documentation from ABB Robotics is divided into a number of categories. This listing is based on the type of information in the documents, regardless of whether the products are standard or optional.



#### Tip

All documents can be found via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

### Product manuals

Manipulators, controllers, DressPack, and most other hardware is delivered with a **Product manual** that generally contains:

- Safety information.
- Installation and commissioning (descriptions of mechanical installation or electrical connections).
- Maintenance (descriptions of all required preventive maintenance procedures including intervals and expected life time of parts).
- Repair (descriptions of all recommended repair procedures including spare parts).
- Calibration.
- Troubleshooting.
- Decommissioning.
- Reference information (safety standards, unit conversions, screw joints, lists of tools).
- Spare parts list with corresponding figures (or references to separate spare parts lists).
- References to circuit diagrams.

### Technical reference manuals

The technical reference manuals describe reference information for robotics products, for example lubrication, the RAPID language, and system parameters.

### Application manuals

Specific applications (for example software or hardware options) are described in **Application manuals**. An application manual can describe one or several applications.

An application manual generally contains information about:

- The purpose of the application (what it does and when it is useful).
- What is included (for example cables, I/O boards, RAPID instructions, system parameters, software).
- How to install included or required hardware.

*Continues on next page*

- How to use the application.
- Examples of how to use the application.

---

### Operating manuals

The operating manuals describe hands-on handling of the products. The manuals are aimed at those having first-hand operational contact with the product, that is production cell operators, programmers, and troubleshooters.

# How to read the product manual

---

### Reading the procedures

The procedures contain all information required for the installation or service activity and can be printed out separately when needed for a certain service procedure.

### Safety information

The manual includes a separate safety chapter that must be read through before proceeding with any service or installation procedures. All procedures also include specific safety information when dangerous steps are to be performed.

Read more in the chapter [Safety on page 15](#).

### Illustrations

The product is illustrated with general figures that does not take painting or protection type in consideration.

Likewise, certain work methods or general information that is valid for several product models, can be illustrated with illustrations that show a different product model than the one that is described in the current manual.

# 1 Safety

## 1.1 Safety information

### 1.1.1 Limitation of liability

---

**Limitation of liability**

Any information given in this manual regarding safety must not be construed as a warranty by ABB that the industrial robot will not cause injury or damage even if all safety instructions are complied with.

The information does not cover how to design, install and operate a robot system, nor does it cover all peripheral equipment that can influence the safety of the robot system.

In particular, liability cannot be accepted if injury or damage has been caused for any of the following reasons:

- Use of the robot in other ways than intended.
- Incorrect operation or maintenance.
- Operation of the robot when the safety devices are defective, not in their intended location or in any other way not working.
- When instructions for operation and maintenance are not followed as intended.
- Non-authorized design modifications of the robot.
- Repairs on the robot and its spare parts carried out by in-experienced or non-qualified personnel.
- Foreign objects.
- Force majeure.

---

**Spare parts and equipment**

ABB supplies original spare parts and equipment which have been tested and approved for their intended use. The installation and/or use of non-original spare parts and equipment can negatively affect the safety, function, performance, and structural properties of the robot. ABB is not liable for damages caused by the use of non-original spare parts and equipment.

# 1 Safety

---

## 1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

### 1.1.2 Requirements on personnel

---

#### General

Only personnel with appropriate training are allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, and use the robot. This includes electrical, mechanical, hydraulics, pneumatics, and other hazards identified in the risk assessment.

Persons who are under the influence of alcohol, drugs or any other intoxicating substances are not allowed to install, maintain, service, repair, or use the robot.

The plant liable must make sure that the personnel is trained on the robot, and on responding to emergency or abnormal situations.

---

#### Personal protective equipment

Use personal protective equipment, as stated in the instructions.

## 1.2 Safety signals and symbols

### 1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual

#### Introduction to safety signals

This section specifies all safety signals used in the user manuals. Each signal consists of:

- A caption specifying the hazard level (DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION) and the type of hazard.
- Instruction about how to reduce the hazard to an acceptable level.
- A brief description of remaining hazards, if not adequately reduced.

#### Hazard levels

The table below defines the captions specifying the hazard levels used throughout this manual.

| Symbol                                                                              | Designation                   | Significance                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | DANGER                        | Signal word used to indicate an imminently hazardous situation which, if not avoided, will result in serious injury.                                |
|  | WARNING                       | Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury.                               |
|  | ELECTRICAL SHOCK              | Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation related to electrical hazards which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury. |
|  | CAUTION                       | Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in slight injury.                                |
|  | ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) | Signal word used to indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in severe damage to the product.                 |
|  | NOTE                          | Signal word used to indicate important facts and conditions.                                                                                        |

*Continues on next page*

# 1 Safety

---

## 1.2.1 Safety signals in the manual

*Continued*

| Symbol                                                                            | Designation | Significance                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  | TIP         | Signal word used to indicate where to find additional information or how to do an operation in an easier way. |



## 1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

### Introduction to symbols

This section describes safety symbols used on labels (stickers) on the manipulator. Symbols are used in combinations on the labels, describing each specific warning. The descriptions in this section are generic, the labels can contain additional information such as values.



#### Note

The symbols on the labels on the product must be observed. Additional symbols added by the integrator must also be observed.

### Types of symbols

Both the manipulator and the controller are marked with symbols, containing important information about the product. This is important for all personnel handling the robot, for example during installation, service, or operation.

The safety labels are language independent, they only use graphics. See [Symbols on safety labels on page 19](#).

The information labels can contain information in text.

### Symbols on safety labels

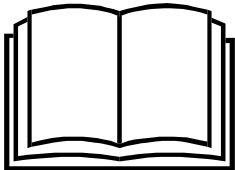
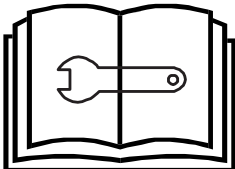
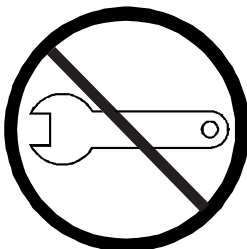
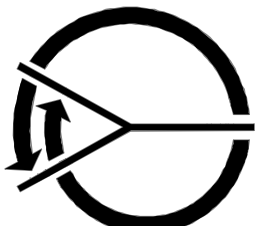
| Symbol                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>xx0900000812 | <b>Warning!</b><br>Warns that an accident <i>may</i> occur if the instructions are not followed that can lead to serious injury, possibly fatal, and/or great damage to the product. It applies to warnings that apply to danger with, for example, contact with high voltage electrical units, explosion or fire risk, risk of poisonous gases, risk of crushing, impact, fall from height, etc.                                                                                                  |
| <br>xx0900000811 | <b>Caution!</b><br>Warns that an accident may occur if the instructions are not followed that can result in injury and/or damage to the product. It also applies to warnings of risks that include burns, eye injury, skin injury, hearing damage, crushing or slipping, tripping, impact, fall from height, etc. Furthermore, it applies to warnings that include function requirements when fitting and removing equipment where there is a risk of damaging the product or causing a breakdown. |
| <br>xx0900000839 | <b>Prohibition</b><br>Used in combinations with other symbols.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

*Continues on next page*

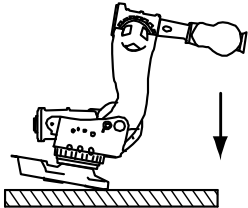
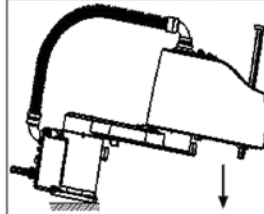
# 1 Safety

## 1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Continued

| Symbol                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>xx1400001152   | Read the user manual before use.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <br>xx0900000813   | <b>See user documentation</b><br>Read user documentation for details.<br>Which manual to read is defined by the symbol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No text: <i>Product manual</i>.</li></ul> |
| <br>xx0900000816  | <b>Before disassembly, see product manual</b>                                                                                                                                                           |
| <br>xx0900000815 | <b>Do not disassemble</b><br>Disassembling this part can cause injury.                                                                                                                                  |
| <br>xx0900000814 | <b>Extended rotation</b><br>This axis has extended rotation (working area) compared to standard.                                                                                                        |
| <br>xx0900000808 | <b>Brake release</b><br>Pressing this button will release the brakes. This means that the robot arm can fall down.                                                                                      |

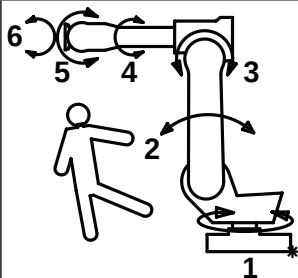
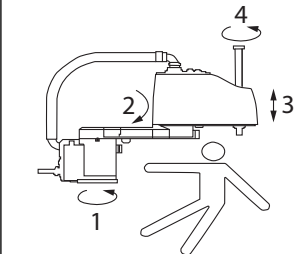
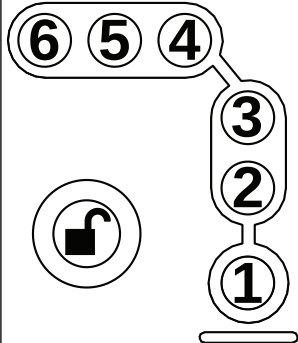
Continues on next page

| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                     | Description                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>xx0900000810                                                                                          | <b>Tip risk when loosening bolts</b><br>The robot can tip over if the bolts are not securely fastened. |
| <br><br>3HAC 057068-001  |                                                                                                        |
| xx1500002402                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                        |
| <br><br>xx0900000817 | <b>Crush</b><br>Risk of crush injuries.                                                                |
| <br>xx1400001151                                                                                        | <b>Electrical shock</b>                                                                                |

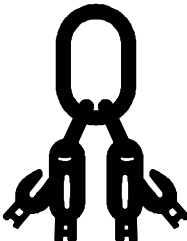
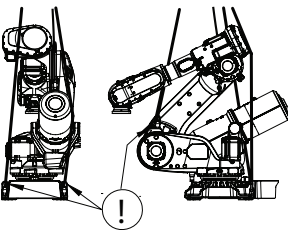
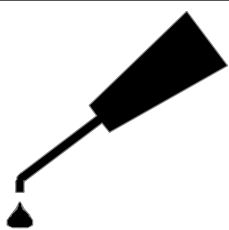
Continues on next page

1 Safety

1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels  
Continued

| Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Description                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>xx0900000818<br><br>xx1300001087    | <b>Heat</b><br>Risk of heat that can cause burns. (Both signs are used) |
| <br>xx2400000736<br><br>xx1500002616 | <b>Moving robot</b><br>The robot can move unexpectedly.                 |
| <br>xx2100002463                                                                                                       | <b>Brake release buttons</b>                                            |

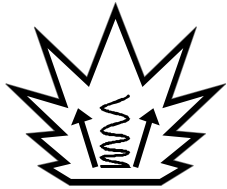
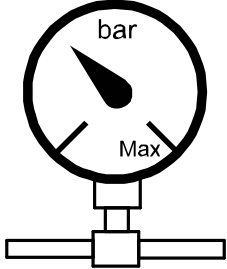
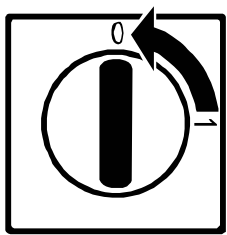
Continues on next page

| Symbol                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>xx0900000821   | Lifting bolt                                                                                                       |
| <br>xx1000001242   | Adjustable chain sling with shortener                                                                              |
| <br>xx0900000822   | Lifting of robot                                                                                                   |
| <br>xx2400002153  | <b>Swivel eye bolt</b><br>The exclamation mark indicates required usage of swivel eye bolts at the lifting points. |
| <br>xx0900000823 | <b>Oil</b><br>Can be used in combination with prohibition if oil is not allowed.                                   |
| <br>xx0900000824 | Mechanical stop                                                                                                    |

## 1 Safety

### 1.2.2 Safety symbols on manipulator labels

Continued

| Symbol                                                                                              | Description                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>xx1000001144   | <b>No mechanical stop</b>                                                                                                          |
| <br>xx0900000825   | <b>Stored energy</b><br>Warns that this part contains stored energy.<br>Used in combination with <i>Do not disassemble</i> symbol. |
| <br>xx0900000826  | <b>Pressure</b><br>Warns that this part is pressurized. Usually contains additional text with the pressure level.                  |
| <br>xx0900000827 | <b>Shut off with handle</b><br>Use the power switch on the controller.                                                             |
| <br>xx1400002648 | <b>Do not step</b><br>Warns that stepping on these parts can cause damage to the parts.                                            |

### 1.3 Robot stopping functions

---

#### Protective stop and emergency stop

The protective stops and emergency stops are described in the product manual for the controller.

For more information see:

- *Product manual - OmniCore V250XT Type B*
- *Product manual - OmniCore V400XT*

# 1 Safety

---

## 1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

### 1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

---

#### National or regional regulations

The integrator of the robot system is responsible for the safety of the robot system.

The integrator is responsible that the robot system is designed and installed in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The integrator of the robot system is required to perform a risk assessment.

---

#### Layout

The robot integrated to a robot system shall be designed to allow safe access to all spaces during installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

If robot movement can be initiated from an external control panel then an emergency stop must also be available.

If the manipulator is delivered with mechanical stops (limiting devices), these can be used for reducing the working space. For OmniCore robots, safe supervision can be configured for the working space through software-based limiting.

A perimeter safeguarding, for example a fence, shall be dimensioned to withstand the following:

- The force of the manipulator.
- The force of the load handled by the robot if dropped or released at maximum speed.
- The maximum possible impact caused by a breaking or malfunctioning rotating tool or other device fitted to the robot.

The maximum TCP speed and the maximum velocity of the robot axes are detailed in the section *Robot motion* in the product specification for the respective manipulator.

Consider exposure to hazards, such as slipping, tripping, and falling.

Hazards due to the working position and posture for a person working with or near the robot shall be considered.

Hazards due to noise emission from the robot needs to be considered.

Consider hazards from other equipment in the robot system, for example, that guards remain active until identified hazards are reduced to an acceptable level.

---

#### Allergenic material

See [Environmental information on page 686](#) for specification of allergenic materials in the product, if any.

---

#### Securing the robot to the foundation

The robot must be properly fixed to its foundation/support, as described in the respective product manual.

When the robot is installed at a height, hanging, or other than mounted directly on the floor, there will be additional hazards.

*Continues on next page*



---

**Using lifting accessories and other external equipment**

Ensure that all equipment used during installation, service and all handling of the robot are in correct condition for the intended use.

---

**Electrical safety**

Incoming mains must be installed to fulfil national regulations.

The power supply wiring to the robot must be sufficiently fused and if necessary, it must be possible to disconnect it manually from the mains power.

The power to the robot must be turned off with the main switch and the mains power disconnected when performing work inside the controller cabinet. Lock and tag shall be considered.

Harnesses between controller and manipulator shall be fixed and protected to avoid tripping and wear.

Wherever possible, power on/off or rebooting the robot controller shall be performed with all persons outside the safeguarded space.

**Note**

Use a CARBON DIOXIDE (CO<sub>2</sub>) extinguisher in the event of a fire in the robot.

**ELECTRICAL SHOCK**

The controller mains power switch shall be disabled before connecting or disconnecting the controller power cable from the mains supply.

---

**Safety devices**

The integrator is responsible for that the safety devices necessary to protect people working with the robot system are designed and installed correctly.

When integrating the robot with external devices to a robot system:

- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that emergency stop functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.
- The integrator of the robot system must ensure that safety functions are interlocked in accordance with applicable standards.

---

**Other hazards**

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.

**WARNING**

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

The risk assessment should also consider other hazards arising from the application, such as, but not limited to:

- Water
- Compressed air

*Continues on next page*

# 1 Safety

---

## 1.4 Safety during installation and commissioning

*Continued*

- Hydraulics

End-effector hazards require particular attention for applications which involve close human collaboration with the robot.

---

### Verify the safety functions

Before the robot system is put into operation, verify that the safety functions are working as intended and that any remaining hazards identified in the risk assessment are mitigated to an acceptable level.

### 1.5 Safety during operation

#### Automatic operation

Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed, before changing mode to automatic and initiating automatic operation.

#### Unexpected movement of robot arm



##### **WARNING**

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



##### **WARNING**

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

# 1 Safety

## 1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

## 1.6 Safety during maintenance and repair

### 1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

#### General



#### ELECTRICAL SHOCK

The controller mains power switch shall be disabled before connecting or disconnecting the controller power cable from the mains supply.

Corrective maintenance must only be carried out by personnel trained on the robot. Maintenance or repair must be done with all electrical, pneumatic, and hydraulic power switched off, that is, no remaining hazards.

Hazards due to stored mechanical energy in the manipulator for the purpose of counterbalancing axes must be considered before maintenance or repair.

Never use the robot as a ladder, which means, do not climb on the controller, manipulator, including motors, or other parts. There are hazards of slipping and falling. The robot might be damaged.

Make sure that there are no tools, loose screws, turnings, or other unexpected parts remaining after maintenance or repair work.

When the work is completed, verify that the safety functions are working as intended.

#### Hot surfaces

Surfaces can be hot after running the robot, and touching these may result in burns. Allow the surfaces to cool down before maintenance or repair.

#### Allergic reaction

| Warning                                                                                                  | Description                                                           | Elimination/Action                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>Allergic reaction | When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reaction. | Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn. |

#### Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease)

When handling oil, grease, or other chemical substances the safety information of the respective manufacturer must be observed.



#### Note

Take special care when handling hot lubricants.

*Continues on next page*

| Warning                                                                                                                                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Elimination/Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br><b>Hot oil or grease</b>                            | Changing and draining gearbox oil or grease may require handling hot lubricant heated up to 90 °C.                                                                                                                                                                                        | Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn during this activity.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <br><b>Allergic reaction</b>                            | When working with lubricants there is a risk of an allergic reaction.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <br><b>Possible pressure build-up in gearbox</b>        | When opening the oil or grease plug, there may be pressure present in the gearbox, causing hot lubricant to spray from the opening.                                                                                                                                                       | Open the plug carefully and keep away from the opening. Do not overfill the gearbox when filling. Put oil absorbent cloth, bags or paper at appropriate locations to catch any oil residues. Use appropriate protective gear such as heat-resistant gloves, goggles/protective visor, or a body suit if necessary. |
| <br><b>Do not overfill</b>                             | Overfilling of gearbox lubricant can lead to internal over-pressure inside the gearbox which in turn may: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• damage seals and gaskets</li> <li>• completely press out seals and gaskets</li> <li>• prevent the robot from moving freely.</li> </ul> | Make sure not to overfill the gearbox when filling it with oil or grease. After filling, verify that the level is correct.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <br><b>Do not mix types of oil</b>                    | Mixing types of oil may cause severe damage to the gearbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | When filling gearbox oil, do not mix different types of oil unless specified in the instructions. Always use the type of oil specified for the product.                                                                                                                                                            |
| <br><b>Oil residues</b>                               | Oil residues might be present in a drained gearbox and spilled when separating a motor and gearbox during repair.                                                                                                                                                                         | Make sure that protective gear like goggles/protective visor, gloves and arm protection are always worn during this activity. Put oil absorbent cloth, bags or paper at appropriate locations to catch any oil residues.                                                                                           |
| <br><b>Heat up the oil</b>                            | Warm oil drains quicker than cold oil.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Run the robot before changing the gearbox oil, if possible.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <br><b>Specified amount depends on drained volume</b> | The specified amount of oil or grease is based on the total volume of the gearbox. When changing the lubricant, the amount refilled may differ from the specified amount, depending on how much has previously been drained from the gearbox.                                             | After filling, verify that the level is correct.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

Continues on next page

# 1 Safety

## 1.6.1 Safety during maintenance and repair

*Continued*

| Warning                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                                          | Elimination/Action |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <br><b>Contaminated oil in gearboxes</b> | For lifetime reasons always drain as much oil as possible from the gearbox. The magnetic oil plugs will gather residual metal chips. |                    |

### Hazards related to batteries

Under rated conditions, the electrode materials and liquid electrolyte in the batteries are sealed and not exposed to the outside.

There is a hazard in case of abuse (mechanical, thermal, electrical) which leads to the activation of safety valves and/or the rupture of the battery container. As a result under certain circumstances, electrolyte leakage, electrode materials reaction with moisture/water or battery vent/explosion/fire may follow.

Do not short circuit, recharge, puncture, incinerate, crush, immerse, force discharge or expose to temperatures above the declared operating temperature range of the product. Risk of fire or explosion.

Operating temperatures are listed in [Operating conditions, robot on page 39](#).

See safety instructions for the batteries in *Material/product safety data sheet - Battery pack (3HAC043118-001)*.

### Unexpected movement of robot arm



#### WARNING

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



#### WARNING

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

### Related information

See also the safety information related to installation and operation.

## 1.6.2 Emergency release of the robot axes

### Description

In an emergency situation, the brakes on a robot axis can be released manually by pushing a brake release button.

How to release the brakes is described in the section:

- [Manually releasing the brakes on page 75.](#)

The robot may be moved manually on smaller robot models, but larger models may require using an overhead crane or similar equipment.

### Increased injury

Before releasing the brakes, make sure that the weight of the manipulator does not result in additional hazards, for example, even more severe injuries on a trapped person.



#### **DANGER**

When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways.

Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot.

### Prerequisites for access to brake release buttons

Make sure that the brake release buttons on the manipulator are within reach and quickly accessible in case of emergency situations, even when the manipulator is installed on a height, on a wall, or suspended.

### 1.6.3 Brake testing

---

#### When to test

During operation, the holding brake of each axis normally wears down. A test can be performed to determine whether the brake can still perform its function.

#### How to test

The function of the holding brake of each axis motor may be verified as described below:

- 1 Run each axis to a position where the combined weight of the manipulator and any load is maximized (maximum static load).
- 2 Switch the motor to the MOTORS OFF.
- 3 Inspect and verify that the axis maintains its position.

If the manipulator does not change position as the motors are switched off, then the brake function is adequate.



#### Note

It is recommended to run the service routine *BrakeCheck* as part of the regular maintenance, see the operating manual for the robot controller.

For robots with the option SafeMove, the *Cyclic Brake Check* routine is recommended. See the operating manual for the robot controller.



## 1.7 Safety during troubleshooting

### General

When troubleshooting requires work with power switched on, special considerations must be taken:

- Safety circuits might be muted or disconnected.
- Electrical parts must be considered as *live*.
- The manipulator can move unexpectedly at any time.



#### DANGER

Troubleshooting on the controller while powered on must be performed by personnel trained by ABB or by ABB field engineers.



#### ELECTRICAL SHOCK

The controller mains power switch shall be disabled before connecting or disconnecting the controller power cable from the mains supply.



#### CAUTION

Risk of hot surfaces that can cause burns.

A risk assessment must be done to address both robot and robot system specific hazards.



#### WARNING

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



#### WARNING

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

### Related information

See also the safety information related to installation, operation, maintenance, and repair.

# 1 Safety

---

## 1.8 Safety during decommissioning

## 1.8 Safety during decommissioning

---

### General

See section [Decommissioning on page 685](#).

If the robot is decommissioned for storage, take extra precaution to reset safety devices to delivery status.

### Unexpected movement of robot arm



#### **WARNING**

Hazards due to the use of brake release devices and/or gravity beneath the manipulator shall be considered.

A robot may perform unexpected limited movement.



#### **WARNING**

Manipulator movements can cause serious injuries on users and may damage equipment.

## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.1 Technical data

#### Weight, robot

The table shows the weight of the robot.

| Robot model          | Nominal weight |
|----------------------|----------------|
| IRB 7720-620/2.9     | 2,590 kg       |
| IRB 7720-530/3.1     | 2,620 kg       |
| IRB 7720-510/3.3     | 2,540 kg       |
| IRB 7720-450/3.5     | 2,550 kg       |
| IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID | 2,670 kg       |
| IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID | 2,690 kg       |
| IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID | 2,620 kg       |
| IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID | 2,630 kg       |



#### Note

The weight does not include additional options, tools and other equipment fitted on the robot.

The weight includes the weight of the DressPack for LID variants.

#### Mounting positions

The table shows valid mounting positions and the installation (mounting) angle for the manipulator.

| Mounting position | Installation angle |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| Floor mounted     | 0° <sup>i</sup>    |

<sup>i</sup> A tilt of up to 5° does not affect the payload or reach, but it can have a negative impact on performance and lifetime. The actual value must be set in the system parameters.



#### Note

The actual mounting angle must always be configured in the system parameters, otherwise the performance and lifetime is affected.

On robots running RobotWare 8, it is also possible to configure the mounting position on the FlexPendant, see the integrator's guide for the controller.

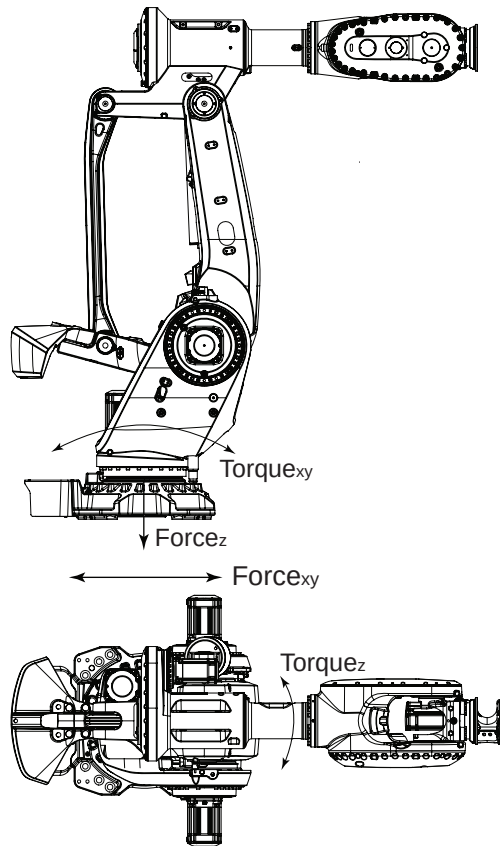
*Continues on next page*

## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.1 Technical data

*Continued*

#### Loads on foundation, robot



xx2400000244

The table shows the various forces and torques working on the robot during different kinds of operation.



#### Note

These forces and torques are extreme values that are rarely encountered during operation. The values also never reach their maximum at the same time!



#### WARNING

The robot installation is restricted to the mounting options given in following load table(s).

#### Floor mounted

| Force     | Endurance load (in operation) | Maximum load (emergency stop) |
|-----------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Force xy  | $\pm 10.5 \text{ kN}$         | $\pm 29.8 \text{ kN}$         |
| Force z   | $32.6 \pm 6 \text{ kN}$       | $32.6 \pm 19.3 \text{ kN}$    |
| Torque xy | $\pm 42.3 \text{ kNm}$        | $\pm 83 \text{ kNm}$          |
| Torque z  | $\pm 7.3 \text{ kNm}$         | $\pm 20.4 \text{ kNm}$        |

*Continues on next page*

#### Requirements, foundation

The table shows the requirements for the foundation where the weight of the installed robot is included:

| Requirement                    | Value                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Flatness of foundation surface | 0.3 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Flat foundations give better repeatability of the resolver calibration compared to original settings on delivery from ABB.<br>The value for levelness aims at the circumstance of the anchoring points in the robot base.<br>In order to compensate for an uneven surface, the robot can be recalibrated during installation. If resolver/encoder calibration is changed this will influence the absolute accuracy |
| Minimum resonance frequency    | 22 Hz<br> <b>Note</b><br>It may affect the manipulator lifetime to have a lower resonance frequency than recommended. | The value is recommended for optimal performance.<br>Due to foundation stiffness, consider robot mass including equipment. <sup>i</sup><br>For information about compensating for foundation flexibility, see the description of <i>Motion Process Mode</i> in the manual that describes the controller software option, see <a href="#">References on page 10</a> .                                               |

<sup>i</sup> The minimum resonance frequency given should be interpreted as the frequency of the robot mass/inertia, robot assumed stiff, when a foundation translational/torsional elasticity is added, i.e., the stiffness of the pedestal where the robot is mounted. The minimum resonance frequency should not be interpreted as the resonance frequency of the building, floor etc. For example, if the equivalent mass of the floor is very high, it will not affect robot movement, even if the frequency is well below the stated frequency. The robot should be mounted as rigid as possible to the floor.  
Disturbances from other machinery will affect the robot and the tool accuracy. The robot has resonance frequencies in the region 10 – 20 Hz and disturbances in this region will be amplified, although somewhat damped by the servo control. This might be a problem, depending on the requirements from the applications. If this is a problem, the robot needs to be isolated from the environment.

#### Storage conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed storage conditions for the robot:

| Parameter                                      | Value  |
|------------------------------------------------|--------|
| Minimum ambient temperature                    | -25 °C |
| Maximum ambient temperature                    | 55 °C  |
| Maximum ambient temperature (less than 24 hrs) | 70 °C  |
| Maximum ambient humidity                       | 95%    |

#### Operating conditions, robot

The table shows the allowed operating conditions for the robot:

| Parameter                   | Value                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Minimum ambient temperature | 5 °C <sup>i</sup>           |
| Maximum ambient temperature | 50 °C                       |
| Maximum ambient humidity    | 95% at constant temperature |

<sup>i</sup> At low environmental temperature < 10°C is, as with any other machine, a warm-up phase recommended to be run with the robot. Otherwise there is a risk that the robot stops or run with lower performance due to temperature dependent oil and grease viscosity.

Continues on next page

## 2 Manipulator description

---

### 2.1 Technical data

*Continued*

---

#### Protection classes, robot

The table shows the available protection types of the robot, with the corresponding protection class.

| Protection type                             | Protection class <sup>i</sup> |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Manipulator, protection type Standard       | IP67                          |
| Manipulator, protection type Foundry Plus 2 | IP67                          |

<sup>i</sup> According to IEC 60529.

---

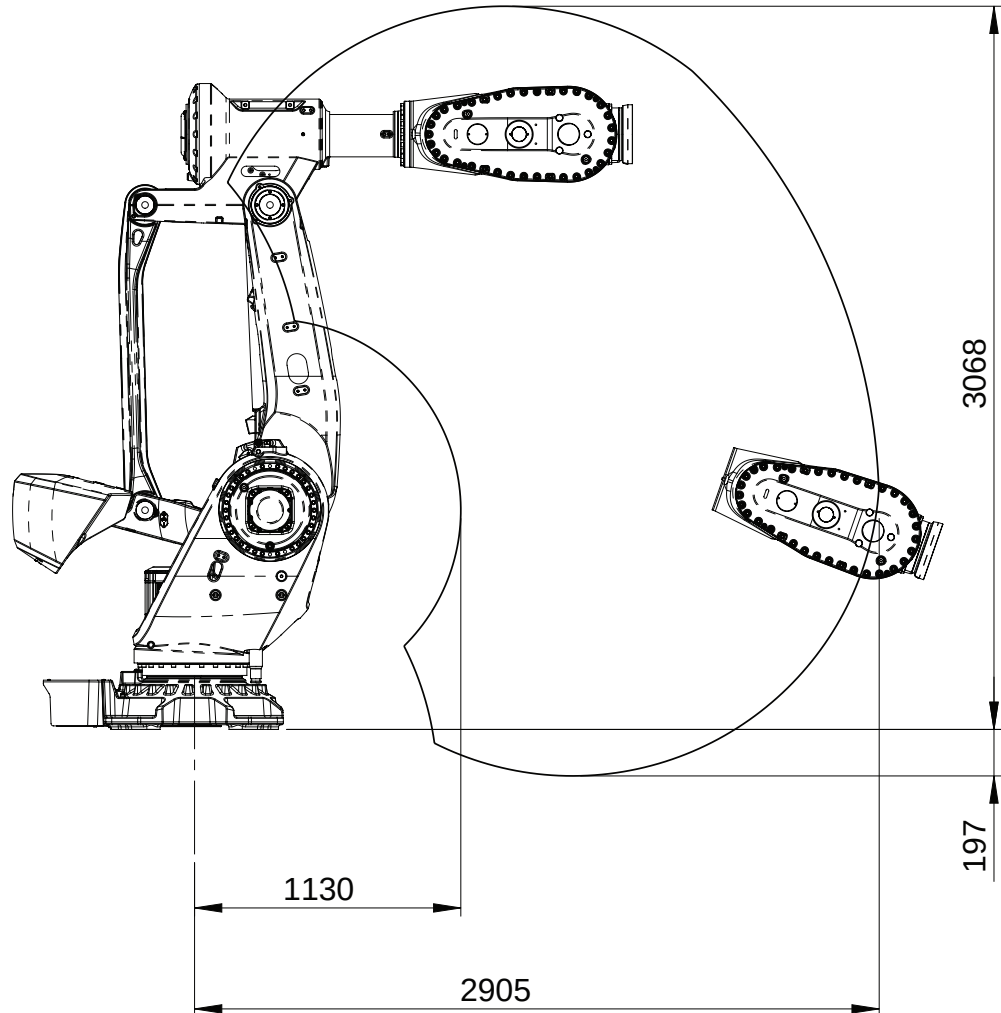
#### Environmental information

The product complies with IEC 63000. *Technical documentation for the assessment of electrical and electronic products with respect to the restriction of hazardous substances.*

## 2.2 Working range

## Illustration, working range IRB 7720-620/2.9

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



xx2400000318

*Continues on next page*

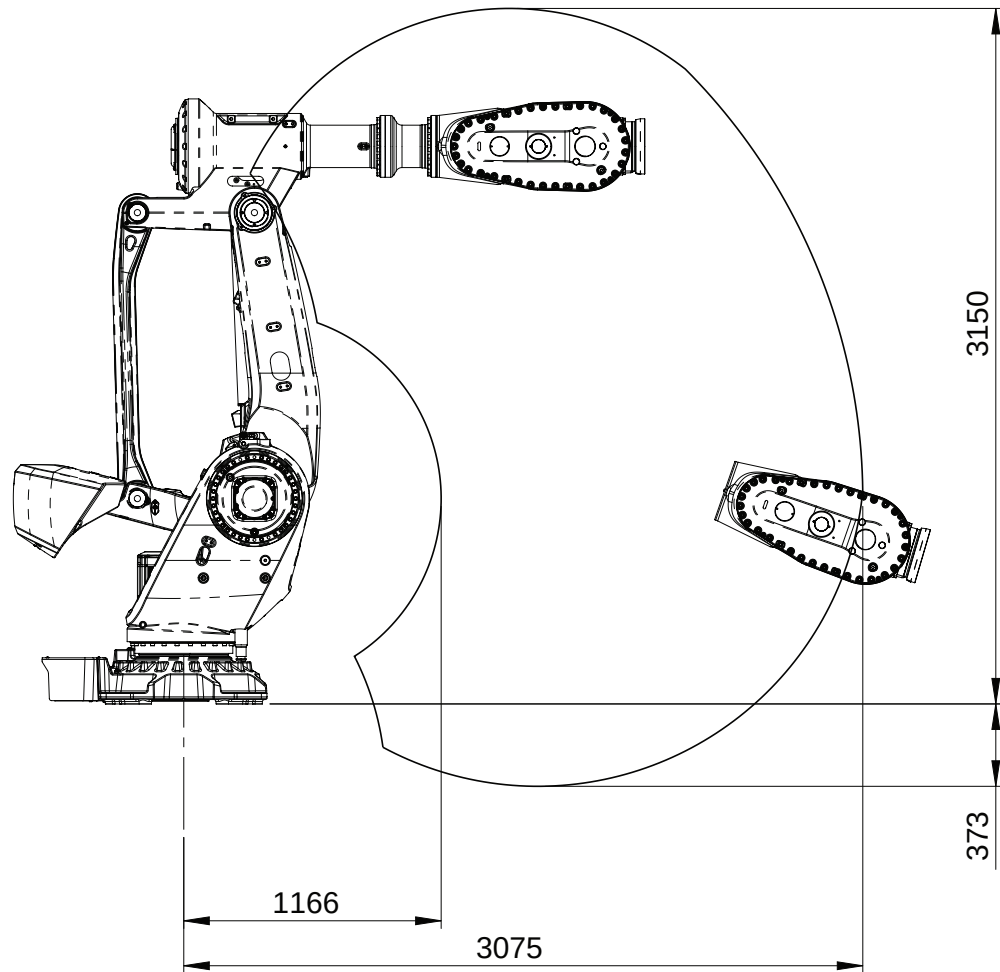
## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.2 Working range

*Continued*

#### Illustration, working range IRB 7720-530/3.1

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



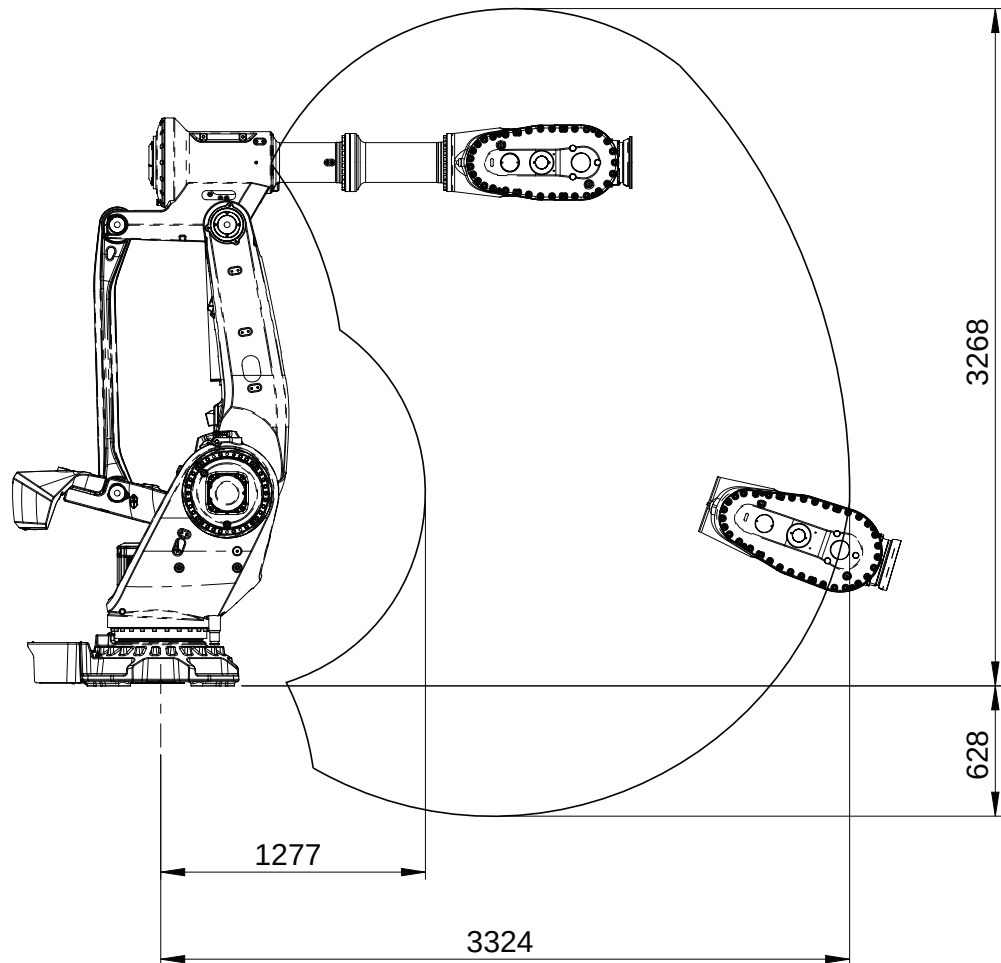
xx2400000320

*Continues on next page*



#### Illustration, working range IRB 7720-510/3.3

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



xx2400000322

*Continues on next page*

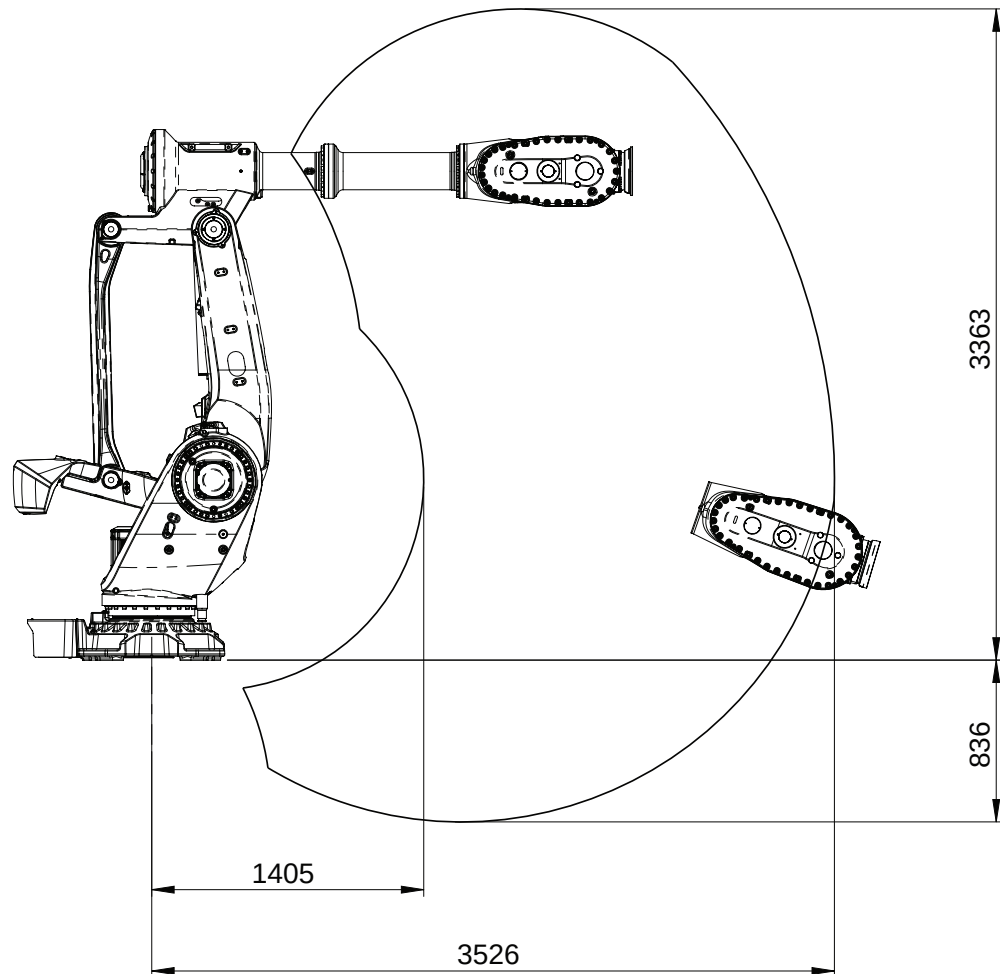
## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.2 Working range

*Continued*

#### Illustration, working range IRB 7720-450/3.5

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.

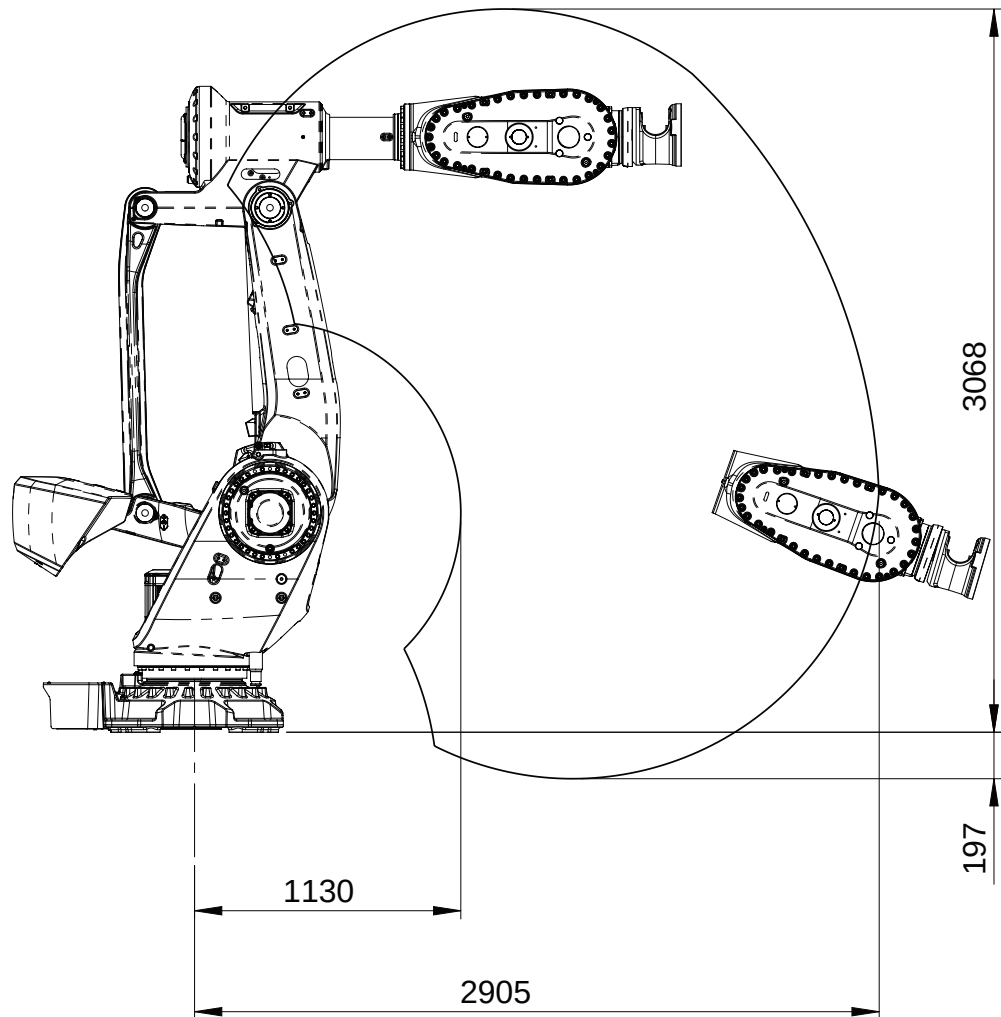


xx2400000324

*Continues on next page*

### Illustration, working range IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



xx2400000319

*Continues on next page*

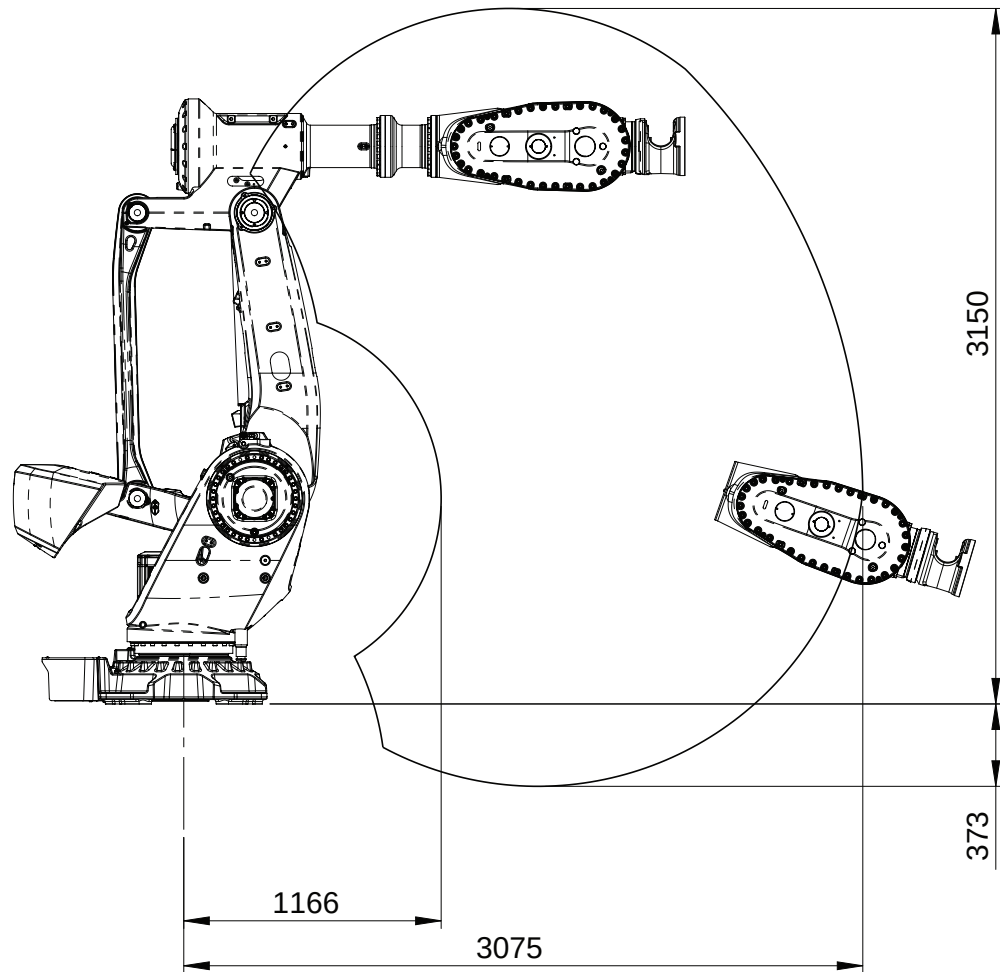
## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.2 Working range

*Continued*

#### Illustration, working range IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.

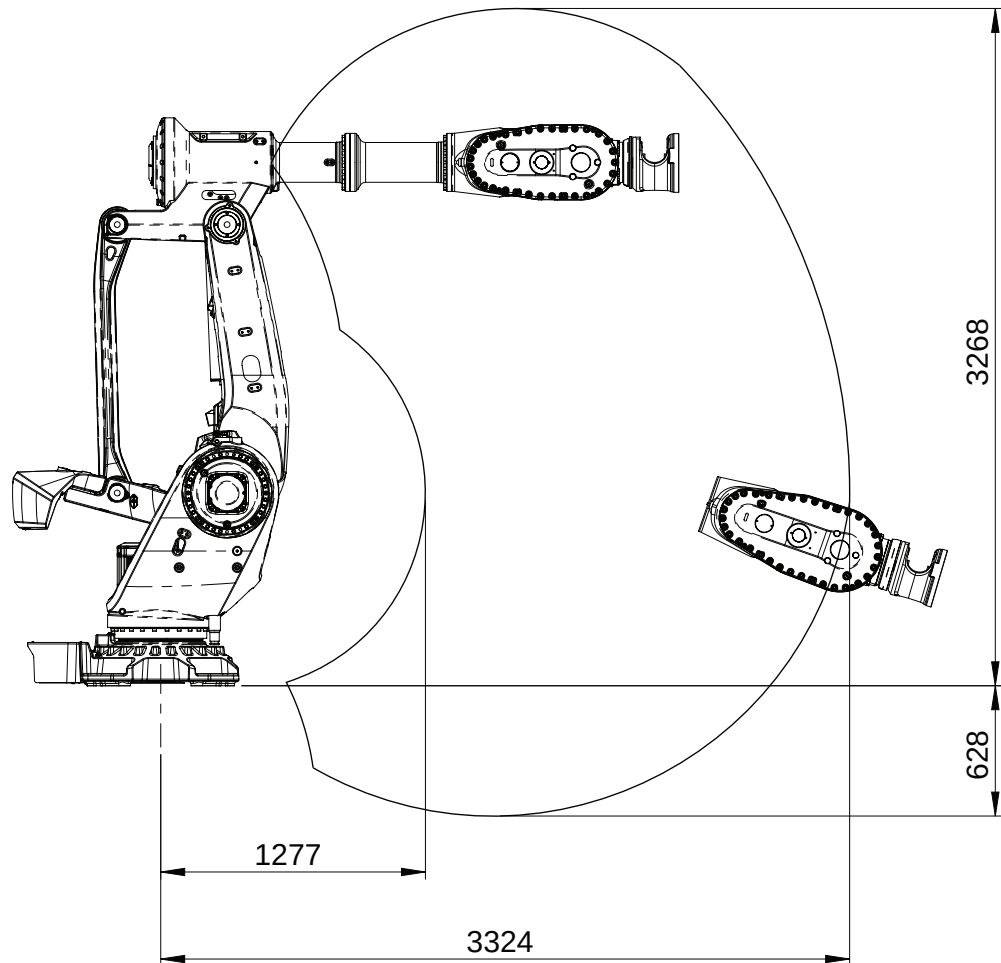


xx2400000321

*Continues on next page*

#### Illustration, working range IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.



xx2400000323

*Continues on next page*

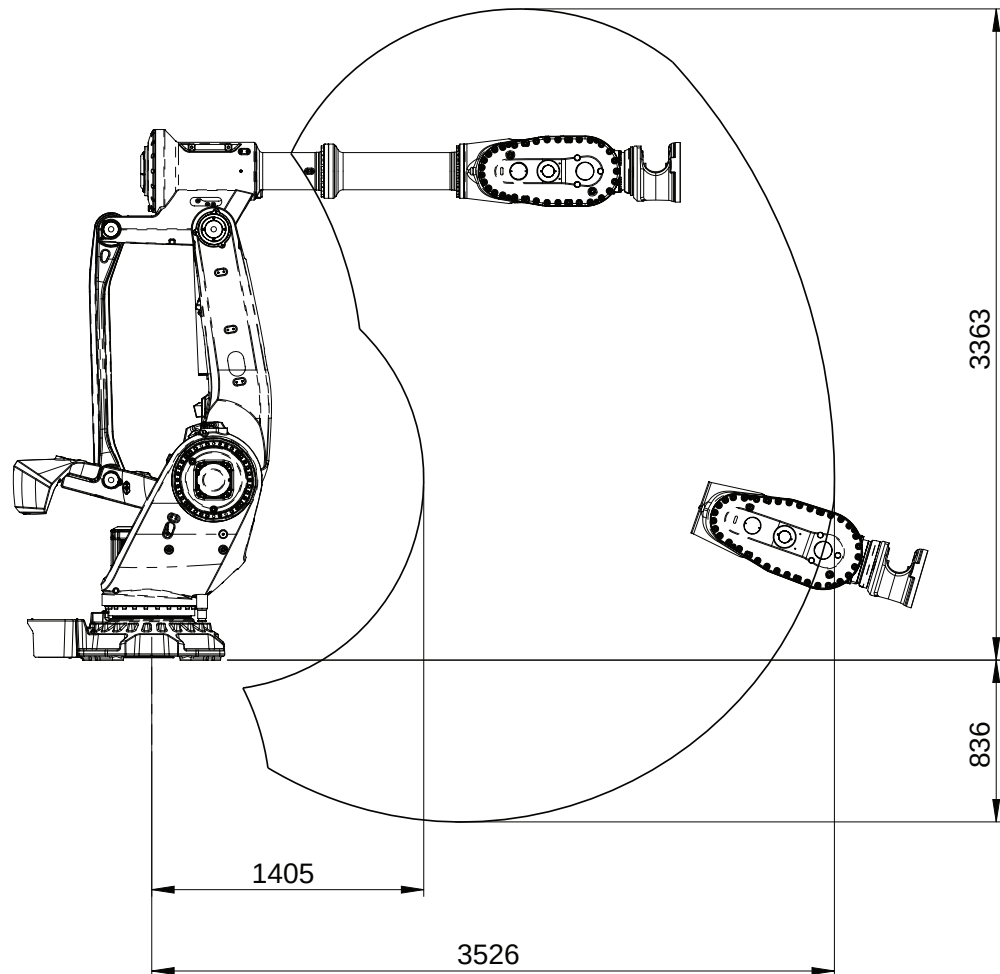
## 2 Manipulator description

### 2.2 Working range

*Continued*

#### Illustration, working range IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID

This illustration shows the unrestricted working range of the robot.

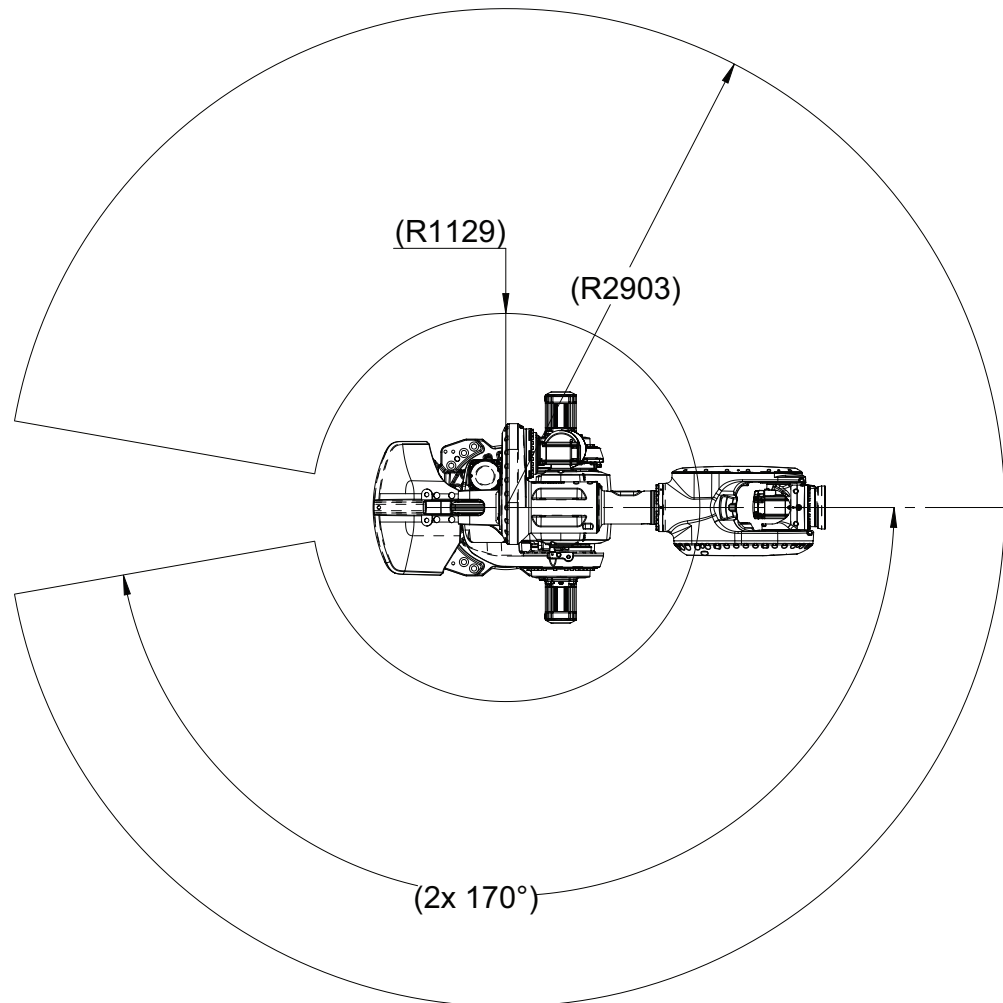


xx2400000325

*Continues on next page*

#### Top view of working range

IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID



xx2400000326

*Continues on next page*

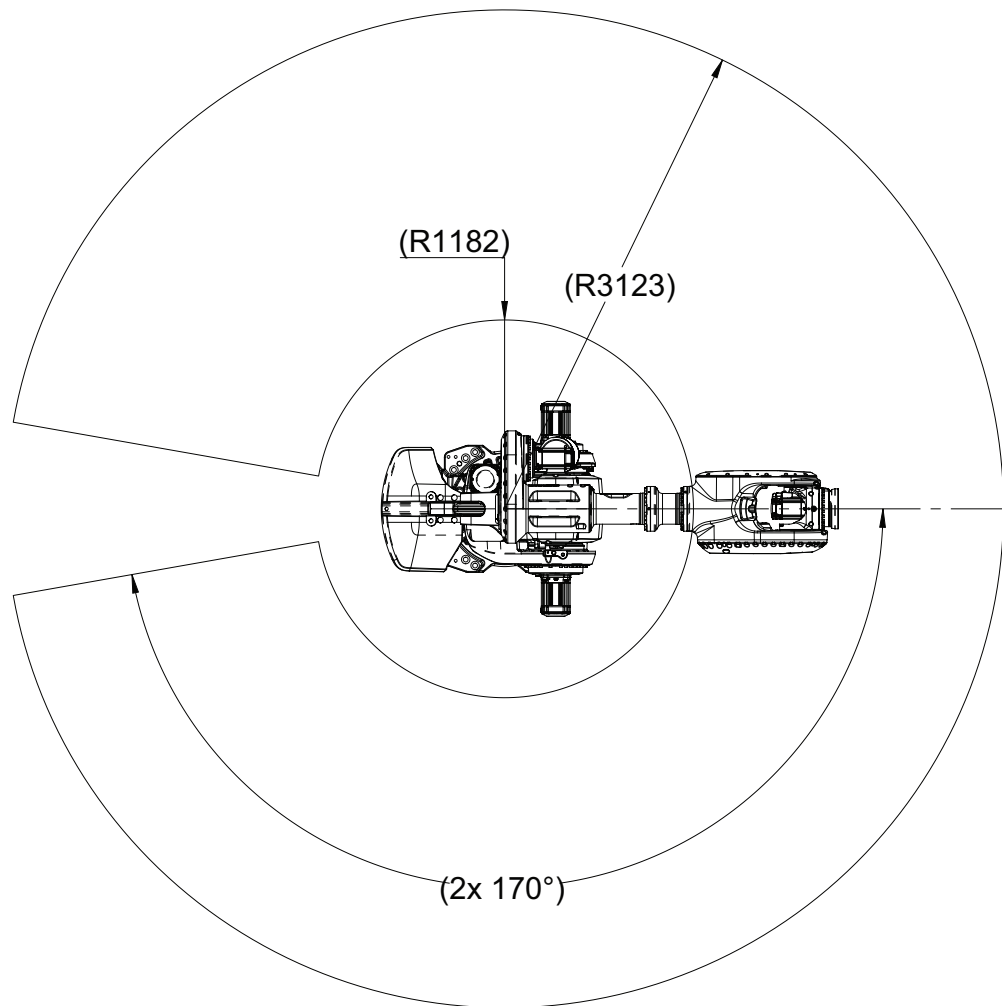
## 2 Manipulator description

---

### 2.2 Working range

*Continued*

IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID

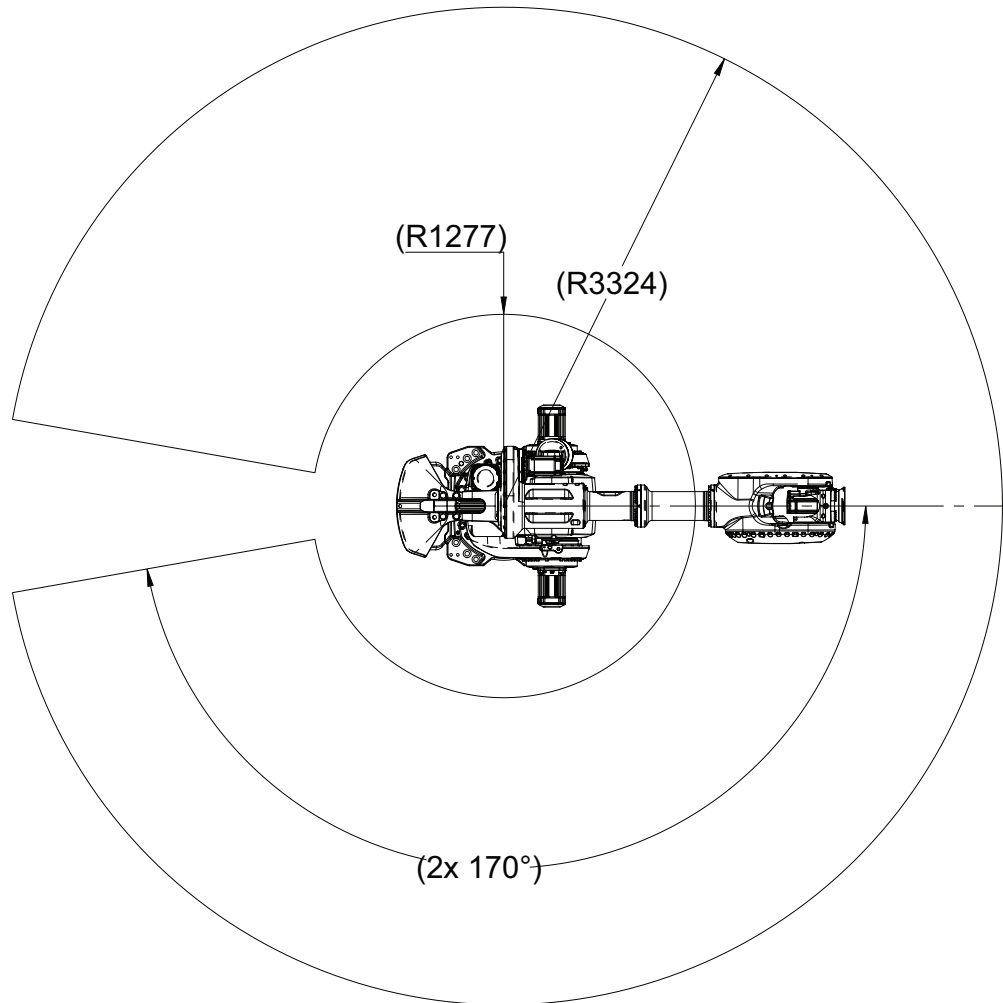


xx2400000327

*Continues on next page*



IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID



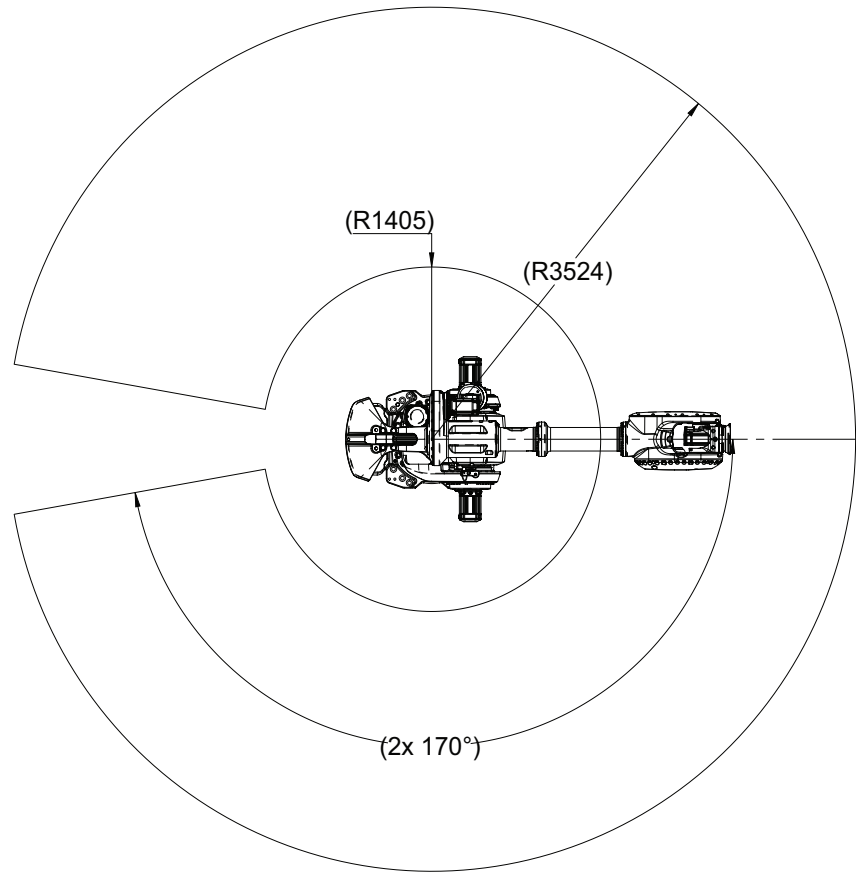
xx2400000328

*Continues on next page*

2 Manipulator description

2.2 Working range  
Continued

IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID



xx2400000329

Working range

| Axis   | Working range                            | Note                                                                                                                                            |
|--------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Axis 1 | $\pm 170^\circ$                          | The default working range for axis 1 can be extended as an option.<br>See <a href="#">Extended working range, axis 1 (option) on page 104</a> . |
|        | $\pm 220^\circ$ <sup>i ii</sup>          |                                                                                                                                                 |
| Axis 2 | $-65^\circ / +82.2^\circ$ <sup>iii</sup> |                                                                                                                                                 |
| Axis 3 | $-27^\circ / +130^\circ$ <sup>iii</sup>  |                                                                                                                                                 |
| Axis 4 | $\pm 300^\circ$                          |                                                                                                                                                 |
| Axis 5 | $\pm 130^\circ$                          | IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5                                                                          |
|        | $\pm 120^\circ$ <sup>iv</sup>            | IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID                                                          |
| Axis 6 | $\pm 360^\circ$                          | IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5                                                                          |
|        | $\pm 220^\circ$ <sup>iv</sup>            | IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID                                                          |

<sup>i</sup> Option Extended Working Range Axis 1 (3324-1)  
<sup>ii</sup> Not valid for DressPack SW.

Continues on next page

- iii Maximum combined movements reduced for IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID.
- iv Maximum combined movements reduced.

#### Working range limitation

The working range of axis 1 can be reduced by altering the parameter values.  
Installation of additional mechanical stops or safe supervision is recommended.  
See [Working range alterations on page 95](#).

## 2 Manipulator description

---

### 2.3 The unit is sensitive to ESD

### 2.3 The unit is sensitive to ESD

---

#### Description

ESD (electrostatic discharge) is the transfer of electrical static charge between two bodies at different potentials, either through direct contact or through an induced electrical field. When handling parts or their containers, personnel not grounded may potentially transfer high static charges. This discharge may destroy sensitive electronics.

---

#### Safe handling

Use one of the following alternatives:

- Use a wrist strap.

Wrist straps must be tested frequently to ensure that they are not damaged and are operating correctly.

- Use an ESD protective floor mat.

The mat must be grounded through a current-limiting resistor.

- Use a dissipative table mat.

The mat should provide a controlled discharge of static voltages and must be grounded.

## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.1 Introduction to installation and commissioning

---

#### General

This chapter contains assembly instructions and information for installing the IRB 7720 at the working site.

See also the product manual for the robot controller.

The installation must be done by qualified installation personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

The technical data is detailed in section [Technical data on page 37](#).

---

#### Safety information

Before any installation work is commenced, all safety information must be observed. There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before performing any installation work.

## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure

## 3.2 Unpacking

### 3.2.1 Pre-installation procedure

#### Introduction

This section is intended for use when unpacking and installing the robot for the first time. It also contains information useful during later re-installation of the robot.

#### Prerequisites for installation personnel

Installation personnel working with an ABB product must:

- Be trained by ABB and have the required knowledge of mechanical and electrical installation/maintenance/repair work.
- Conform to all national and local codes.

#### Checking the prerequisites for installation

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1  | Make a visual inspection of the packaging and make sure that nothing is damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2  | Remove the packaging.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 3  | Check for any visible transport damage.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Stop unpacking and contact ABB if transport damages are found.                                                                                                                |
| 4  | If the robot is equipped with DressPack, remove the yellow transportation strap.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 5  | Clean the unit with a lint-free cloth, if necessary.<br>Wipe away the protective transportation grease applied to the tool flange.<br>Do not wipe away any grease from the balancing device piston rod.                                                                                                                     |
| 6  | Make sure that the lifting accessory used (if required) is suitable to handle the weight of the robot as specified in: <a href="#">Weight, robot on page 37</a>                                                                                                                                                             |
| 7  | If the robot is not installed directly, it must be stored as described in: <a href="#">Storage conditions, robot on page 39</a>                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 8  | Make sure that the expected operating environment of the robot conforms to the specifications as described in: <a href="#">Operating conditions, robot on page 39</a>                                                                                                                                                       |
| 9  | Before taking the robot to its installation site, make sure that the site conforms to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <a href="#">Loads on foundation, robot on page 38</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Protection classes, robot on page 40</a></li><li>• <a href="#">Requirements, foundation on page 39</a></li></ul> |
| 10 | Before moving the robot, please observe the stability of the robot: <a href="#">Risk of tipping/stability on page 57</a>                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 11 | When these prerequisites are met, the robot can be taken to its installation site as described in section: <a href="#">On-site installation on page 59</a>                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 12 | Install required equipment, if any.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

### 3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability

#### Risk of tipping

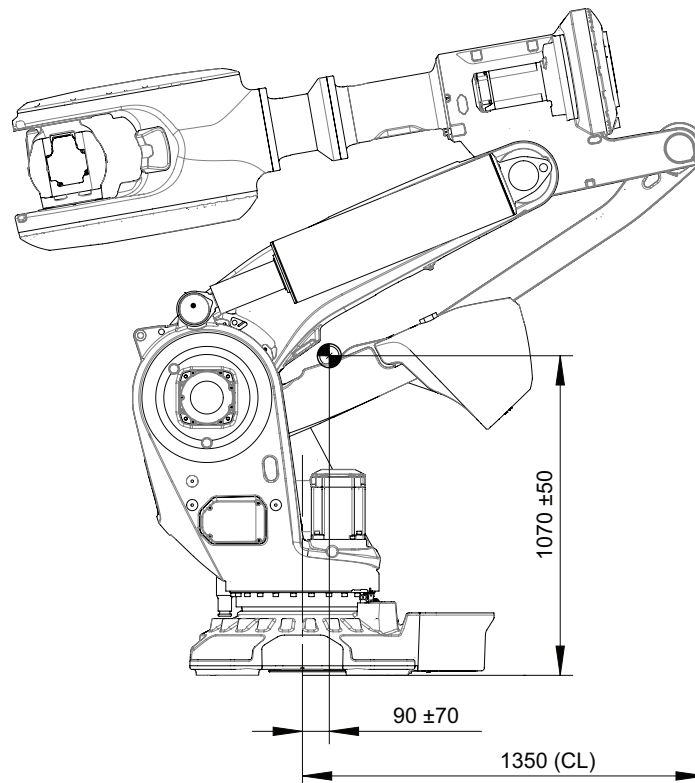
If the robot is not fastened to the foundation while moving the arm, the robot is not stable in the whole working area. Moving the arm will displace the center of gravity, which may cause the robot to tip over.

The transportation position is the most stable position.

**Do not change the robot position before securing it to the foundation!**

#### Transportation position

This figure shows the robot in its transportation position.



xx2300001519



#### Note

The robot might be positioned in a different position at delivery, due to actual configurations and options (for example DressPack).

| Axis number | Angle of axis |
|-------------|---------------|
| Axis 1      | 0° (or 90°)   |
| Axis 2      | -55°          |
| Axis 3      | +10°          |
| Axis 4      | +90°          |
| Axis 5      | -90°          |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

---

#### 3.2.2 Risk of tipping/stability

*Continued*

| Axis number | Angle of axis |
|-------------|---------------|
| Axis 6      | 0°            |



#### **WARNING**

The robot is likely to be mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation.



### 3.3 On-site installation

#### 3.3.1 Brief installation procedure

##### Introduction

This procedure is a brief guide when installing the robot for the first time. Also see [Pre-installation procedure on page 56](#).

##### First installation

Use these procedures to install the IRB 7720.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Transport the manipulator to its intended location.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 | Install the valid platform or prepare the foundation for the manipulator.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | See <a href="#">Installing a base plate on page 60</a> .                                                                                                         |
| 3 | Lift and secure the manipulator to the platform/foundation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | See <a href="#">Lifting the robot on page 69</a> .<br>See <a href="#">Orienting and securing the robot on page 77</a> .                                          |
| 4 | <p>Connect the manipulator to the controller.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure the manipulator is connected to the controller with the matching serial number and clearly labelled as a pair set.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>The manipulator shall be powered only when it is properly fixed and bolted to its support.</p> | <p>See</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore V250XT Type B</i></li> <li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore V400XT</i></li> </ul> |
| 5 | Configure the safety settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>See</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore V250XT Type B</i></li> <li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore V400XT</i></li> </ul> |
| 6 | How to start and run the robot is described in the product manual for the controller.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>See</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore V250XT Type B</i></li> <li>• <i>Product manual - OmniCore V400XT</i></li> </ul> |
| 7 | Install required equipment, if any.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 8 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 9 | After performing the first test run, lubricate the balancing device piston rod.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | See <a href="#">Lubricating the piston rod on page 194</a> .                                                                                                     |

## 3 Installation and commissioning

---

### 3.3.2 Installing a base plate

### 3.3.2 Installing a base plate

---

#### Advantages of using a base plate

Instead of installing the robot directly on the floor, a base plate can be manufactured and used as an adapter between the floor and the robot base. This list specifies some of the advantages of using a base plate:

- to ensure a plain surface with a high precision of the robot base hole configuration
- to simplify adjustment of levelness by machined surfaces or by using shims
- to distribute the press force from the robot to a larger foot print
- to compensate poor floor quality that might not be suitable for fastening the robot base directly onto. The base plate has a greater number of fastening points to the foundation and makes a larger footprint, which reduces the load on each fastening point.
- to reduce surface pressure on the foundation contact points, which minimizes the risk of wearing down an uneven surface and thereby causing changes in the robot fastening tightening torque
- to be able to prepare the installation site before robot delivery
- to increase the precision between the positions of an installed robot and other equipment



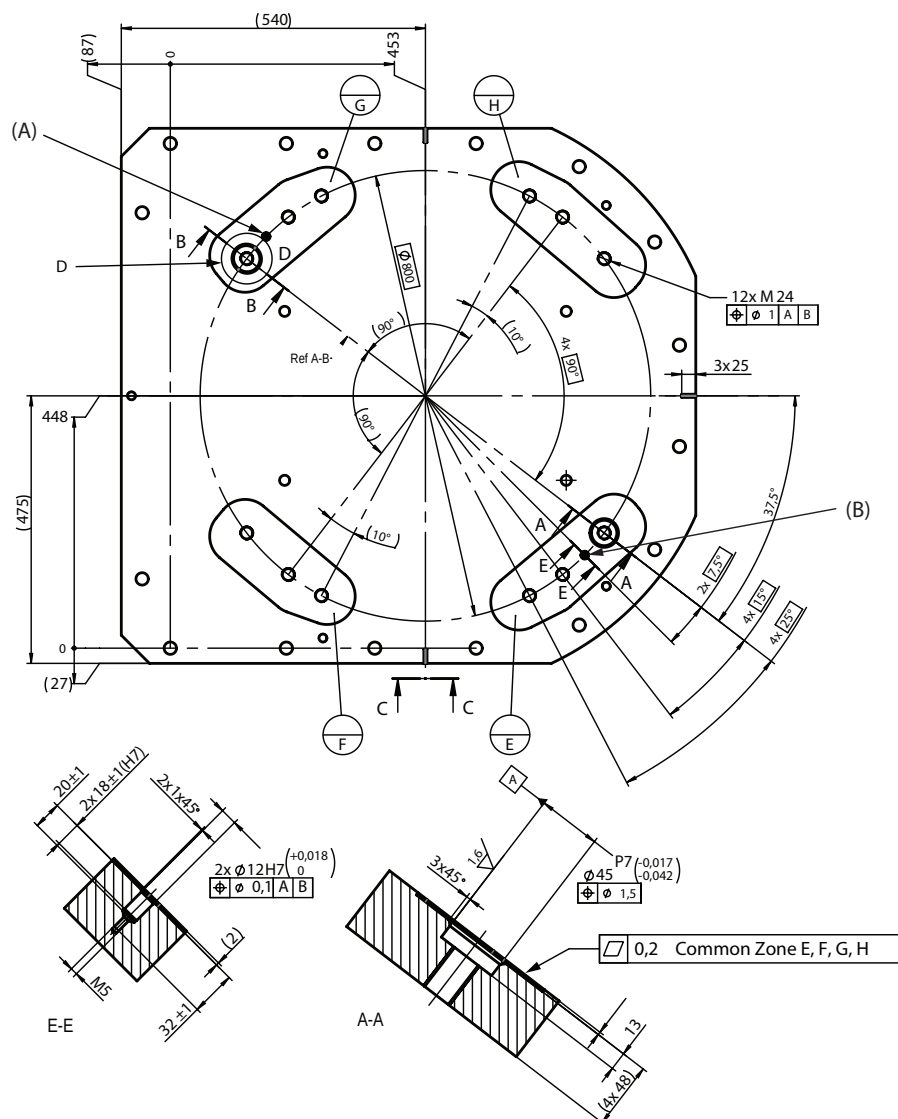
#### Note

Do not use a base plate for installation of an inverted robot.

*Continues on next page*

#### Base plate drawing

The following figure shows the dimensions for a base plate (dimensions in mm).



xx1500000246

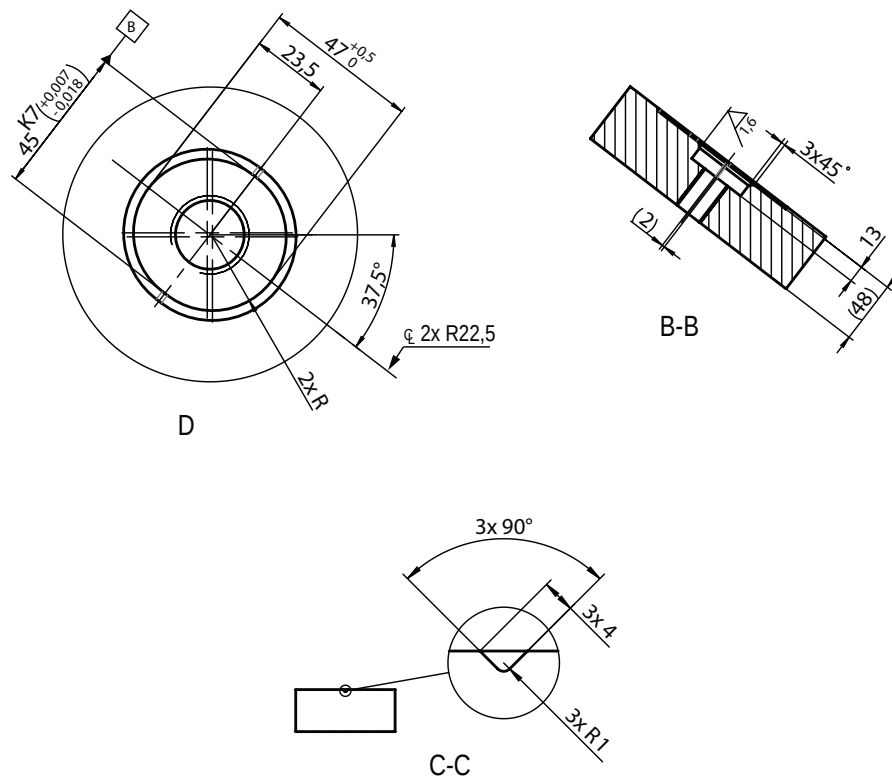
| Pos        | Description                                                                                    |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A, B       | Hole for locating pins, see <a href="#">Base plate, locating pins on page 64</a>               |
| E, F, G, H | Common tolerance zone (accuracy all over the base plate from one contact surface to the other) |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

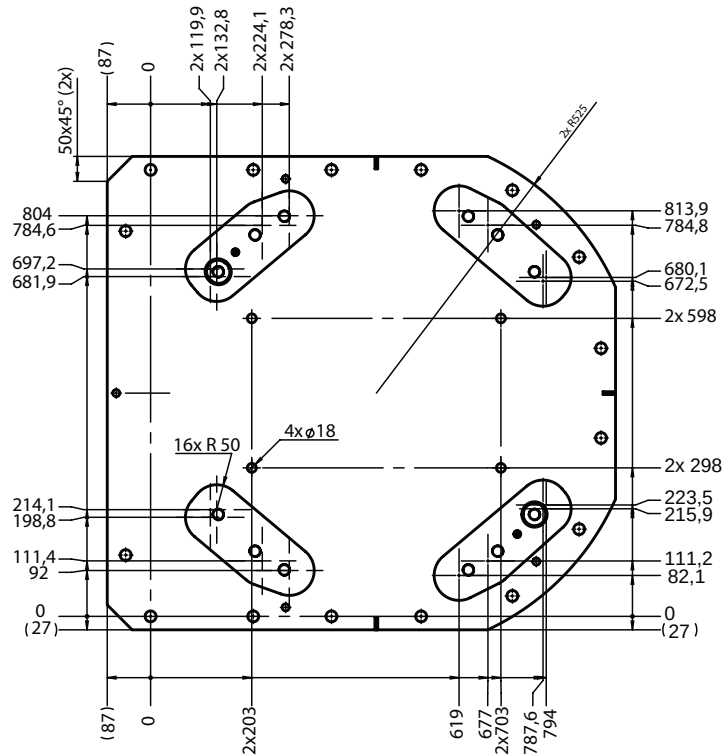
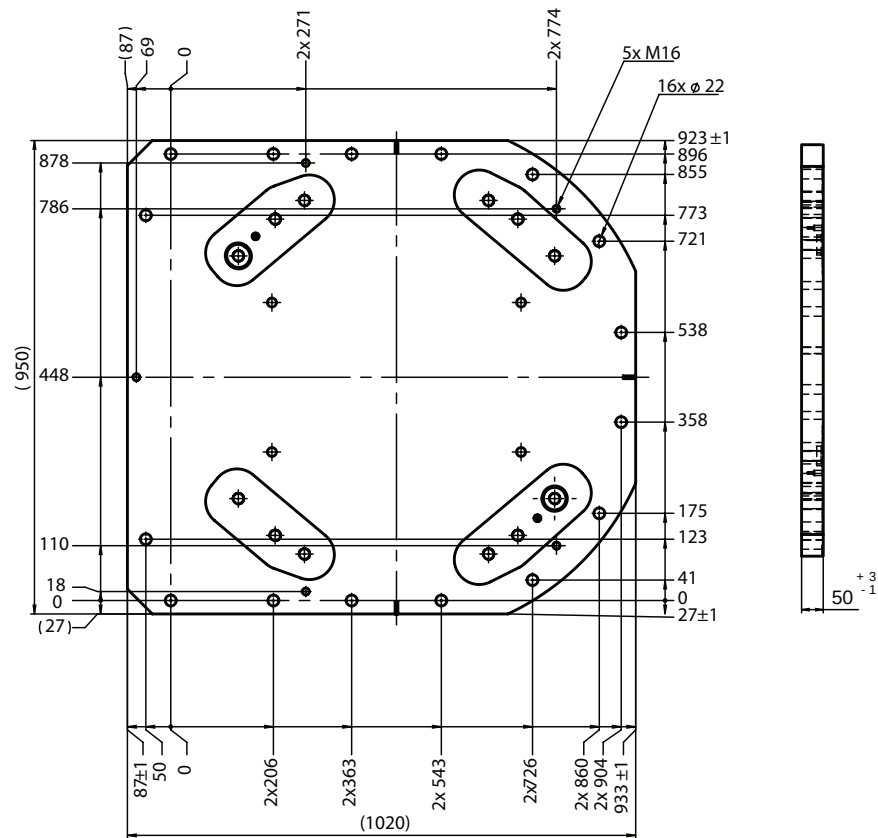
#### 3.3.2 Installing a base plate

*Continued*



xx1500000247

*Continues on next page*



xx1500000249

*Continues on next page*

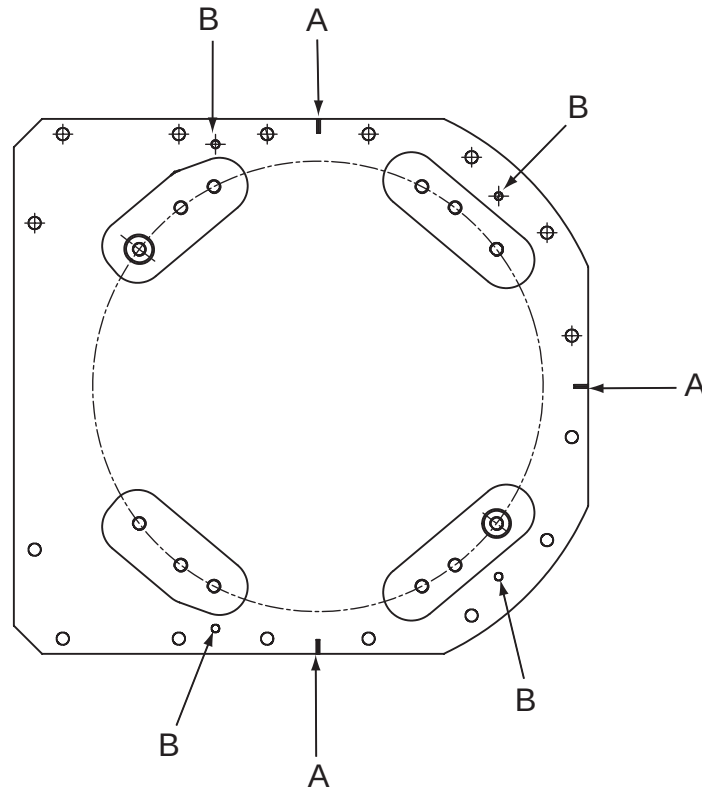
### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.2 Installing a base plate

*Continued*

##### Base plate, orienting grooves and leveling bolts

The illustration below shows the orienting grooves and attachment holes for leveling bolts in the base plate.



xx1500000312

|   |                                           |
|---|-------------------------------------------|
| A | Orienting grooves (3 pcs)                 |
| B | Levelling bolts, attachment holes (4 pcs) |

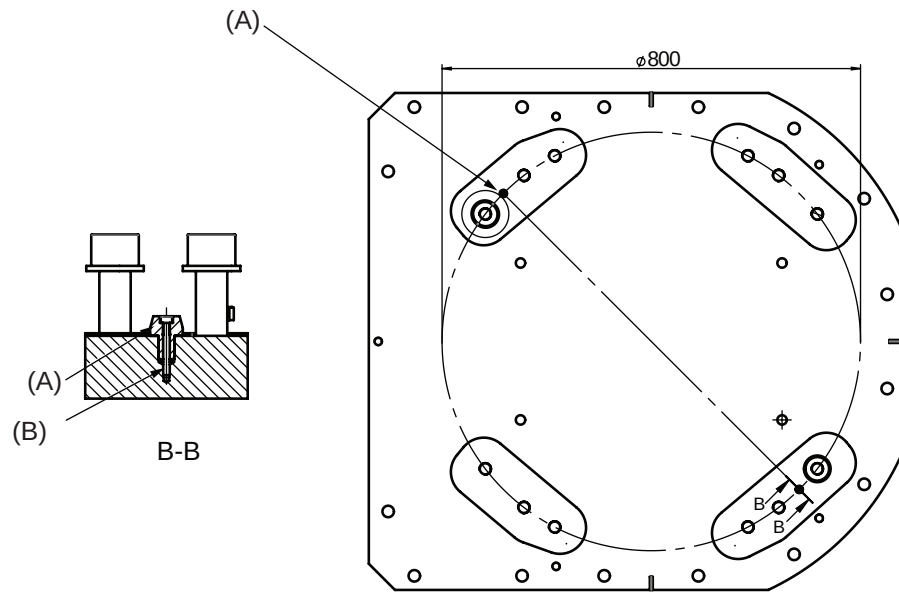
##### Base plate, locating pins

Locating pins are the recommended positioning components and especially required for robots with option Absolute Accuracy.

*Continues on next page*

##### Assembly of locating pins

The figure below shows the locating pins installed in the base plate.



xx1500000250

| Pos | Description                           |
|-----|---------------------------------------|
| A   | Locating pin: 3HAC051645-001 (2 pcs)  |
| B   | M5 x 40. Tightening torque 6 Nm. (x2) |

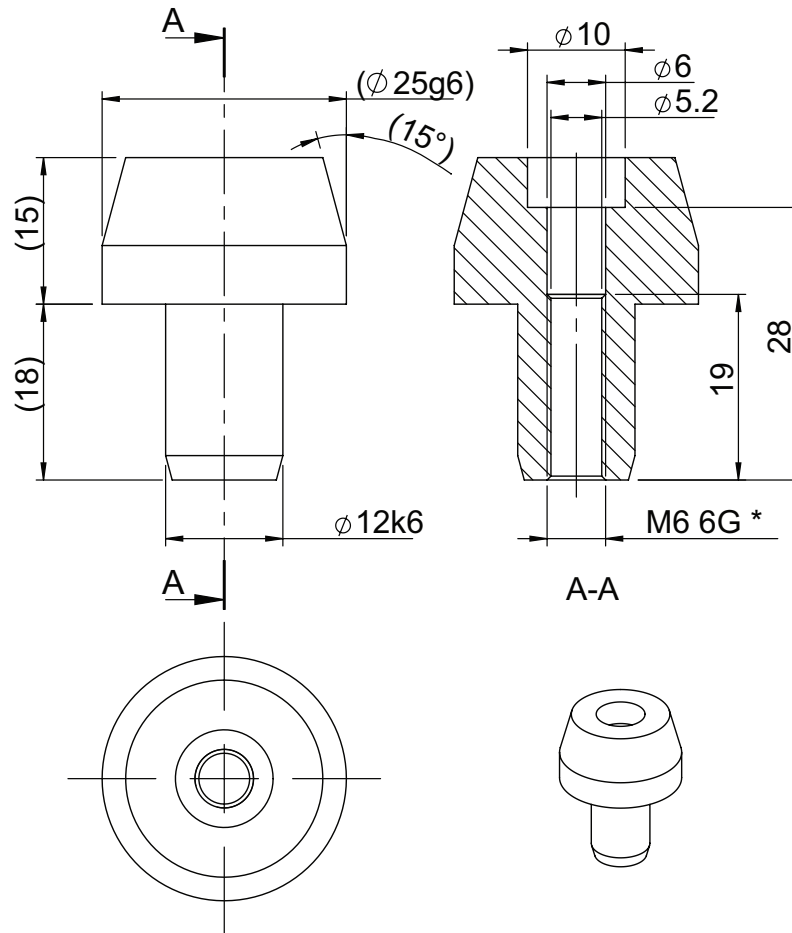
*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.2 Installing a base plate

*Continued*

Dimension of locating pins (guide pins)



XX1500000248

| Pos | Description                                                                                                       |
|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -   | Cylindrical guide pin<br>(Requires attachment screws, see <a href="#">Assembly of locating pins on page 65.</a> ) |
| *   | Threaded M6 hole that can be used for removal of the locating pin, for example with a slide hammer.               |

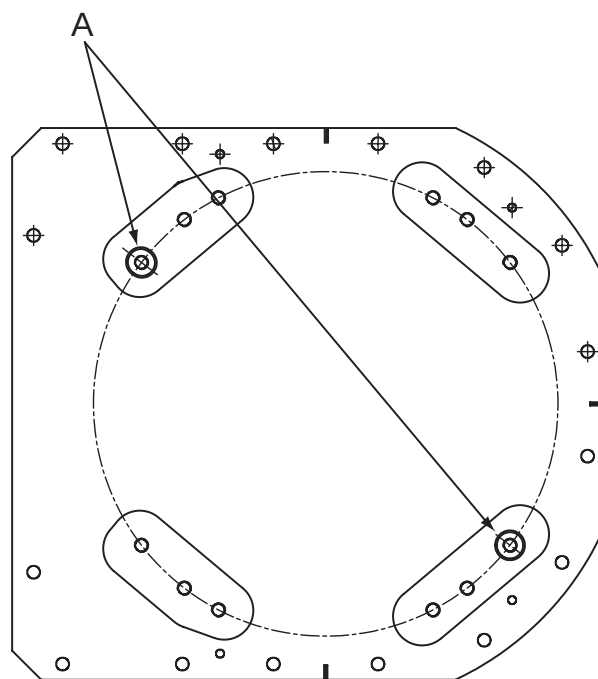
#### Base plate, guide sleeve holes

Guide sleeves are not recommended for robots with option Absolute Accuracy.

The illustration below shows the guide sleeve holes in the base plate.

*Continues on next page*





xx0300000045

|   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| A | Guide sleeve holes (2 pcs) |
|---|----------------------------|

#### Base plate

This section details how to secure the base plate to the foundation.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                          |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Make sure the foundation is levelled.                                                                                                                       |                                                                                               |
| 2 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>All lifting equipment used must be sized accordingly! |                                                                                               |
| 3 | Position base plate in relation to the robot work location using the grooves in the base plate.                                                             | Shown in figure <a href="#">Base plate, orienting grooves and leveling bolts on page 64</a> . |
| 4 | Lift the base plate to its mounting position.                                                                                                               |                                                                                               |
| 5 | Use the base plate as a template and drill attachment holes as required by the selected bolt dimension.                                                     | Attachment holes: 16 pcs.                                                                     |
| 6 | Fit the base plate and use the levelling bolts to level the base plate.                                                                                     | Shown in figure <a href="#">Base plate, orienting grooves and leveling bolts on page 64</a> . |
| 7 | If required, fit strips of sheet metal underneath the base plate to fill any gaps.                                                                          |                                                                                               |
| 8 | Secure the base plate to the foundation with screws and sleeves.                                                                                            |                                                                                               |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

---

#### 3.3.2 Installing a base plate

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                              |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9 | Recheck the four contact surfaces on the base plate to make sure the base plate is levelled and flat.<br>If it is not, use pieces of sheet metal or similar to bring the base plate to a levelled position. | Maximum allowed deviation all over the base plate, from one contact surface to the other: 0.3 mm. |

### 3.3.3 Lifting the robot

#### 3.3.3.1 Lifting the robot with fork lift

##### Lifting methods

The robot may be lifted and transported using a fork lift, provided that available special aids are used.

This section specifies available special aids and references to valid user documentation for the lifting accessories.

##### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment               | Article number | Note                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fork lift accessory set | 3HAC047054-003 | Contains fork lift pockets and all required hardware for installation on robot base.<br>User instructions are enclosed with the tool. |

##### Required documents

| Document                                                    | Document number |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Directions for use - Fork lift accessory set 3HAC047054-001 | 3HAC048484-002  |

##### Lifting the robot

|   | Action                                                                                                    | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Lift the robot with a fork lift according to the user instructions enclosed with the fork lift accessory. |      |

## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.3.3.2 Lifting the robot with roundslings

#### 3.3.3.2 Lifting the robot with roundslings

##### Recommended lifting method

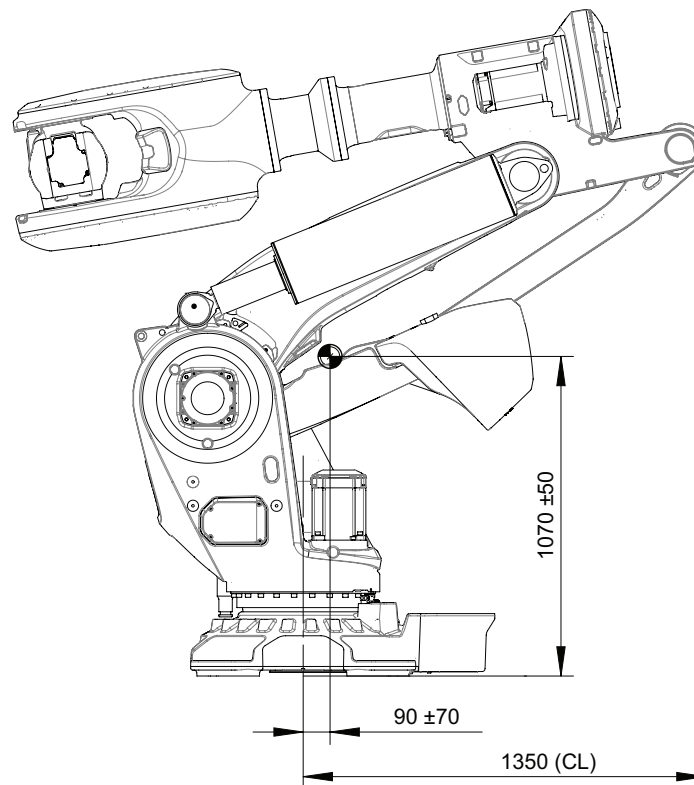
Recommended lifting method for the robot includes one of following lifting accessories:

- Fork lift accessory set: 3HAC047054-003. See [Lifting the robot with fork lift on page 69](#).

The robot can also be lifted with roundslings as detailed in this section.

##### Illustration - lifting position

This figure shows the robot in its lifting and transportation position.



xx2300001519

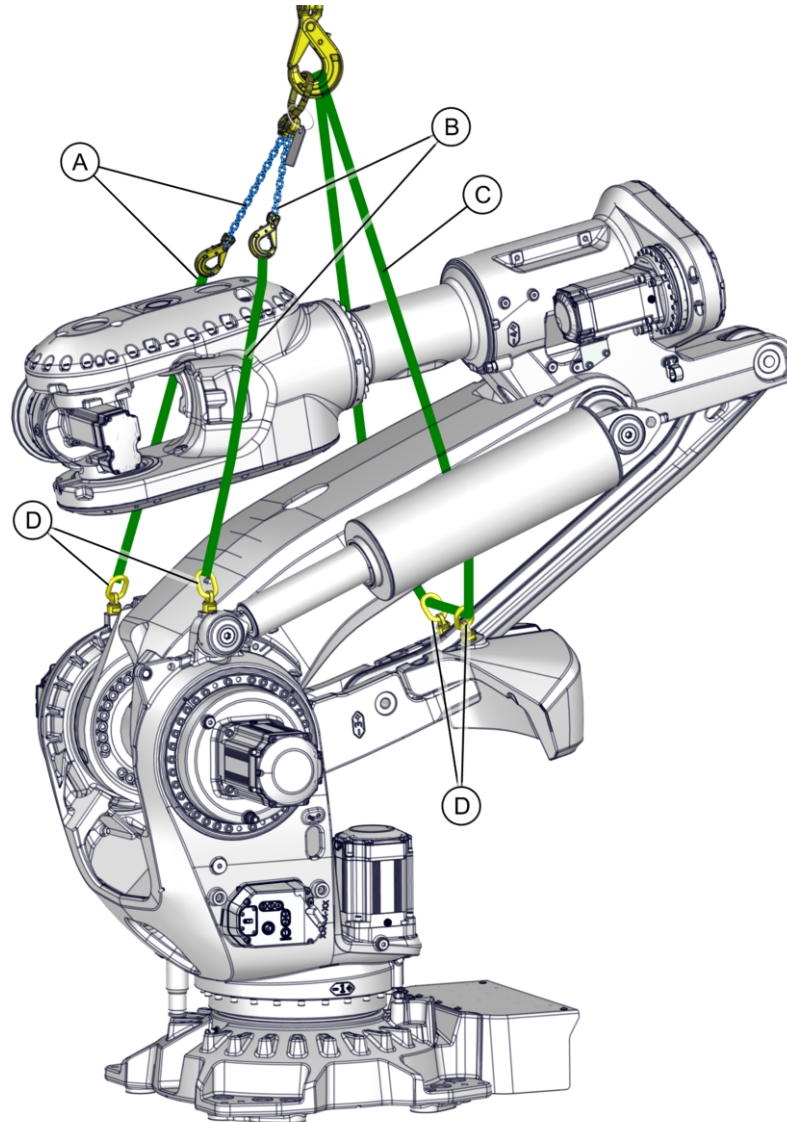


##### DANGER

Attempting to lift a robot in any other position than the recommended lifting position may result in the robot tipping over, causing severe damage or injury.

*Continues on next page*

#### Illustration - attaching the roundslings



xx2300001539

| Pos | Description                              | Note                                 | Quantity |
|-----|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| A   | Roundslings and adjustable lifting chain | Complete length 1.86 m <sup>i</sup>  | 1 pcs    |
| B   | Roundslings and adjustable lifting chain | Complete length 1.78 m <sup>ii</sup> | 1 pcs    |
| C   | Roundslings                              | 4 m                                  | 1 pcs    |
| D   | Swivel eye bolt M20                      | M20                                  | 4 pcs    |

<sup>i</sup> Use a roundslings (for example 1 m) to avoid scratches on the manipulator combined with lifting chains, to get the exact length of the lifting accessory for a balanced lift of the manipulator.

<sup>ii</sup> Use a roundslings (for example 1 m) to avoid scratches on the manipulator combined with lifting chains, to get the exact length of the lifting accessory for a balanced lift of the manipulator.

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.3.2 Lifting the robot with roundslings

*Continued*



#### CAUTION

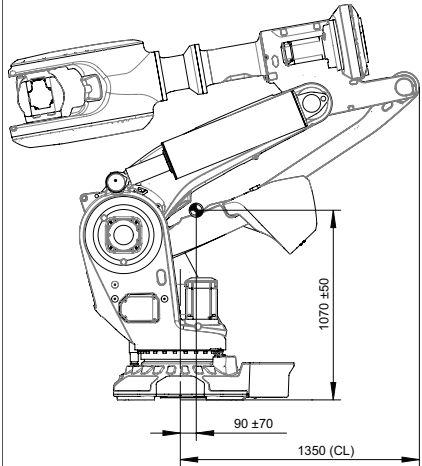
The weight of the IRB 7720 robot is 2,590 - 2,690 kg (depending on robot variant)  
All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                                | Article number | Note                                                             |
|------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Overhead crane                           | -              |                                                                  |
| Roundslings and adjustable lifting chain | -              | See <i>Illustration - attaching the roundslings on page 71</i> . |
| Swivel eye bolt M20                      | -              | M20                                                              |

#### Lifting the robot with roundslings

Use this procedure to lift the robot with roundslings.

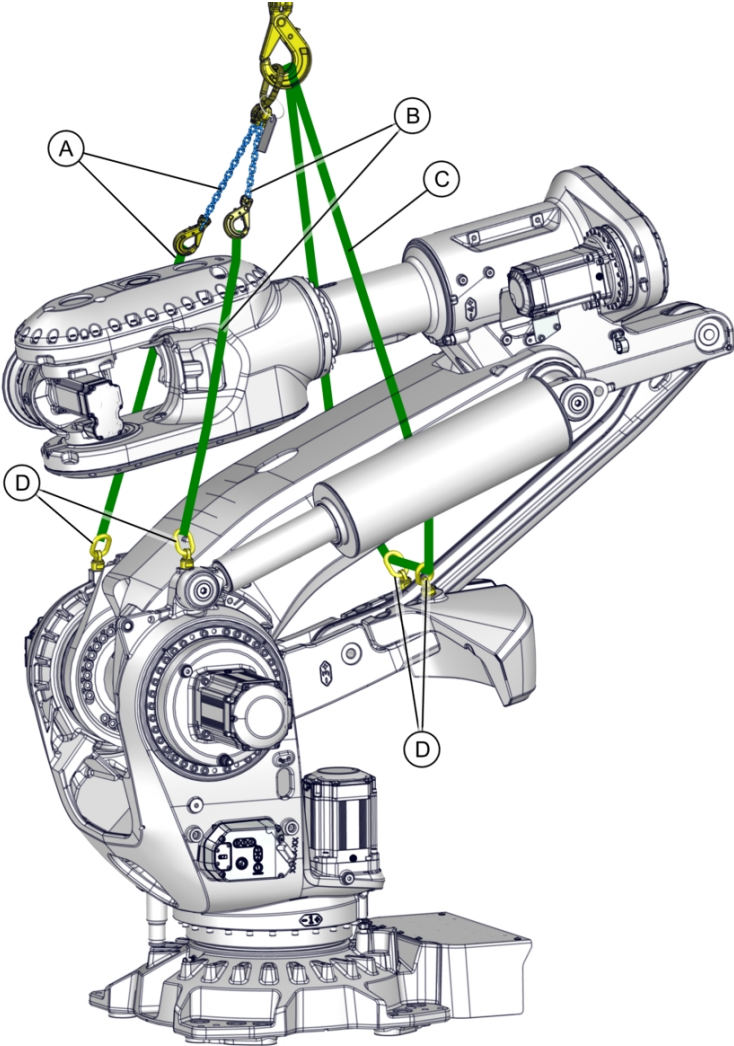
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Make sure the robot is positioned in the recommended position for transportation and lifting.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Axis 1: 0° (or 90°)</li><li>• Axis 2: -55°</li><li>• Axis 3: +10°</li><li>• Axis 4: +90°</li><li>• Axis 5: -90°</li><li>• Axis 6: 0°</li></ul> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>The robot is mechanically unstable if not secured to the foundation.</p> | <br>xx2300001519 |
| 2 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the IRB 7720 robot is 2,590 - 2,690 kg (depending on robot variant)<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                     |
| 3 | Fit lifting eyes / eye bolts to the lifting points of the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Swivel eye bolt M20 (4 pcs)                                                                         |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.3.2 Lifting the robot with roundslings

*Continued*

| Action | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                      |             |      |          |   |                                         |                                     |       |   |                                         |                                      |       |   |            |     |       |   |                     |     |       |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|------|----------|---|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------|---|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|---|------------|-----|-------|---|---------------------|-----|-------|
| 4      | <p>Attach the roundslings to the robot according to the figure.</p> <p>Make sure the roundslings do not rub against any sharp edges.</p>  <p>xx2300001539</p> <table><tr><th>Pos</th><th>Description</th><th>Note</th><th>Quantity</th></tr><tr><td>A</td><td>Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain</td><td>Complete length 1.86 m <sup>i</sup></td><td>1 pcs</td></tr><tr><td>B</td><td>Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain</td><td>Complete length 1.78 m <sup>ii</sup></td><td>1 pcs</td></tr><tr><td>C</td><td>Roundsling</td><td>4 m</td><td>1 pcs</td></tr><tr><td>D</td><td>Swivel eye bolt M20</td><td>M20</td><td>4 pcs</td></tr></table> <p><sup>i</sup> Use a roundsling (for example 1 m) to avoid scratches on the manipulator combined with lifting chains, to get the exact length of the lifting accessory for a balanced lift of the manipulator.</p> <p><sup>ii</sup> Use a roundsling (for example 1 m) to avoid scratches on the manipulator combined with lifting chains, to get the exact length of the lifting accessory for a balanced lift of the manipulator.</p> | Pos                                  | Description | Note | Quantity | A | Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain | Complete length 1.86 m <sup>i</sup> | 1 pcs | B | Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain | Complete length 1.78 m <sup>ii</sup> | 1 pcs | C | Roundsling | 4 m | 1 pcs | D | Swivel eye bolt M20 | M20 | 4 pcs |
| Pos    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                 | Quantity    |      |          |   |                                         |                                     |       |   |                                         |                                      |       |   |            |     |       |   |                     |     |       |
| A      | Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Complete length 1.86 m <sup>i</sup>  | 1 pcs       |      |          |   |                                         |                                     |       |   |                                         |                                      |       |   |            |     |       |   |                     |     |       |
| B      | Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Complete length 1.78 m <sup>ii</sup> | 1 pcs       |      |          |   |                                         |                                     |       |   |                                         |                                      |       |   |            |     |       |   |                     |     |       |
| C      | Roundsling                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 4 m                                  | 1 pcs       |      |          |   |                                         |                                     |       |   |                                         |                                      |       |   |            |     |       |   |                     |     |       |
| D      | Swivel eye bolt M20                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | M20                                  | 4 pcs       |      |          |   |                                         |                                     |       |   |                                         |                                      |       |   |            |     |       |   |                     |     |       |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

---

#### 3.3.3.2 Lifting the robot with roundslings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 5 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Personnel must not, under any circumstances, be present under the suspended load. |      |
| 6 | Raise the overhead crane to lift the robot.                                                                                                                                           |      |



### 3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes

#### Introduction to manually releasing the brakes

This section describes how to release the holding brakes for the axes motors.

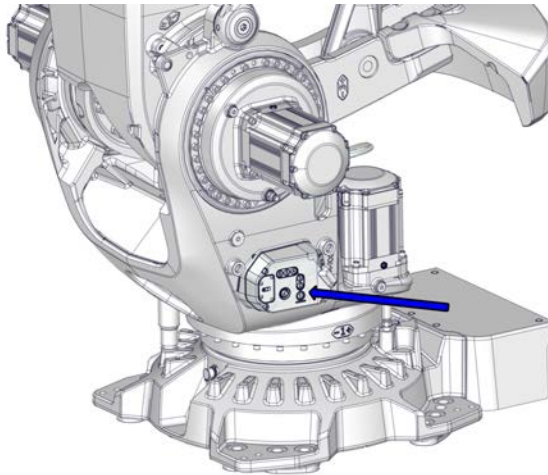


#### Note

It is recommended to train operators on how to use the brake release functionality, including for emergency or abnormal situations.

#### Location of the brake release unit

The brake release unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001541

#### Releasing the brakes

This procedure describes how to release the holding brakes when the robot is equipped with a brake release unit.

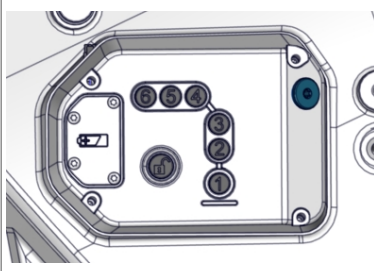
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <p>The internal brake release unit is equipped with buttons for controlling the axes brakes. The buttons are numbered according to the numbers of the axes.</p> <div> </div> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to the connector R1.MP according to the section <a href="#">Supplying power to connector R1.MP on page 76</a>.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

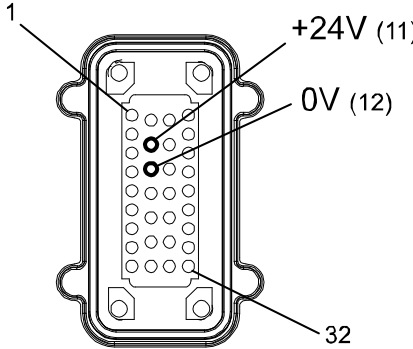
#### 3.3.4 Manually releasing the brakes

Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>When releasing the holding brakes, the robot axes may move very quickly and sometimes in unexpected ways.<br>Make sure no personnel is near or beneath the robot. |                                                                                                     |
| 3 | Release the holding brake on a particular robot axis by pressing the corresponding button and the padlock button simultaneously, on the internal brake release unit.<br>The brake is enabled when the button is released.                                            | <br>xx2200001751 |

#### Supplying power to connector R1.MP

If the robot is not connected to the controller, power must be supplied to connector R1.MP on the robot, in order to enable the brake release buttons.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Incorrect connections, such as supplying power to the wrong pin, may cause all brakes to be released simultaneously and instantly!                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Supply <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0V on pin 12.</li> <li>• 24V on pin 11.</li> </ul>  <b>Note</b><br>Do not interchange the 24V and 0V pins.<br>If they are mixed up, damage can be caused to internal electrical components. | <br>xx0600002937 |
| 3 | Use the brake releasing button as described in <a href="#">Releasing the brakes on page 75</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                      |

### 3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

#### General

This section describes how to orient and secure the robot to the base plate or to the steel structure foundation in order to run the robot safely.

#### Attachment screws

The table below specifies the type of securing screws and washers to be used for securing the robot to the base plate/steel structure foundation.

|                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Suitable screws                                                            | M24 x 100                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Quantity                                                                   | 12 pcs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Quality                                                                    | 8.8                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Suitable washer                                                            | 4 mm flat washer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Guide pins                                                                 | Locating pin: 3HAC051645-001 (2 pcs)<br>Locating pins are required if mounting the manipulator to a track motion or to a base plate.<br>Locating pins are also required for robots with option Absolute Accuracy.<br>For more information, see <a href="#">Base plate, locating pins on page 64</a> . |
| Tightening torque                                                          | 550 Nm (screws lubricated with Molykote 1000)<br>600-725 Nm, typical 650 Nm (screws none or lightly lubricated)                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Screw tightening yield point utilization factor (v) (according to VDI2230) | 90% (v=0.9)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Level surface requirements                                                 | 0.3 mm <sup>i</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

<sup>i</sup> See [Requirements, foundation on page 39](#).

#### Required rust preventive

| Consumable                       | Article number | Note |
|----------------------------------|----------------|------|
| Touch up kit for rust prevention | 3HAC088576-001 |      |

#### Securing a floor mounted robot

Use this procedure to orient and secure the robot floor mounted.

|   | Action                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Make sure the installation site for the robot conforms to the specifications in section <a href="#">Technical data on page 37</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 2 | Prepare the installation site with attachment holes or install a base plate.<br>The foundation surface must be clean and unpainted. | The hole configuration of the base is shown in the figure in <a href="#">Hole configuration, base on page 79</a> .<br>For information about a base plate, see <a href="#">Installing a base plate on page 60</a> . |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

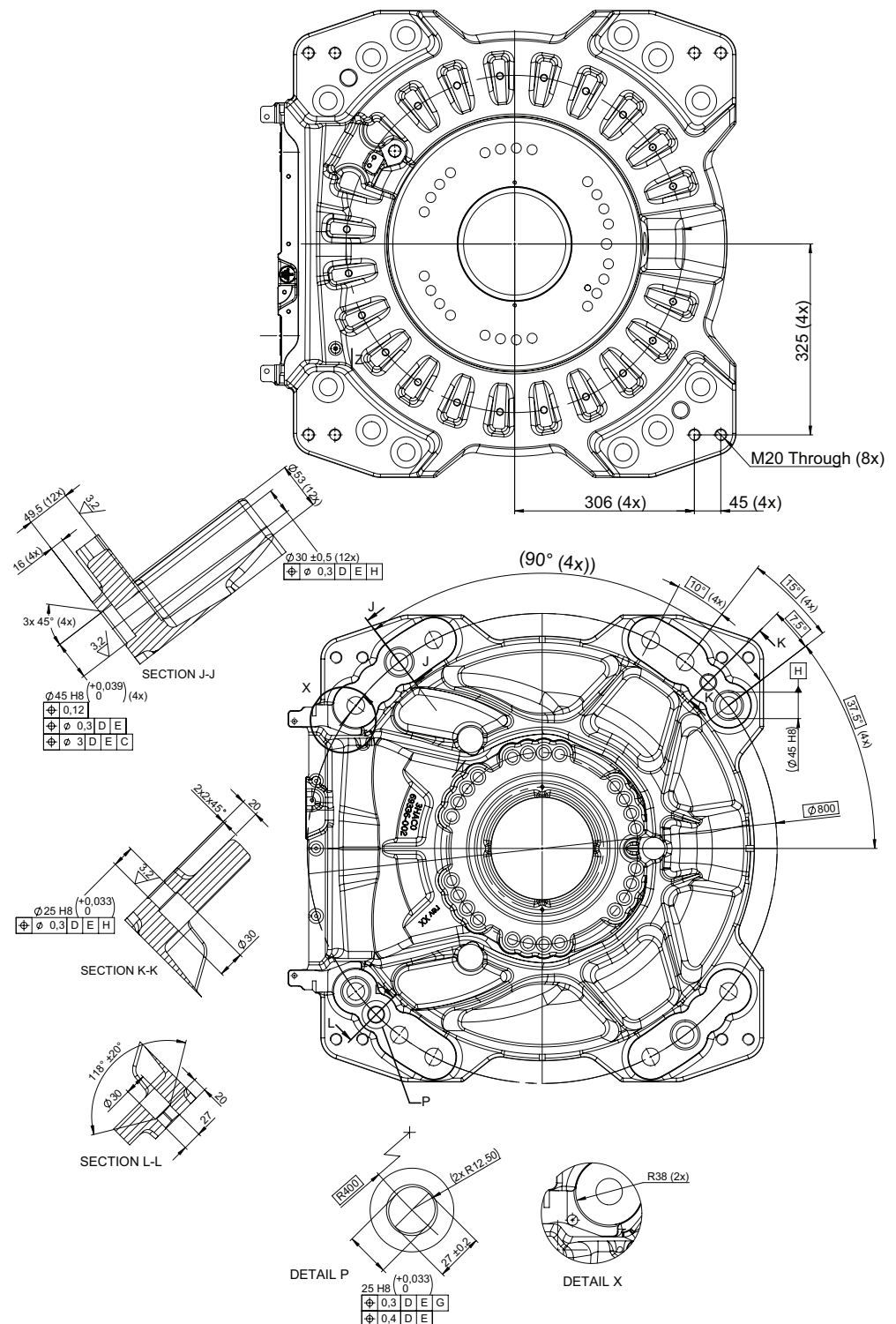
#### 3.3.5 Orienting and securing the robot

*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3  | If using a base plate: fit two locating pins in the base plate.                                                                                                                                                                                      | Locating pins are required if mounting the manipulator to a track motion or to a base plate.<br>Locating pins are also required for robots with option Absolute Accuracy.<br>For more information, see <a href="#">Base plate, locating pins on page 64</a> . |
| 4  |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The weight of the IRB 7720 robot is 2,590 - 2,690 kg (depending on robot variant)<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 5  |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>When the robot is put down after being lifted or transported, there is a risk of it tipping, if not properly secured.                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 6  | Lift the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | See <a href="#">Lifting the robot on page 69</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 7  | Guide the robot gently, using the attachment screws while lowering it into its mounting position.                                                                                                                                                    | Make sure the robot base is correctly fitted onto the pins.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 8  | Apply rust preventive liquid to the robot base screw holes according to the information included in the touch up kit.                                                                                                                                | Touch up kit for rust prevention: 3HAC088576-001                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 9  | Fit the securing screws and washers in the attachment holes of the base.                                                                                                                                                                             | Screws: M24 x 100, 12 pcs, quality 8.8<br>Washers: 4 mm flat washer                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 10 | Tighten the bolts in a crosswise pattern to ensure that the base is not distorted.                                                                                                                                                                   | Tightening torque:<br>550 Nm (screws lubricated with Molykote 1000)<br>600-725 Nm, typical 650 Nm (screws none or lightly lubricated)                                                                                                                         |

*Continues on next page*

**This illustration shows the hole configuration used when securing the robot.**



xx2400000132

## 3 Installation and commissioning

---

### 3.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances

### 3.3.6 Loads fitted to the robot, stopping time and braking distances

---

#### Define loads carefully

Any loads mounted on the robot must be defined correctly and carefully (with regard to the position of center of gravity and mass moments of inertia) in order to avoid jolting movements and overloading motors, gears and structure.



#### CAUTION

Incorrectly defined loads may result in operational stops or major damage to the robot.

Load diagrams, permitted extra loads (equipment) and their positions are specified in the product specification. The loads must be defined in the software.

For more details about load identification and definition, see *Operating manual - OmniCore* and *Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types*.

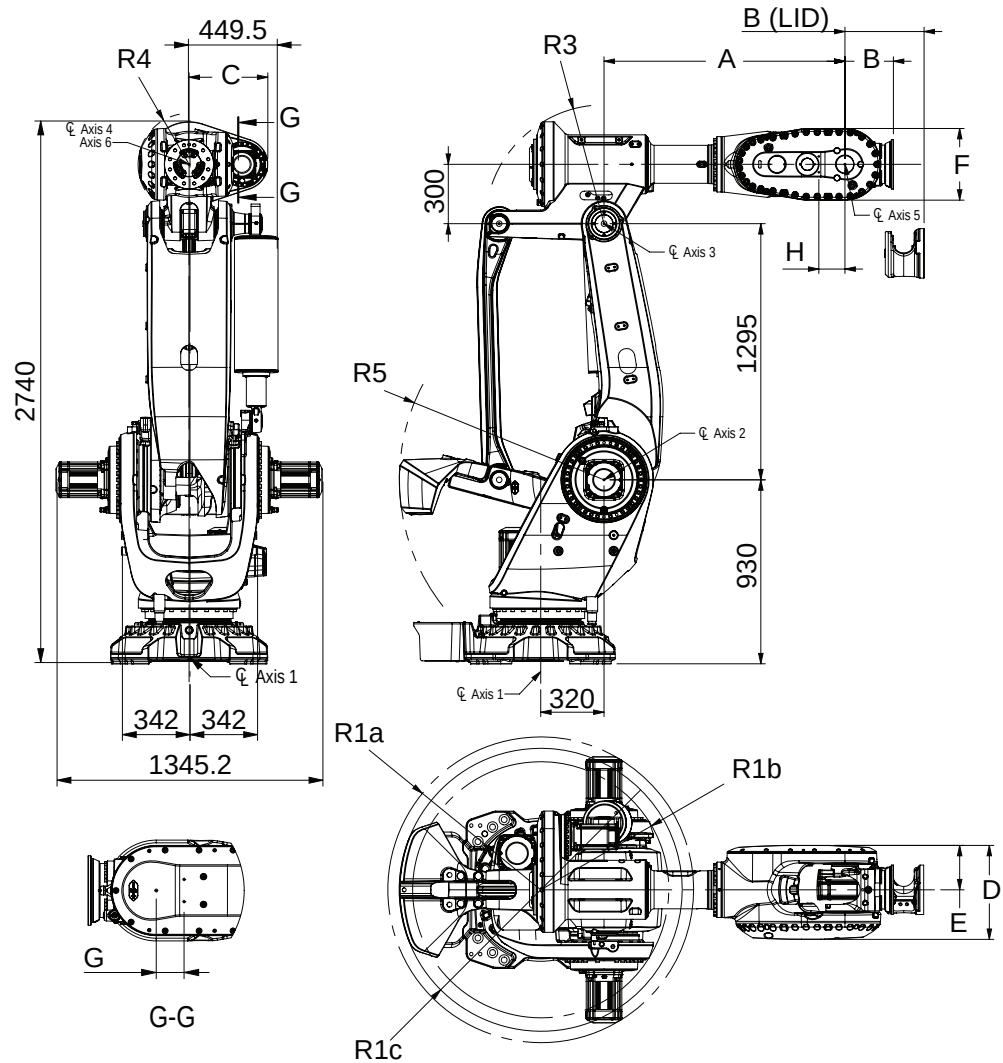
#### Stopping time and braking distances

The performance of the motor brake depends on if there are any loads attached to the robot.

See the product specification for the robot, listed in [References on page 10](#).

### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

#### Robot dimensions



xx2400000270

|     |                                                          |
|-----|----------------------------------------------------------|
| R1a | Smallest circumscribed radius around axis 1 (side)       |
| R1b | Smallest circumscribed radius around axis 1 (front side) |
| R1c | Smallest circumscribed radius around axis 1 (side)       |
| R3  | Smallest circumscribed radius around axis 3              |
| R4  | Smallest circumscribed radius around axis 4              |
| R5  | Smallest circumscribed radius around counter weight      |

#### Measurements

The measurements are given in mm.

| Variant          | A     | B   | C   | D   | E   | F   | G   | H   | R1a | R1b | R1c | R3  | R4  | R5  |
|------------------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| IRB 7720-620/2.9 | 1,268 | 270 | 488 | 520 | 240 | 407 | 120 | 140 | 774 | 647 | 772 | 600 | 292 | 546 |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

Continued

| Variant              | A     | B   | C   | D   | E   | F   | G   | H   | R1a | R1b | R1c | R3  | R4  | R5  |
|----------------------|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| IRB 7720-530/3.1     | 1,498 | 270 | 488 | 520 | 240 | 407 | 120 | 140 | 774 | 647 | 772 | 600 | 292 | 546 |
| IRB 7720-510/3.3     | 1,708 | 245 | 398 | 475 | 225 | 362 | 100 | 132 | 774 | 647 | 772 | 601 | 258 | 546 |
| IRB 7720-450/3.5     | 1,918 | 245 | 398 | 475 | 225 | 362 | 100 | 132 | 774 | 647 | 772 | 601 | 258 | 546 |
| IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID | 1,268 | 425 | 488 | 520 | 240 | 407 | 120 | 140 | 774 | 647 | 772 | 599 | 292 | 546 |
| IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID | 1,498 | 425 | 488 | 520 | 240 | 407 | 120 | 140 | 774 | 647 | 772 | 599 | 292 | 546 |
| IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID | 1,708 | 400 | 398 | 475 | 225 | 362 | 100 | 132 | 774 | 647 | 772 | 601 | 258 | 546 |
| IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID | 1,918 | 400 | 398 | 475 | 225 | 362 | 100 | 132 | 774 | 647 | 772 | 601 | 258 | 546 |

#### Extra load on the robot

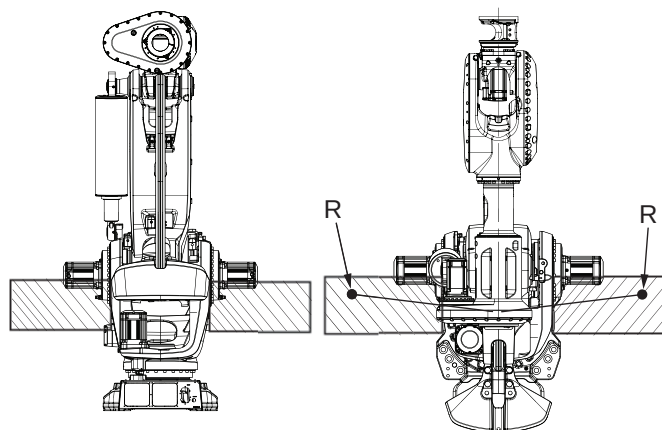
Extra loads can be mounted on robot. Definitions of dimensions and masses are shown in the following figures. The robot is supplied with holes for fitting extra equipment.

Maximum allowed arm load depends on center of gravity of arm load and robot payload.

#### Frame

The table and figure shows allowed extra load on the frame.

|                                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Permitted extra load on frame                   | $J_H = 100 \text{ kgm}^2$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Recommended position (see the following figure) | $J_H = J_{H0} + M4 \times R^2$<br>where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><math>J_{H0}</math> is the moment of inertia of the equipment</li> <li><math>R</math> is the radius (m) from the center of axis 1</li> <li><math>M4</math> is the total mass (kg) of the equipment including bracket and harness (<math>\leq 250 \text{ kg}</math>)</li> </ul> |



xx2400000249

#### Upper arm

The figure shows the position for a nominal extra load of 50 kg on the upper arm housing on a standard robot. For more precise calculations of allowed extra load

Continues on next page

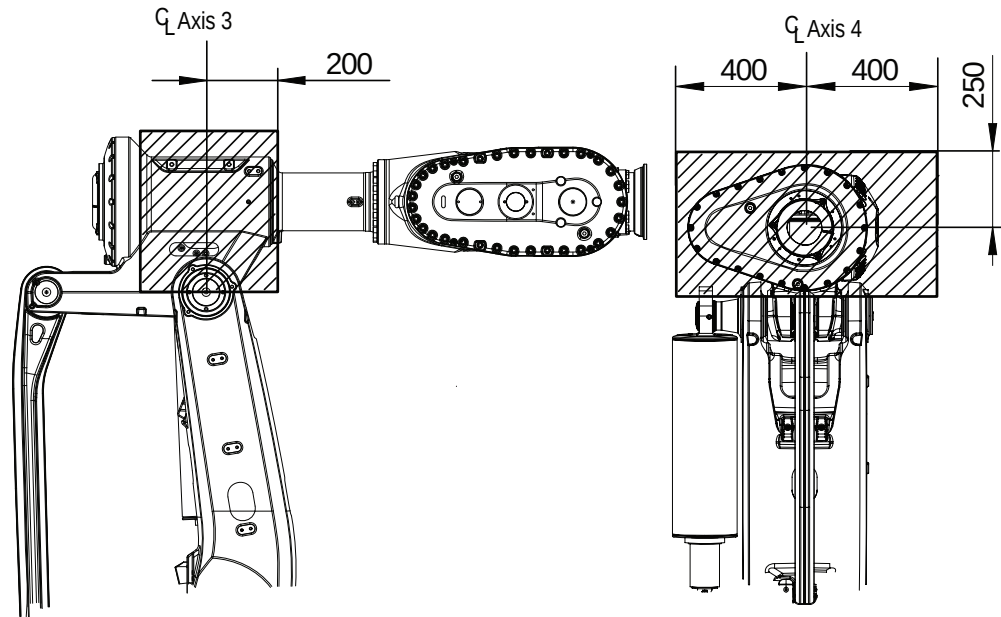


### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

*Continued*

up to maximum 200 kg in combination with the reduced payload, use RobotStudio add-in RobotLoad or contact ABB.



xx2400000248

#### Attachment holes for fitting extra equipment

The robot is supplied with holes for fitting extra equipment.

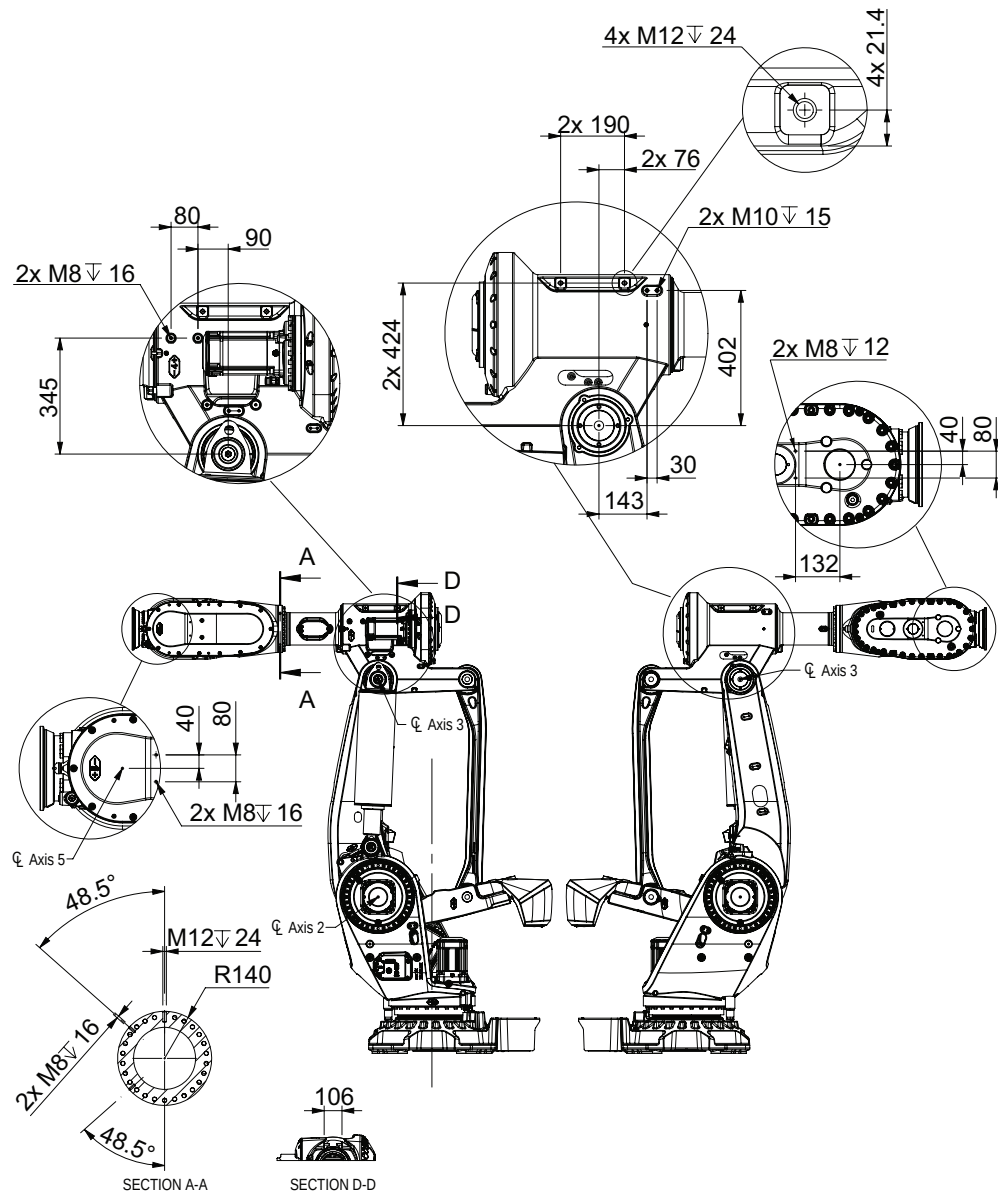
*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.7 Fitting equipment on the robot (robot dimensions)

Continued

##### Upper arm



Continues on next page

Technical drawing of the robot arm assembly. Dimensions and callouts include:

- $3 \times 30$  (top callout)
- $6 \times M8 \nabla 16 \text{ min.}$  (left callout)
- $\varnothing$  Axis 3 (right callout)
- 299.7 (vertical dimension)
- 273.8 (vertical dimension)
- 118.5 (horizontal dimension)
- 505 (vertical dimension)
- $9.6^\circ$  (angle dimension)

© Copyright 2024 - 2026 ABB. All rights reserved.

*Continued*

| Robot variant                                | Tool flange dimension |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| IRB 7720-620/2.9<br>IRB 7720-530/3.1         | <p>xx2400000276</p>   |
| IRB 7720-510/3.3<br>IRB 7720-450/3.5         | <p>xx2400000274</p>   |
| IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID | <p>xx2400000277</p>   |
| IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID |                       |

© Copyright 2024 - 2026 ABB. All rights reserved.

| Robot variant | Tool flange dimension |
|---------------|-----------------------|
|               | <p>xx2400000275</p>   |

#### Fastener quality

When fitting tools on the tool flange, only use screws with quality 12.9. For other equipment use suitable screws and tightening torque for your application.

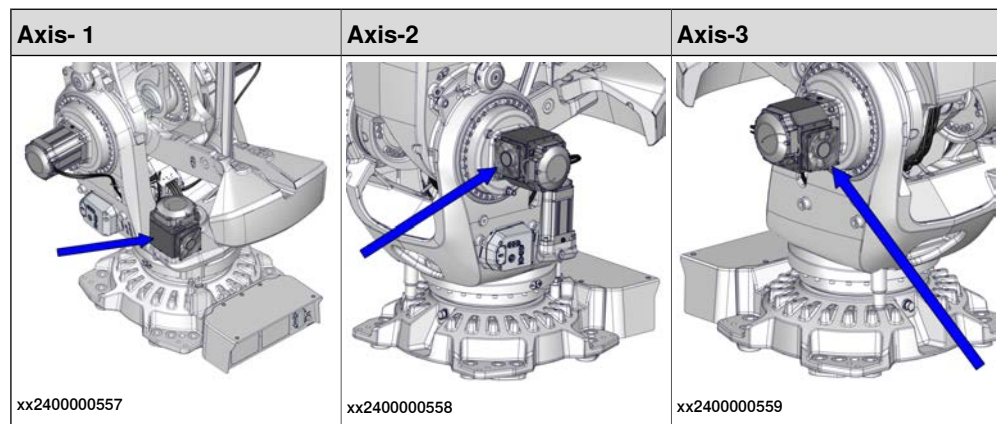
### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.8 Installing the motor cooling fan (option 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1)

#### 3.3.8 Installing the motor cooling fan (option 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1)

##### Location of the motor cooling fan

A cooling fan can be installed on the motors shown in the figure, as an option. The fan is not possible to install on a robot with protection type Foundry Plus. Only two cooling fans can be used simultaneously.



##### Note

The robot can only have two cooling fans installed at the same time.

##### Required spare parts



##### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part | Article number                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fan unit   | 3HAC092582-001<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC092583-001<br>(ABB Orange) | Available for the axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3 motor. Can not be used together with protection type Foundry Plus.<br>Includes <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>fan unit</li><li>required cabling</li><li>required fasteners</li><li>motor connection box cover with threaded connection, including gasket</li></ul> |

##### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

Continues on next page

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.8 Installing the motor cooling fan (option 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1)

*Continued*

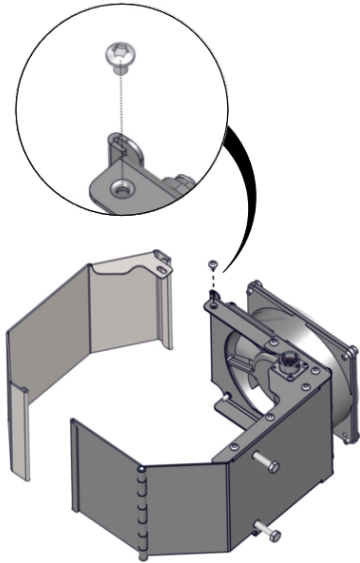
##### Required consumables

| Consumable   | Article number | Note |
|--------------|----------------|------|
| Cable straps | -              |      |

##### Installing the cooling fan

Use these procedures to install the cooling fan.

##### Installing the fan

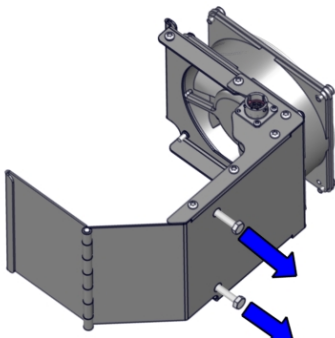
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Move the robot to its synchronization position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                      |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                      |
| 3 | Remove the securing screw and separate the two metal sheets.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2500001494 |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.8 Installing the motor cooling fan (option 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1)

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Screw out the two tightening screws so they do not damage the motor surface during installation. | <br>xx2500001495 |

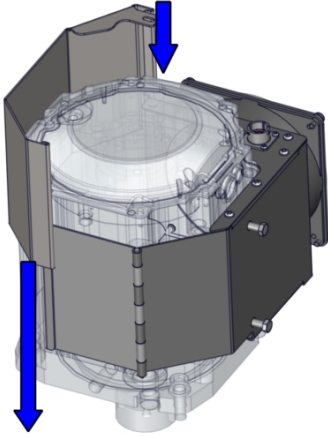
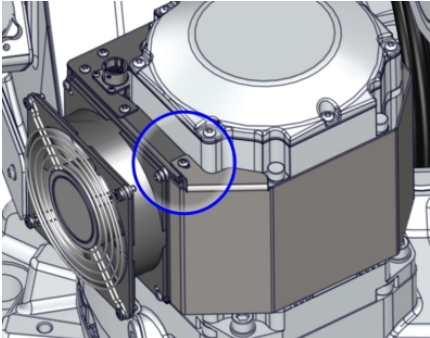
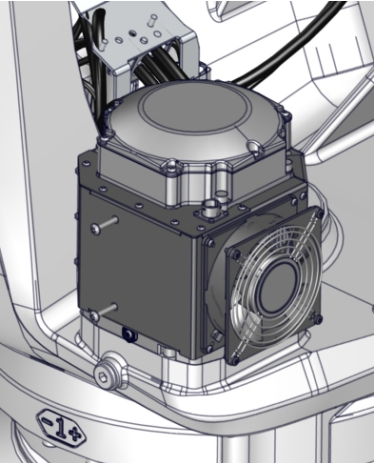
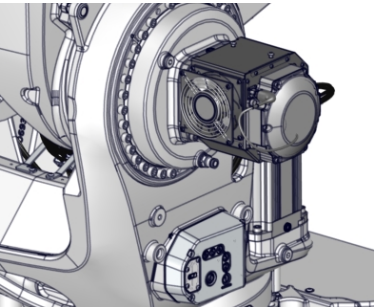
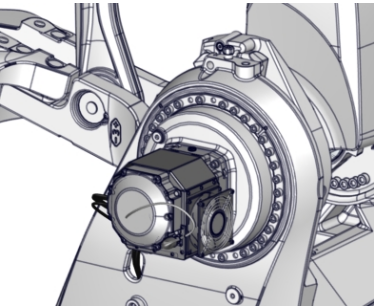
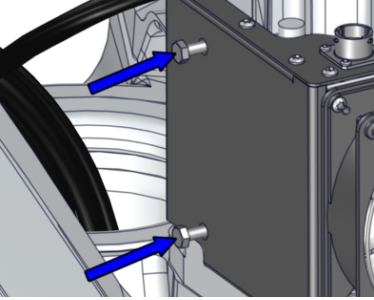
*Continues on next page*



### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.8 Installing the motor cooling fan (option 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1)

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Fit the fan unit to the motor according to the orientation shown in the images for each axis.<br/>Fit the second sheet by sliding it down. Secure with the screw and tighten.</p>  <p>xx2500001584</p>  <p>xx2500001497</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 3 Nm.</p> <p>Axis-1 motor:</p>  <p>xx2400000553</p> <p>Axis-2 motor:</p>  <p>xx2400000554</p> <p>Axis-3 motor:</p>  <p>xx2400000555</p> |
| 6 | <p>Place the fan unit box in position and tighten the two adjustment screws so that the fan unit has a rattle free fit on the motor.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2500001498</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

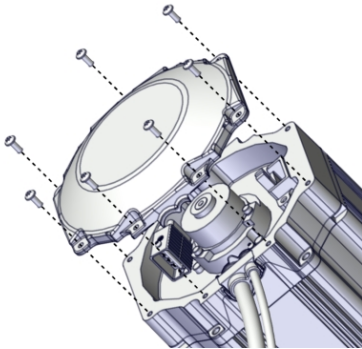
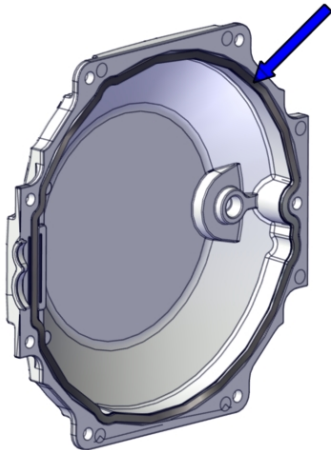
*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.8 Installing the motor cooling fan (option 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1)

*Continued*

##### Connecting the fan cabling

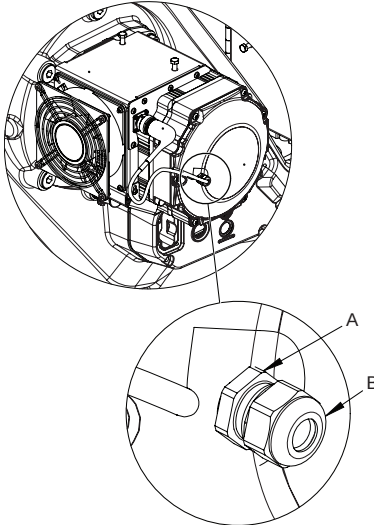
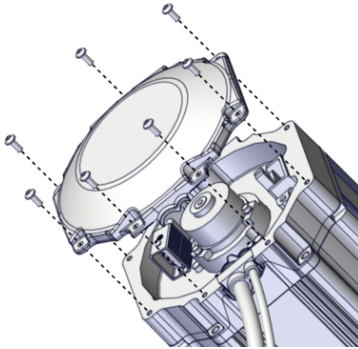
|   | Action                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Open the motor cover.<br>Replace it with a motor cover with threaded connection, if required. | Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)<br><br>xx2100000596   |
| 2 | Inspect the gasket.<br>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.                   | Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)<br><br>xx2100000600 |
| 3 | Run the fan cabling through the threaded connection in the cover and connect the connectors.  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.3.8 Installing the motor cooling fan (option 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1)

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Tighten the cable gland adapter ring with 4 Nm, then adjust the length of the fan cable to get a prudent fit and finally tighten the cable gland nut with 2 Nm.                              |  <p>xx2500001496</p> <p>A Adapter ring, tightening torque 4 Nm</p> <p>B Nut, tightening torque 2 Nm</p>                                                                                                       |
| 5 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 6 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws. Use locking liquid.                                                                                                                        | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12<br/>           Stainless steel A2-70<br/>           Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br/>           Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2100000596</p> |

#### Adjustments in RobotWare

|   | Action                                                        | Note                                         |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Modify the settings in RobotWare to include the cooling fans. | See the operating manual for the controller. |

## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.3.9 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

### 3.3.9 Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair

#### Safe handling

Use the following procedure after installation, maintenance, or repair, before initiating motion.



#### DANGER

Initiating motion without fulfilling the following aspects, may increase the risk for injury or cause damage to the robot.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove all tools and foreign objects from the robot and its working area.                                                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Verify that the robot is properly secured to its position by all screws, before it is powered up.                                                                                                              |
| 3 | Verify that any safety equipment installed to secure the position or restrict the robot motion during service activity is removed.                                                                             |
| 4 | Verify that the fixture and work piece are well secured, if applicable.                                                                                                                                        |
| 5 | Verify that all safety equipment is installed, as designed for the application.                                                                                                                                |
| 6 | Verify that no personnel are inside the safeguarded space.                                                                                                                                                     |
| 7 | If maintenance or repair has been done, verify the function of the part that was maintained.                                                                                                                   |
| 8 | Verify the application in the operating mode manual reduced speed.                                                                                                                                             |
| 9 | Clearly label the manipulator and its matching controller. Verify that the manipulator is properly connected to its controller, then perform a jog test to confirm it is the intended manipulator to be moved. |

#### Collision risks



#### CAUTION

When programming the movements of the robot, always identify potential collision risks before initiating motion.



#### CAUTION

Special care must be taken when restarting a robot that is stopped due to a collision. The robot might make a limited movement when restarted.

The revolution counters might need to be updated after a collision to ensure path accuracy.

## 3.4 Working range alterations

### 3.4.1 Adjusting the working range

#### Reasons for adjusting the manipulator working range

The working range of each manipulator axis is configured in the software. If there is a risk that the manipulator may collide with other objects at installation site, its working space should be limited. The manipulator must always be able to move freely within its entire working space.

OmniCore robots with RobotWare 7.19 or later can use safe supervision of the working range limitations instead of mechanical stops. This requires the option *SafeMove Standard+*. See [Safe supervision of working range limitations \(space limiting\) on page 97](#).



#### Note

If safe supervision is used, then use the robot stopping distance and time data to determine the requirements on restricted space. See the product specification for the manipulator.

#### Working range configurations

The parameter values for the axes working range can be altered within the allowed working range and according to available options for the robot, either to limit or to extend a default working range. Allowed working ranges and available options for each manipulator axis are specified in [Working range on page 52](#).

#### Mechanical stops on the manipulator

Mechanical stops are and can be installed on the manipulator as limiting devices to ensure that the manipulator axis does not exceed the working range values set in the software parameters.



#### Note

The mechanical stops are only installed as safety precaution to physically stop the robot from exceeding the working range set. A collision with a mechanical stop always requires actions for repair and troubleshooting.

| Axis   | Fixed mechanical stop <sup>i</sup> | Movable mechanical stop <sup>ii</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Axis 1 | yes                                | yes<br>The working range can be reduced by altering the parameter values. Installation of additional mechanical stops is recommended. See <a href="#">Installing movable mechanical stops on axis 1 (option 3323-1) on page 100</a> .<br>The working range can be extended (option 3324-1) by altering the parameter values and removing the movable mechanical stop pin. |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

---

#### 3.4.1 Adjusting the working range

*Continued*

| Axis   | Fixed mechanical stop <sup>i</sup> | Movable mechanical stop <sup>ii</sup> |
|--------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Axis 2 | yes                                | no                                    |
| Axis 3 | yes                                | no                                    |
| Axis 4 | no                                 | no                                    |
| Axis 5 | yes                                | no                                    |
| Axis 6 | no                                 | no                                    |

<sup>i</sup> Part of the casting or fixed on the casting and can not /should not be removed.

<sup>ii</sup> Can be installed in one or more than one position, to ensure a reduced working range, or be removed to allow extended working range.

### 3.4.2 Safe supervision of working range limitations (space limiting)

#### About safe supervision of working range limitations

OmniCore robots with RobotWare 7.19 or later can use safe supervision (space limiting) of the working range limitations instead of mechanical stops. This requires the option *SafeMove Standard+*. The safe supervision can be set on axes 1-3. For robots with either of the MultiMove or additional axis options, all axes can be supervised.

The supervision is configured in Visual SafeMove. More details about Visual SafeMove are available in *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.



#### Note

If the robot has SafeMove Premium, then there are more configuration possibilities for the safe ranges and the safe axis positions, see *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

#### Configure the safe axis range

With the option SafeMove Standard+, only one safe range can be configured.

With the option SafeMove Premium or SafeMove Collaborative, set up safe zones instead. See *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.



#### DANGER

When setting range limits, brake distances must be taken into consideration, so that the SafeMove functions are configured with enough margin. If an axis hits the range limit, the robot starts to brake and needs the brake distance to stop. This occurs outside the allowed range.

Note that if the robot starts accelerating strongly just before reaching a configured range limit, there will occur a speed overshoot before decelerating. This may result in a somewhat increased speed and extended braking distance compared to a smoother speed situation.

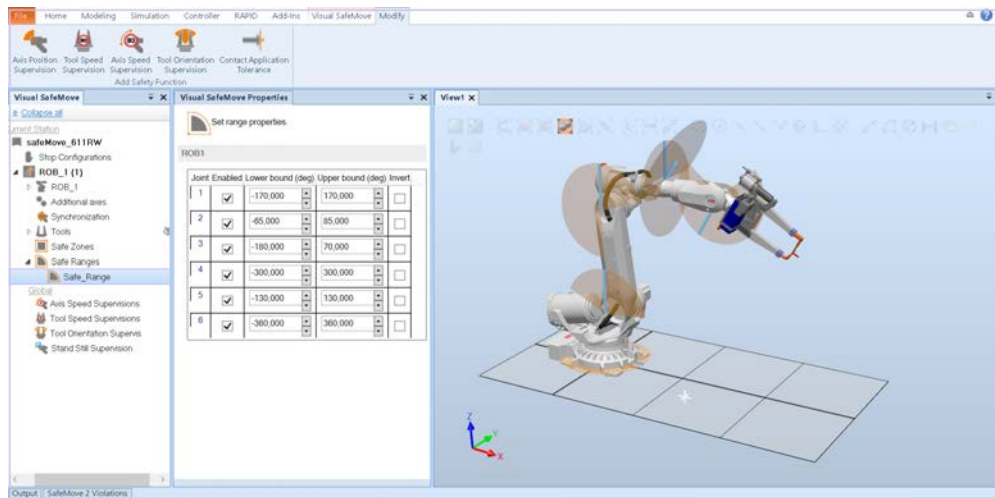
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                  | Note/illustration                                                      |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the Visual SafeMove ribbon, click on <b>Safe Range</b> .                                                                                             | A range of default size is shown for each axis in the graphics window. |
| 2 | Specify <b>Upper bound</b> and <b>Lower bound</b> for each axis.                                                                                        | Brake distances must be taken into consideration.                      |
| 3 | If an axis should be excluded from the safe range, clear the checkbox <b>Enabled</b> for that axis.                                                     |                                                                        |
| 4 | To supervise the inverted range for an axis (below <b>Lower bound</b> and above <b>Upper bound</b> ) select the checkbox <b>Inverted</b> for that axis. |                                                                        |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.4.2 Safe supervision of working range limitations (space limiting)

Continued



xx2000001835



#### Tip

To change the name of a range, right-click on the range in the **Visual SafeMove** browser, select **Rename** and type the desired name.

#### Configure the safe axis position

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note/illustration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>To configure the safe axis position, right-click the safe range and select <b>Axis Position Supervision</b>.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>If the robot has either of the MultiMove or additional axis options, then more configuration options are available.</p> |  Set safe axis range properties.<br><br>Activation<br>Permanently active<br><br>Function active status<br>No signal<br><br>Violation action<br>Stop category:<br>Category1Stop<br>Signal:<br>No signal |
| 2 | For SafeMove Standard+, the supervision function is permanently active.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3 | In the <b>Violation action</b> part, configure the stop category.<br>Select if violation of the function should stop the robot with stop category 0, stop category 1, or not stop the robot.                                                                                                                                                              | For SCARA robot axes without brakes, stop category 1 shall be used. <sup>i</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

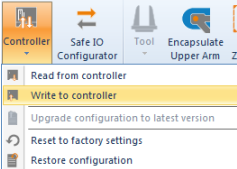
<sup>i</sup> See the product specification for the respective manipulator.

Continues on next page



#### Concluding procedure

The concluding procedure requires that the logged in user has the grant **Safety Services**.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note/illustration                                                                                                                         |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | In the <b>Visual SafeMove</b> ribbon, click on <b>Controller</b> and then select <b>Write to controller</b> .                                                                                                                               | <br>xx1500000801                                        |
| 2 | A report of the safety configuration is shown.<br>The report can be printed by clicking on <b>Print</b> (it is recommended to print the report since it should be used when validating the configuration).<br>Click OK to close the report. |                                                                                                                                           |
| 3 | Answer <b>Yes</b> when asked if you want to restart the controller.                                                                                                                                                                         | After the restart, the downloaded configuration is active. Before running in auto mode, the configuration should be validated and locked. |
| 4 | Deactivate any supervision functions that are signal activated.                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                           |
| 5 | Move the robot beyond the working range limit, for example with a move instruction.                                                                                                                                                         | The robot will stop when it reaches the limit.                                                                                            |
| 6 | Validate the checksum to verify that the right configuration is used.<br>Lock the configuration.                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                           |

3 Installation and commissioning

3.4.3 Installing movable mechanical stops on axis 1 (option 3323-1)

3.4.3 Installing movable mechanical stops on axis 1 (option 3323-1)

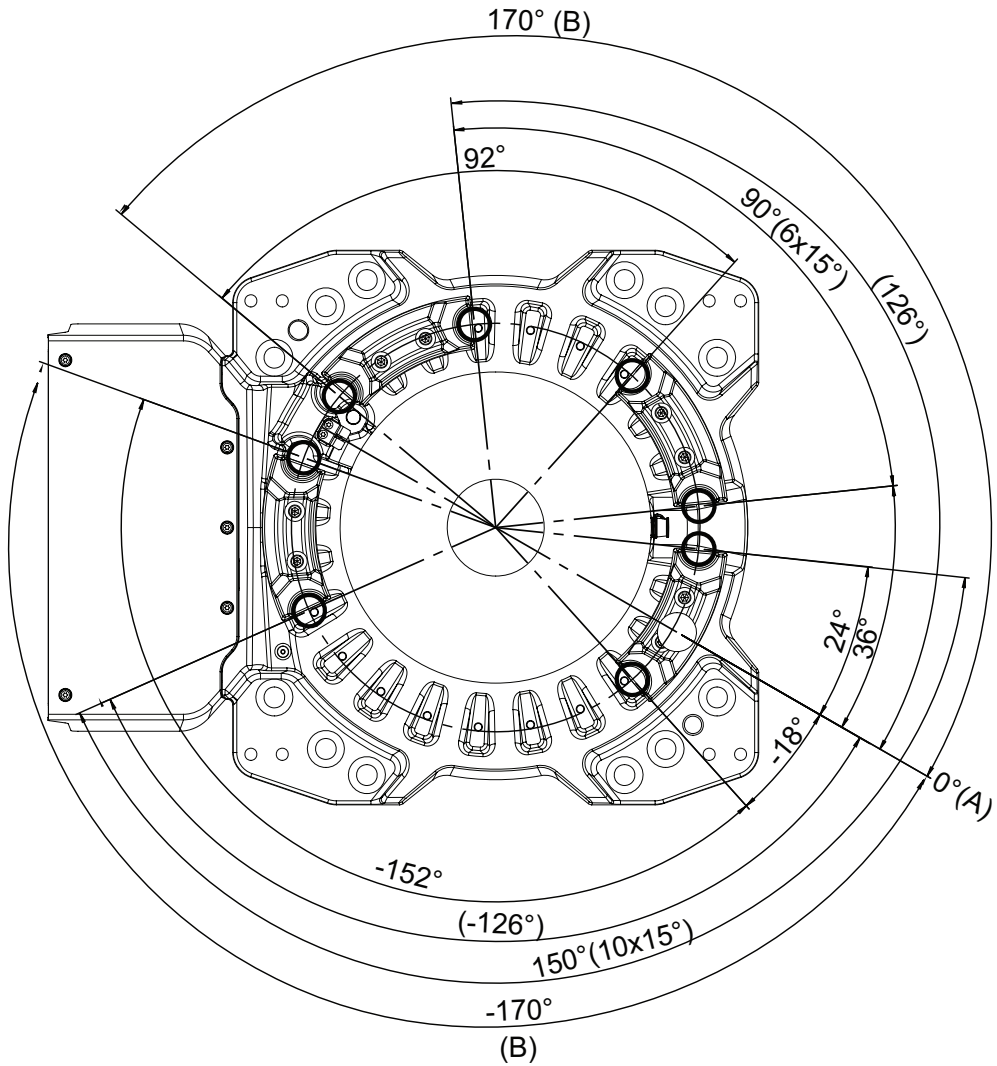
Reduction of the axis-1 working range

The working range of axis 1 is limited by system parameter configuration. To reduce the working range from default range, first adjust the parameter values and then install additional mechanical stops as a safety measure.

The movable mechanical stops reduce the working range according to the table.

| Graduation of limited working range | Reduction of working range                                                       |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 15°                                 | between +24° to +126° in one direction, and -18° to -126° in the other direction |

Illustration, reduced working range



xx2400001307

|   |                                            |
|---|--------------------------------------------|
| A | Axis 1 position                            |
| B | Standard working range without limitations |

Continues on next page

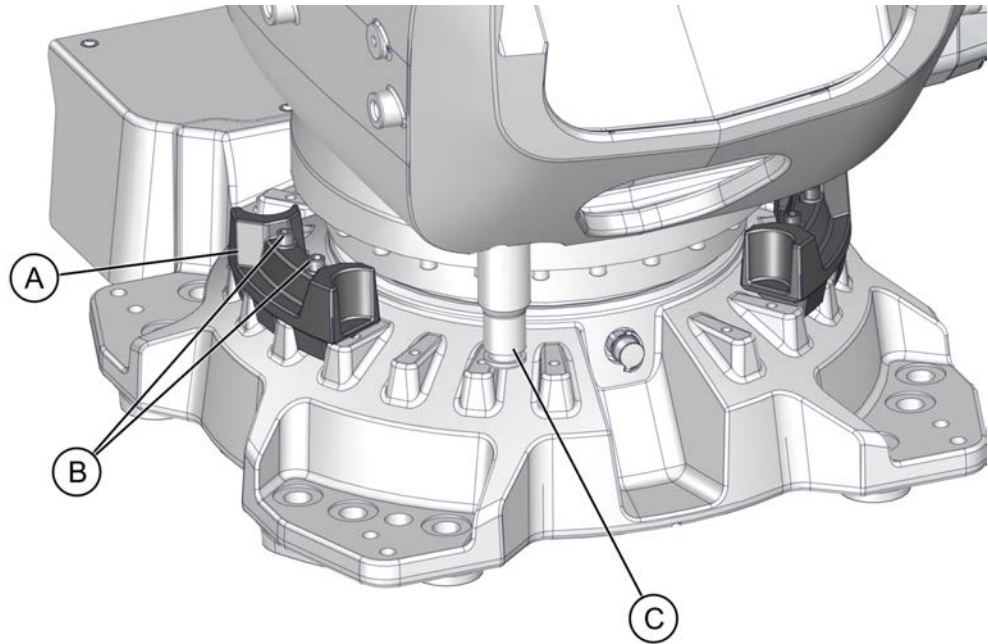


#### WARNING

If the mechanical stop pin is deformed after a hard collision, it must be replaced! Deformed movable stops and/or additional stops as well as deformed attachment screws must also be replaced after a hard collision.

#### Location of the mechanical stops

The mechanical stops are located as shown in the figure.



xx2400000996

|   |                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A | Attachment screws M12x70 quality 12.9 and washers DIN 125 (2 pcs per additional mechanical stop); Tightening torque 60 Nm |
| B | Movable mechanical stop                                                                                                   |
| C | Mechanical stop pin axis-1                                                                                                |

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robotics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part                          | Article number | Note                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| Movable mechanical stop set, axis 1 | 3HAC048533-003 | Screws and washers are enclosed |

*Continues on next page*

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.4.3 Installing movable mechanical stops on axis 1 (option 3323-1)

*Continued*

##### Required tools and equipment

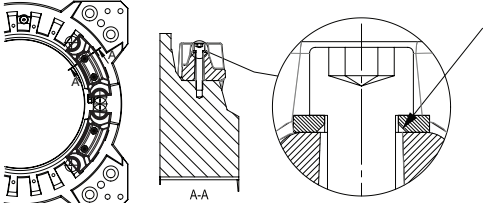
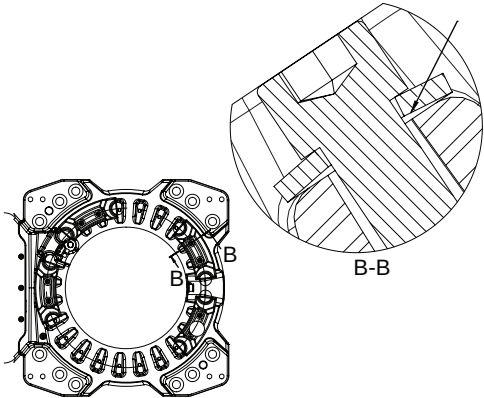
| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

##### Installing the movable mechanical stops

Use this procedure to fit the additional mechanical stops. An assembly drawing is also enclosed with the product.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                               |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                    |
| 2 | Use the additional mechanical stop as a template and drill fastening holes with dimension M12 at the base.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | See <a href="#">Location of the mechanical stops on page 101</a> . |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Fit the additional mechanical stops according to the figure <a href="#">Location of the mechanical stops on page 101</a>.</p> <p>Use the washers enclosed with the mechanical stop set.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p><b>Washer with chamfer:</b><br/>Install the washer with the chamfer turned downwards.</p>  <p>xx2100000974</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p><b>Spring washer:</b><br/>Install the spring washer with orientation as shown in figure.</p>  <p>xx2400001308</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 60 Nm.</p>                                                                                                                                                  |
| 4 | <p>Adjust the software working range limitations (system parameter configuration) to correspond to the mechanical limitations.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>The system parameters that must be changed (<i>Upper joint bound</i> and <i>Lower joint bound</i>) are described in <i>Technical reference manual - System parameters</i>.</p> |
| 5 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                   |

### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.4.4 Extended working range, axis 1 (option)

#### 3.4.4 Extended working range, axis 1 (option)

##### Overview

The working range of axis 1 can be extended on a floor-mounted robot, from the default range limited by mechanical stops. The working range can be extended to  $\pm 220^\circ$ .



##### CAUTION

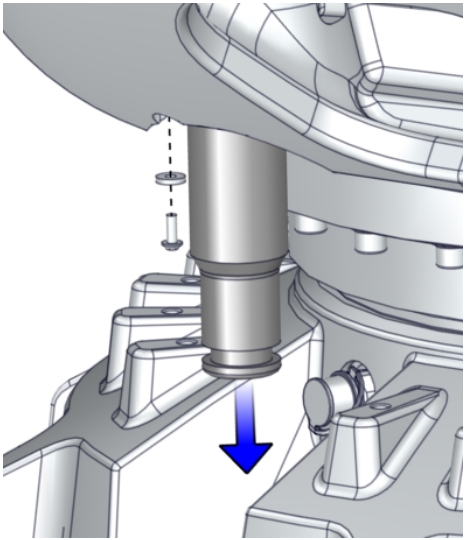
The option *Extended work range* enables an extension of the working range for axis 1, through a software configuration. With this option installed, the working range can exceed the range limited by the mechanical stop on axis 1. The working range shall be limited through the option SafeMove.

A risk analysis must be done to ensure that no risks remain when using option *Extended work range*, to limit the working range, and before removing the mechanical stops.

For information about the option SafeMove, see *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

If the mechanical stop is removed, then the manipulator should have a marking for this, for example, a label. If the robot is delivered with the option *Extended work range*, then such a label is included on delivery.

##### Extending the working range

|   | Action                                                                                         | Note/Illustration                                                                                    |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Configure the safety setup and verify it by test.                                              |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Hold the mechanical stop pin in a firm grip, and remove it by unscrewing the attachment screw. | <br>xx2300001711 |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note/Illustration                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | In RobotWare, redefine the working range limitations in the system parameters, topic <i>Motion</i> . The Arm parameters <i>Upper Joint Bound</i> and <i>Lower Joint Bound</i> can be changed to the values corresponding to the actual installation. | With the option <i>Extended working range</i> , the maximum value for the system parameters <i>Upper Joint Bound</i> and <i>Lower Joint Bound</i> is 3.84 respectively -3.84. The values are in radians, that is 3.84 radians = 220 degrees. |

#### Related information

The system parameters are described in detail in *Technical reference manual - System parameters*.

For more information about SafeMove, see *Application manual - Functional safety and SafeMove*.

See [References on page 10](#) for document numbers.

## 3 Installation and commissioning

### 3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

## 3.5 Electrical connections

### 3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

#### Introduction

Connect the robot and controller to each other after securing them to the foundation. The lists below specify which cables to use for each respective application.



#### DANGER

Turn off the main power before connecting any cables.



#### CAUTION

Verify that the serial number is according to the number(s) in the *Declaration of Incorporation* (DoI).

#### Main cable categories

The following table specifies cabling categories between the robot and the controller. Some of the cabling belong to optional applications.

| Cable category  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Robot cables    | Handles power supply to and control of the robot's motors as well as feedback from the serial measurement board. Specified in the table <a href="#">Robot cables on page 106</a> .                                                                                                                                   |
| Fan cables      | Handles supply to and feedback from any cooling fan on the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Customer cables | Handles communication with equipment fitted on the robot by the customer, low voltage signals and high voltage power supply + protective ground.<br>The customer cables also handle databus communication. See the product manual for the controller, see document number in <a href="#">References on page 10</a> . |

Protective conductor (PE) is included in the power cable, see circuit diagrams.

#### Robot cables

These cables are included in the standard delivery. They are completely pre-manufactured and ready to plug in.

| Cable sub-category   | Description                                                                            | Connection point, cabinet | Connection point, robot |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Robot cables, power  | Transfers drive power from the drive units in the control cabinet to the robot motors. | X1                        | R1.MP                   |
| Robot cable, signals | Transfers resolver data from and power supply to the serial measurement board.         | X2                        | R1.SMB                  |

*Continues on next page*



##### Robot cable, power

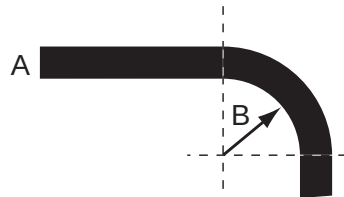
| Power cable length | Article number |
|--------------------|----------------|
| Power cable 7 m    | 3HAC026787-001 |
| Power cable 15 m   | 3HAC026787-002 |
| Power cable 22 m   | 3HAC026787-003 |
| Power cable 30 m   | 3HAC026787-004 |

##### Robot cable, signals

| Signal cable length          | Article number |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| Signal cable, shielded: 7 m  | 3HAC2493-1     |
| Signal cable, shielded: 15 m | 3HAC2530-1     |
| Signal cable, shielded: 22 m | 3HAC2540-1     |
| Signal cable, shielded: 30 m | 3HAC2566-1     |

##### Bending radius for static floor cables

The minimum bending radius is 10 times the cable diameter for static floor cables.



xx1600002016

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| A | Diameter     |
| B | Diameter x10 |

*Continues on next page*

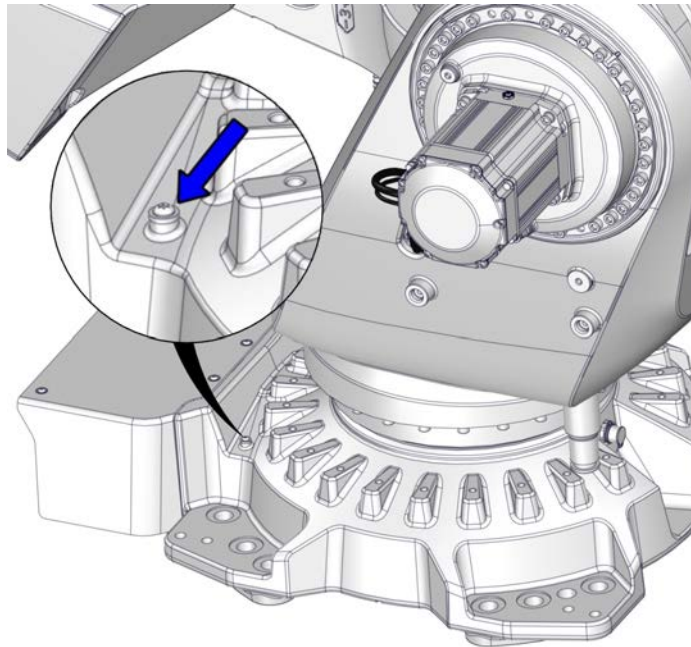
### 3 Installation and commissioning

#### 3.5.1 Robot cabling and connection points

*Continued*

##### Grounding and bonding point on manipulator

There is a grounding/bonding point on the manipulator base. The grounding/bonding point is used for potential equalizing between control cabinet, manipulator and any peripheral devices.



xx2300001763

##### Customer cables - CP/CS cable

| CP/CS cable length  | Article number |
|---------------------|----------------|
| Harness CP/CS: 7 m  | 3HAC022957-001 |
| Harness CP/CS: 15 m | 3HAC022957-002 |
| Harness CP/CS: 22 m | 3HAC022957-003 |
| Harness CP/CS: 30 m | 3HAC022957-004 |

##### Customer cables - Ethernet floor cable

| Ethernet floor cable length | Article number |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| Ethernet cable: 7 m         | 3HAC079476-001 |
| Ethernet cable: 15 m        | 3HAC079476-002 |
| Ethernet cable: 30 m        | 3HAC079476-004 |

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.1 Introduction

---

**Structure of this chapter**

This chapter describes all the maintenance activities recommended for the IRB 7720.

It is based on the maintenance schedule found at the beginning of the chapter. The schedule contains information about required maintenance activities including intervals, and refers to procedures for the activities.

Each procedure contains all the information required to perform the activity, including required tools and materials.

The procedures are gathered in different sections and divided according to the maintenance activity.

---

**Safety information**

Observe all safety information before conducting any maintenance work.

There are general safety aspects that must be read through, as well as more specific safety information that describes the danger and safety risks when performing the procedures. Read the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before performing any maintenance work.

The maintenance must be done by qualified personnel in accordance with the safety requirements set forth in the applicable national and regional standards and regulations.

## 4 Maintenance

---

### 4.2.1 Specification of maintenance intervals

## 4.2 Maintenance schedule and expected component life

### 4.2.1 Specification of maintenance intervals

---

#### Introduction

The intervals are specified in different ways depending on the type of maintenance activity to be carried out and the working conditions of the IRB 7720:

- Calendar time: specified in months regardless of whether the system is running or not.
- Operating time: specified in operating hours. More frequent running means more frequent maintenance activities.

Robots with the functionality *Service Information System* activated can show active counters in the device browser in RobotStudio, or on the FlexPendant.

## 4.2.2 Maintenance schedule

### Scheduled and non-predictable maintenance

The robot must be maintained regularly to ensure proper function. The maintenance activities and intervals are specified in the table below.

Non-predictable situations also give rise to inspections of the robot. Any damage must be attended to immediately.

### Life of each component

The inspection intervals *do not* specify the life of each component. Values for these are specified in the section [Expected lifetime on page 113](#)

### Maintenance schedule

| Maintenance activities                | Regularly | After first 150 hours | Every 12 months | Every 36 months | Every 12,000 hours <sup>i</sup> | Every 20,000 hours <sup>i</sup> | Reference                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cleaning the seals                    |           | x                     |                 |                 |                                 |                                 | Minor seepage of grease from the seals can occur, especially during the first running hours. Wipe down affected areas with a dry cloth.                                          |
| Cleaning the robot                    | x         |                       |                 |                 |                                 |                                 | <a href="#">Cleaning the IRB 7720 on page 196</a>                                                                                                                                |
| Inspecting the balancing device       |           |                       | x               |                 |                                 |                                 | <a href="#">Inspecting the balancing device on page 116</a>                                                                                                                      |
| Inspecting the dampers                |           |                       | x               |                 |                                 |                                 | <a href="#">Inspecting the dampers on page 125</a>                                                                                                                               |
| Inspecting the information labels     |           |                       | x               |                 |                                 |                                 | <a href="#">Inspecting the information labels on page 127</a>                                                                                                                    |
| Inspecting the mechanical stop        |           |                       | x               |                 |                                 |                                 | <a href="#">Inspecting the axis-1 mechanical stop on page 130</a>                                                                                                                |
| Inspecting the motor seal             |           |                       | x               |                 |                                 |                                 | <a href="#">Inspecting the motor seal on page 114</a>                                                                                                                            |
| Inspecting the oil level in gearboxes |           |                       |                 |                 |                                 |                                 | Inspect the oil level in the actual gearbox if there is a suspected leakage, after an oil change or a maintenance or repair activity where draining and filling oil is required. |
| Inspecting the robot harness          |           |                       | x <sup>ii</sup> |                 |                                 |                                 | <a href="#">Inspecting the cable harness on page 122</a>                                                                                                                         |
| Changing the oil in axis-1 gearbox    |           |                       |                 |                 |                                 | x                               | <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-1 gearbox on page 155</a>                                                                                                                   |

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.2.2 Maintenance schedule

Continued

| Maintenance activities                                   | Regularly | After first 150 hours | Every 12 months | Every 36 months  | Every 12,000 hours <sup>i</sup> | Every 20,000 hours <sup>i</sup> | Reference                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox                       |           |                       |                 |                  |                                 | x                               | <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox on page 160</a>                                       |
| Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox                       |           |                       |                 |                  |                                 | x                               | <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox on page 165</a>                                       |
| Changing the oil in axis-4 primary gearbox               |           |                       |                 |                  |                                 | x                               | <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-4 primary gear on page 170</a>                                  |
| Changing the oil in axis-4 secondary gearbox             |           |                       |                 |                  |                                 | x                               | <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-4 gearbox on page 174</a>                                       |
| Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox                       |           |                       |                 |                  |                                 | x                               | <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox on page 179</a>                                       |
| Changing the oil in axis-6 gearbox                       |           |                       |                 |                  |                                 | x                               | <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-6 gearbox on page 184</a>                                       |
| Replacing the SMB battery pack                           |           |                       |                 | x <sup>iii</sup> |                                 |                                 | <a href="#">Replacing the SMB battery on page 189</a>                                                |
| Lubricating the balancing device bearings and piston rod |           |                       |                 |                  | x <sup>iv</sup>                 |                                 | <a href="#">Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod on page 192</a> |

<sup>i</sup> Operating hours counted by the DTC = Duty Time Counter

<sup>ii</sup> Replace when damage or cracks is detected or life limit is approaching that specified in section [Expected lifetime on page 113](#).

<sup>iii</sup> The battery is to be replaced at given maintenance interval or at battery low alert.

<sup>iv</sup> Always lubricate the bearings after refitting the balancing device.

### 4.2.3 Expected lifetime

#### Expected life depends on usage

The expected life of the robot or its components can vary greatly depending on how hard it is run. See section *Maximizing robot lifetime* in *Product specification - IRB 7720*.

#### Expected component lifetime

The following table contains references to normal and extreme usage. See the definitions for [Normal usage on page 113](#) and [Extreme usage on page 113](#).

| Component                                   | Expected life              | Note                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cable harness, normal usage <sup>i</sup>    | 40,000 hours <sup>ii</sup> | Not including DressPack or optional upper arm harnesses.                               |
| Cable harness, extreme usage <sup>iii</sup> | 20,000 hours <sup>ii</sup> | Not including DressPack or optional upper arm harnesses.                               |
| Gearboxes                                   | 40,000 hours               | The SIS system is described in <i>Operating manual - Integrator's guide OmniCore</i> . |
| Balancing device                            | 40,000 hours <sup>iv</sup> |                                                                                        |

<sup>i</sup> Examples of "normal usage" in regard to movement: most material handling applications.

<sup>ii</sup> Severe chemical or thermal environments, or similar environments, can result in shortened life expectancy.

<sup>iii</sup> Examples of "extreme usage" in regard to movement: press tending, very severe palletizing applications, major use of axis 1 movement.

<sup>iv</sup> The given life for the balancing device is based on a test cycle of 4,000,000 cycles that starts from the initial position and goes to maximum extension, and back. Deviations from this cycle will result in differences in expected life!



#### Note

Severe chemical or thermal environments, or similar environments, can result in shortened expectancy of lifetime for cables.

#### Normal usage

Examples of "normal usage" in regard to movement: most material handling applications.

#### Extreme usage

Examples of "extreme usage" in regard to movement: press tending, very severe palletizing applications, major use of axis 1-2 movement.

## 4 Maintenance

---

### 4.3.1 Inspecting the motor seal

## 4.3 Inspection activities

### 4.3.1 Inspecting the motor seal

---

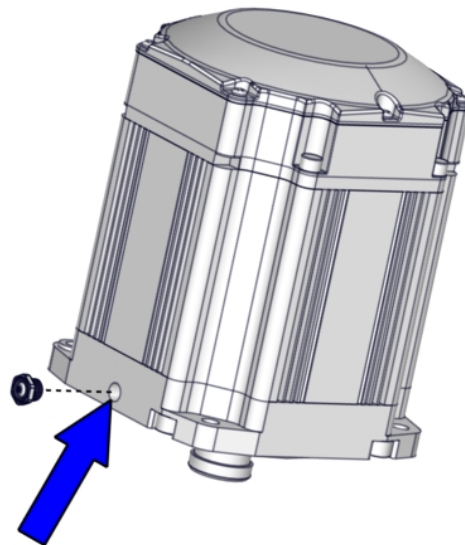
#### Purpose of evacuation holes

The motors include evacuation on the motor flange to indicate failure of primary sealing between the gearbox and the motor.

---

#### Location of evacuation hole on motor

The evacuation hole is located on each motor flange. The figure shows axis-1 motor as an example.



xx2300001602

#### Plug in the evacuation hole

New motors have a transparent plug/sight glass installed in the evacuation hole. Remove the plug or drill a drainage hole with diameter 3 mm, if an open evacuation hole is required instead.

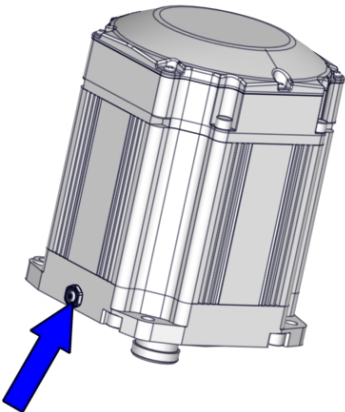


xx2200002188

*Continues on next page*



## Inspecting the evacuation hole

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the robot working area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 3 | Do a leakage check of the sight glass/evacuation hole of each motor.<br>If any oil is available on the sight glass or if any oil has been spilled out from the evacuation hole, replacement of the motor is recommended.<br> <b>Note</b><br>If oil is present in the evacuation it is an indication that the primary seal of the motor is leaking. A secondary seal after the evacuation is keeping the oil out from the motor, but it is still recommended to replace the motor at a suitable timing if oil is present in the evacuation. | <br>xx2300001603<br>Replacing of motors is described in the repair chapter <a href="#">Motors on page 424</a> . |

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.2 Inspecting the balancing device

### 4.3.2 Inspecting the balancing device

#### General

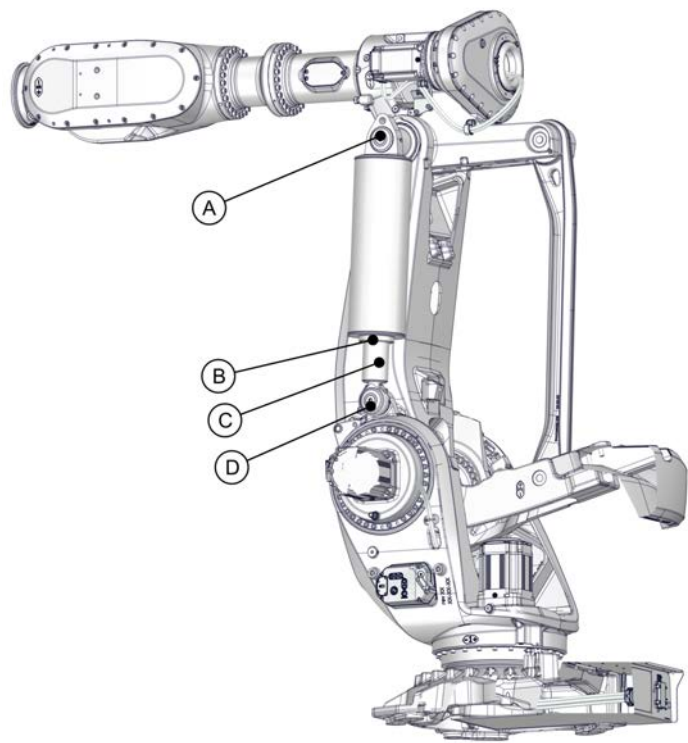
Several points are to be checked on the balancing device during the inspection. This section describes how to perform the inspection regarding:

- dissonance
- damage
- leakage
- guide ring wear / piston rod lubrication / clearance.

#### Inspection points, balancing device

The balancing device is located as shown in the figure.

The figure shows the inspection points, further described in the instructions.



xx2300001638

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| A | Upper ear  |
| B | Guide ring |
| C | Piston rod |
| D | Lower ear  |

#### Required tools

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

*Continues on next page*

## Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part                       | Article number | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Maintenance set, upper link ear | 3HAC091950-001 | The maintenance kit contains: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• End cover</li> <li>• O-ring</li> <li>• Nut</li> <li>• Radial sealing with dust lip</li> <li>• Spherical roller bearing</li> <li>• Support ring</li> </ul>                                                          |
| Maintenance set, lower link ear | 3HAC091953-001 | The maintenance kit contains: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• End cover</li> <li>• O-ring</li> <li>• Spacer ring</li> <li>• Radial sealing with dust lip</li> <li>• Spherical roller bearing</li> <li>• Support ring</li> <li>• Washer</li> <li>• Torx pan head screw</li> </ul> |

## Check for dissonance

The check points are shown in the figure [Inspection points, balancing device on page 116](#).

|   | Check points                                                                                                                               | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check for dissonance from the upper and lower bearing.                                                                                     | If dissonance is detected, perform maintenance according to maintenance kits and instructions in section <a href="#">Replacing the balancing device bearings on page 248</a> .                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 | Check for dissonance from the balancing device (a tapping sound, caused by the springs inside the cylinder).                               | If dissonance is detected, replace the balancing device or consult ABB Service.<br>How to replace the device is detailed in section <a href="#">Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings on page 241</a> . This section also specifies the spare part number.                                               |
| 3 | Check for dissonance from the piston rod (squeaking may indicate worn plain bearings, internal contamination or insufficient lubrication). | If dissonance is detected, wipe clean the piston rod.<br>If dissonance continues after the piston rod is cleaned, perform maintenance according to given instructions in the maintenance set and instructions in section <a href="#">Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod on page 192</a> . |

## Check for damage

Check for damage, such as scratches, general wear, uneven surfaces or incorrect positions.

The check points are shown in the figure [Inspection points, balancing device on page 116](#).

|   | Check points                                                    | Action                                                                                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check for damage on the part of the piston rod that is visible. | If damage is detected, perform maintenance according to given instructions in Maintenance kit, complete. |

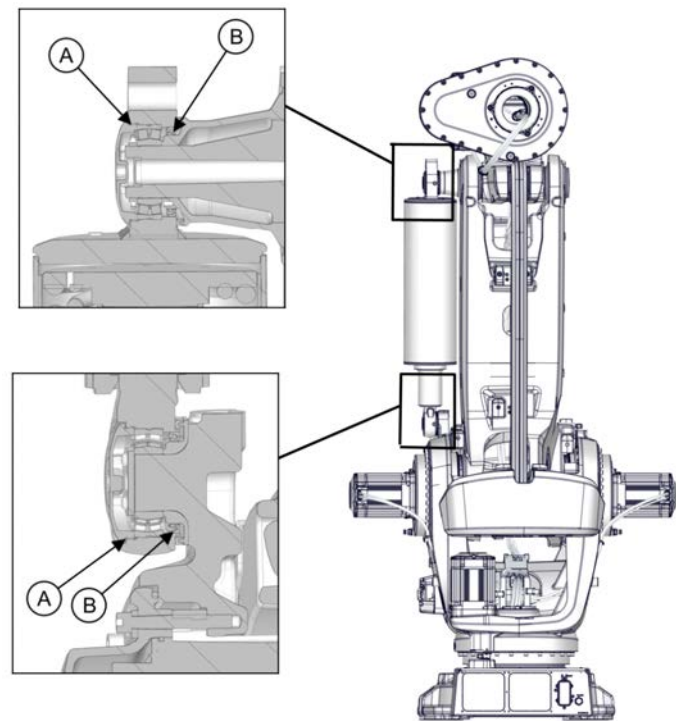
Continues on next page

4 Maintenance

4.3.2 Inspecting the balancing device  
Continued

Check for leakage

Leaks at o-rings and radial sealings pointed out in the figure are not acceptable and must be attended to immediately to avoid damage to the bearing.

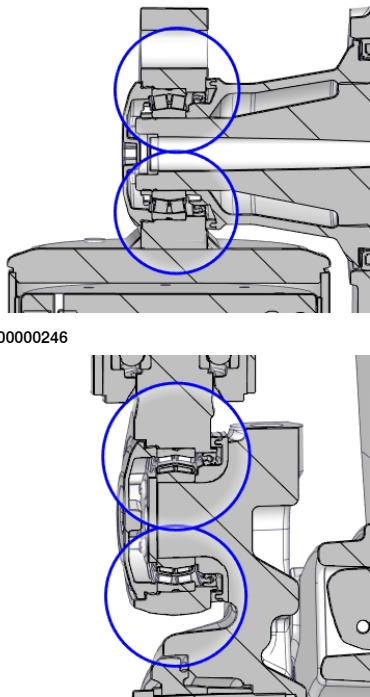


xx2300001637

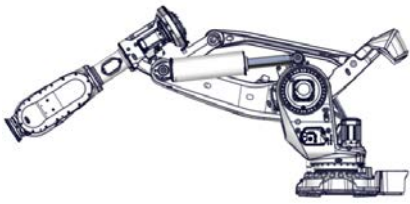
|   |                              |  |
|---|------------------------------|--|
| A | O-ring                       |  |
| B | Radial sealing with dust lip |  |

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Clean the area at the upper and lower ear from contamination.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
| 2 | Run the robot for some minutes, in order to move the balancing device piston.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
| 3 | <div> <b>DANGER</b><br/>Turn off all:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</div> |      |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Check the area around the o-ring and radial sealings at the ear, for leakage. |  <p>xx2400000246</p> <p>xx2400000247</p>                                                                                                                                      |
| 5 | Replace o-ring and radial sealings if leaks are detected.                     | <p>Maintenance set, lower link ear /<br/>Maintenance set, upper link ear:<br/>3HAC091953-001 / 3HAC091950-001</p> <p>Replacement of the complete bearing<br/>is described in section <a href="#">Replacing the<br/>balancing device bearings on page 248</a>.</p> |

## Check for guide ring wear / piston rod lubrication / clearance

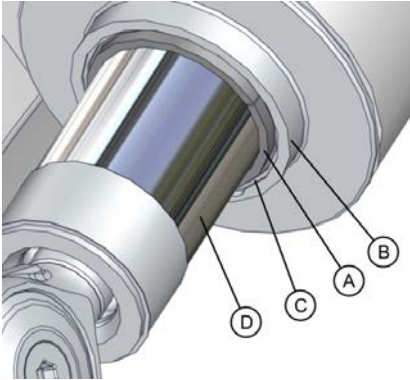
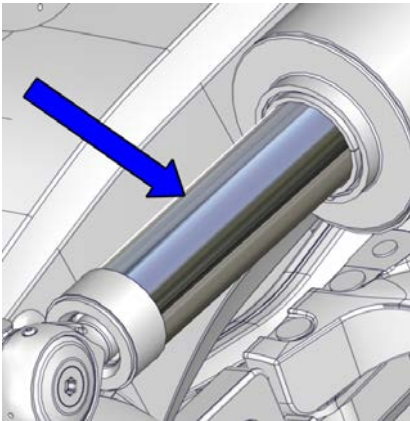
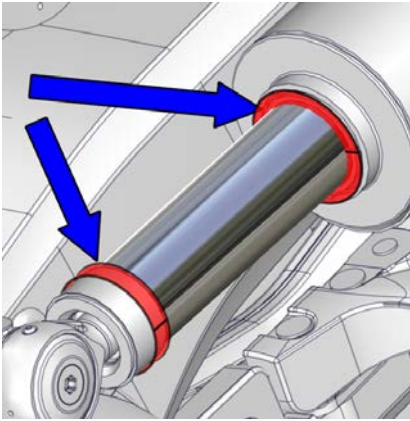
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Position axis 2 so that the balancing device is horizontal and the piston rod is extended to the greatest extent possible.                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2400001562</p> |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                           |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.2 Inspecting the balancing device

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Check the guide ring for wear.<br/>Replace if necessary.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>If there is risk of metallic contact between the piston rod and end cover, the guide ring must be replaced.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>See <a href="#">Replacing the balancing device guide ring on page 261</a>.</p>  <p>xx2400001563</p> <p>A Guide ring<br/>B End cover<br/>C Circlip<br/>D Piston rod</p> |
| 4 | <p>Inspect the piston rod and verify it is properly lubricated with a thin layer of grease across the entire unpainted surface. Lubricate piston rod if necessary.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Too little grease may result in premature wear of the guide ring. Too much grease may result in an undesirable appearance or a risk of contaminating the surrounding environment.</p> | <p>See <a href="#">Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod on page 192</a>.</p>  <p>xx2400001564</p>                                   |
| 5 | <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Seepage of grease from the balancing device seals can occur, especially during the first running hours. Inspect the indicated areas for excess grease. Wipe away affected areas with a dry cloth.</p>                                                                                                                                                        |  <p>xx2400000245</p>                                                                                                                                                    |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                             | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 6 | Keep the areas around the balancing device clean and free from objects that could prevent the balancing device from moving freely. |      |

## 4 Maintenance

---

### 4.3.3 Inspecting the cable harness

### 4.3.3 Inspecting the cable harness

---

#### Location of cable harness

The cable harness is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001882

---

#### Required tools

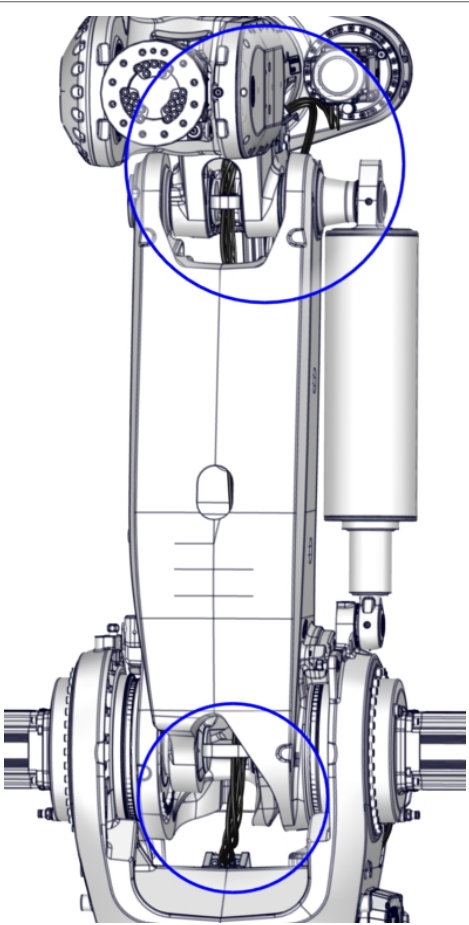
Visual inspection, no tools are needed.

*Continues on next page*



## Inspecting the cable harness

Use this procedure to inspect cable harness of axes 1-6.

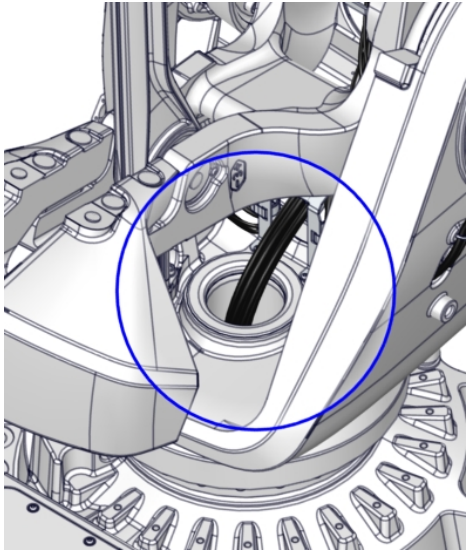
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p> |                                                                                                         |
| 2 | <p>Make an overall inspection of the cable harness in order to detect wear and damage.</p> <p>Pay special attention to the areas of axis-2 and axis-3 movement, shown in the figure. Make sure the cabling is not damaged between the cable brackets in these areas.</p>                                                               |  <p>xx2400000137</p> |
| 3 | <p>Check that all visible cable brackets, velcro straps and attachments are properly secured, by following the cable harness from the base to the wrist.</p>                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                         |
| 4 | <p>Check the motor cables visually for any damage.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                         |
| 5 | <p>Check the connectors and cables at the base visually for any damage.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                         |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.3 Inspecting the cable harness

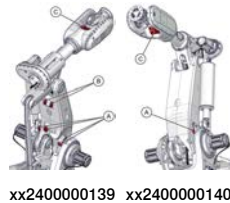
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                   |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Check the cabling going through the protection tube, to detect possible cable chafing, by using your hands inside the tube to feel the cables. Ensure that the cables are undamaged.</p> <p>Remove any objects that may cause possible cable chafing.</p> <p>Replace damaged cabling, if any.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Sharp debris might occur. Always wear protective gloves.</p> |  <p>xx2400000138</p> |
| 7 | <p>Replace the cable harness if wear, cracks or damage is detected.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>See <a href="#">Removing the cable harness on page 359</a>.</p>                                     |

### 4.3.4 Inspecting the dampers

#### Location of the dampers

The figure below shows the location of all the dampers to be inspected.



|   |                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------|
| A | Damper: 3HAC12991-1                             |
| B | Damper: 3HAC022338-001                          |
| C | Damper / mechanical stop axis 5: 3HAC085025-001 |

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part | Article number                                          | Note |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Damper     | See <a href="#">Location of the dampers on page 125</a> |      |

#### Required equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

#### Inspecting, dampers

The procedure below details how to inspect the dampers.



#### Note

A damaged damper must be replaced.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.4 Inspecting the dampers

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Check all dampers for damage, cracks or existing impressions larger than 1 mm.                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 3 | Check attachment screws for deformation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 4 | If any damage is detected, the damper must be replaced with a new one.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Attachment screws:<br>Axis 2 and axis 3: M6x60 8.8-A2F (9ADA624-65 )<br>Lower arm: M6x20 A4-80 (9ADA620-57 )<br>Wrist: M6x16 A4-80 (9ADA620-56 )<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243). |
| 5 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

### 4.3.5 Inspecting the information labels

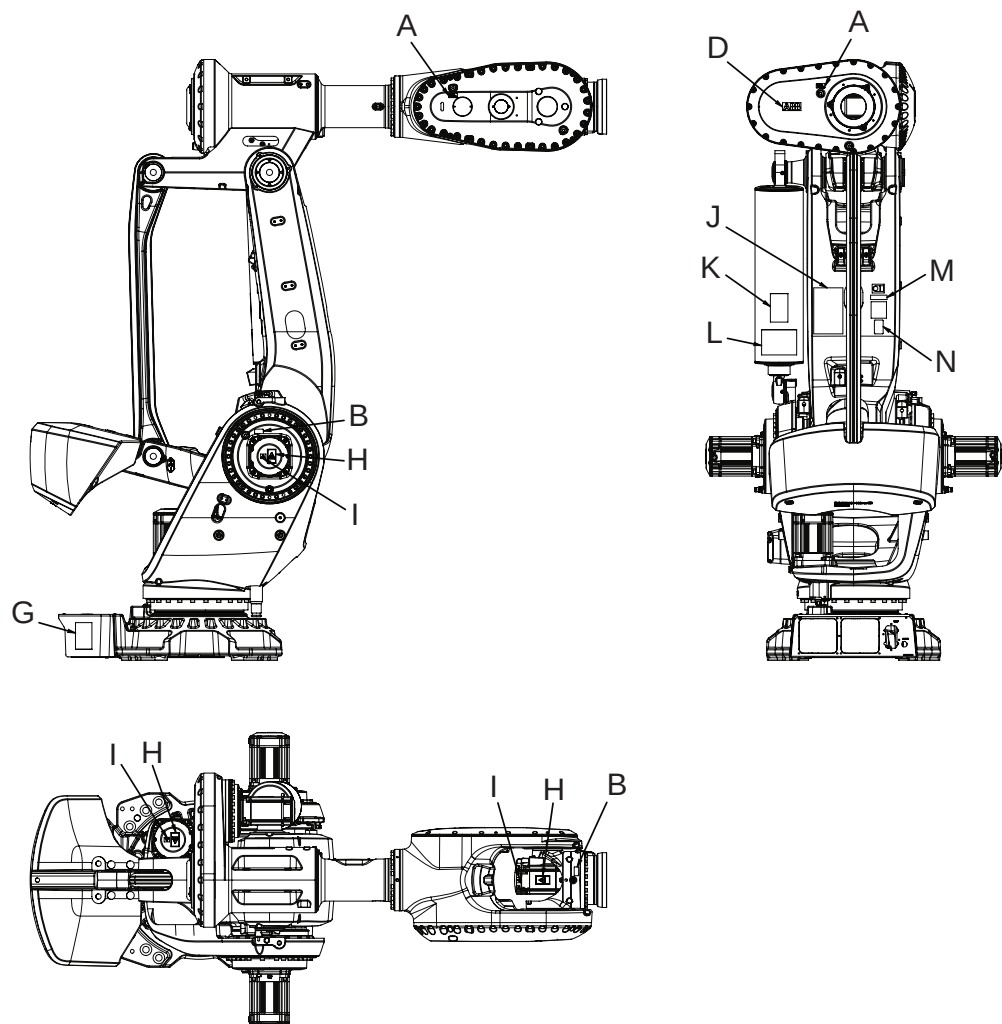
#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

The figures show the location of the information labels to be inspected. The symbols are described in section [Safety symbols on manipulator labels on page 19](#).



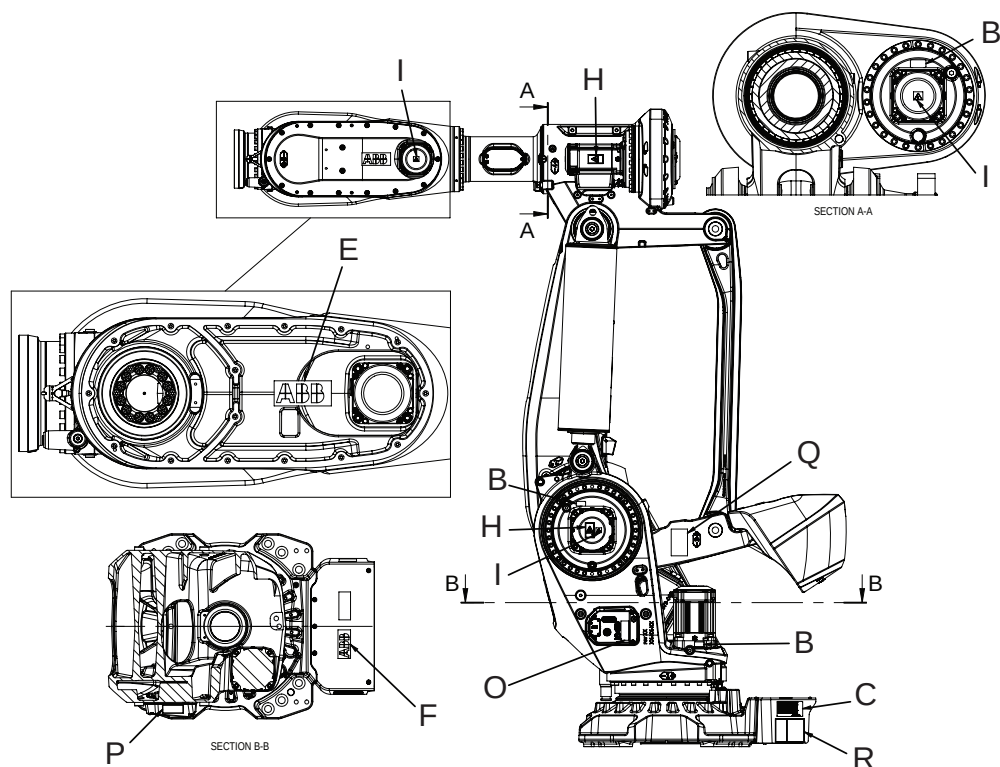
xx2400000261

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.5 Inspecting the information labels

*Continued*



xx2400000262

|   | Spare part number           | Description                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| A | 3HAC021485-001              | Lubrication label<br>Mobilgear 600 XP 320                   |
| B | 3HAC032726-001              | Lubrication label<br>Kyodo Yushi TMO 150                    |
| C | 3HAC094708-001              | Lubrication label                                           |
| D | 3HAC0453-4 / 3HAC17765-1    | ABB logotype label                                          |
| E | 3HAC0453-1 / 3HAC5089-1     | ABB logotype label                                          |
| F | 3HAC0453-5 / 3HAC077301-002 | ABB logotype label                                          |
| G | 3HAC9191-1                  | Warning label<br>Tipping robot                              |
| H | 29454489-16                 | Warning label<br>Hot surface                                |
| I | 3HAC1589-1                  | Warning label<br>Electrical (flash)                         |
| J | 3HAC086908-001              | Instruction label<br>Lifting of robot                       |
| K | 3HAC065665-001 (3HAC3981-1) | Warning label<br>Stored energy                              |
| L | 3HAC4591-1                  | Instruction label<br>Before disassembly, see product manual |
| M | 3HAC14257-1                 | ABB information sign                                        |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Spare part number | Description                                                    |
|---|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| N | 3HAC13488-1       | Calibration label                                              |
| O | 3HAC076755-001    | Instruction label<br>Brake release                             |
| P | 3HAC076756-001    | Warning label / Instruction label<br>Moving robot / MOTORS OFF |
| Q | 3HAC4517-1        | Warning label<br>Crush                                         |
| R | 3HAC021761-001    | Warning label<br>Extended working range                        |

#### Required tools and equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

#### Inspecting, labels

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                            |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                                 |
| 2 | Inspect the labels, located as shown in the figures.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                 |
| 3 | Replace any missing or damaged labels.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Article numbers for the labels and plate set is specified in <a href="#">Required spare parts on page 127</a> . |

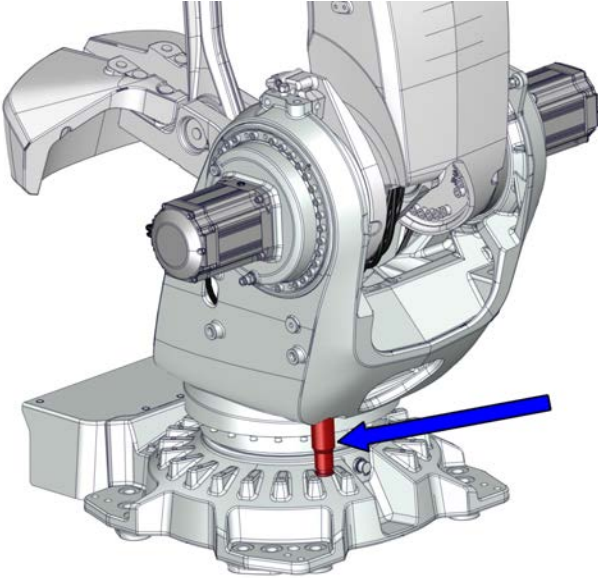
4 Maintenance

4.3.6 Inspecting the axis-1 mechanical stop

4.3.6 Inspecting the axis-1 mechanical stop

Location of mechanical stop pin

The mechanical stop is located as shown in the figure.



xx2400000141

Required equipment

Visual inspection, no tools are required.

Inspecting the mechanical stop pin

Use this procedure to inspect the axis-1 mechanical stop pin.

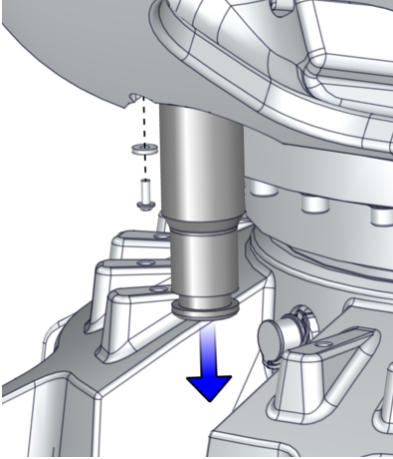
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | <div> <b>DANGER</b></div> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p> |                                     |
| 2 | <p>Inspect the axis-1 mechanical stop pin.<br/>If the mechanical stop pin is bent or damaged, it must be replaced.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The expected life of gearboxes can be reduced after collision with the mechanical stop.</p>        | Mechanical stop pin: 3HAC084500-001 |

Continues on next page



### 4.3.6 Inspecting the axis-1 mechanical stop

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Check that the mechanical stop pin attachment screw is tightened correctly.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Do not overtighten the attachment screw, use specified tightening torque.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm<br/>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p>  <p>xx2300001711</p> |
| 4 | <p>Make sure the mechanical stop pin can move in both directions.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

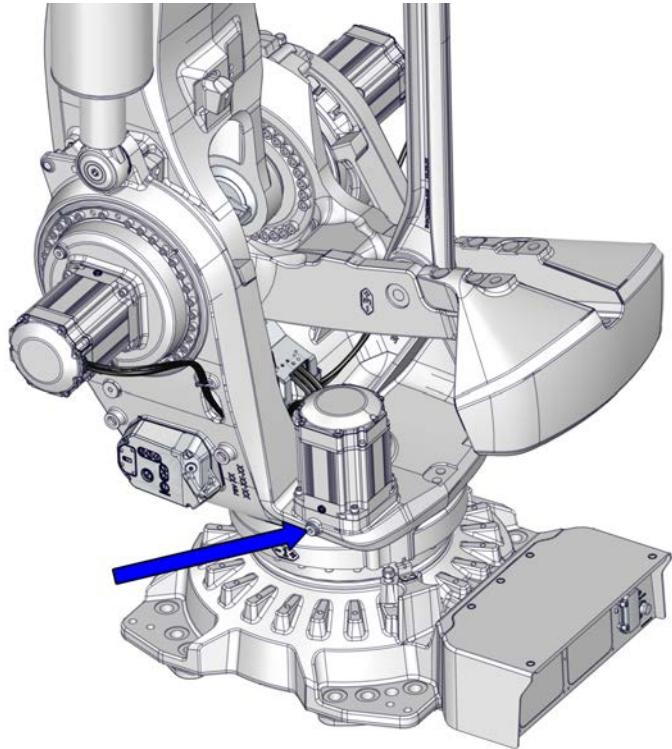
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.7 Inspecting the oil level in axis-1 gearbox

### 4.3.7 Inspecting the oil level in axis-1 gearbox

#### Location of the oil plug

The oil plug for inspection is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001672

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

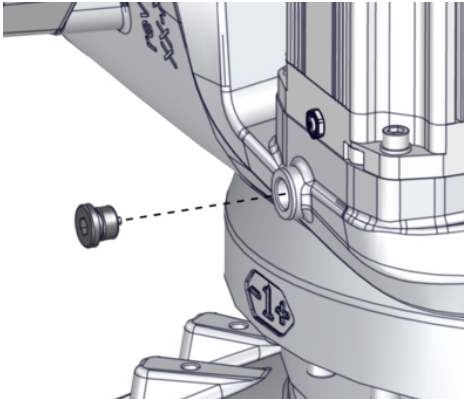
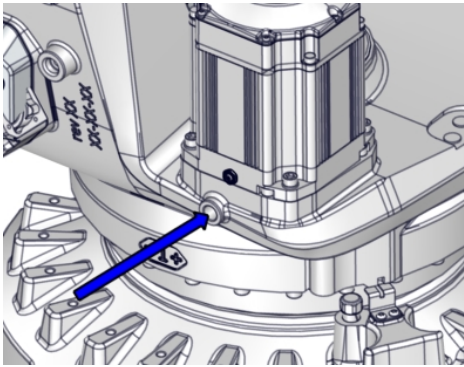
#### Required documents

| Document name                                         | Document number |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |

*Continues on next page*

**Floor-mounted robot: Inspecting the oil level in axis-1 gearbox**

Use this procedure to inspect the oil level in the gearbox, when the robot is floor-standing.

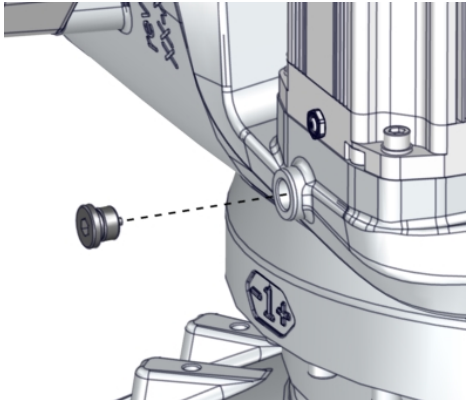
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                          |                                                                                                      |
| 3 | Make sure that the oil temperature is $+25^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                      |
| 4 | Open the oil plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <br>xx2300001686 |
| 5 | Check the oil level.<br>Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below the oil plug hole.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <br>xx2300001687 |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.7 Inspecting the oil level in axis-1 gearbox

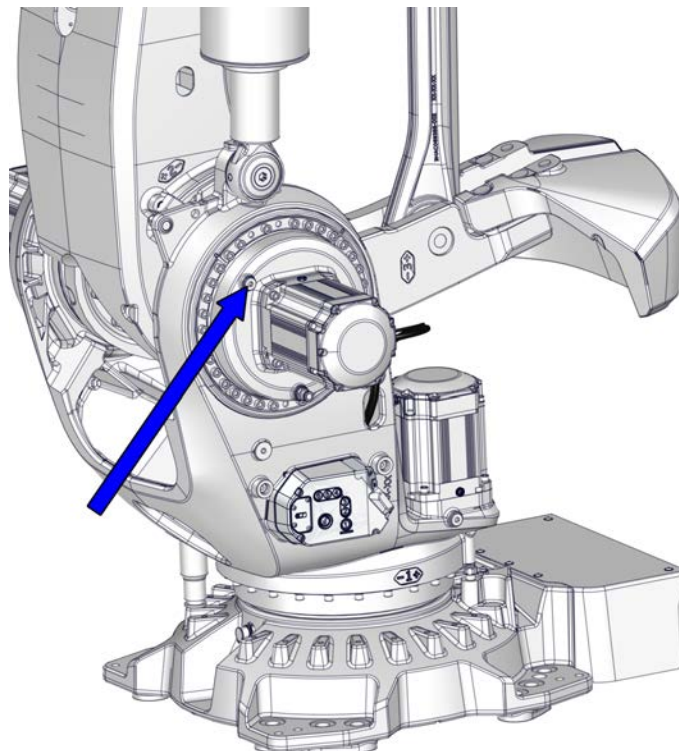
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Add or drain oil, if required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .<br>Further information about how to drain or fill with oil is found in section <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-1 gearbox on page 155</a> . |
| 7 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001686                                                                                          |
| 8 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

### 4.3.8 Inspecting the oil level in axis-2 gearbox

#### Location of the oil plug

The oil plug for inspection is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001674

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

#### Required documents

| Document name                                         | Document number |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |

*Continues on next page*

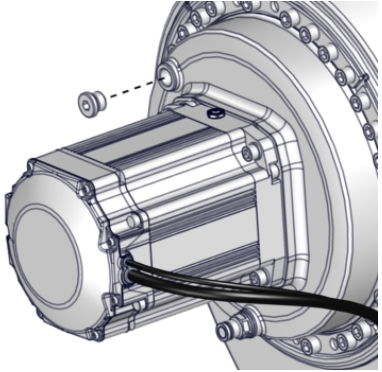
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.8 Inspecting the oil level in axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Inspecting the oil level in axis-2 gearbox

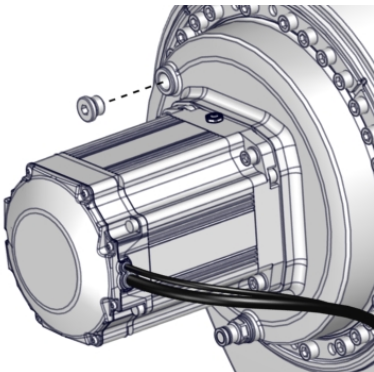
Use this procedure to inspect the oil level in the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 3 | Make sure that the oil temperature is $+25^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | Open the oil plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <br><br>xx2300001688                                                                                                                                                       |
| 5 | Check the oil level.<br>Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 6 | Add or drain oil, if required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .<br><br>Further information about how to drain or fill with oil is found in section <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox on page 160</a> . |

*Continues on next page*

## 4.3.8 Inspecting the oil level in axis-2 gearbox

Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001688 |
| 8 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                    |

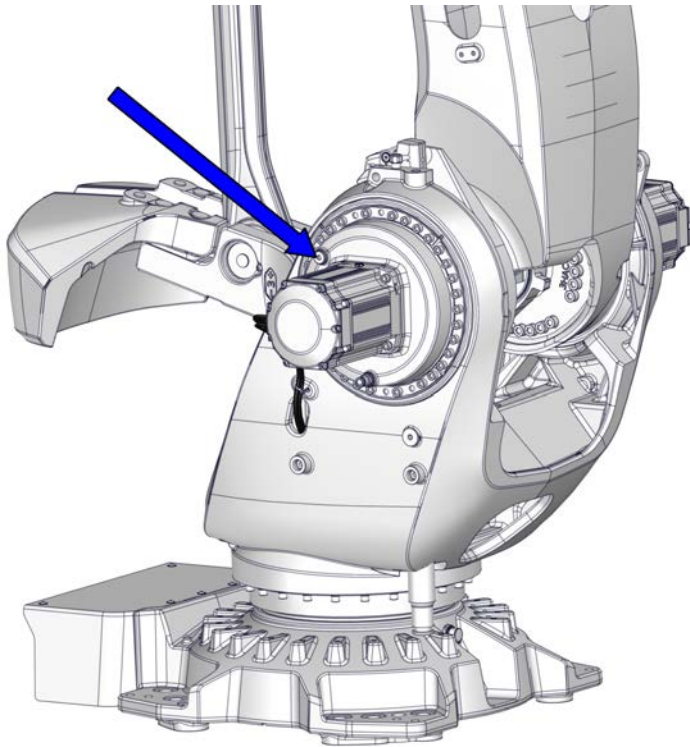
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.9 Inspecting the oil level in axis-3 gearbox

### 4.3.9 Inspecting the oil level in axis-3 gearbox

#### Location of the oil plug

The oil plug for inspection is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001678

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

#### Required documents

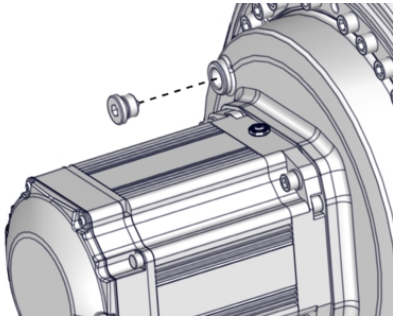
| Document name                                         | Document number |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |

*Continues on next page*



## Inspecting the oil level in axis-3 gearbox

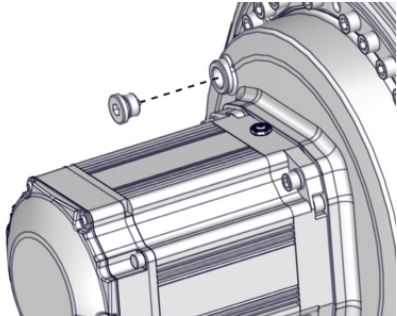
Use this procedure to inspect the oil level in the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3 | Make sure that the oil temperature is $+25^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 4 | Open the oil plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <br>xx2300001690                                                                                                                                                       |
| 5 | Check the oil level.<br>Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 6 | Add or drain oil, if required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .<br>Further information about how to drain or fill with oil is found in section <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox on page 160</a> . |

Continues on next page

4 Maintenance

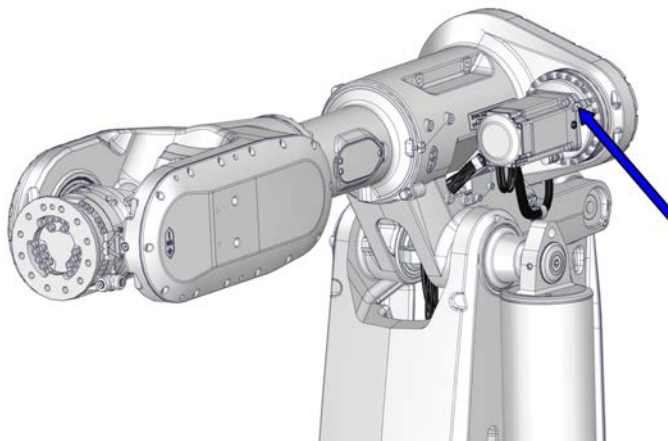
4.3.9 Inspecting the oil level in axis-3 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001690 |
| 8 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                    |

### 4.3.10 Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 primary gearbox

#### Location of the oil plug

The oil plug for inspection is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001695

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

#### Required documents

| Document name                                                | Document number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> | 3HAC042927-001  |

*Continues on next page*

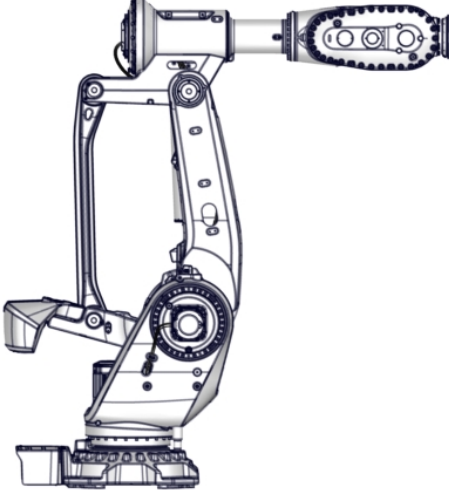
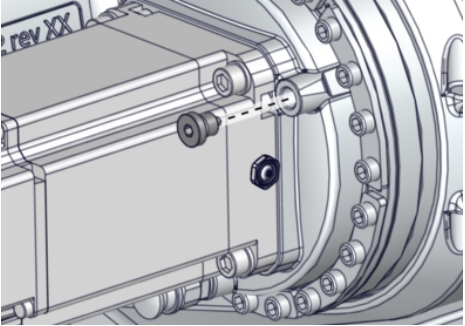
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.10 Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 primary gearbox

*Continued*

#### Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 gearbox

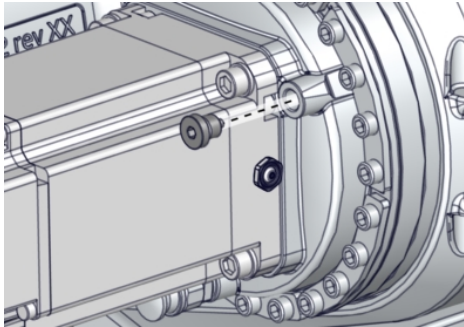
Use this procedure to inspect the oil level in the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Run the robot to a position where the upper arm is horizontal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2300001691   |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                      |
| 3 | Make sure that the oil temperature is $+25^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                      |
| 4 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                     |                                                                                                      |
| 5 | Open the oil plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <br>xx2300001697 |
| 6 | Check the oil level.<br>Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |

*Continues on next page*

## 4.3.10 Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 primary gearbox

Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Add or drain oil, if required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .<br>Further information about how to drain or fill with oil is found in section <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-4 gearbox on page 174</a> . |
| 8 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001697                                                                                          |
| 9 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

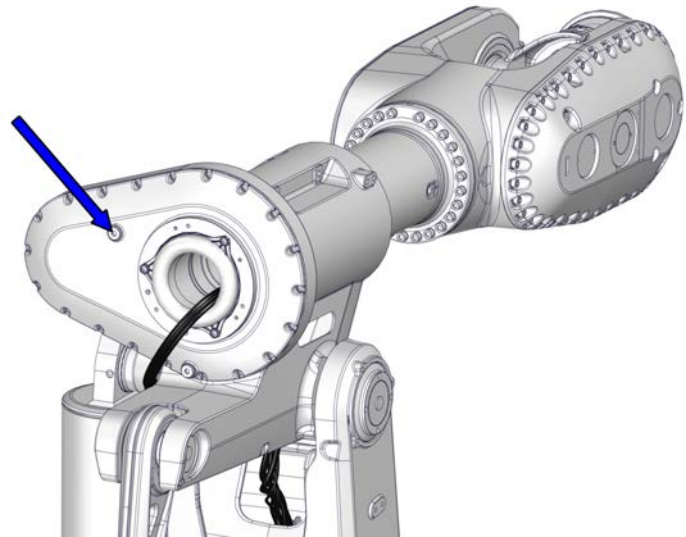
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.11 Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 gearbox

### 4.3.11 Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 gearbox

#### Location of the oil plug

The oil plug for inspection is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001680

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

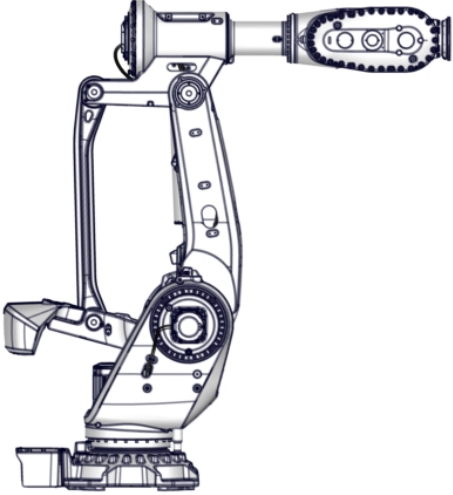
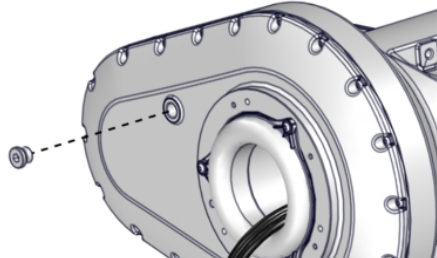
#### Required documents

| Document name                                         | Document number |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |

*Continues on next page*

## Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 gearbox

Use this procedure to inspect the oil level in the gearbox.

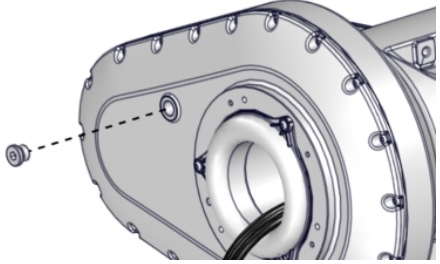
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Run the robot to a position where the upper arm is horizontal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <br>xx2300001691   |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                      |
| 3 | Make sure that the oil temperature is $+25^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                      |
| 4 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                         |                                                                                                      |
| 5 | Open the oil plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2300001692 |
| 6 | Check the oil level.<br>Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                      |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.11 Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 gearbox

*Continued*

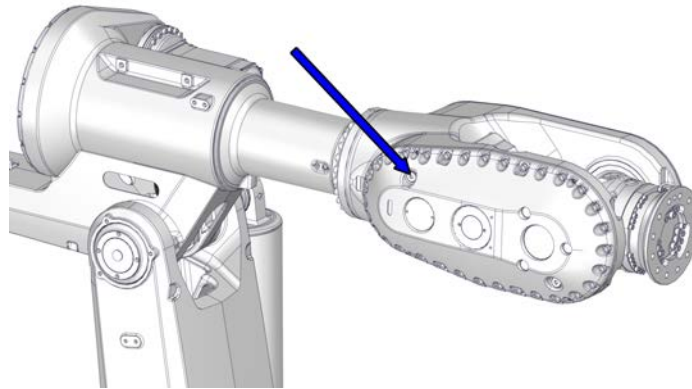
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Add or drain oil, if required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .<br>Further information about how to drain or fill with oil is found in section <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-4 gearbox on page 174</a> . |
| 8 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001692                                                                                          |
| 9 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |



### 4.3.12 Inspecting the oil level in axis-5 gearbox

#### Location of the oil plug

The oil plug for inspection is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001682

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

#### Required documents

| Document name                                                | Document number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> | 3HAC042927-001  |

*Continues on next page*

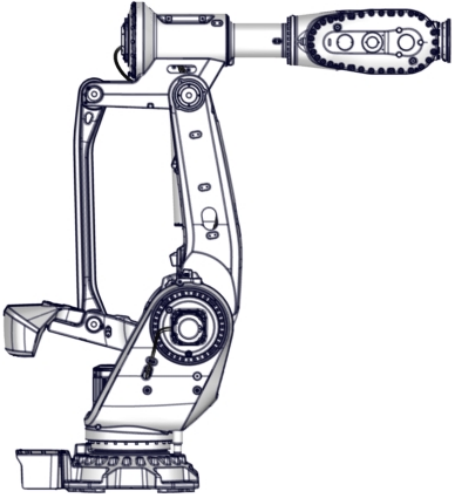
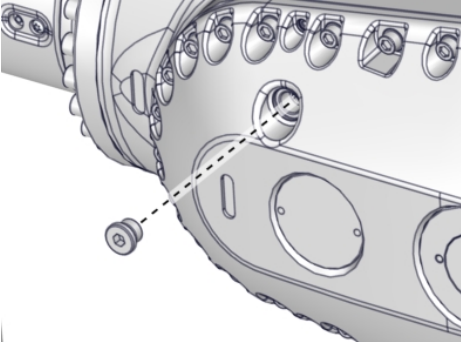
# 4 Maintenance

## 4.3.12 Inspecting the oil level in axis-5 gearbox

Continued

### Inspecting the oil level in axis-5 gearbox

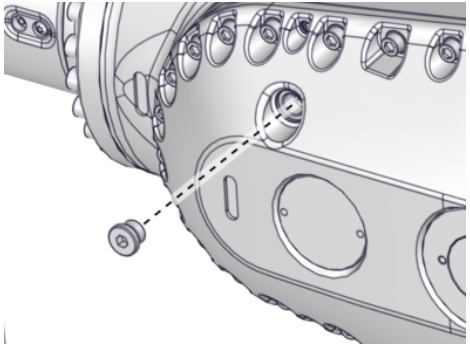
Use this procedure to inspect the oil level in the gearbox.

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Run the robot to a position where the upper arm is horizontal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2300001691   |
| 2  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                      |
| 3 Make sure that the oil temperature is +25 °C ± 10 °C.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                      |
| 4  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                     |                                                                                                      |
| 5 Open the oil plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <br>xx2300001693 |

Continues on next page

### 4.3.12 Inspecting the oil level in axis-5 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Check the oil level.<br>Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole.                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 7 | Add or drain oil, if required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .<br>Further information about how to drain or fill with oil is found in section <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox on page 179</a> . |
| 8 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001693                                                                                         |
| 9 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

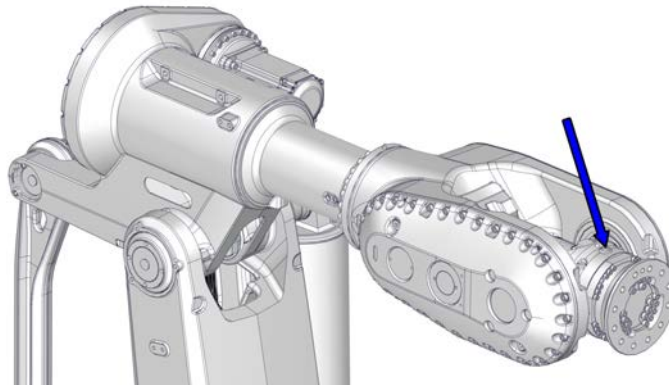
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.13 Inspecting the oil level in axis-6 gearbox

### 4.3.13 Inspecting the oil level in axis-6 gearbox

#### Location of the oil plug

The oil plug for inspection is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001684

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/4"  | 3HAC061327-060 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

#### Required documents

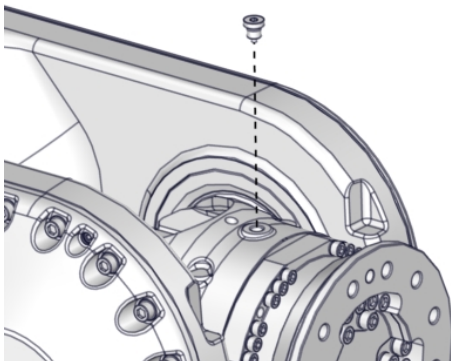
| Document name                                                | Document number |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> | 3HAC042927-001  |

#### Inspecting the oil level in axis-6 gearbox

Use this procedure to inspect the oil level in the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                         | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Run the robot to a position where the upper arm is horizontal. |      |

*Continues on next page*

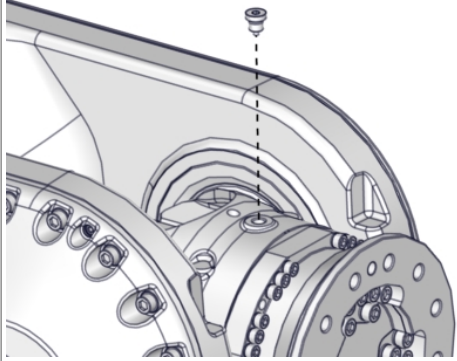
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3 | Make sure that the oil temperature is $+25^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 4 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 5 | Open the oil plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <br>xx2300001694                                                                                                                                                        |
| 6 | Check the oil level.<br>Required oil level is:<br><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b><br>70-75 mm below oil plug hole<br><b>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br>61-66 mm below oil plug hole                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 7 | Add or drain oil, if required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .<br>Further information about how to drain or fill with oil is found in section <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-6 gearbox on page 184</a> . |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.3.13 Inspecting the oil level in axis-6 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | O-ring, G 1/4": 3HAC061327-060<br>Tightening torque: 20 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001694 |
| 9 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                   |

## 4.4 Replacement/changing activities

### 4.4.1 Type of lubrication in gearboxes

#### Introduction

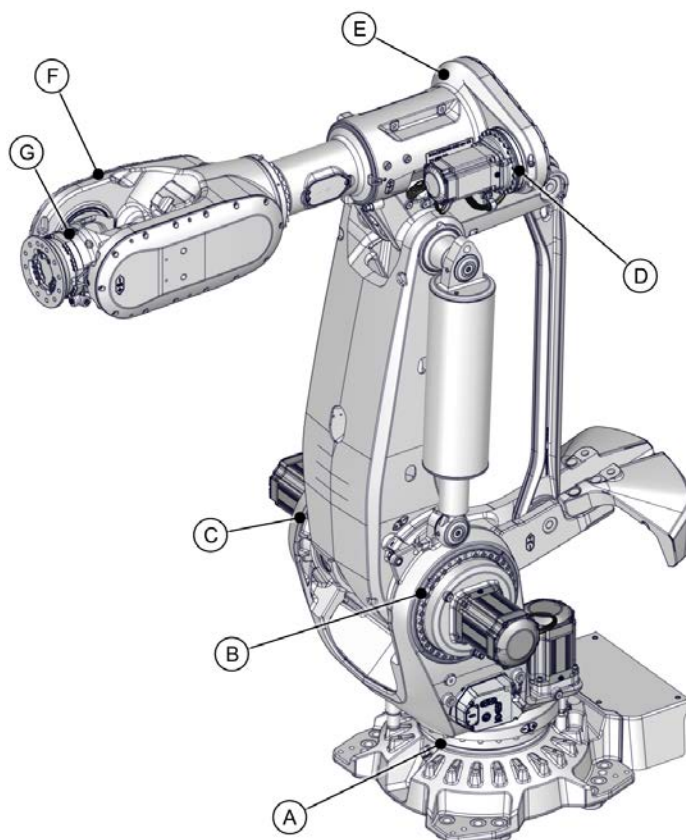
This section describes where to find information about the type of lubrication, article number and the amount of lubrication in the specific gearbox. It also describes the equipment needed when working with lubrication.

#### Type and amount of oil in gearboxes

Information about the type of lubrication, article number as well as the amount in the specific gearbox can be found in *Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes* available for registered users via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

#### Location of gearboxes

The figure shows the location of the gearboxes.



xx2400000259

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| A | Axis-1 gearbox      |
| B | Axis-2 gearbox      |
| C | Axis-3 gearbox      |
| D | Axis-4 primary gear |

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

---

### 4.4.1 Type of lubrication in gearboxes

*Continued*

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| E | Axis-4 gearbox |
| F | Axis-5 gearbox |
| G | Axis-6 gearbox |

---

### Equipment

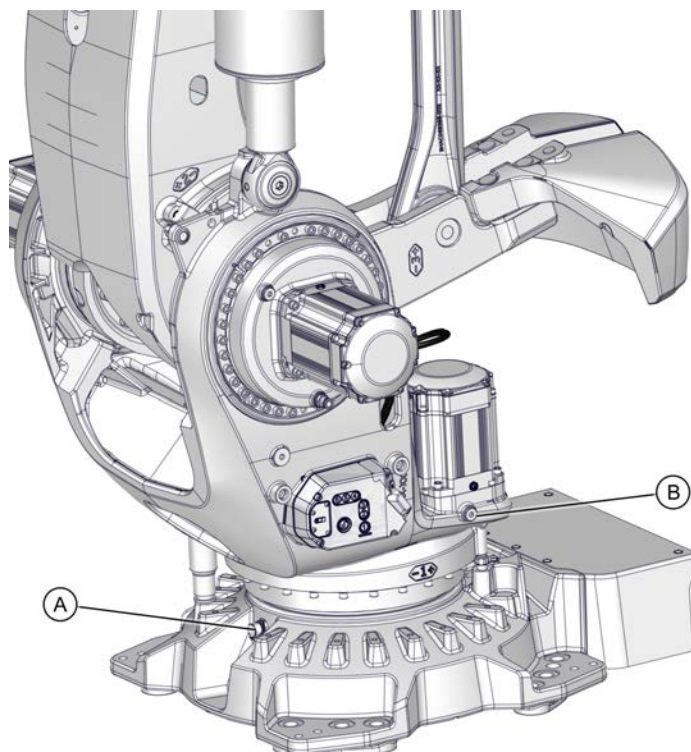
| Equipment                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil dispenser                                 | Includes pump with outlet pipe.<br>Use the suggested dispenser or a similar one: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Orion OriCan article number 22590 (pneumatic)</li></ul> |
| Nipple for quick connect fitting, with o-ring | Dimensions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes: Series 365, DN10</li><li>• Axis-4 gearbox: Series 265, DN6.3</li></ul>                  |



## 4.4.2 Changing the oil in axis-1 gearbox

### Location of the gearbox and oil nipples / plugs

The gearbox and its oil plugs / nipples are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001673

|   |                                                           |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| A | Oil nipple for draining and filling with an oil dispenser |
| B | Oil plug hole for venting and inspection                  |

### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                                     | Article number | Note                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil collecting vessel                         | -              | The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil.                                   |
| Oil dispenser                                 | -              | One example of oil dispenser can be found in section <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| Nipple for quick connect fitting, with o-ring | -              | Dimension: Series 365, DN10                                                                                         |
| Standard toolkit                              | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                        |

### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.2 Changing the oil in axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

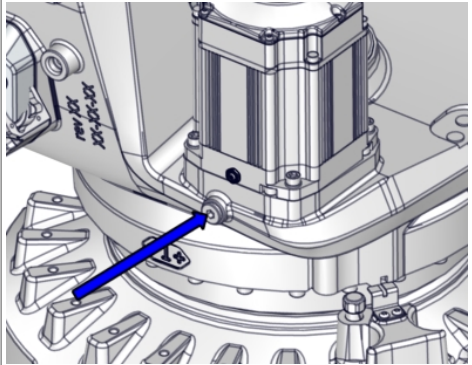
| Wear part      | Article number | Note                                  |
|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| O-ring, G 1/2" | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged. |

#### Required documents

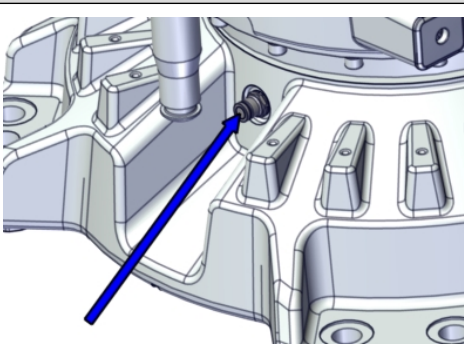
| Document name                                         | Document number | Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |      |

#### Floor-mounted robot: Draining the axis-1 gearbox

Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1<br> <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                      |
| 2<br> <b>WARNING</b><br><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                   |                                                                                                      |
| 3<br>Make sure that the oil temperature is $+25^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                      |
| 4<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.                                                                 |                                                                                                      |
| 5<br>Remove the plug from the venting hole.<br><br> <b>WARNING</b><br><br>Let the venting hole stay open during draining and filling using the dispenser, to avoid damaging vital parts in the gearbox.                               | <br>xx2300001600 |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Remove the protective cap from the nipple of the oil hole and connect the oil dispenser.                                                                                                                                                        | <br>xx2100001476 |
| 7 | Suck out the oil with the oil dispenser.<br> <b>Note</b><br>There will be some oil left in the gear after draining.                                            |                                                                                                    |
| 8 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information. |                                                                                                    |

**Floor-mounted robot: Filling oil into the axis-1 gearbox**

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.

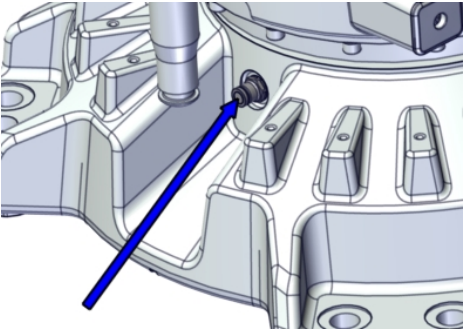
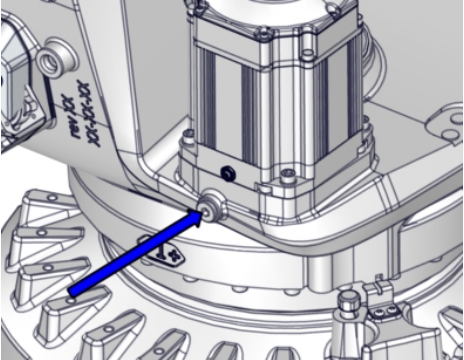
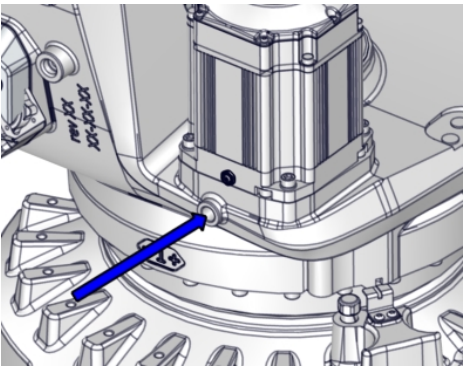
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |      |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                         |      |

Continues on next page

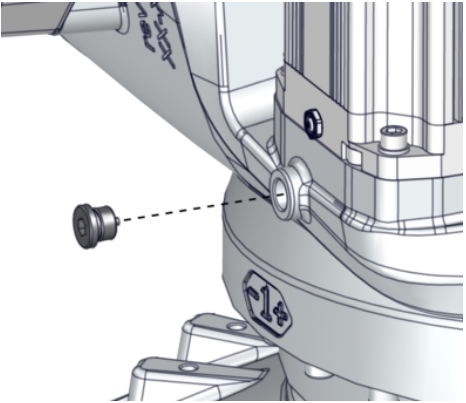
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.2 Changing the oil in axis-1 gearbox

Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Remove the protective cap from the nipple of the oil hole and connect the oil dispenser.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2100001476</p>                                                          |
| 4 | Remove the plug from the venting hole.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The venting hole is opened to let out air during the filling process.                                                                                  |  <p>xx2300001600</p>                                                         |
| 5 | Refill the gearbox with oil with the oil dispenser.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.                                                          | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .                                                      |
| 6 | Inspect the oil level through the inspection hole.<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>The oil level sinks when the oil fills all cavities in the gearbox. Wait until the oil stops sinking, before measuring the oil level. | Required oil level: 0-10 mm below the oil plug hole<br> <p>xx2300001687</p> |
| 7 | Remove the oil dispenser and refit the protective cap to the nipple.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                 |

Continues on next page

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                              |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8  | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001686 |
| 9  |  <b>Note</b><br>After all repair and maintenance work involving oil, always wipe the robot clean from all surplus oil. The robot color can otherwise be discolored.                    |                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 10 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                   |

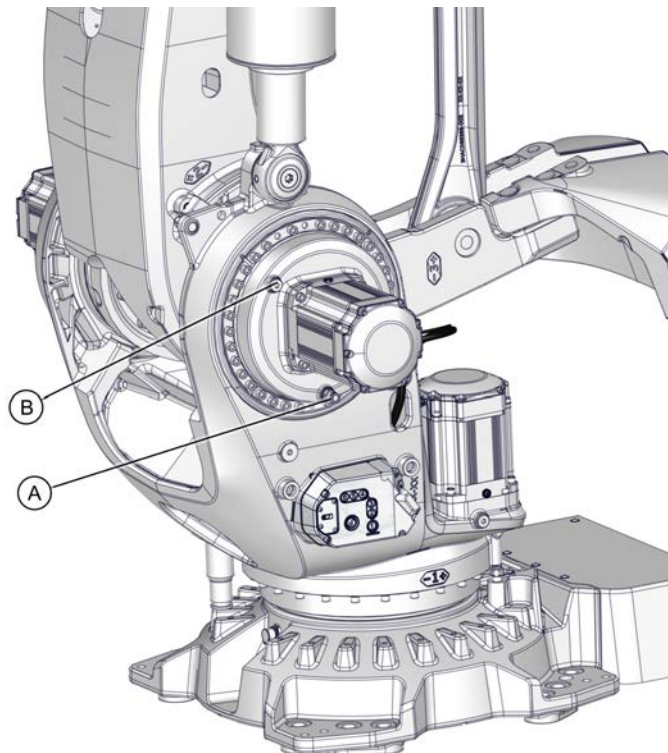
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.3 Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox

### 4.4.3 Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox

#### Location of the gearbox and oil plugs

The gearbox and its oil plugs are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001675

|   |                                                                     |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A | Oil plug with nipple for draining and filling with an oil dispenser |
| B | Oil plug hole for venting and inspection                            |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                                     | Article number | Note                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil collecting vessel                         | -              | The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil.                                   |
| Oil dispenser                                 | -              | One example of oil dispenser can be found in section <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| Nipple for quick connect fitting, with o-ring | -              | Dimension: Series 365, DN10                                                                                         |
| Standard toolkit                              | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                        |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |

*Continues on next page*

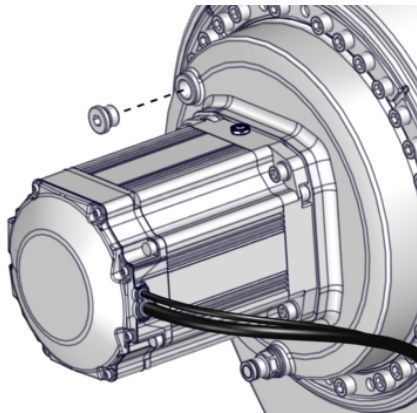
| Wear part      | Article number | Note                                  |
|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| O-ring, G 1/2" | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged. |

## Required documents

| Document name                                         | Document number | Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |      |

## Draining the axis-2 gearbox

Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                       |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                        |                                                                                                       |
| 3 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.                                                                      |                                                                                                       |
| 4 | Remove the plug from the venting hole.<br> <b>WARNING</b><br>Let the venting hole stay open during draining and filling using the dispenser, to avoid damaging vital parts in the gearbox.                                        | <br>xx2300001688 |

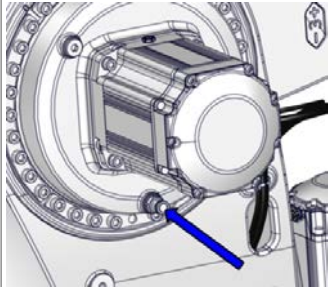
Continues on next page



## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.3 Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Remove the protective cap from the nipple of the oil hole and connect the oil dispenser.                                                                                                                                                        | <br>xx2300001676 |
| 6 | Suck out the oil with the oil dispenser.<br> <b>Note</b><br>There will be some oil left in the gear after draining.                                            |                                                                                                    |
| 7 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information. |                                                                                                    |

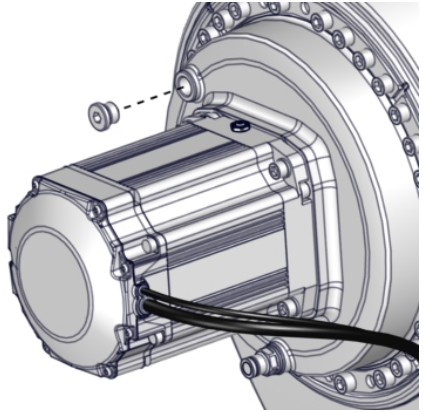
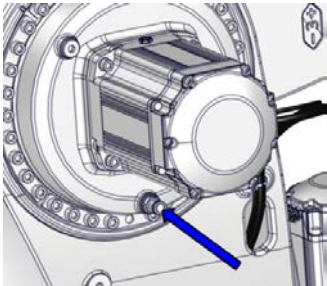
### Filling oil into the axis-2 gearbox

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |      |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                      |      |

*Continues on next page*



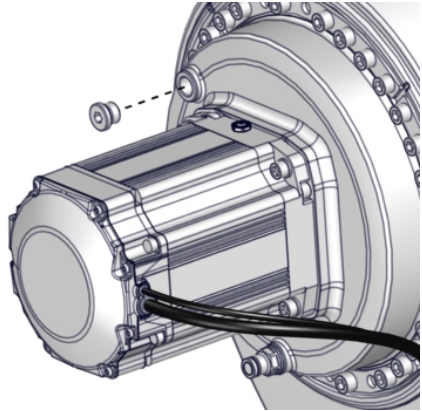
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Remove the plug from the inspection/venting hole.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Let the venting hole stay open during draining and filling using the dispenser, to avoid damaging vital parts in the gearbox.</p>                    |  <p>xx2300001688</p>                                                               |
| 4 | <p>Remove the protective cap from the nipple of the oil hole and connect the oil dispenser.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2300001676</p>                                                               |
| 5 | <p>Refill the gearbox with oil.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.</p>                                                                                         | <p>Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>.</p>                                                      |
| 6 | <p>Inspect the oil level at the inspection hole (level plug).</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The oil level sinks when the oil fills all cavities in the gearbox. Wait until the oil stops sinking, before measuring the oil level.</p> | <p>Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole</p> <p>More information is found in <a href="#">Inspecting the oil level in axis-2 gearbox on page 136</a>.</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the oil dispenser.</p> <p>Refit the protective cap on the nipple.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.3 Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox

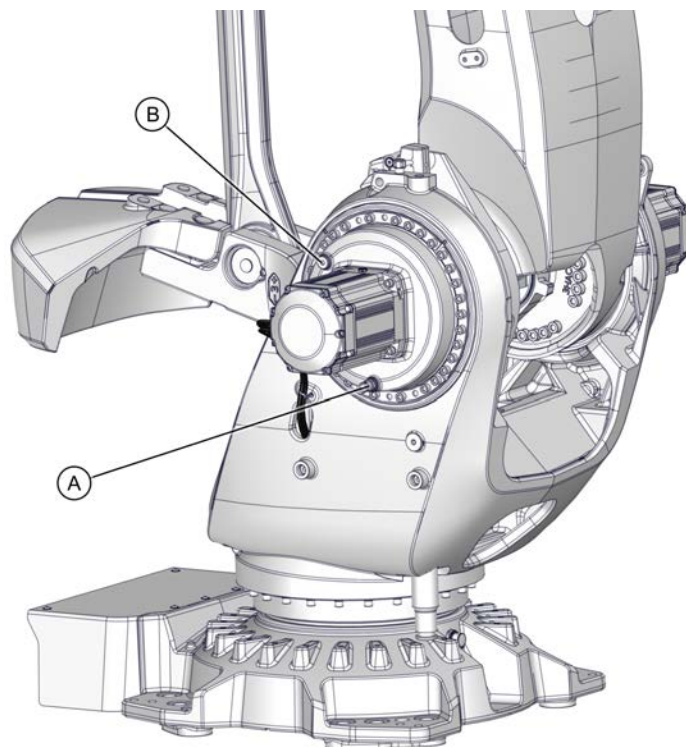
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Refit all removed oil plugs.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                       | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001688 |
| 9 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                   |

### 4.4.4 Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox

#### Location of the gearbox and oil plugs

The gearbox and its oil plugs are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001679

|   |                                                                     |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A | Oil plug with nipple for draining and filling with an oil dispenser |
| B | Oil plug hole for venting and inspection                            |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                                     | Article number | Note                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil collecting vessel                         | -              | The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil.                                   |
| Oil dispenser                                 | -              | One example of oil dispenser can be found in section <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| Nipple for quick connect fitting, with o-ring | -              | Dimension: Series 365, DN10                                                                                         |
| Standard toolkit                              | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                        |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.4 Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

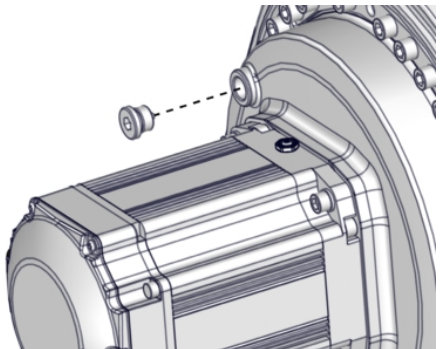
| Wear part      | Article number | Note                                  |
|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------|
| O-ring, G 1/2" | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged. |

#### Required documents

| Document name                                                | Document number | Note |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> | 3HAC042927-001  |      |

#### Draining the axis-3 gearbox

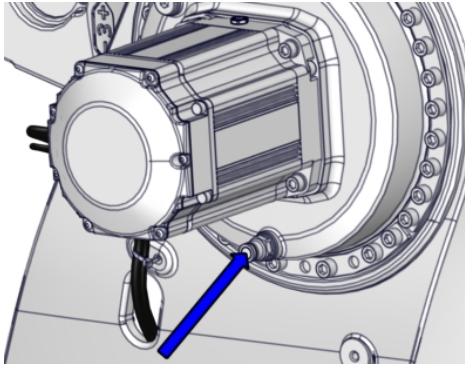
Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                          |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                   |                                                                                                          |
| 3 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.                                                                 |                                                                                                          |
| 4 | Remove the plug from the venting hole.<br><br> <b>WARNING</b><br><br>Let the venting hole stay open during draining and filling using the dispenser, to avoid damaging vital parts in the gearbox.                               | <br><br>xx2300001690 |

*Continues on next page*

## 4.4.4 Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox

Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 Remove the protective cap from the nipple of the oil hole and connect the oil dispenser.                                                                                                                                                       | <br>xx2300001677 |
| 6 Suck out the oil with the oil dispenser.                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                    |
|  <b>Note</b><br>There will be some oil left in the gear after draining.                                                                                         |                                                                                                    |
| 7                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                    |
|  <b>WARNING</b><br>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information. |                                                                                                    |

## Filling oil into the axis-3 gearbox

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.

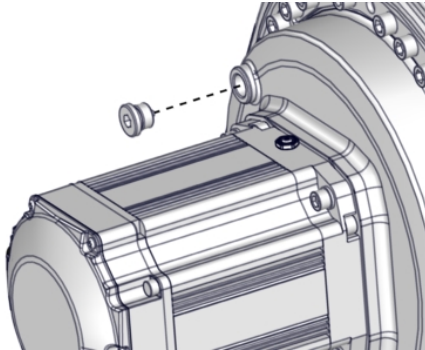
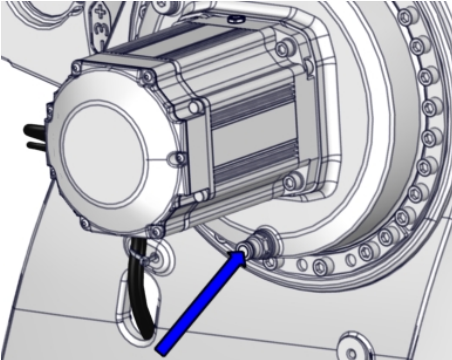
| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |
|  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |      |
| 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |      |
|  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                          |      |

Continues on next page

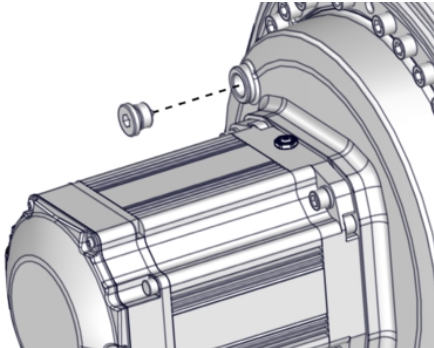
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.4 Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Remove the plug from the ventilation hole.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Let the venting hole stay open during draining and filling using the dispenser, to avoid damaging vital parts in the gearbox.</p>                            |  <p>xx2300001690</p>                                                                 |
| 4 | <p>Remove the protective cap from the nipple of the oil hole and connect the oil dispenser.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  <p>xx2300001677</p>                                                                |
| 5 | <p>Refill the gearbox with oil.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.</p>                                                                                          | <p>Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i>.</p>                                                       |
| 6 | <p>Inspect the oil level at the ventilation hole (level plug).</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The oil level sinks when the oil fills all cavities in the gearbox. Wait until the oil stops sinking, before measuring the oil level.</p> | <p>Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole.</p> <p>More information is found in <a href="#">Inspecting the oil level in axis-3 gearbox on page 138</a>.</p> |
| 7 | <p>Remove the oil dispenser.</p> <p>Refit the protective cap on the nipple.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                        |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Refit all removed oil plugs with new o-rings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br/>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001690</p> |
| 9 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                             |

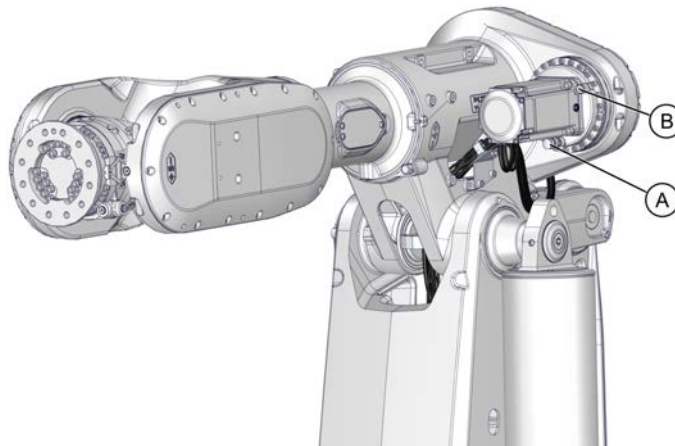
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.5 Changing the oil in axis-4 primary gear

### 4.4.5 Changing the oil in axis-4 primary gear

#### Location of the gearbox and oil plugs

The gearbox and its oil plugs are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001696

|   |                                                                     |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A | Oil plug with nipple for draining and filling with an oil dispenser |
| B | Oil plug hole for venting and inspection                            |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                                     | Article number | Note                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil collecting vessel                         | -              | The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil.                                   |
| Oil dispenser                                 | -              | One example of oil dispenser can be found in section <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| Nipple for quick connect fitting, with o-ring | -              | Dimension: Series 265, DN6.3                                                                                        |
| Standard toolkit                              | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                        |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

#### Required documents

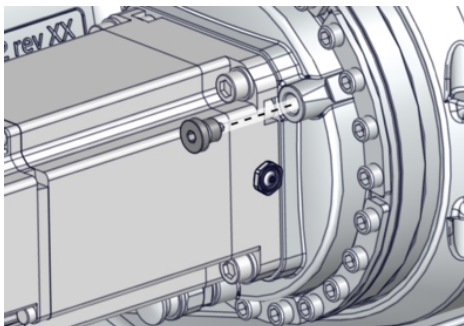
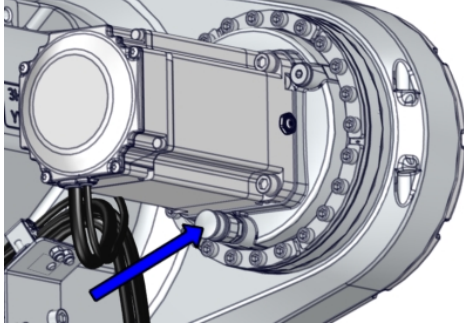
| Document name                                         | Document number | Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |      |

Continues on next page



## Draining the axis-4 gearbox

Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                          |                                                                                                      |
| 3 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.                                                                        |                                                                                                      |
| 4 | Remove the plug from the venting hole.<br> <b>WARNING</b><br>Let the venting hole stay open during draining and filling using the dispenser, to avoid damaging vital parts in the gearbox.                                        | <br>xx2300001697 |
| 5 | Remove the protective cap from the nipple of the oil hole and connect the oil dispenser.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <br>xx2300001698 |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

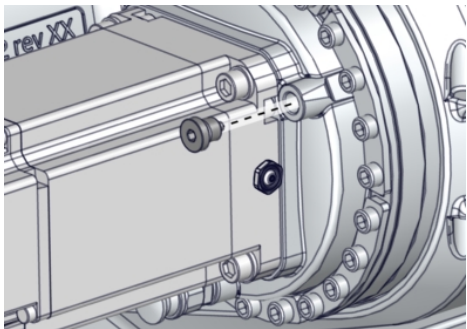
### 4.4.5 Changing the oil in axis-4 primary gear

*Continued*

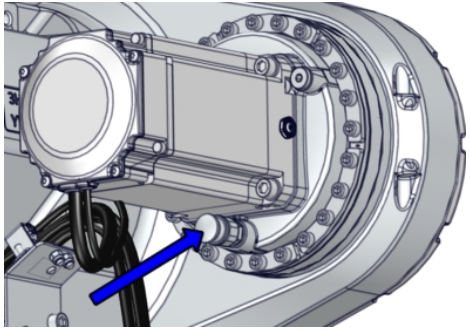
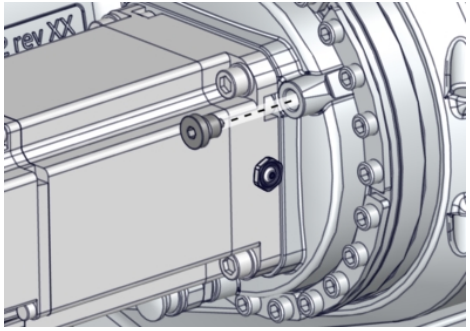
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 6 | <p>Suck out the oil with the oil dispenser.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>There will be some oil left in the gear after draining.</p>                                        |      |
| 7 | <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information.</p> |      |

### Filling oil into the axis-4 gearbox

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p> |                                                                                                          |
| 2 | <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a>.</p>                                                                                           |                                                                                                          |
| 3 | <p>Remove the plug from the ventilation hole.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Let the venting hole stay open during draining and filling using the dispenser, to avoid damaging vital parts in the gearbox.</p>                                  |  <p>xx2300001697</p> |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Remove the protective cap from the nipple of the oil hole and connect the oil dispenser.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <br>xx2300001698                                                                  |
| 5 | Refill the gearbox with oil.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.                                                                                           | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .                                                          |
| 6 | Inspect the oil level at the ventilation hole (level plug).<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>The oil level sinks when the oil fills all cavities in the gearbox. Wait until the oil stops sinking, before measuring the oil level. | Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole.<br>More information is found in <i>Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 primary gearbox on page 141</i> .         |
| 7 | Remove the oil dispenser.<br>Refit the protective cap on the nipple.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 8 | Refit all removed oil plugs with new o-rings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001697 |
| 9 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <i>Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</i> .                                            |                                                                                                                                                                     |

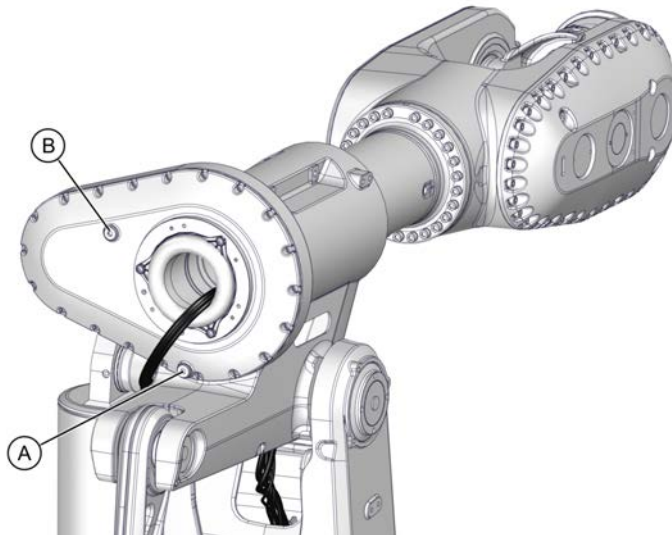
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.6 Changing the oil in axis-4 gearbox

### 4.4.6 Changing the oil in axis-4 gearbox

#### Location of the gearbox and oil plugs

The gearbox and its oil plugs are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001681

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| A | Oil plug for draining            |
| B | Oil plug for filling and venting |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment             | Article number | Note                                                                              |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil collecting vessel | -              | The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil. |
| Hose                  | -              | Used as an aid to drain the oil into an oil collecting vessel.                    |
| Standard toolkit      | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .      |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

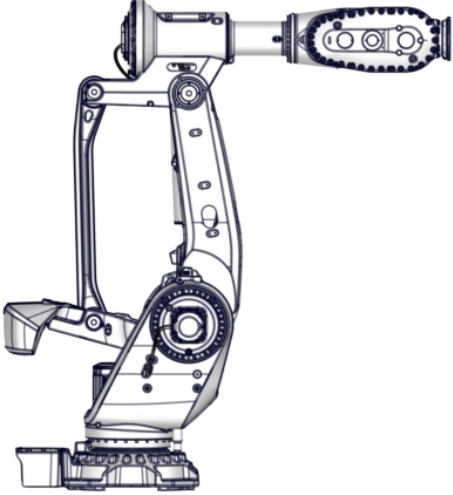
#### Required documents

| Document name                                                | Document number | Note |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> | 3HAC042927-001  |      |

*Continues on next page*

**Draining the axis-4 gearbox**

Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

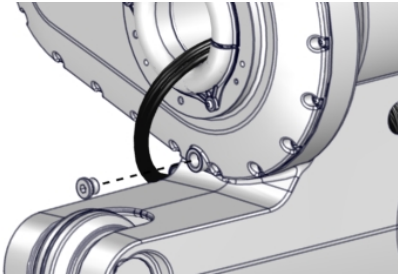
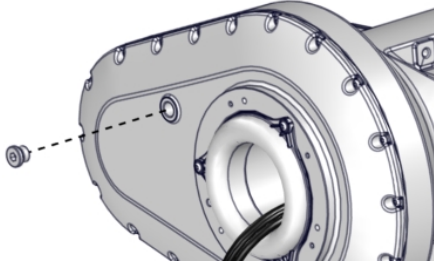
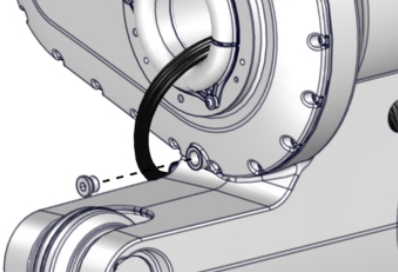
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Run the robot to a position where the upper arm is horizontal.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <br>xx2300001691 |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                    |
| 3 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                         |                                                                                                    |
| 4 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.                                                                       |                                                                                                    |
| 5 | Prepare the hose and the oil collecting vessel at the oil drain plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                    |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.6 Changing the oil in axis-4 gearbox

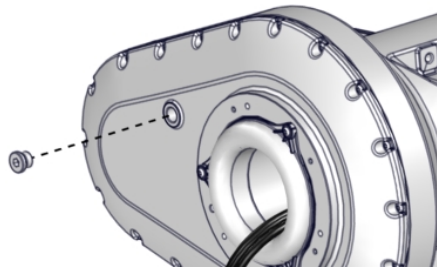
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Remove the oil plug from the drain hole and let the oil run through the hose into the vessel.                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2400000143                                                                  |
| 7 | Remove the oil plug from the fill/level hole.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The oil plug hole is opened to speed up the drainage.                                          | <br>xx2300001692                                                                   |
| 8 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information. |                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 9 | Refit the oil plug for the drainage hole.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                     | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2400000143 |

Continues on next page

## Filling oil into the axis-4 gearbox

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.

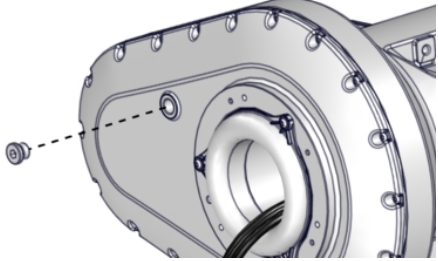
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                               |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                                                    |
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                    |
| 3 | Open the fill/level plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <br>xx2300001692                                |
| 4 | Refill the gearbox with oil.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.                                                                                                    | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .                         |
| 5 | Inspect the oil level.<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>The oil level sinks when the oil fills all cavities in the gearbox. Wait until the oil stops sinking, before measuring the oil level.                                                | Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole<br>See <a href="#">Inspecting the oil level in axis-4 gearbox on page 142</a> . |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.6 Changing the oil in axis-4 gearbox

*Continued*

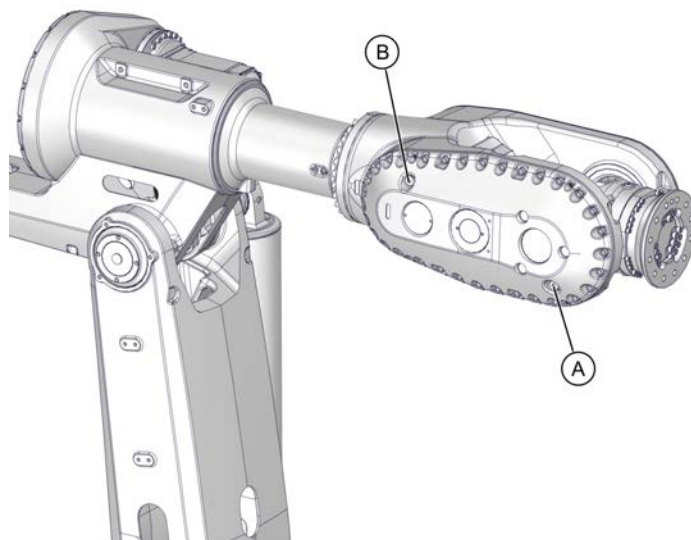
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001692 |
| 7 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                   |



### 4.4.7 Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox

#### Location of the gearbox and oil plugs

The gearbox and its oil plugs are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001683

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| A | Oil plug for draining            |
| B | Oil plug for filling and venting |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment             | Article number | Note                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil collecting vessel | -              | The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil.                                   |
| Oil dispenser         | -              | One example of oil dispenser can be found in section <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| Standard toolkit      | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                        |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/2"  | 3HAC061327-059 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

#### Required documents

| Document name                                         | Document number | Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |      |

*Continues on next page*

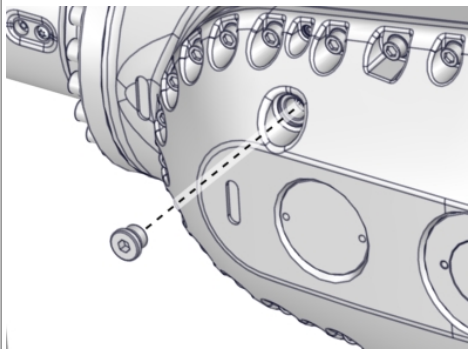
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.7 Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Draining the axis-5 gearbox

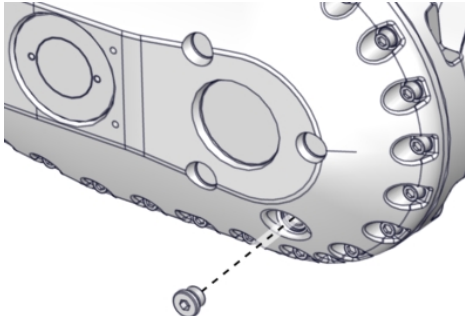
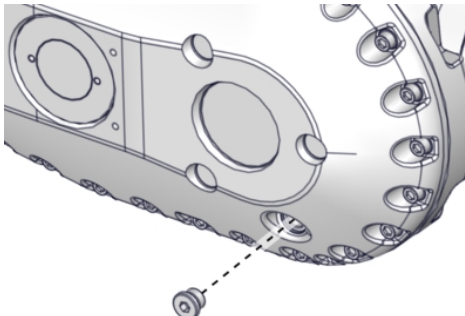
Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to calibration position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                          |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                          |
| 3 |  <b>WARNING</b><br><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                      |                                                                                                          |
| 4 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.                                                                   |                                                                                                          |
| 5 | Remove the oil plug from the fill hole.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>The oil plug hole is opened to speed up the drainage.                                                                                                          | <br><br>xx2300001693 |
| 6 | Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the oil drain plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                          |

*Continues on next page*

## 4.4.7 Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox

Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 Remove the oil plug from the drain hole and let the oil run into the vessel.                                                                                                                                                                                   | <br>xx2300001701                                                                  |
| 8 <div>  <b>WARNING</b><br/> Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information. </div> |                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 9 Refit the oil plug for the drainage hole. Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                      | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001701 |

## Filling oil into the axis-5 gearbox

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.

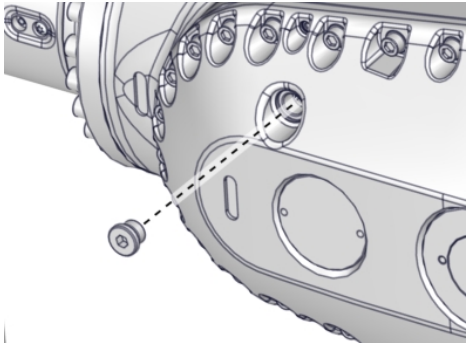
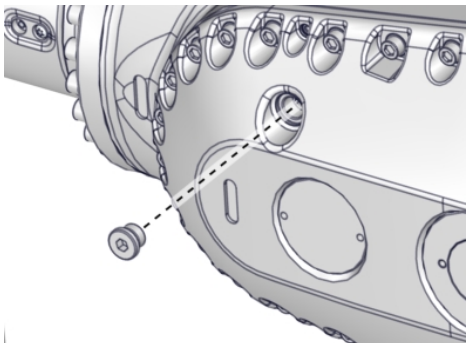
| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 <div>  <b>DANGER</b><br/> Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. </div> |      |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.7 Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 3 | Open the fill/level plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <br>xx2300001693                                                                  |
| 4 | Refill the gearbox with oil.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.                                                                                              | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .                                                          |
| 5 | Inspect the oil level at the oil fill/level hole (level plug).<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>The oil level sinks when the oil fills all cavities in the gearbox. Wait until the oil stops sinking, before measuring the oil level. | Required oil level is: 0-10 mm below oil plug hole.<br>More information is found in <a href="#">Inspecting the oil level in axis-5 gearbox on page 148</a> .        |
| 6 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001693 |

*Continues on next page*

4.4.7 Changing the oil in axis-5 gearbox  
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 7 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |      |

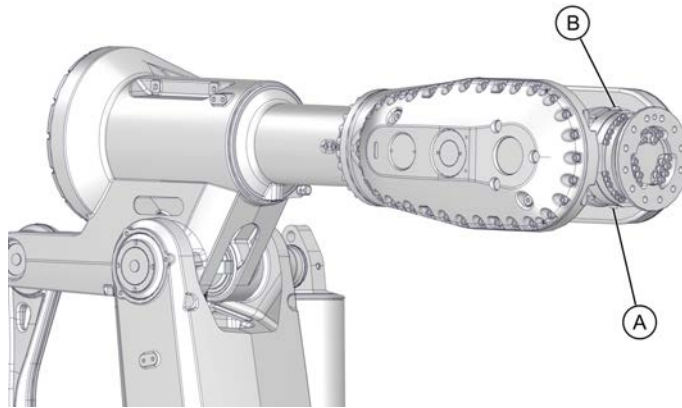
## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.8 Changing the oil in axis-6 gearbox

### 4.4.8 Changing the oil in axis-6 gearbox

#### Location of the gearbox and oil plugs

The gearbox and its oil plugs are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001685

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| A | Oil plug for draining            |
| B | Oil plug for filling and venting |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment             | Article number | Note                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil collecting vessel | -              | The capacity of the vessel must be sufficient to take the complete amount of oil.                                   |
| Oil dispenser         | -              | One example of oil dispenser can be found in section <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| Standard toolkit      | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                        |

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part       | Article number | Note                                                               |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil | -              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> . |
| O-ring, G 1/4"  | 3HAC061327-060 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                              |

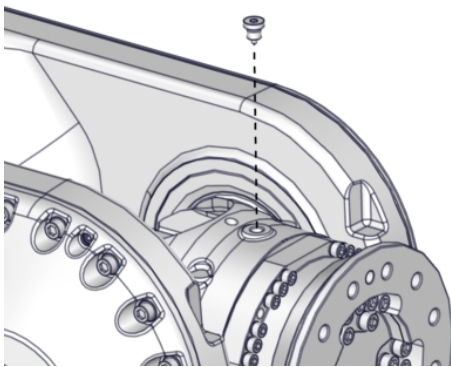
#### Required documents

| Document name                                         | Document number | Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes | 3HAC042927-001  |      |

*Continues on next page*

## Draining the axis-6 gearbox

Use this procedure to drain the gearbox.

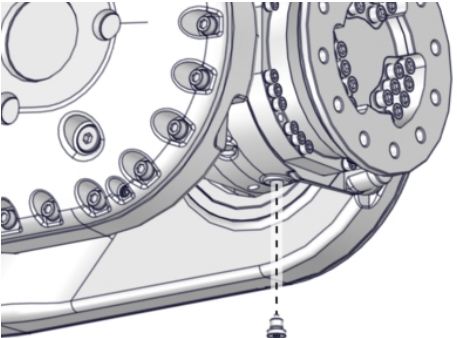
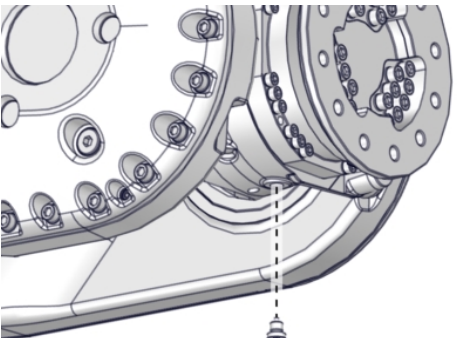
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to calibration position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                      |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                      |
| 3 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                                                                          |                                                                                                      |
| 4 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The gearbox can contain an excess of pressure that can be hazardous. Open the oil plug carefully in order to let the excess pressure out.                                                                       |                                                                                                      |
| 5 | Remove the oil plug from the fill hole.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The oil plug hole is opened to speed up the drainage.                                                                                                                  | <br>xx2300001694 |
| 6 | Place the oil collecting vessel underneath the oil drain plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                      |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.8 Changing the oil in axis-6 gearbox

Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Remove the oil plug from the drain hole and let the oil run into the vessel.                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2300001702                                                                  |
| 8 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information. |                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 9 | Refit the oil plug for the drainage hole.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                    | O-ring, G 1/4": 3HAC061327-060<br>Tightening torque: 20 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001702 |

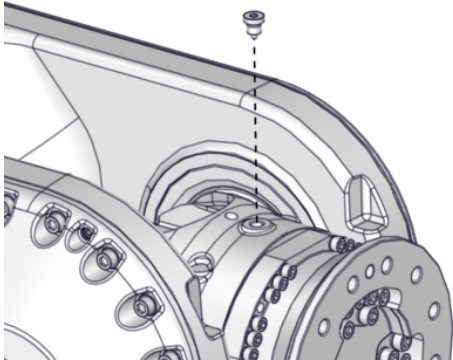
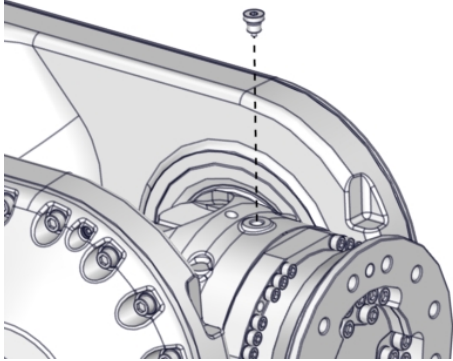
### Filling oil into the axis-6 gearbox

Use this procedure to refill the gearbox with oil.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |      |

Continues on next page



|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 |  <b>WARNING</b><br>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a> .                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3 | Open the fill plug.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <br>xx2300001694                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 4 | Refill the gearbox with oil.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The amount of oil to be filled depends on the amount previously being drained.                                                    | Type of oil and total amount is detailed in <i>Technical reference manual - Lubrication in gearboxes</i> .                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 5 | Check the oil level.<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>The oil level sinks when the oil fills all cavities in the gearbox. Wait until the oil stops sinking, before measuring the oil level. | Required oil level is:<br><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b><br>70-75 mm below oil plug hole<br><b>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br>61-66 mm below oil plug hole |
| 6 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                              | O-ring, G 1/4": 3HAC061327-060<br>Tightening torque: 20 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001694                                                                                                        |

Continues on next page

## 4 Maintenance

---

### 4.4.8 Changing the oil in axis-6 gearbox

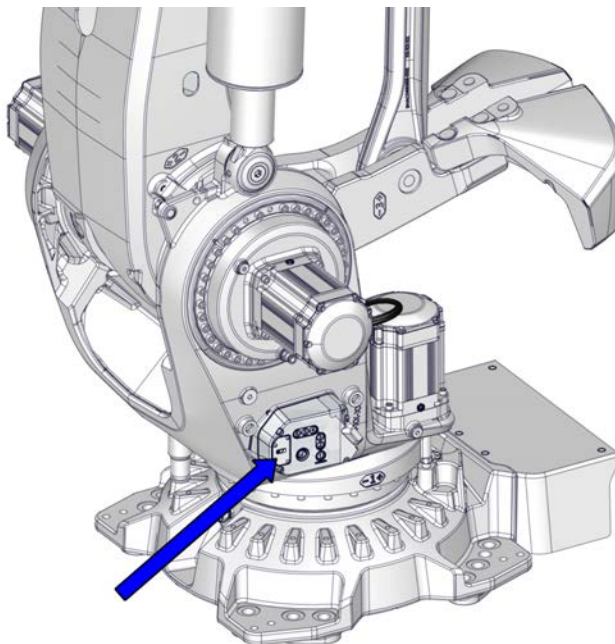
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 7 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |      |

### 4.4.9 Replacing the SMB battery

#### Location of the SMB battery

The SMB battery is located as shown in the figure.



xx2400000144

#### Required consumables and wear parts



##### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Wear part    | Article number | Note                                                                                                            |
|--------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Battery pack | 3HAC044075-001 | Battery includes protection circuits. Only replace with the specified spare part or an ABB-approved equivalent. |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Removing the battery

Use this procedure to remove the SMB battery.

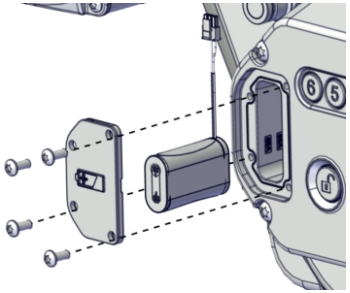
|   | Action                                     | Note                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to its calibration position. | This is done in order to facilitate updating of the revolution counter. |

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.4.9 Replacing the SMB battery

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.  |                                                                                                      |
| 3 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</a> .                                |                                                                                                      |
| 4 | Remove the SMB battery cover by unscrewing the attachment screws.<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>Clean cover from metal residues before opening. Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures. | <br>xx2100002131 |
| 5 | Pull out the battery and disconnect the battery cable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                      |
| 6 | Remove the SMB battery.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Battery includes protection circuits. Only replace with a specified spare part or with an ABB-approved equivalent.                                                                 |                                                                                                      |

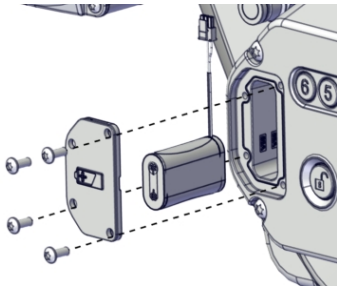
### Refitting the battery

Use this procedure to refit the SMB battery.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |      |

*Continues on next page*

4.4.9 Replacing the SMB battery  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</a> .   |                                                                                                     |
| 3 | Connect the battery cable and install the battery pack into the SMB/battery recess.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Make sure that the connector is assembled in the correct direction according to its keying. | Torx pan head screw: M5x12<br>Stainless steel A2-70 (4 pcs)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.             |
| 4 | Secure the SMB battery cover with its attachment screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <br>xx2100002131 |
| 5 | Update the revolution counters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | See <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 660</a> .                                      |
| 6 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> .             |                                                                                                     |

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.5.1 Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod

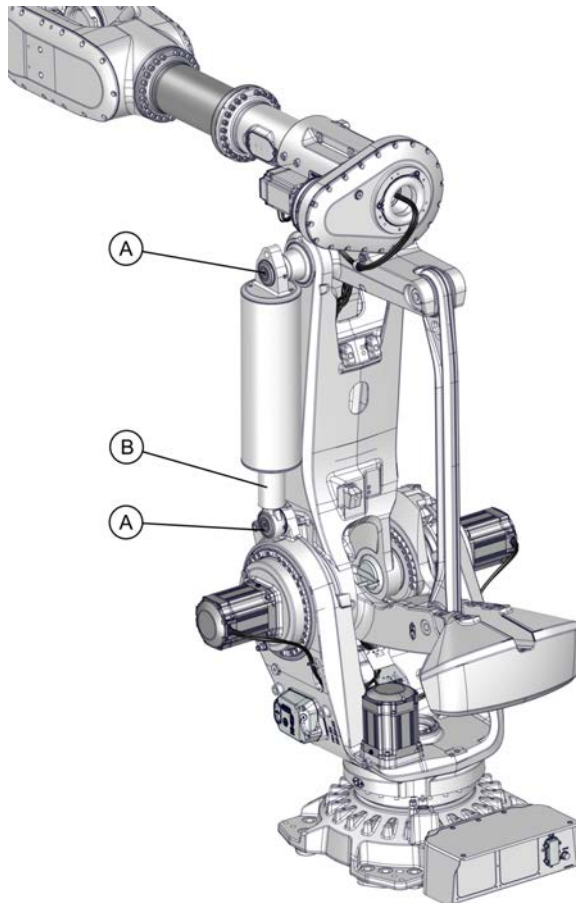
## 4.5 Lubrication activities

### 4.5.1 Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod

#### Location of spherical roller bearing and piston rod

The spherical roller bearing is located as shown in the figure.

The spherical roller bearings and the piston rod are located as shown in the figure.



xx2400000147

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| A | Spherical roller bearing (2 pcs) |
| B | Piston rod                       |

#### Lubrication of piston rod after first installation and test run

The balancing device piston rod is pre-lubricated from the factory, and also protected with transportation grease at delivery. To properly prepare the balancing device piston rod for operation after the first test run during installation, perform step 4 to step 6 in [Lubricating the piston rod on page 194](#).

#### Required consumables and wear parts

| Wear part      | Article number | Note        |
|----------------|----------------|-------------|
| Cleaning agent | -              | Isopropanol |

*Continues on next page*

### 4.5.1 Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod

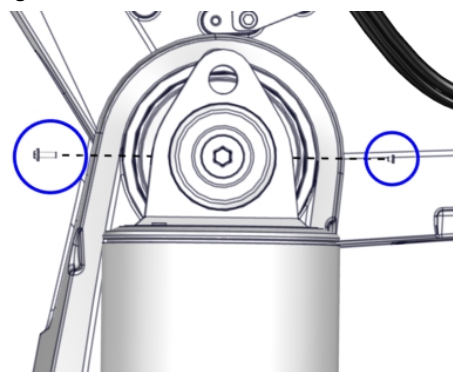
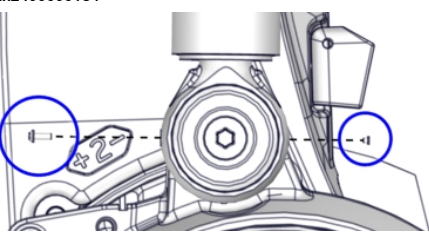
*Continued*

| Wear part      | Article number | Note                                |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| Bearing grease | 3HAC9408-1     | Tribol GR 100-2 PD, 85 ml / bearing |
| Grease         | 3HAC042536-001 | Shell Gadus S2 or equivalent        |

#### Lubricating the spherical roller bearing

Use this procedure to lubricate the spherical roller bearing.

#### Lubricating the spherical roller bearing

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1</p>  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <p>2</p> Unscrew the screw and remove the plastic plug of the bearing and fill grease through the screw hole until grease appears in the other hole.<br>Use a grease nipple.                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Bearing grease: 3HAC9408-1<br/>           Amount: Tribol GR 100-2 PD, 85 ml / bearing.</p>  <p>xx2400000134</p>  <p>xx2400000135</p> |
| <p>3</p> Refit the screw and the plastic plug.<br>Wipe clean from residual grease.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <p>4</p>  <b>Note</b><br>Inspect the bearings after a few days running. Some of the refilled grease may have emerged from the bearing. Wipe clean from residual grease.                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

*Continues on next page*

## 4 Maintenance

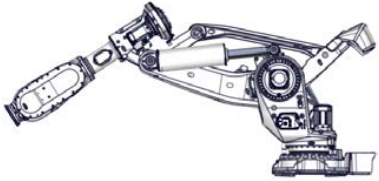
### 4.5.1 Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod

*Continued*

#### Lubricating the piston rod

Use this procedure to lubricate the balancing device piston rod.

##### Preparations before lubrication

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Piston rods are pre-lubricated from the factory.<br>If lubricating the piston rod during the first installation procedure, skip to step 4 in <a href="#">Lubricating the piston rod on page 194</a> .                                                                                                               |                                                                                                     |
| 2 | Position axis 2 so that the balancing device is horizontal and the piston rod is extended to the greatest extent possible.                                                                                                                                                                                          | <br>xx2400001562 |
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                     |

#### Lubricating the piston rod

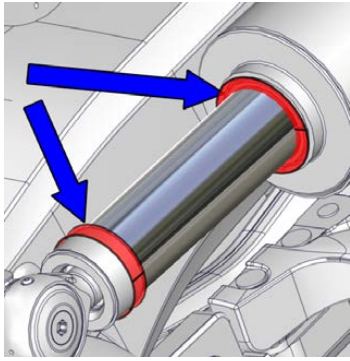
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                        |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Clean the piston rod.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Cleaning agent: Isopropanol |
| 2 | Apply a thin layer of grease across the entire unpainted surface of the piston rod.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>Too little grease may result in premature wear of the guide ring. Too much grease may result in an undesirable appearance or a risk of contaminating the surrounding environment. | Grease: 3HAC042536-001      |
| 3 | Turn on power to the robot again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                             |
| 4 | Jog the robot through the balancing device's full range of motion. Repeat one time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                             |
| 5 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.                                                               |                             |

*Continues on next page*



### 4.5.1 Lubricating the balancing device spherical roller bearing and piston rod

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                              | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Wipe away any excessive grease accumulating in the indicated areas. |  <p>xx2400000245</p> |

## 4 Maintenance

### 4.6.1 Cleaning the IRB 7720

## 4.6 Cleaning activities

### 4.6.1 Cleaning the IRB 7720

#### General

To secure high uptime it is important that the IRB 7720 is cleaned regularly. The frequency of cleaning depends on the environment in which the manipulator works. Different cleaning methods are allowed depending on the type of protection of the IRB 7720.



#### Note

Always verify the protection type of the robot before cleaning.

#### Oil spills

##### Oil spills from gearboxes

Use the following procedure if any oil spills are detected that can be suspected to originate from a gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                   | Note                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Inspect that the oil level in the suspected gearbox is according to the recommendations. | See <a href="#">Inspection activities on page 114</a> |
| 2 | Write down the oil level.                                                                |                                                       |
| 3 | Inspect the oil level again after, for example, 6 months.                                |                                                       |
| 4 | If the oil level is decreased, replace the gearbox.                                      |                                                       |

##### Oil spills discolors painted surfaces

Oil spills on painted surfaces of the robot can result in discoloration.



#### Note

After all repair and maintenance work involving oil, always wipe the robot clean from all surplus oil.



#### WARNING

Turn off all electrical power supplies to the robot before starting the cleaning.

#### Special cleaning considerations

This section specifies some special considerations when cleaning the robot.

- Always use cleaning equipment as specified. Any other cleaning equipment may shorten the life of the robot.
- Always check that all protective covers are fitted to the robot before cleaning.
- Do not use compressed air to clean the robot.

*Continues on next page*

- Do not remove any covers or other protective devices before cleaning the robot.

### Cleaning methods

This following table defines what cleaning methods are allowed for ABB manipulators depending on the protection type.

| Protection type | Cleaning method |                                                                 |                                                                                                                          |                                     |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
|                 | Vacuum cleaner  | Wipe with cloth                                                 | Rinse with water                                                                                                         | High pressure water, steam or spray |
| Standard        | Yes             | Yes. With mild cleaning detergent <sup>i</sup> or white spirit. | Yes. The water must contain a corrosion inhibitor and the manipulator must also be wiped with a drying cloth afterwards. | No                                  |
| Foundry Plus    | Yes             | Yes. With mild cleaning detergent <sup>i</sup> or white spirit. | Yes. The water must contain a corrosion inhibitor <sup>ii</sup> .                                                        | No                                  |

<sup>i</sup> Cleaning agent to be tested on a small surface prior usage on complete manipulator.

<sup>ii</sup> Recommended corrosion inhibitor: King Industries NA-SUL 1019A.

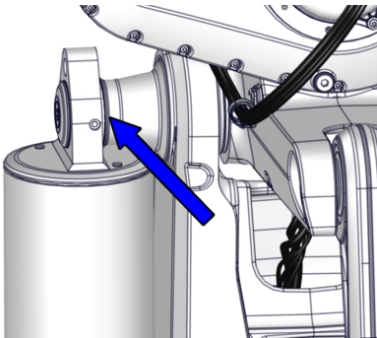
### Cleaning with water

#### Instructions for rinsing with water

ABB robots with protection types *Standard* or *Foundry Plus* can be cleaned by rinsing with water (water cleaner).<sup>1</sup>

The following list defines the prerequisites:

- Spray nozzle should be used with minimum 45° spread.
- Minimum distance from nozzle to encapsulation: 0.4 m.
- Maximum water pressure at the nozzle: 700 kN/m<sup>2</sup> (7 bar)<sup>1</sup>
- Maximum flow: 20 liters/min<sup>1</sup>
- Never point the nozzle at the following components:

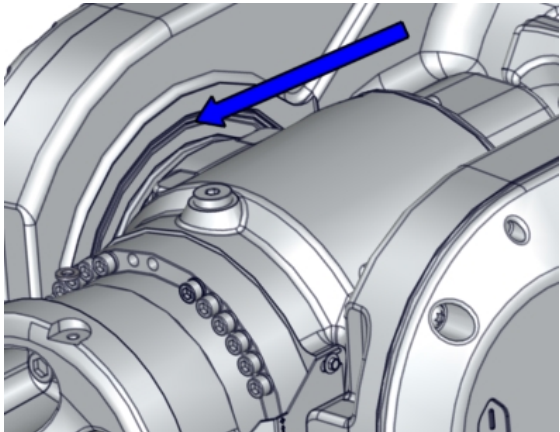
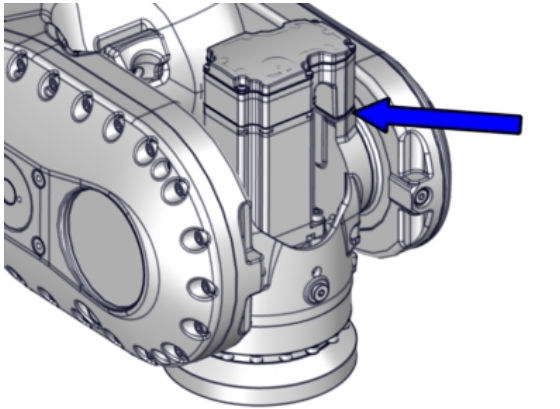
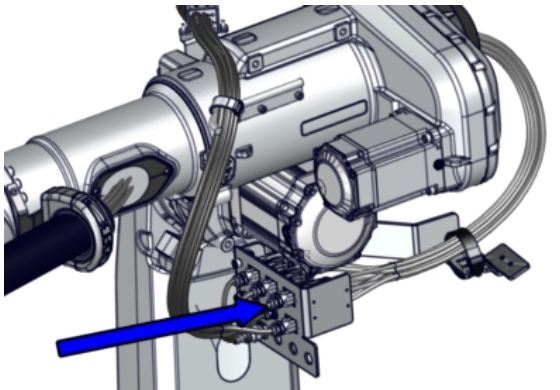
| Component | Example of component location                                                                        |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Joints    | <br>xx2400000145 |

<sup>1</sup> Exceptions that can not be rinsed with water: motor cooling fans (option number 3320-1, 3321-1, 3346-1).

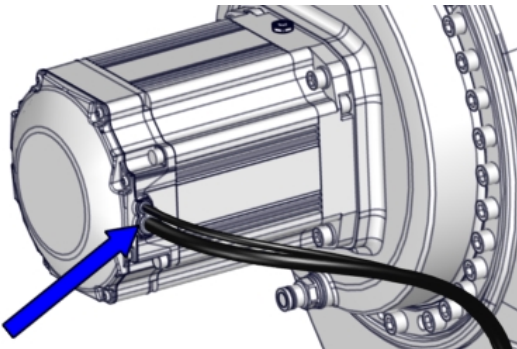
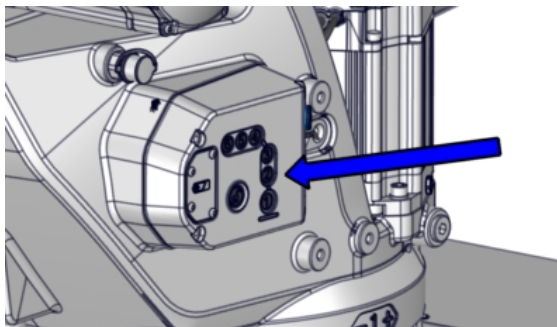
Continues on next page

4 Maintenance

4.6.1 Cleaning the IRB 7720  
Continued

| Component           | Example of component location                                                                        |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rotational sealings | <br>xx2300001055   |
| Gaskets             | <br>xx2300001056  |
| Connectors          | <br>xx2300001057 |

Continues on next page

| Component             | Example of component location                                                                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cable inlets          | <br>xx2400000146   |
| Brake release buttons | <br>xx23000001059 |

I Typical tap water pressure and flow

#### Cables

Movable cables need to be able to move freely:

- Remove waste material, such as sand, dust and chips, if it prevents cable movement.
- Clean the cables if they have a crusty surface, for example from dry release agents.

#### Cassette sealings

Minor seepage of grease from the seals can occur. Wipe down affected areas with a dry cloth.

#### Cooling fans

Inspect the air supply inlet of the motor cooling fans. Clean to remove any contamination that could hinder the air supply.

**This page is intentionally left blank**

## 5 Repair

### 5.1 Introduction

#### Structure of this chapter

This chapter describes repair activities for the IRB 7720. Each procedure contains the information required to perform the activity, for example spare parts numbers, required special tools, and materials.



#### WARNING

Repair activities not described in this chapter must only be carried out by ABB.

#### Report replaced units



#### Note

When replacing a part on the IRB 7720, report to your local ABB the serial number, the article number, and the revision of both the replaced unit and the replacement unit.

This is particularly important for safety equipment to maintain the safety integrity of the installation.

#### Safety information

Make sure to read through the chapter [Safety on page 15](#) before commencing any service work.



#### CAUTION

Follow the instructions to avoid errors of fitting during maintenance or repair.

### 5.2 Definition of spare part levels

---

#### Spare part level

ABB spare parts are categorized into three levels, L1, L2 and L3. Always check the part level before conducting a service work on a spare part.

- L1 spare parts

The L1 parts can be replaced in the field. The maintenance and replacement instructions given in the related product manuals must be strictly followed. If there are any problems, contact your local ABB for support.

- L2 spare parts

To replace the L2 parts require specialized training and might need special tools. Only ABB field service personnel or qualified personnel trained by ABB can replace L2 parts.

- L3 spare parts

L3 spare parts shall only be replaced or repaired by qualified ABB service technician with knowledge of the application due to reduce risk of injury or damage to equipment. Improper installation may void warranty.



## 5.3 General procedures

### 5.3.1 Performing a leak-down test

#### When to perform a leak-down test

After refitting any motor and gearbox, the integrity of all seals enclosing the gearbox oil must be tested. This is done in a leak-down test.

The gearbox must be drained of oil before performing the leak-down test.

#### Required equipment

| Equipment, etc.      | Article number | Note |
|----------------------|----------------|------|
| Leak-down tester     | -              |      |
| Leak detection spray | -              |      |

#### Performing a leak-down test

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Finish the refitting procedure of the motor or gear in question, but <b>do not</b> refill the gearbox with oil before performing the leak-down test.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 2 | Remove the upper oil plug on the gear and replace it with the leak-down tester.<br>Regulators, which are included in the leak-down test, may be required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 3 | Use caution, apply compressed air and raise the pressure with the knob until the correct value is shown on the manometer.<br><br> <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The pressure must under no circumstance be higher than 0.25 bar (20-25 kPa). Also during the time when the pressure is raised. | Correct value:<br>0.2-0.25 bar (20-25 kPa)                                                                                                                     |
| 4 | Disconnect the compressed air supply.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 5 | Wait for approximately 8-10 minutes and make sure that no pressure loss occurs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | If the compressed air is significantly colder or warmer than the gearbox to be tested, a slight pressure increase or decrease may occur. This is quite normal. |
| 6 | If any pressure drop occurred, then localize the leak as described in step 7.<br>If no pressure drop occurred, then remove the leak-down tester and refit the oil plug. The test is complete.                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 7 | Spray any suspected leak areas with the leak detection spray. Bubbles indicate a leak.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 8 | When the leak has been localized, take the necessary measures to correct the leak.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                |

## 5 Repair

### 5.3.2 Mounting instructions for bearings

### 5.3.2 Mounting instructions for bearings

#### General

This section describes how to mount and grease different types of bearings on the robot.

#### Equipment

| Equipment, etc. | Article number | Note                                                                       |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Grease          | 3HAC042536-001 | Shell Gadus S2<br>Used to grease the bearings, if not specified otherwise. |

#### Assembly of all bearings

Attend to the following instructions while mounting a bearing on the robot.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                    | Note |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | To avoid contamination, let a new bearing remain in its wrapping until it is time for fitting.                                                                            |      |
| 2 | Ensure that the parts included in the bearing fitting are free from burrs, grinding waste, and other contamination. Cast components must be free of foundry sand.         |      |
| 3 | Bearing rings, inner rings, and roller elements must not be subjected to direct impact. The roller elements must not be exposed to any stresses during the assembly work. |      |

#### Assembly of tapered bearings

Follow the preceding instructions for the assembly of the bearings when mounting a tapered bearing on the robot.

In addition to those instructions, the following procedure must be carried out to enable the roller elements to adjust to the correct position against the race flange.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Tension the bearing gradually until the recommended pre-tension is achieved.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The roller elements must be rotated a specified number of turns before pre-tensioning is carried out and also rotated during the pre-tensioning sequence. |      |
| 2 | Make sure the bearing is properly aligned as this will directly affect the durability of the bearing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |      |

#### Greasing of bearings



#### Note

This instruction is not valid for solid oil bearings.

*Continues on next page*

The bearings must be greased after assembly according to the following instructions:

- The bearings must not be completely filled with grease. However, if space is available beside the bearing fitting, the bearing may be totally filled with grease when mounted, as excessive grease will be pressed out from the bearing when the robot is started.
- During operation, the bearing should be filled to 70-80% of the available volume.
- Ensure that grease is handled and stored properly to avoid contamination.

Grease the different types of bearings as following description:

- *Grooved ball bearings* must be filled with grease from both sides.
- *Tapered roller bearings* and axial needle bearings must be greased in the split condition.

## 5 Repair

### 5.3.3 Mounting instructions for sealings

### 5.3.3 Mounting instructions for sealings

#### General

This section describes how to mount different types of sealings.

#### Equipment

| Consumable | Article number | Note           |
|------------|----------------|----------------|
| Grease     | 3HAC042536-001 | Shell Gadus S2 |

#### Rotating sealings

The following procedures describe how to fit rotating sealings.



#### CAUTION

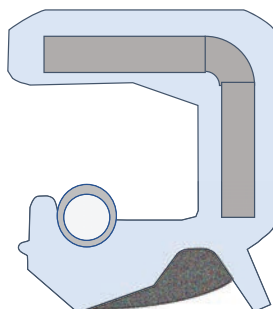
Please observe the following before commencing any assembly of sealings:

- Protect the sealing during transport and mounting, especially the main lip on radial sealings.
- Keep the sealing in its original wrappings or protect it well before actual mounting.
- The fitting of sealings and gears must be carried out on clean workbenches.
- Use a protective sleeve for the main lip during mounting, when sliding over threads, keyways or other sharp edges.
- Do not lubricate a static side of a sealing with grease, since this may result in movement of the sealing during operation.

The only exception for lubrication of static sides of a sealing, is to use P-80 rubber lubrication gel against certain aluminium surfaces. If usage of P-80 is relevant, it is stated in the repair procedures.

#### Radial sealings

A radial sealing consists of a flexible rubber lip bonded to a rigid metal case. Only one side of the sealing is static with a metal insert.

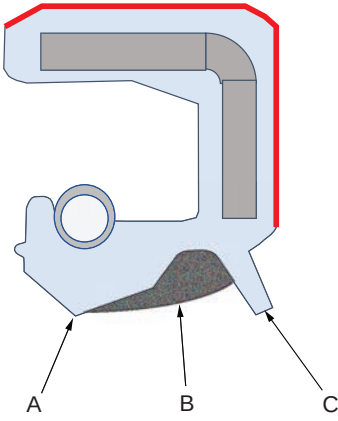


xx2300000433

*Continues on next page*

### 5.3.3 Mounting instructions for sealings

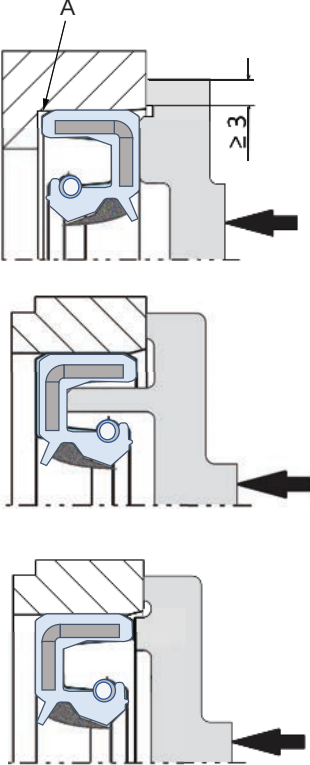
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check the sealing to ensure that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The sealing is of the correct type.</li> <li>• There is no damage on the main lip.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 2 | Inspect the shaft surface before mounting. If scratches or damage are found, the shaft must be replaced since it may result in future leakage. Do not try to grind or polish the shaft surface to get rid of the defect.                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 3 | Lubricate the sealing with grease just before fitting. (Not too early - there is a risk of dirt and foreign particles adhering to the sealing.)<br>Fill 2/3 of the space between the dust lip and the main lip with grease. If the sealing is without dust lip, just lubricate the main lip with a thin layer of grease. | <p>Article number is specified in <a href="#">Equipment on page 206</a>.</p>  <p>xx2000000071</p> <p>A Main lip<br/>B Grease<br/>C Dust lip</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Ensure that no grease is applied to the red marked surface.</p> |

*Continues on next page*

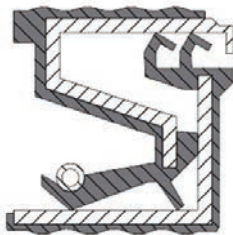
5 Repair

5.3.3 Mounting instructions for sealings  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                         |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Mount the sealing correctly with a mounting tool. Never hammer directly on the sealing as this may result in leakage. | <br><small>xx2000000072</small><br>A Gap |

Cassette sealings

A cassette sealing is a fully enclosed seal with an integrated sealing system. Both sides of the cassette sealing are static with metal inserts.



xx2300000432

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Check the sealing to ensure that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The sealing is of the correct type.</li><li>• There is no damage on the sealing.</li></ul>                                                                    |      |
| 2 | Inspect the mating surfaces on the manipulator before mounting. If scratches or damage are found, the part must be replaced since it may result in future leakage. Do not try to grind or polish the surfaces to get rid of the defect. |      |

Continues on next page

### 5.3.3 Mounting instructions for sealings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                           |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Always install the sealing with a mounting tool specified by ABB.<br>Never hammer directly on the sealing as this may result in leakage. | See the replacement procedure for the cassette sealing, in the repair chapter. |

**Note**

A new sealing has an initial wear that can cause lubricant to seep out and in some cases produce minor residues of rubber particles.

This is normal behavior of the sealing and does not indicate a seal problem. Wipe the surrounding surfaces after initial run time.

**Flange sealings and static sealings**

The following procedure describes how to fit flange sealings and static sealings.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check the flange surfaces. They must be even and free from pores.<br>It is easy to check flatness using a gauge on the fastened joint (without sealing compound).<br>If the flange surfaces are defective, the parts may not be used because leakage could occur. |
| 2 | Clean the surfaces properly in accordance with the recommendations of ABB.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 3 | Distribute the sealing compound evenly over the surface.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 4 | Tighten the screws evenly when fastening the flange joint.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

**O-rings**

The following procedure describes how to fit o-rings.

|   | Action                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                       |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Ensure that the correct o-ring size is used.                                                                            |                                                                            |
| 2 | Check the o-ring for surface defects, burrs, shape accuracy, or deformation.                                            | Defective o-rings, including damaged or deformed o-rings, may not be used. |
| 3 | Check the o-ring grooves and mating surfaces. They should be free of pores, contamination and obvious scratches/damage. |                                                                            |
| 4 | Lubricate the o-ring with grease.                                                                                       |                                                                            |
| 5 | Tighten the screws evenly while assembling.                                                                             |                                                                            |
| 6 | Check that the o-ring is not squashed outside the o-ring groove.                                                        |                                                                            |

## 5 Repair

### 5.3.4 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

### 5.3.4 Cut the paint or surface on the robot before replacing parts

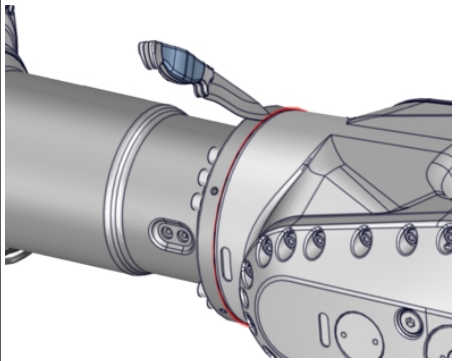
#### General

Follow the procedures in this section whenever breaking the paint of the robot during replacement of parts.

#### Required equipment

| Equipment                            | Spare parts    | Note                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cleaning agent                       |                | Ethanol                                                              |
| Knife                                |                |                                                                      |
| Lint free cloth                      |                |                                                                      |
| Touch up paint Standard/Foundry Plus | 3HAC067974-001 | Used to repair coating damages on the manipulator.<br>Graphite White |
| Touch up paint Standard/Foundry Plus | 3HAC037052-001 | Used to repair coating damages on the manipulator.<br>ABB Orange     |

#### Removing

| Action                                                                                                                             | Description                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Cut the paint with a knife in the joint between the part that will be removed and the structure, to avoid that the paint cracks. | <br>xx2300000950 |
| 2 Carefully grind the paint edge that is left on the structure to a smooth surface.                                                |                                                                                                      |

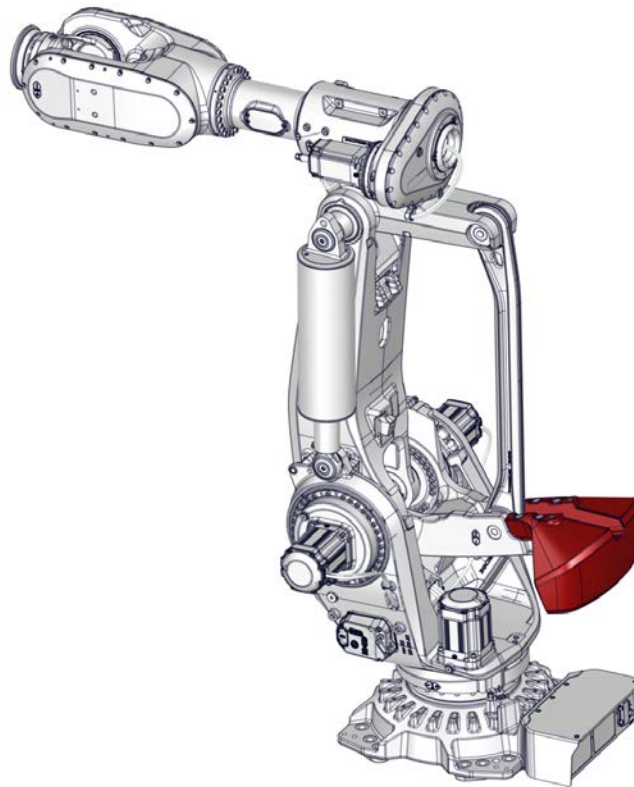


## 5.4 Counter balancing weight

### 5.4.1 Replacing the counter balancing weight

#### Location of the counter balancing weight

The counter balancing weight is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001550

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part               | Article number                                                       | Note | Level |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------|
| Counter balancing weight | 3HAC074488-004<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC074488-005<br>(ABB Orange) |      | L2    |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the counter balancing weight

*Continued*

#### Required service parts

| Consumable      | Article number | Note                                     |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------------------------------|
| Locking liquid  | -              | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |
| Protection plug | 3HAC4836-6     | For screw holes.                         |
| Protection plug | 3HAC4836-21    | For lifting holes.                       |

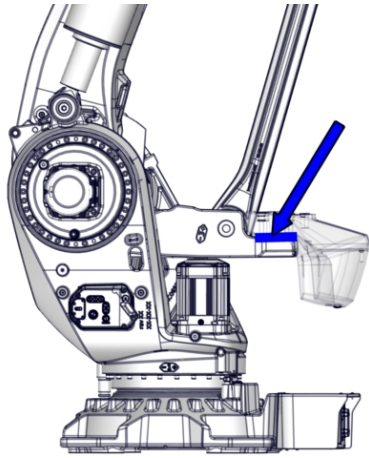
#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                 | Article number | Note                                      |
|---------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Lifting eye M20           | -              |                                           |
| Lifting eye M16           | 3HAC14457-4    |                                           |
| Lifting accessory (chain) | 3HAC15556-1    | Lifting instruction 3HAC15880-2 enclosed. |
| Roundsling, 2 m           | -              | Length: 2 m.                              |

#### Removing the counter balancing weight

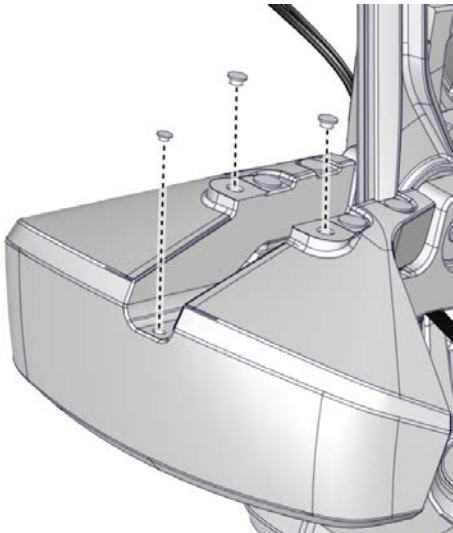
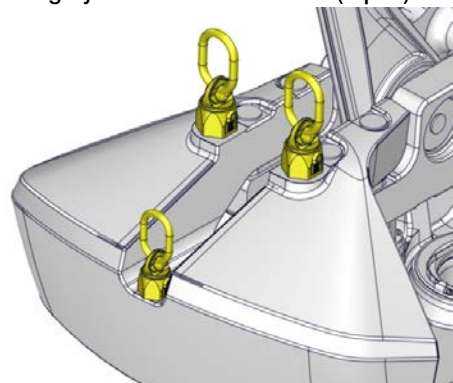
Use these procedures to remove the counter balancing weight.

#### Preparations before removing the counter balancing weight

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to a position where the counter balancing weight attachment area is horizontal to the foundation.                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <br>xx2300001542 |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

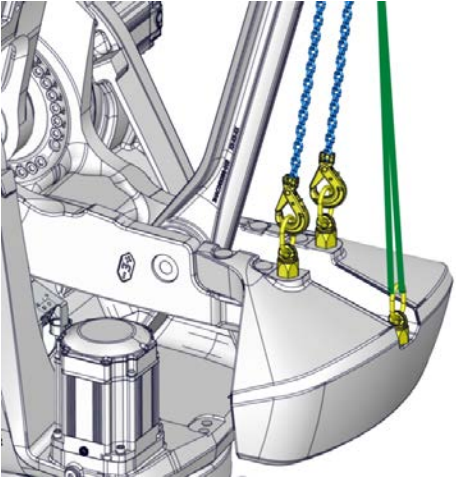
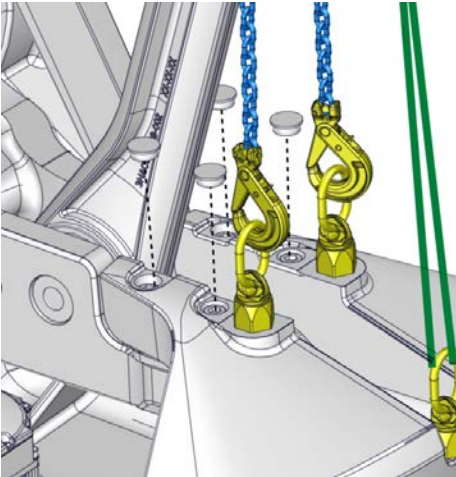
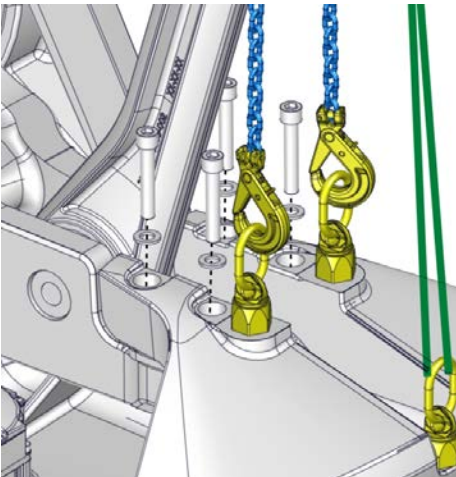
## Removing the counter balancing weight

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the counter balancing weight is 515 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2 | Remove the plastic plugs that cover the lifting eye holes.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Keep the plastic plugs for refitting.                | <br>xx2300001543                                                                        |
| 3 | Attach lifting eyes.                                                                                                                                                                                                | Lifting eye M20: - (2 pcs)<br>Lifting eye M16: 3HAC14457-4 (1 pcs)<br><br>xx2300001544 |
| 4 | Attach the lifting chains and a roundsling to the lifting eyes.                                                                                                                                                     | Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1<br>Lifting instruction 3HAC15880-2 enclosed.<br>Roundsling, 2 m: -                                                                  |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

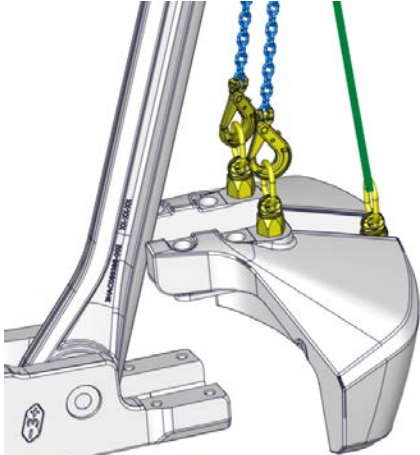
5.4.1 Replacing the counter balancing weight  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 Stretch the lifting accessory to take the weight of the counterweight.                                                                                                                         | <br>xx2300001545   |
| 6 Remove the plastic plugs that cover the screw holes.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Keep the plastic plugs for refitting. | <br>xx2300001546  |
| 7 Remove the counterweight attachment screws and washers.                                                                                                                                        | <br>xx2300001547 |

Continues on next page

## 5.4.1 Replacing the counter balancing weight

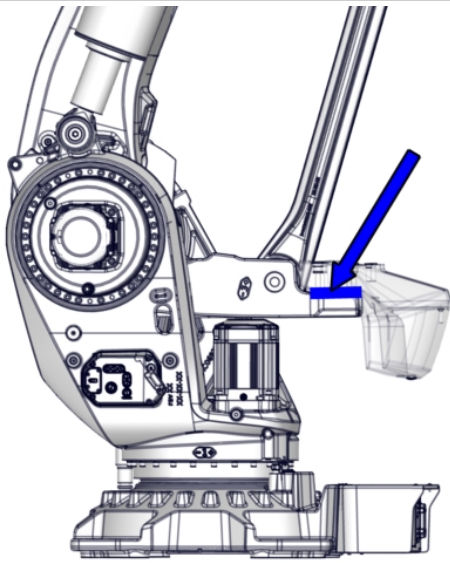
*Continued*

| Action                                    | Note                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 Lift away the counter balancing weight. | <br>xx2300001548 |

**Refitting the counter balancing weight**

Use these procedures to refit the counter balancing weight.

Robot position when refitting the counter balancing weight

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 If not already in this position:<br>Jog the robot to a position where the counter balancing weight attachment area is horizontal to the foundation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2300001542 |
| 2 <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <div style="margin-left: 10px;"> <b>DANGER</b><br/><br/>           Turn off all:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>electric power supply</li> <li>hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>air pressure supply</li> </ul>           to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. </div> </div> |                                                                                                      |

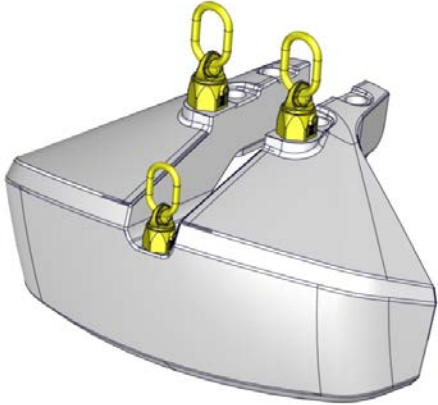
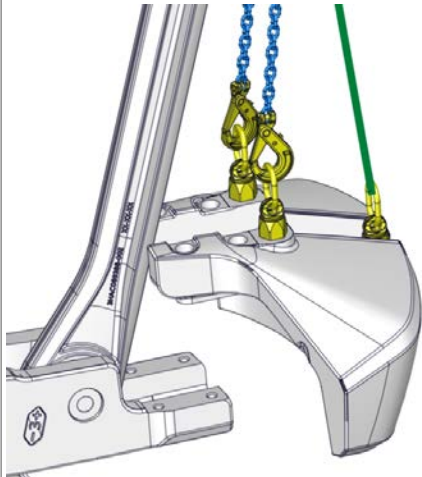
*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the counter balancing weight

*Continued*

#### Refitting the counter balancing weight

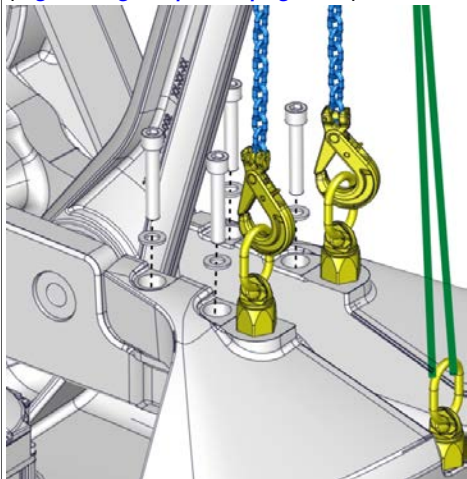
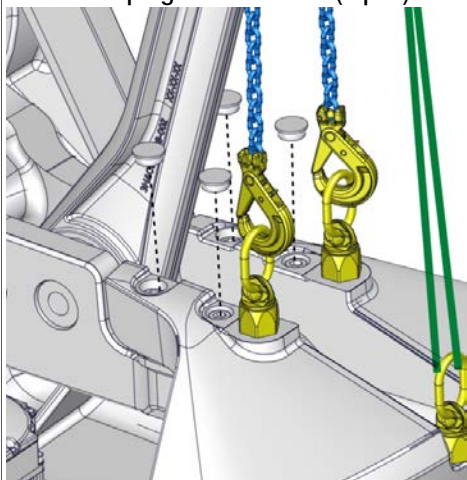
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The weight of the counter balancing weight is 515 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 2 | Attach lifting eyes, if not already done.                                                                                                                                                                               | Lifting eye M20: - (2 pcs)<br>Lifting eye M16: 3HAC14457-4 (1 pcs)<br><br><br><br>xx2300001549 |
| 3 | Attach the lifting chains to the lifting eyes.                                                                                                                                                                          | Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1<br>Lifting instruction 3HAC15880-2 enclosed.<br>Roundsling, 2 m: -                                                                         |
| 4 | Lift the counter balancing weight into installation position.                                                                                                                                                           | <br><br>xx2300001548                                                                          |

*Continues on next page*



### 5.4.1 Replacing the counter balancing weight

*Continued*

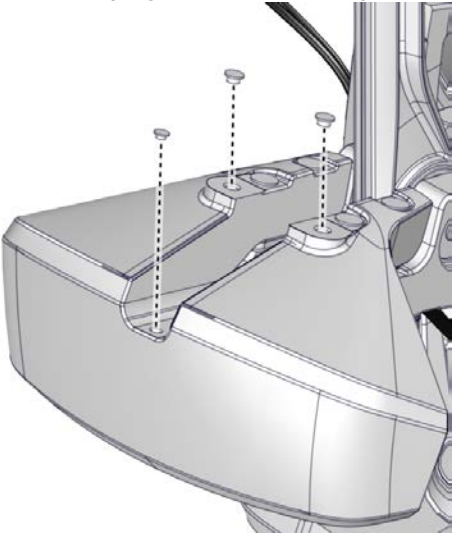
|   | Action                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Secure the counterweight to the parallel arm with attachment screws and washers. Use locking liquid on the attachment screws. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M16x90 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs )</p> <p>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p> <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 300 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>)</p>  <p>xx2300001547</p> |
| 6 | Refit the plastic plugs in the screw holes.                                                                                   | <p>Protection plug: 3HAC4836-6 (4 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300001546</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 7 | Remove the lifting accessories.                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.4.1 Replacing the counter balancing weight

*Continued*

|   | Action                                            | Note                                                                                                                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Refit the plastic plugs in the lifting eye holes. | Protection plug: 3HAC4836-21 (2 pcs)<br><br>xx2300001543 |

#### Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |      |

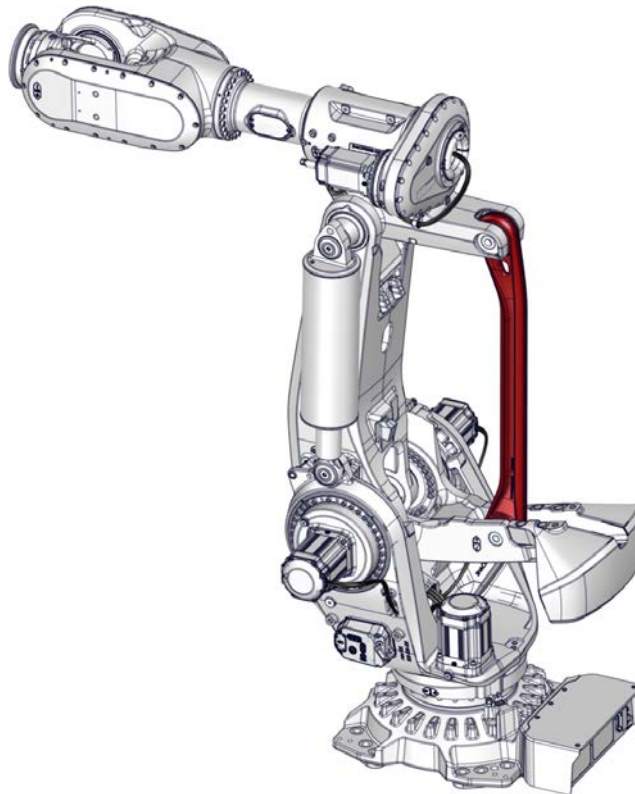


## 5.5 Lower arm

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

#### Location of the parallel rod

The parallel rod is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001894

#### Summary of the replacement procedure

This is a brief summary of the replacement procedure, containing the major actions to be performed.

- 1 Secure the weight of the upper arm.
- 2 Remove the upper and lower parallel rod shafts with press tools.
- 3 Replace the parallel rod bearings, if needed.
- 4 Replace the parallel rod.

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robotics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

| Spare part   | Article number                                                       | Note                                           |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Parallel rod | 3HAC085618-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC085618-004<br>(ABB Orange) | Includes spherical roller bearing and washers. |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                                   | Article number | Note                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Roundsling, 1 m                             | -              | Length: 1 m.                                                                                                                                             |
| Roundsling, 2 m                             | -              | Length: 2 m.                                                                                                                                             |
| Brake release tool                          | 3HAC081310-001 | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                                                            |
| Screw, M10 x minimum 80 mm                  | -              | Used to fix the parallel rod in position                                                                                                                 |
| Hydraulic cylinder                          | 3HAC071377-001 | Maximum capacity: 6 Ton<br>To be used with the press and puller tools.<br>See technical specifications in the user instructions for the press equipment. |
| Hydraulic pump                              | -              | To be used with the press and puller tools.<br>See technical specifications in the user instructions for the press equipment.                            |
| Press tools, parallel rod shaft and bearing | 3HAC093483-001 | Used to press out the parallel rod shaft and bearing.<br>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                   |
| Standard toolkit                            | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                                                             |

#### Required service parts

| Consumable      | Article number | Note                                                   |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Rust preventive | 3HAC034903-001 | Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h. |
| Locking liquid  | -              | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)               |

#### Required documents

| Document                                                         | Document number | Note                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| User instructions, press tool for parallel rod shaft and bearing | 3HAC093483-003  | Enclosed with the tool. |

#### Removing the parallel rod

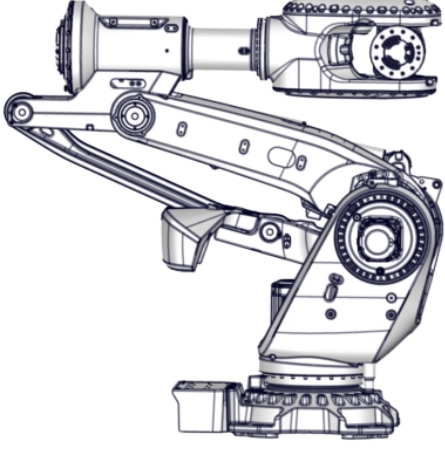
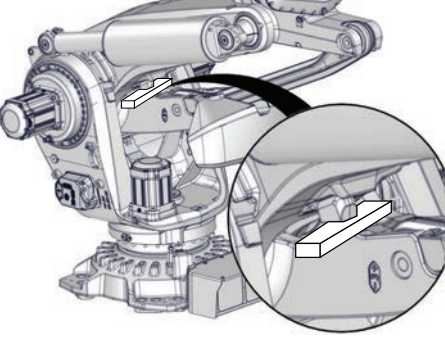
Use these procedures to remove the parallel rod.

*Continues on next page*

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

Robot position when removing the parallel rod

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Jog the robot to the specified position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: No significance, as long as the robot is secured to the foundation.</li> <li>• Axis 2: place a wooden block between the parallel arm and the lower arm damper and jog down the lower arm against the block (approximately <math>-65^{\circ}</math>)</li> <li>• Axis 3: <math>0^{\circ}</math></li> <li>• Axis 4: <math>+90^{\circ}</math></li> <li>• Axis 5: <math>-90^{\circ}</math></li> <li>• Axis 6: No significance.</li> </ul> |  <p>xx2300001895</p>  <p>xx2500001941</p> |
| 2 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

Attaching the lifting accessories to the upper arm

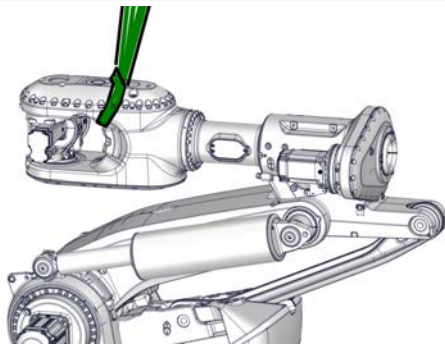
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the complete upper arm (including the wrist) is 465-580 kg, depending on robot variant</p> <p>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

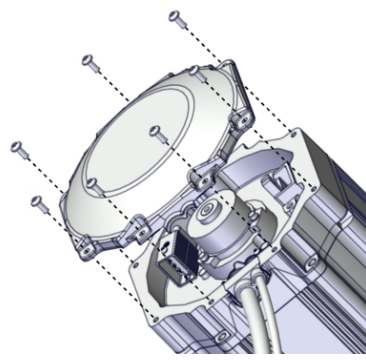
### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                               |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>If needed, use a ladder to attach the lifting accessories.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Never use the robot as ladder.</p> | Mobile platform ladder                                                                             |
| 3 | <p>Loop a roundsling to the wrist and attach it to an overhead crane (or similar).</p>                                                                                                                         | <br>xx2500001940 |
| 4 | <p>Stretch the lifting accessories to take the weight of the upper arm.</p>                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                    |

#### Releasing the brakes on the axis-2 motor

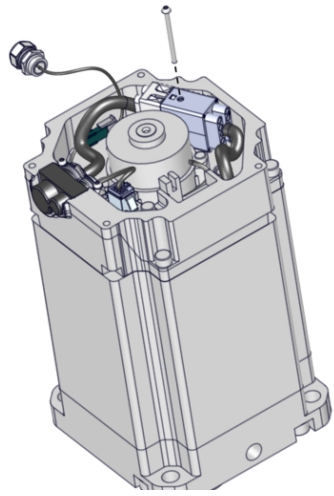
Releasing the brakes on the axis-2 motor is done to unload the weight of the upper arm into the lifting accessories, before starting to remove the parallel rod shaft.

|   | Action                                                                    | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Remove the motor cover of the axis-2 motor by removing the screws.</p> | <br>xx2100000596 |

*Continues on next page*

## 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

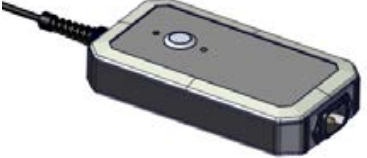
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <br>xx2200001736 |
| 3 | <p>Before continuing, make sure that the upper arm is secured in the lifting accessories and overhead crane.</p> <p>Stretch the lifting accessories to unload the upper arm weight.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The upper arm including the wrist weighs approximately 465-580 kg, depending on robot variant. All lifting accessories must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                     |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

Continued

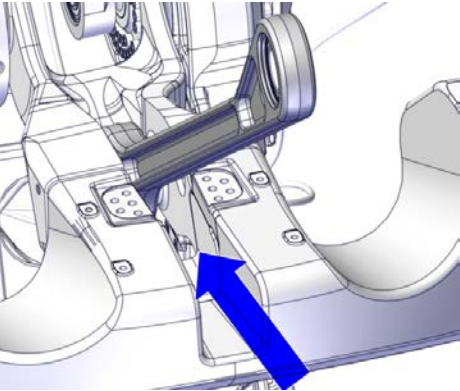
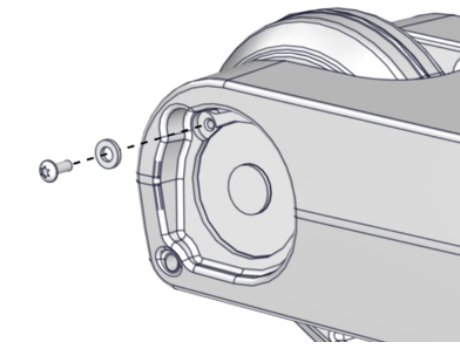
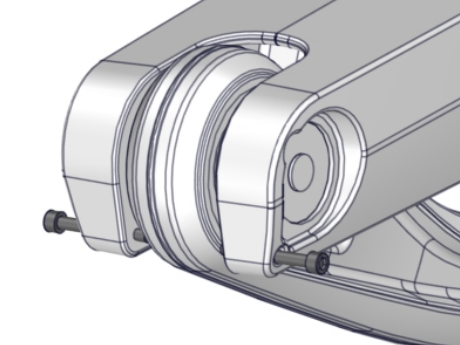
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Releasing the brakes on the axis-2 motor results in weight transfer of upper and lower arm weight to the inserted lock screw in the lower arm or to the attached lifting accessories (whichever is used). If lifting accessories are used, verify that the lifting chains and roundslings are stretched by raising the overhead crane, before releasing the brakes.</p> <p>Release the brakes of the axis-2 motor with the brake release tool, to allow the lower arm to position according to the lifting force applied from the overhead crane. This eliminates any strain in the upper arm shafts:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li><li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li><li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li></ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 5 | Remove the brake release tool from the axis-2 motor.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

Continues on next page

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the upper parallel rod shaft

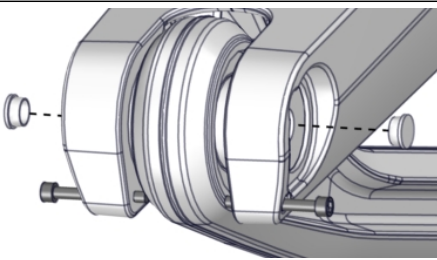
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Put a piece of wood (or similar) between parallel arm and parallel rod, used as protection to prevent the rod from moving unexpectedly during the continued procedure.                                                                                                                                                     |  <p>xx1500001963</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 2 | Remove the attachment screw with washer that secure the rod shaft.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  <p>xx2300001896</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 3 | <p>Remove the two protection plugs and fit fixing screws in the holes. Adjust the screws against the parallel rod from both sides.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Keep the plastic plugs. They must be refitted after the work is done.</p> | <p>This is done to prevent the upper arm wings from pinching when pressing the shaft and thereby making it more difficult to press the shaft in or out.</p> <p>Screw, M10 x minimum 80 mm</p>  <p>xx2300001897</p> |

*Continues on next page*

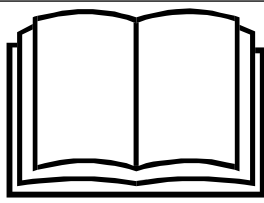
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

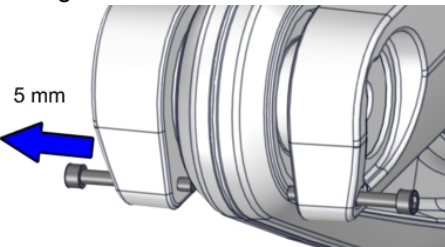
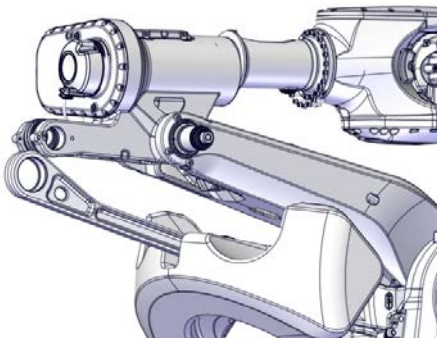
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>4</div> <div>Remove the protection plugs.</div> <div><div> <b>Note</b></div><div>Keep the plastic plugs. They must be refitted after the work is done.</div></div> | <div></div> <div>xx2300001898</div> |

Removing the upper parallel rod shaft

|                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div></div> <div>xx0900000813</div> | <div>Go to the user instructions enclosed with the press tool to remove the parallel rod shaft.</div> <div>Press tools, parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-001</div> <div>User instructions, press tool for parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-003</div> <div><div> <b>WARNING</b></div><div>Handling the tool incorrectly may cause serious injury.</div><div>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</div></div> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Removing the upper end of the parallel rod

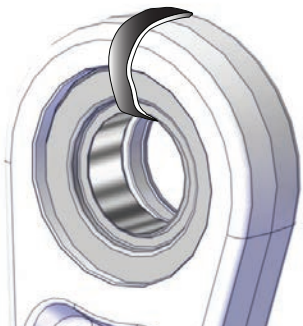
| Action                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>1</div> <div>Unscrew one of the fixing screws, approximately 5 mm, on one side of the parallel rod. Leave the screw on the other side.</div> | <div>This is to be able to remove the parallel rod without problems and to be able to find the correct position of the parallel rod, when refitting it.</div> <div></div> <div>xx2300001915</div> |
| <div>2</div> <div>Move the parallel rod down and let it rest on the piece of wood, which was put there earlier.</div>                             | <div></div> <div>xx1500001965</div>                                                                                                                                                               |

Continues on next page

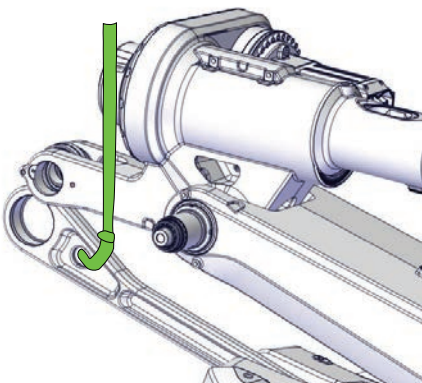


### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                         |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Secure the bearing, thrust washer, protection ring and cover washer with a strap (or similar) to prevent them from dropping out of its position. | Strap<br><br>xx1500002716 |

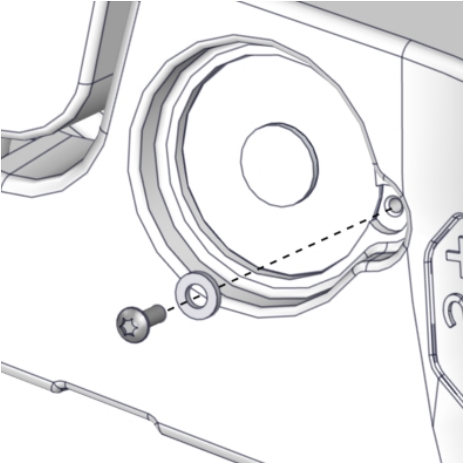
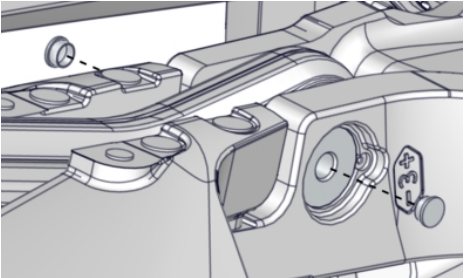
#### Preparations before removing the lower parallel rod shaft

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the parallel rod is 48 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                        |
| 2 | Attach a roundsling, looped through the parallel rod and to an overhead crane (or similar).                                                                                                            | Roundsling, 1 m: Length: 1 m.<br><br>xx1500002698 |
| 3 | Stretch the roundsling to start taking the weight of the parallel rod.                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                        |

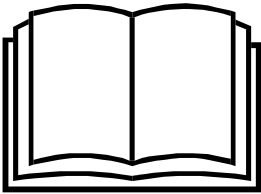
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 Remove the attachment screw with washer that secure the rod shaft.                                                                                                                                     | <br>xx2300001916  |
| 5 Remove the protection plugs.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Keep the plastic plugs. They must be refitted after the work is done. | <br>xx2300001917 |

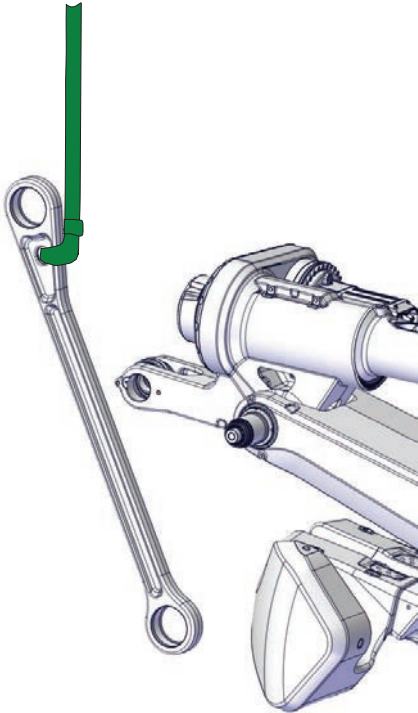
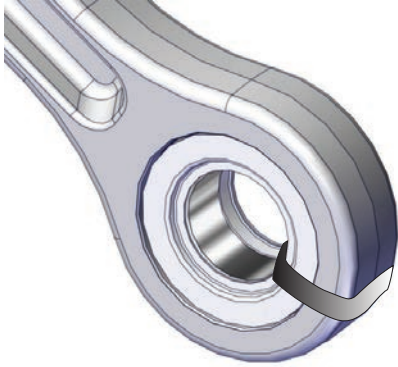
Removing the lower parallel rod shaft

|                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>xx0900000813 | <p>Go to the user instructions enclosed with the press tool to remove the parallel rod shaft.</p> <p>Press tools, parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-001</p> <p>User instructions, press tool for parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-003</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly may cause serious injury.<br/>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Continues on next page

5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings  
*Continued*

## Removing the parallel rod completely

|   | Action                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Use caution and lift the parallel rod off.                                                                                                       | <br>xx1500002745                 |
| 2 | Secure the bearing, thrust washer, protection ring and cover washer with a strap (or similar) to prevent them from dropping out of its position. | <b>Strap</b><br><br>xx1500002744 |

## Replacing the parallel rod bearing

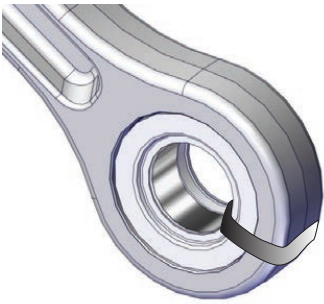
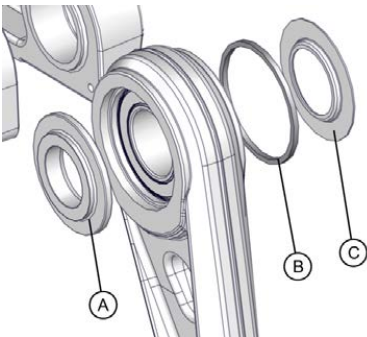
These sections describe how to replace the parallel rod bearings, if needed. The bearings are included in the parallel rod spare part, but can also be replaced separately.

*Continues on next page*

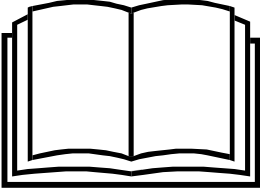
5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings  
Continued

Preparations before replacing the parallel rod bearing

|   | Action                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the strap which was used to keep the bearing, thrust washer, protection ring and cover washer in position. | <br><br>xx1500002744                                                                |
| 2 | Remove the thrust washer, protection ring and cover washer, and wipe them clean.                                  | <br><br>xx2400001575<br><br>A Thrust washer<br>B Protection ring<br>C Cover washer |

Replacing the parallel rod bearing

|                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br><br>xx0900000813 | <p>Go to the user instructions enclosed with the press tool to replace the parallel rod bearing.</p> <p>Press tools, parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-001</p> <p>User instructions, press tool for parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-003</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly may cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Refitting the parallel rod

Use these procedures to refit the parallel rod.

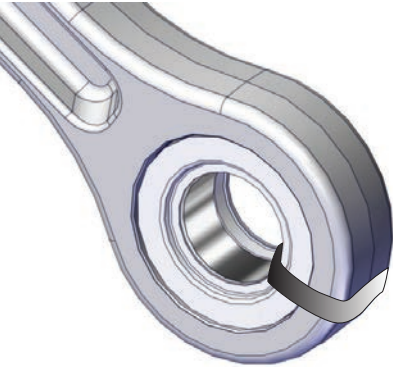
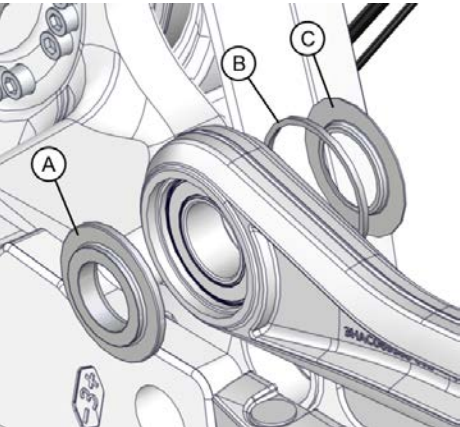
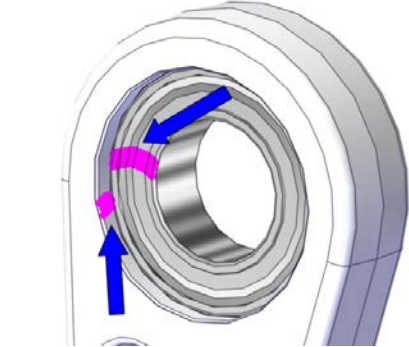
|                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <b>Note</b> |
| Start refitting the parallel rod in the lower end.                                              |

Continues on next page

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

#### Preparations before refitting the lower end of the parallel rod

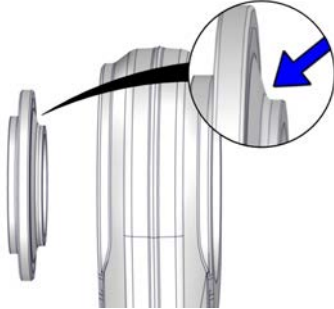
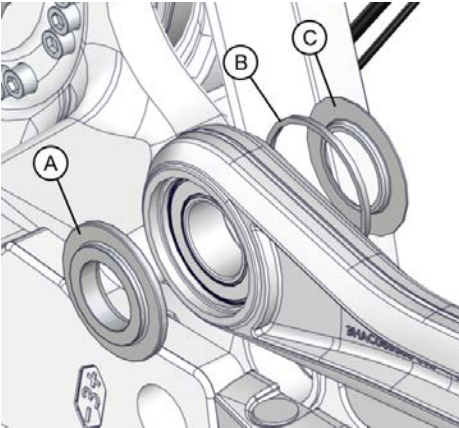
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the strap which was used to keep the bearing, thrust washer, protection ring and cover washer in position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  <p>xx1500002744</p>                                                                  |
| 2 | <p>Remove the thrust washer, protection ring and cover washer, and wipe them clean. Check if the corrosion protection of the bearings and all machined surfaces is adequate. If not, proceed with step 3 and step 4.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make a note on which side the parts are placed.</p> |  <p>xx2400001574</p> <p>A Thrust washer<br/>B Protection ring<br/>C Cover washer</p> |
| 3 | Wipe the shafts and the holes for the shafts clean.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 4 | Apply corrosion protection on both sides of the bearings, and on all machined surfaces on the parallel rod.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Mercasol</p>  <p>xx1500002100</p>                                                |

*Continues on next page*

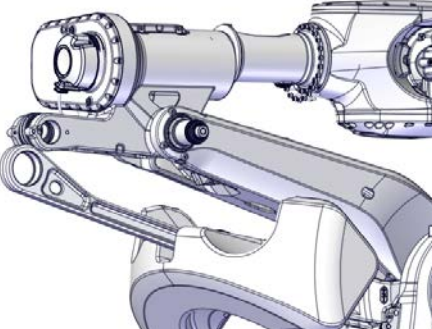
## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Put back the thrust washer (left side) and the protection ring and cover washer (right side).</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Turn the conical side of the thrust washer faced inwards.</p>  <p>xx2400001584</p> |  <p>xx2400001574</p> <p>A Thrust washer<br/>B Protection ring<br/>C Cover washer</p> |

### Refitting the lower end of the parallel rod

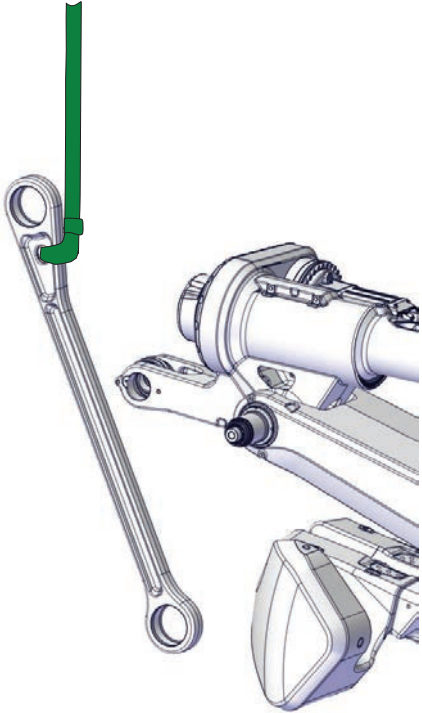
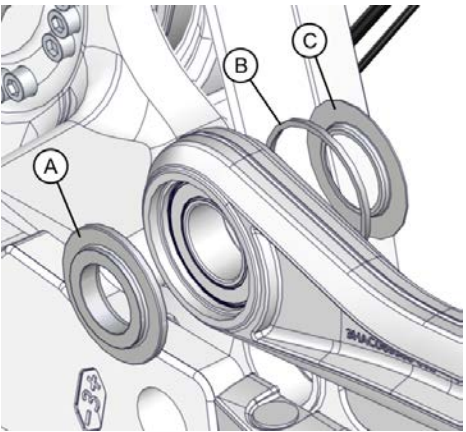
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Always start refitting at the lower end.</p>                                                               |  <p>xx1500001965</p> |
| 2 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the parallel rod is 48 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                          |
| 3 | <p>Attach a roundsling to the parallel rod and to an overhead crane (or similar).</p>                                                                                                                                | <p>Roundsling, 1 m: Length: 1 m.</p>                                                                     |

*Continues on next page*



## 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

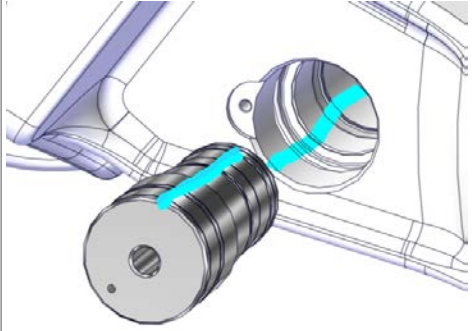
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Use caution, stretch the roundsling and lift the parallel rod into mounting position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <br>xx1500002745                                                                    |
| 5 | Place the lower end at mounting position and apply the press tool parts (Assembly tool, Press plate and Round plate).                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 6 | <p>Make sure that the thrust washer and the protection ring and cover washer on either side of the bearing, are in position.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure that the washers are on the correct sides of the bearing.</p> | <br>xx2400001574<br><p>A Thrust washer<br/>B Protection ring<br/>C Cover washer</p> |

*Continues on next page*

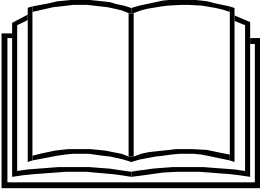
## 5 Repair

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

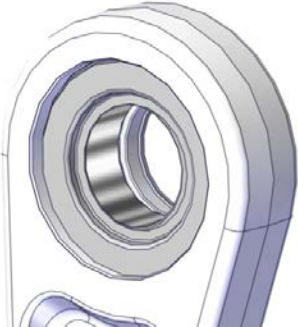
*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 Apply some grease on the shafts and in the holes on both sides of parallel arm, and as well as in the bearing hole. | <br>xx1500002301 |

#### Refitting the lower parallel rod shaft

|                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>xx0900000813 | <p>Go to the user instructions enclosed with the press tool to refit the parallel rod shaft.</p> <p>Press tools, parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-001</p> <p>User instructions, press tool for parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-003</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly may cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

#### Preparations before refitting the upper end of the parallel rod

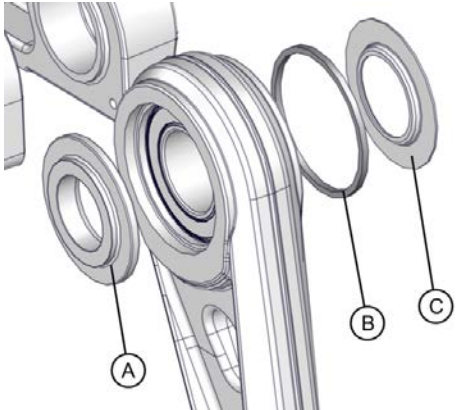
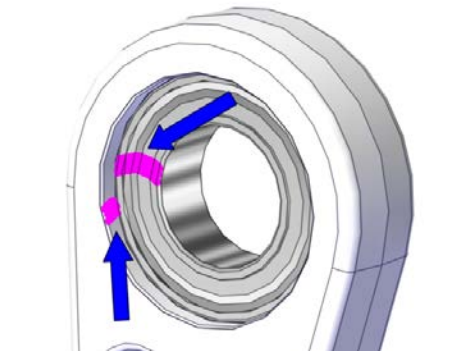
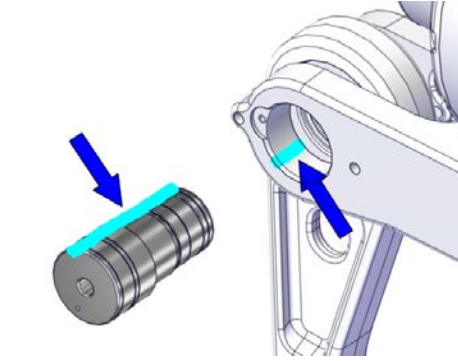
| Action                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Remove the strap, which was used to keep bearing, thrust washer and cover washer in position. | <br>xx1500002097 |

*Continues on next page*



### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

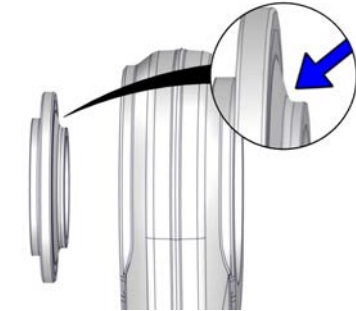
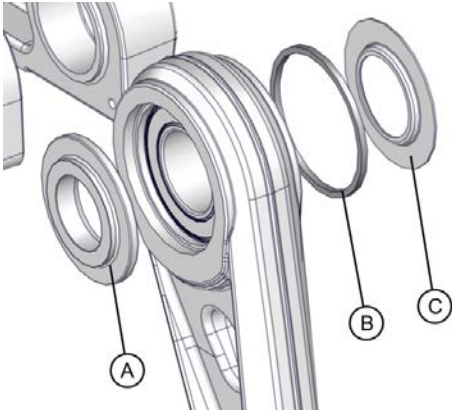
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the thrust washer, protection ring and cover washer, and wipe them clean.                                       |  <p>xx2400001575</p> <p>A Thrust washer<br/>B Protection ring<br/>C Cover washer</p> |
| 3 | Wipe clean the shafts and the holes for the shafts.                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 4 | Apply corrosion protection (Mercasol) on both sides of the bearings, and on all machined surfaces on the parallel rod. | <p>Mercasol</p>  <p>xx1500002100</p>                                               |
| 5 | Apply some grease on the shafts and in both upper arm mounting holes.                                                  |  <p>xx1500002293</p>                                                               |

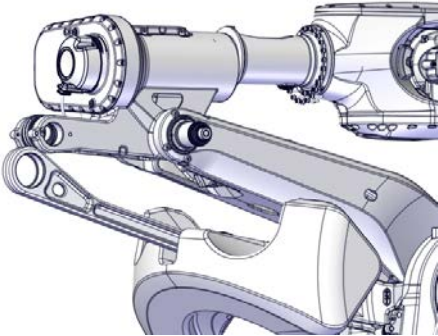
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <div>6</div> <div>Put back the thrust washer (left side) and the protection ring and cover washer (right side).</div> <div><div></div><div><div></div><div><div>xx2400001575</div><div>A Thrust washer<br/>B Protection ring<br/>C Cover washer</div></div></div><div><div>xx2400001584</div></div></div> |      |

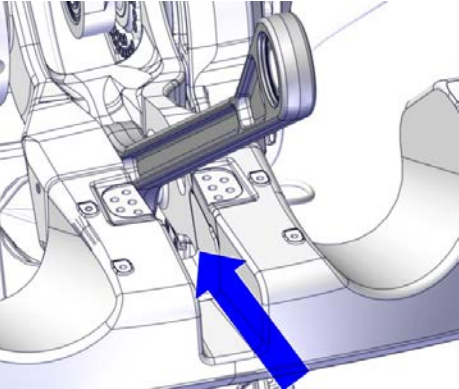
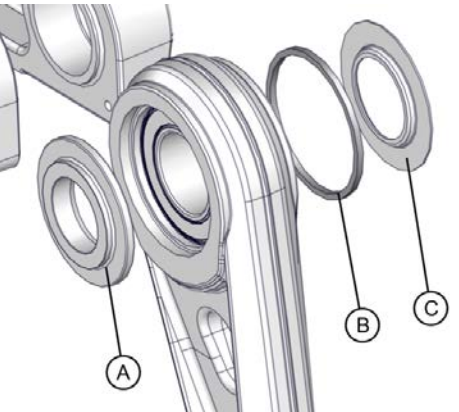
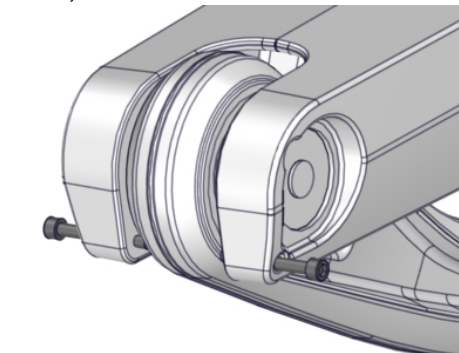
Refitting the upper end of the parallel rod

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>1</div> <div><div> <b>Note</b></div><div>If the parallel rod has been removed from the robot, always start refitting at the lower end!</div></div> |                                                                                                                                    |
| <div>2</div> <div>Take a firm grip of the parallel rod and lift it up into mounting position.</div>                                                                                                                                        | <div></div> <div><div>xx1500001965</div></div> |

Continues on next page

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

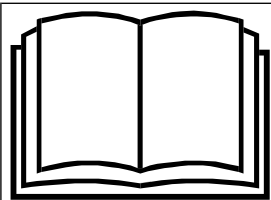
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Put a piece of wood (or similar) between parallel arm and parallel rod, used as protection to prevent the rod from moving unexpectedly during the procedure.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  <p>xx1500001963</p>                                                                  |
| 4 | <p>Make sure that the thrust washer and the protection ring and cover washer on either side of the bearing, are in position.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure that the washers are on the correct sides of the bearing.</p>                                                              |  <p>xx2400001575</p> <p>A Thrust washer<br/>B Protection ring<br/>C Cover washer</p> |
| 5 | <p>Place the parallel rod into position and reattach the two fixing screws against the parallel rod.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>This is done to prevent the arm housing from being deformed when pressing the shaft and thereby making it more difficult to press the shaft in or out.</p> | <p>Screw, M10 x minimum 80 mm</p>  <p>xx2300001897</p>                              |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings  
Continued

Refitting the upper parallel rod shaft



xx0900000813

Go to the user instructions enclosed with the press tool to refit the parallel rod shaft.

Press tools, parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-001

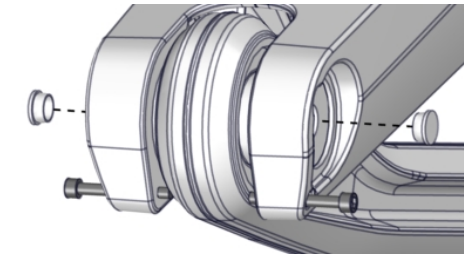
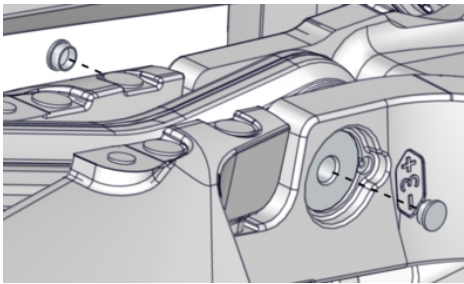
User instructions, press tool for parallel rod shaft and bearing: 3HAC093483-003



**WARNING**

Handling the tool incorrectly may cause serious injury.  
Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.

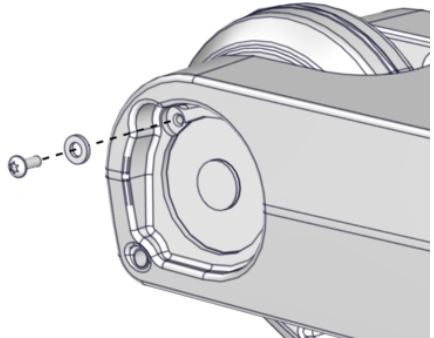
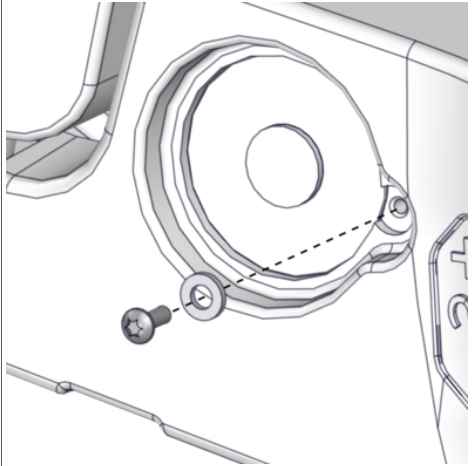
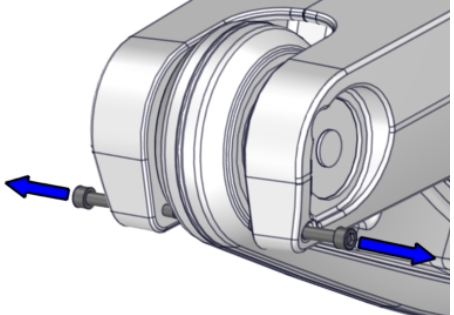
Concluding procedure

|   | Action                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refit the protection plugs. |  <p>xx2300001898</p>  <p>xx2300001917</p> |

Continues on next page

### 5.5.1 Replacing the parallel rod and parallel rod bearings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Apply locking liquid on the attachment screw and secure shaft.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>           Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p>  <p>xx2300001896</p>  <p>xx2300001916</p> |
| 3 | Remove the fixing screws and refit the protection plugs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  <p>xx2300001918</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 4 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## 5 Repair

---

### 5.5.2 Replacing the lower arm / parallel arm

### 5.5.2 Replacing the lower arm / parallel arm

---

#### L3 spare part

The lower and parallel arm and are classified as L3 spare parts. The repair procedure is not described in the product manual. Contact ABB Service for replacement.

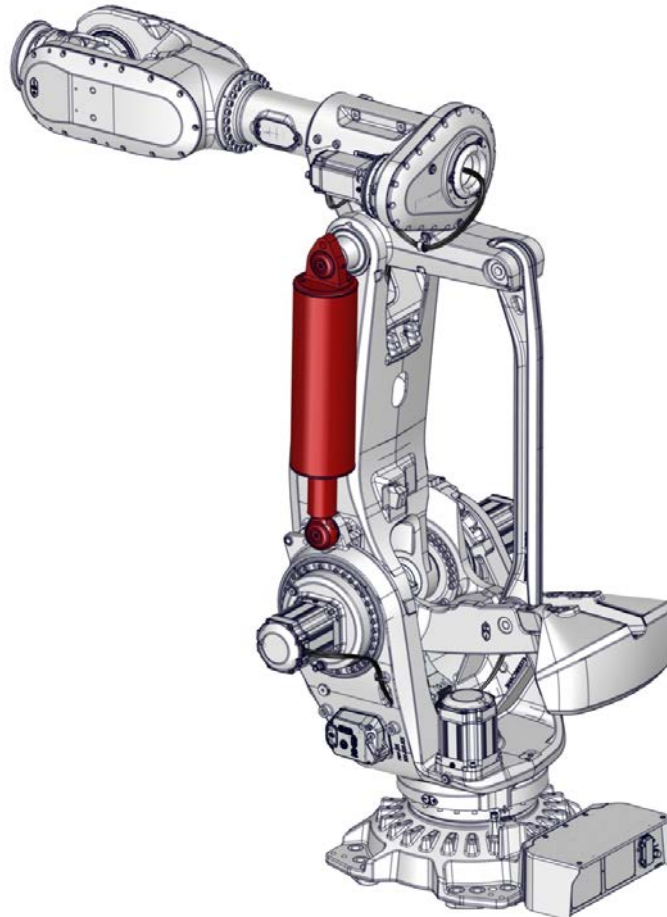
See [Spare part level on page 202](#).

## 5.6 Balancing device

### 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings

#### Location of the balancing device

The balancing device is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001639

#### Summary of the replacement procedure

This is a brief summary of the replacement procedure, containing the major actions to be performed.

- 1 Unload the balancing device.
- 2 Remove the balancing device.
- 3 If needed, replace the balancing device bearings.
- 4 Refit the balancing device.

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings

Continued

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part       | Article number                                                       | Note |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Balancing device | 3HAC084741-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC084741-006<br>(ABB Orange) |      |

#### Required service parts

| Consumable                      | Article number | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cover                           | 3HAC075038-001 | On the balancing device ear.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Maintenance set, upper link ear | 3HAC091950-001 | The maintenance kit contains: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• End cover</li><li>• O-ring</li><li>• Nut</li><li>• Radial sealing with dust lip</li><li>• Spherical roller bearing</li><li>• Support ring</li></ul>                                                        |
| Maintenance set, lower link ear | 3HAC091953-001 | The maintenance kit contains: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• End cover</li><li>• O-ring</li><li>• Spacer ring</li><li>• Radial sealing with dust lip</li><li>• Spherical roller bearing</li><li>• Support ring</li><li>• Washer</li><li>• Torx pan head screw</li></ul> |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                              | Article number | Note                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Screw, M12 x minimum 50 mm             | -              | 2 pcs.<br>Used to neutralize the spring force of the balancing device.                                                                                   |
| Lifting accessory for balancing device | 3HAC054236-001 | User instructions enclosed.                                                                                                                              |
| Press tools, balancing device bearing  | 3HAC092518-001 | User instructions (3HAC092518-003) are enclosed with the tool.                                                                                           |
| Hydraulic cylinder                     | 3HAC071377-001 | Maximum capacity: 6 Ton<br>To be used with the press and puller tools.<br>See technical specifications in the user instructions for the press equipment. |

Continues on next page



### 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings

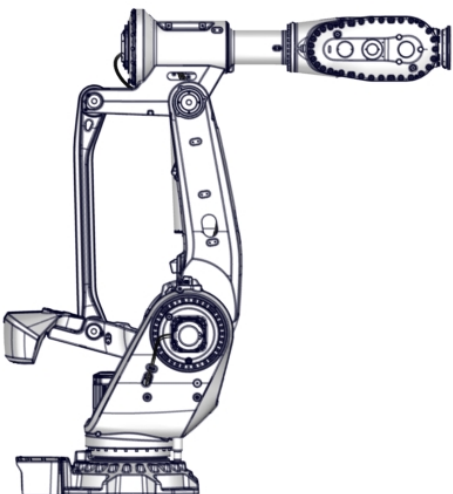
*Continued*

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Removing the balancing device

Use these procedures to remove the balancing device.

#### Preparations before removing the balancing device

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to calibration position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <br>xx2300001691 |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                     |

#### Unloading the balancing device springs and locking the position

Use this procedure to unload and lock the balancing device in unloaded position.

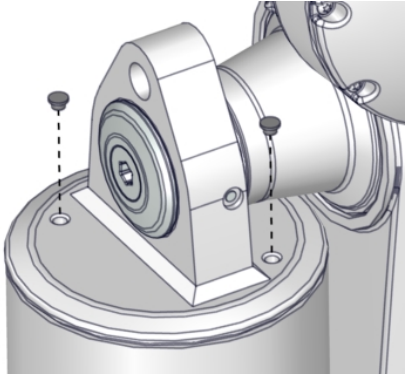
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings

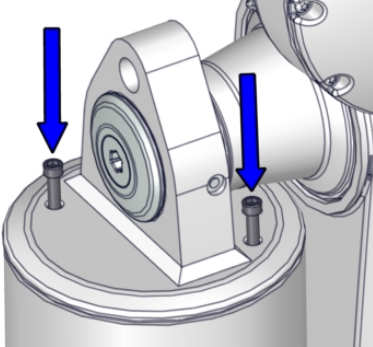
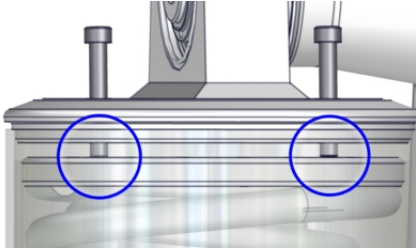
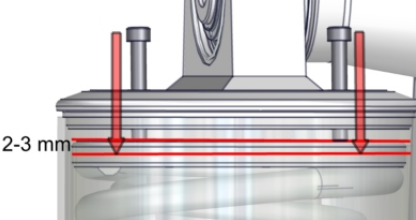
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Remove the plastic plugs in the upper end of the balancing device.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Save the protection screws, to refit after the work is done.</p> |  <p>xx2300001643</p> |

*Continues on next page*

### 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>3 Neutralize the spring force with two screws:<br/>Screw, M12 x minimum 50 mm (2 pcs)<br/>1 Insert two screws.</p>  <p>xx2300001644</p> <p>2 Screw in the screws until they have contact with the cylinder inside.</p>  <p>xx2400000506</p> <p>3 Then, alternately little by little, tighten the screws by hand according to the image.<br/>Screw in the screws by 1-2 turns, approximately 2-3 mm.</p>  <p>xx2400000507</p> <p>The length of the cylinder is now locked and the balancing device is unloaded.<br/>Check that the device is unloaded by trying to rotate it. It should rotate with ease.</p> |      |

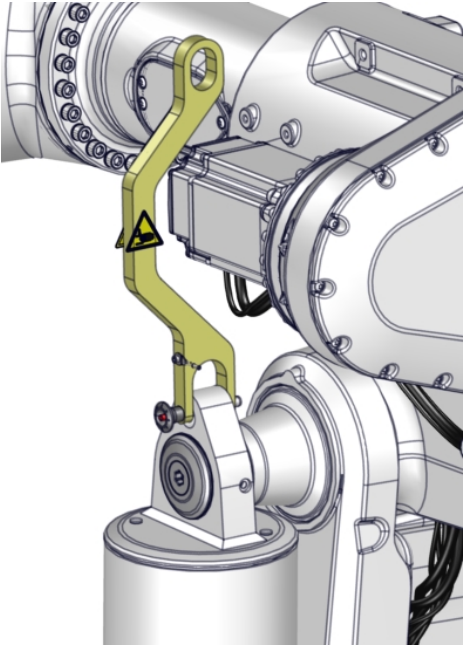
#### Attaching lifting accessory to the balancing device

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>1  <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the balancing device is 101 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |      |

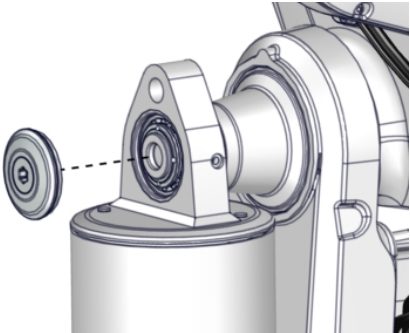
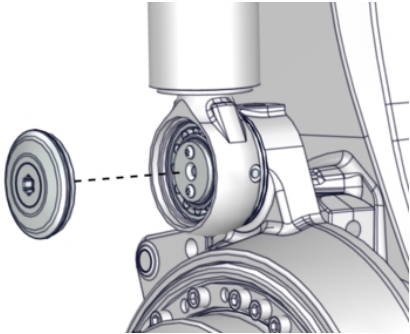
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
Continued

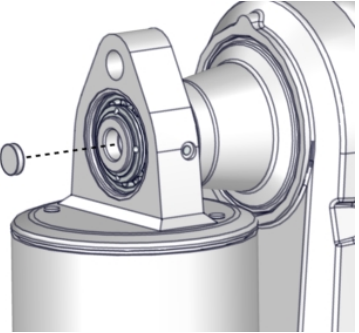
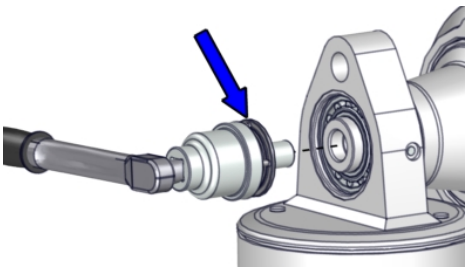
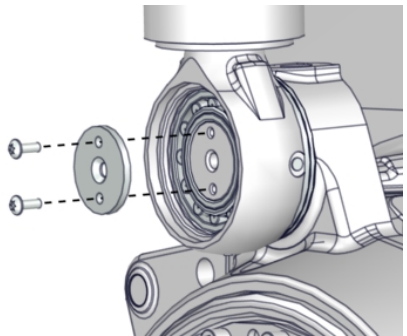
| Action                                                                               | Note                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Fit the lifting accessory to the balancing device lifting ear.                     | Lifting accessory for balancing device: 3HAC054236-001                                              |
| 3 Fit the an overhead crane to the lifting accessory and raise to unload the weight. | <br>xx2400000241 |

Removing the balancing device

| Action                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Remove the upper and lower covers. | <br>xx2300001647<br><br>xx2300001648 |

Continues on next page

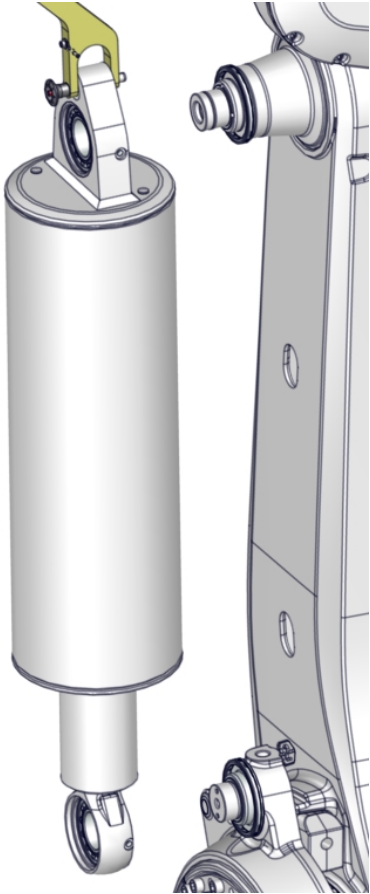
### 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings *Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the small VK-cover.                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2400000462   |
| 3 | Remove the lock nut from the upper ear using the KM socket enclosed in the press tool kit.                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2300001649    |
| 4 | Remove the washer from the lower ear by removing the two screws.                                                                                                                                              | <br>xx2300001650 |
| 5 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the balancing device is 101 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Lift the balancing device away.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>If needed, use a bearing puller to carefully help pressing the balancing device out.</p> |  <p>xx2300001667</p> |
| 7 | Remove residual grease and sealing compound.                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                          |

Replacing the balancing device bearings

When the balancing device is removed from the robot, the bearings either remain seated inside the balancing device ear or on the shafts.

If the bearings are to be replaced, use this procedure to remove and refit them.

|   | Action                                     | Note |
|---|--------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Remove the radial sealing with a crow bar. |      |

Continues on next page

## 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the old bearing.                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>If the bearing is seated inside the balancing device ear, use the press tool kit and a hydraulic cylinder.</p> <p>Press tools, balancing device bearing: 3HAC092518-001</p> <p>User instructions (3HAC092518-003) are enclosed with the tool.</p> <p>Hydraulic cylinder: 3HAC071377-001</p> <p>Hydraulic pump</p> <p>If the bearing remains fitted to the shaft, use a bearing puller.</p> <p>Bearing puller</p> |
| 3 | Wipe the inside of the balancing device ear clean from old grease.                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 4 | Fit new bearings to the balancing device ears, using the press tool kit and a hydraulic cylinder. Align one of the lubrication holes in the bearing with the lubrication hole inside the balancing device ear. | <p>Maintenance set, lower link ear / Maintenance set, upper link ear: 3HAC091953-001 / 3HAC091950-001</p> <p>Press tools, balancing device bearing: 3HAC092518-001</p> <p>User instructions (3HAC092518-003) are enclosed with the tool.</p> <p>Hydraulic cylinder: 3HAC071377-001</p> <p>Hydraulic pump</p>                                                                                                        |

**Refitting the balancing device**

Use this procedure to refit the balancing device.

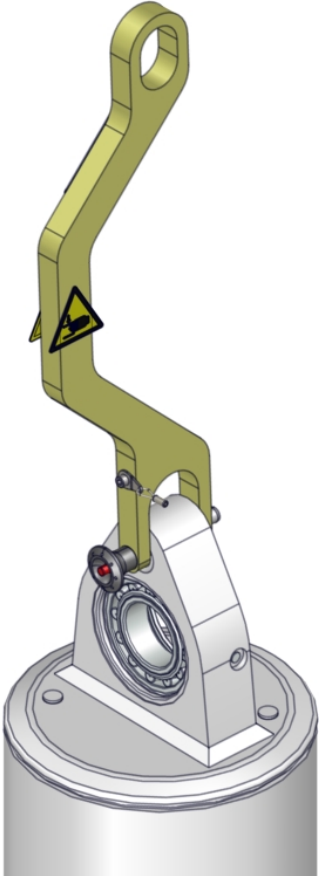
**Attaching lifting accessory to the new balancing device**

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><p>The weight of the balancing device is 101 kg</p> <p>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
Continued

| Action                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2<br>Fit the lifting accessory to the balancing device lifting ear. | Lifting accessory for balancing device:<br>3HAC054236-001<br><br><br>xx2400000242 |

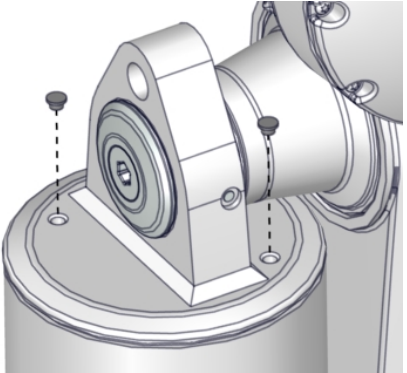
Unloading a new spare part, balancing device  
Use this procedure to unload and lock the balancing device in unloaded position.

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1<br> <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

Continues on next page



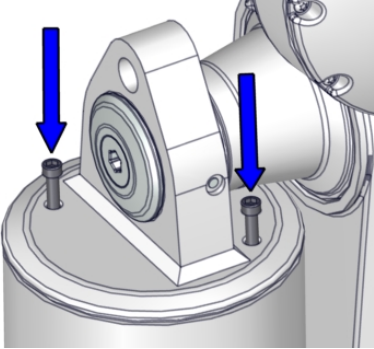
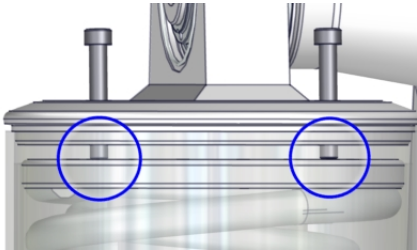
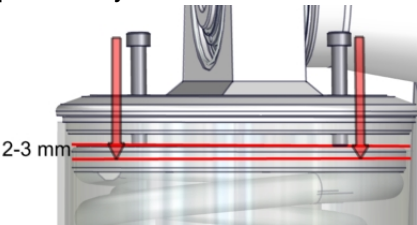
5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Remove the plastic plugs in the upper end of the balancing device.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Save the protection screws, to refit after the work is done.</p> |  <p>xx2300001643</p> |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

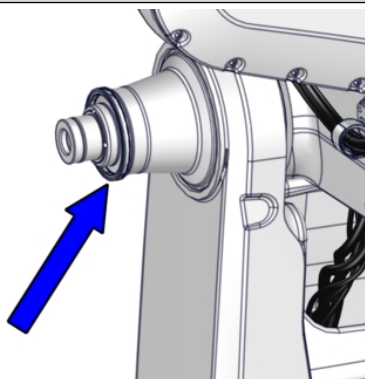
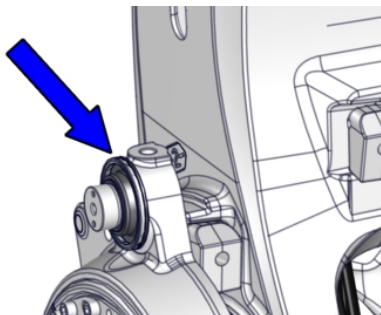
5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>3 Neutralize the spring force with two screws:<br/>Screw, M12 x minimum 50 mm (2 pcs)<br/>1 Insert two screws.</p>  <p>xx2300001644</p> <p>2 Screw in the screws until they have contact with the cylinder inside.</p>  <p>xx2400000506</p> <p>3 Then, alternately little by little, tighten the screws by hand according to the image.<br/>Screw in the screws by 1-2 turns, approximately 2-3 mm.</p>  <p>xx2400000507</p> <p>The length of the cylinder is now locked and the balancing device is unloaded.<br/>Check that the device is unloaded by trying to rotate it. It should rotate with ease.</p> |      |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
*Continued*

## Refitting the balancing device

|   | Action                                                                       | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check that the support ring is in place on the upper shaft.                  | <br>xx2400000237  |
| 2 | Check that the support ring and spacer ring are in place on the lower shaft. | <br>xx2400000238 |

*Continues on next page*

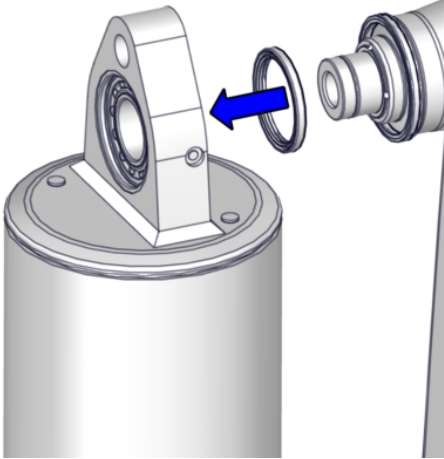
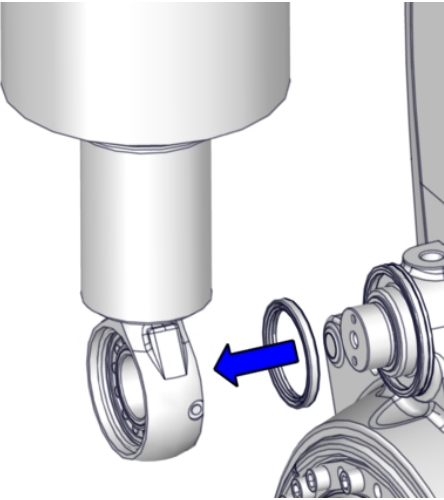
5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>3</div> <div>Check the bearings in the balancing device ears.<br/>Replace if damaged.</div> <div><div></div><div><b>Note</b><br/>Make sure the bearings are axially centered in the balancing device ears, before putting them on the shafts.</div></div> | <div>Maintenance set, lower link ear / Maintenance set, upper link ear: 3HAC091953-001 / 3HAC091950-001</div> <div></div> <div>xx2400000239</div> |

Continues on next page

5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
*Continued*

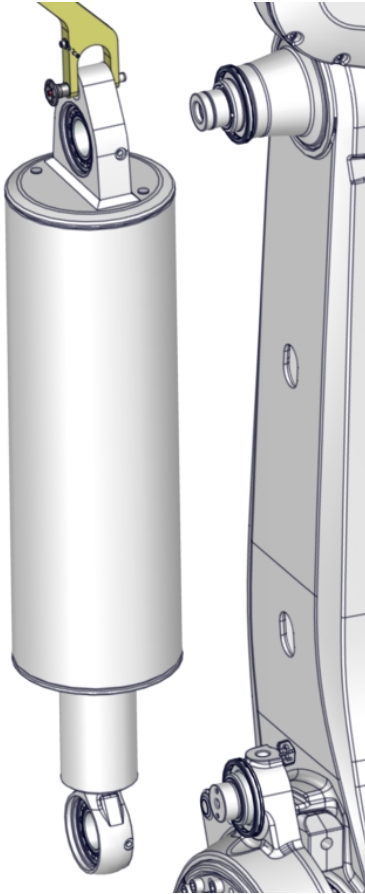
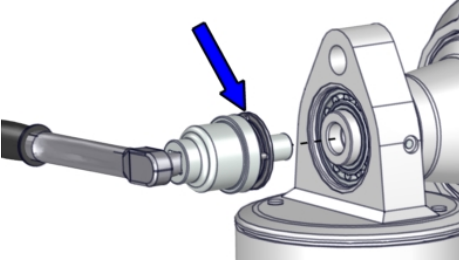
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Fit new sealing rings at the upper and lower ear, on the side that faces the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>Maintenance set, lower link ear / Maintenance set, upper link ear: 3HAC091953-001 / 3HAC091950-001</p>  <p>xx2300001887</p>  <p>xx2300001888</p> |
| 5 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the balancing device is 101 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

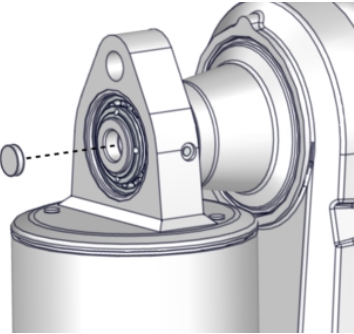
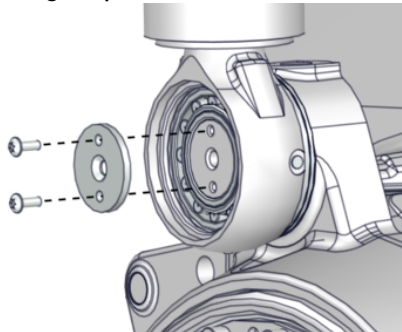
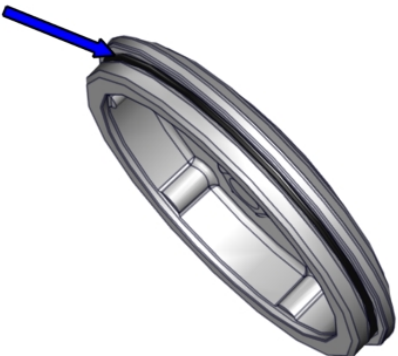
### 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Lift the balancing device in place and push it onto the shafts.                         |  <p>Diagram illustrating the installation of the balancing device. The device is shown being pushed onto the shafts of the robot arm. The device is a cylindrical component with a flange at the top and a bearing at the bottom. A yellow bracket is shown holding the device in place.</p> <p>xx2300001667</p> |
| 7 | Refit the lock nut to the upper ear using the KM socket enclosed in the press tool kit. | <p>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.</p>  <p>Diagram illustrating the tightening of the lock nut. A blue arrow points to the lock nut being tightened onto the upper ear of the robot arm. The lock nut is a cylindrical component with a flange at the top and a bearing at the bottom.</p> <p>xx2300001649</p>         |

*Continues on next page*

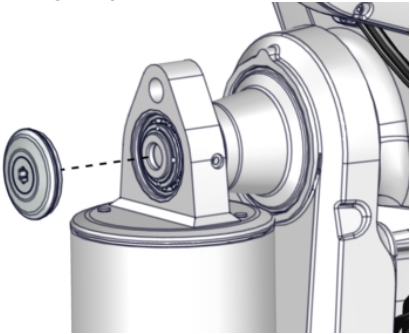
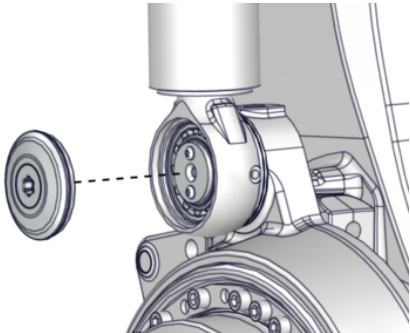
5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
*Continued*

|    | Action                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8  | Fit a new VK-cover.                                     | <p>VK-cover: 3HAA2166-12</p>  <p>xx2400000462</p>        |
| 9  | Refit the washer to the lower ear with the two screws.  | <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001650</p> |
| 10 | Check the o-rings in the covers.<br>Replace if damaged. | <p>O-ring: 3HAB3772-15</p>  <p>xx2400000240</p>    |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
Continued

| Action                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 11 Refit the upper and lower covers. | <p>Tightening torque: 35 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001647</p>  <p>xx2300001648</p> |
| 12 Remove the lifting accessories.   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

Lubricating the spherical roller bearing

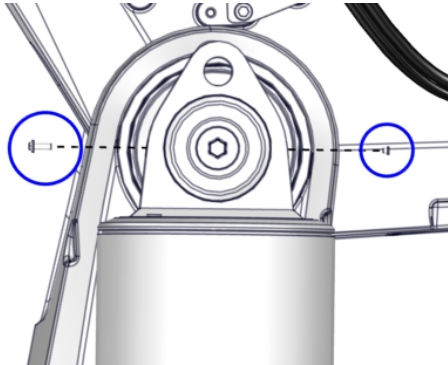
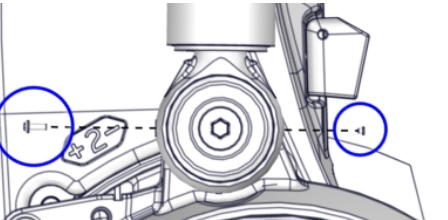
| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |      |

Continues on next page

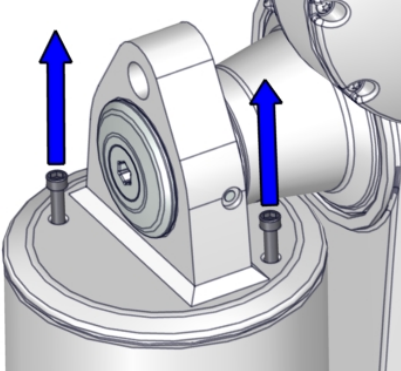


### 5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Unscrew the screw and remove the plastic plug of the bearing and fill grease through the screw hole until grease appears in the other hole.</p> <p>Use a grease nipple.</p>                                                                               | <p>Bearing grease: 3HAC9408-1<br/>Amount: Tribol GR 100-2 PD, 85 ml / bearing.</p>  <p>xx2400000134</p>  <p>xx2400000135</p> |
| 3 | <p>Refit the screw and the plastic plug.<br/>Wipe clean from residual grease.</p>                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 4 | <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Inspect the bearings after a few days running. Some of the refilled grease may have emerged from the bearing. Wipe clean from residual grease.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

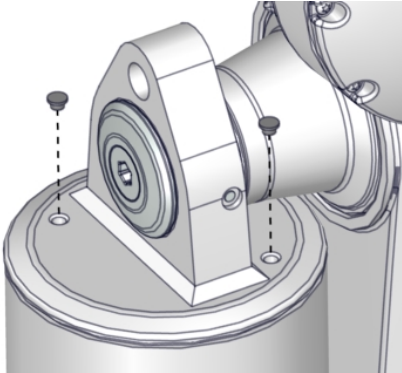
#### Restoring the pressure of the balancing device

|   | Action                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Restore the pressure of the balancing device by unscrewing the two screws alternately little by little.</p> |  <p>xx2300001855</p> |
| 2 | <p>Remove the screws.</p>                                                                                      |                                                                                                           |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.6.1 Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings  
Continued

|   | Action                                                               | Note                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Refit the plastic plugs in the holes on top of the balancing device. | <br>xx2300001643 |

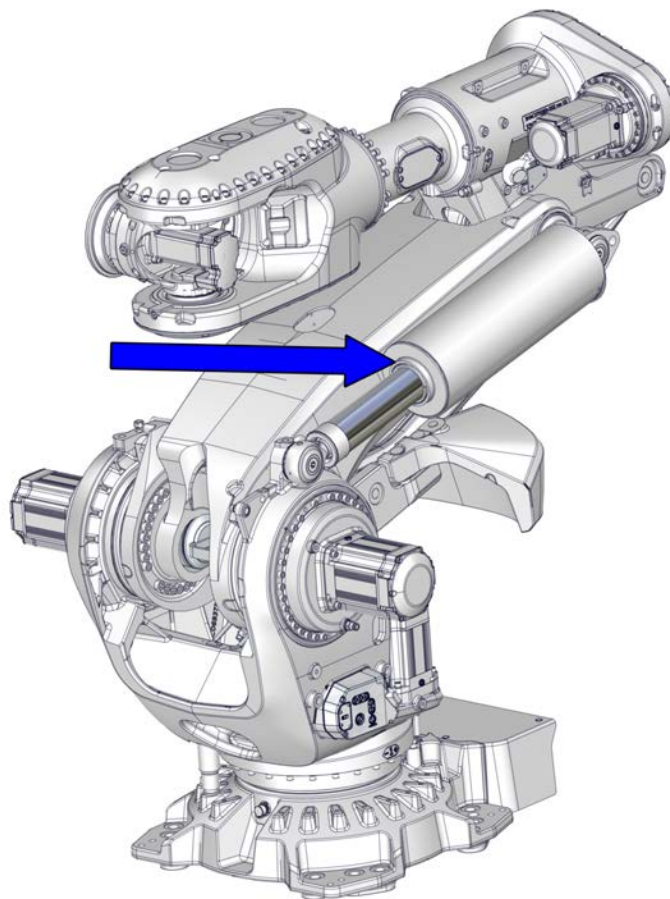
Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |      |

## 5.6.2 Replacing the balancing device guide ring

### Location of the guide ring

The guide ring is located as shown in the figure.



xx2400001569

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part     | Article number | Note |
|----------------|----------------|------|
| Guide ring     | 3HAC034897-001 |      |
| Circlip SB 120 | 3HAC036620-001 |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the balancing device guide ring

*Continued*

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

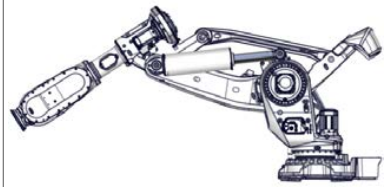
#### Required service parts

| Consumable     | Article number | Note                         |
|----------------|----------------|------------------------------|
| Cleaning agent | -              | Isopropanol                  |
| Grease         | 3HAC042536-001 | Shell Gadus S2 or equivalent |

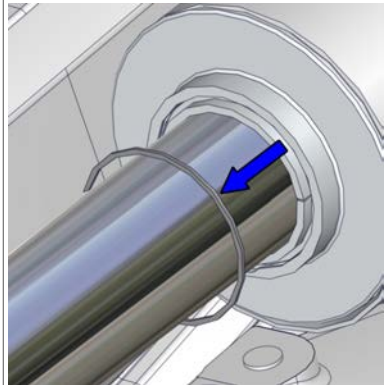
#### Removing the guide ring

Use these procedures to remove the guide ring.

##### Preparations before removing the guide ring

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Position axis 2 so that the balancing device is horizontal and the piston rod is extended to the greatest extent possible.                                                                                                                                                                                        | <br>xx2400001562 |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                      |

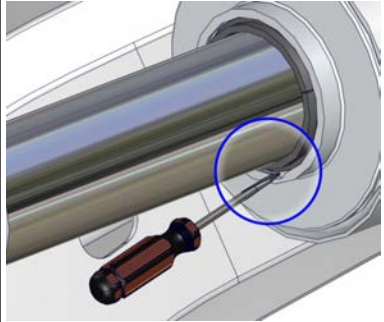
#### Removing the guide ring

|   | Action                                 | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the circlip from the end cover. | <br>xx2400001570 |

*Continues on next page*

### 5.6.2 Replacing the balancing device guide ring

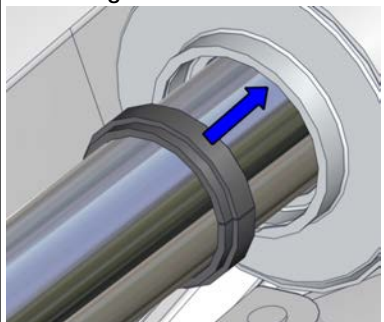
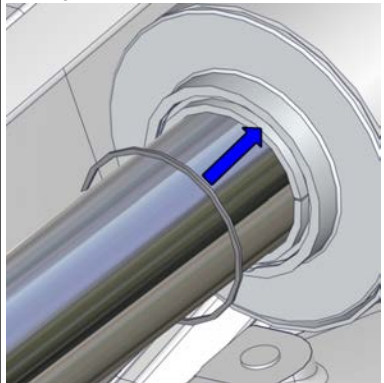
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Insert a standard screwdriver into the small slot at the end cover, and bend out the guide ring. |  <p>xx2400001571</p> |

#### Refitting the guide ring

Use these procedures to refit the guide ring.

#### Refitting the guide ring

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                            |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Place the two halves of the guide ring around the piston rod, with the smallest outer diameter facing outwards, and insert the ring in the end cover. | <p>Guide ring: 3HAC034897-001</p>  <p>xx2400001572</p>      |
| 2 | Install the circlip.                                                                                                                                  | <p>Circlip SB 120: 3HAC036620-001</p>  <p>xx2400001573</p> |

#### Lubricating the piston rod

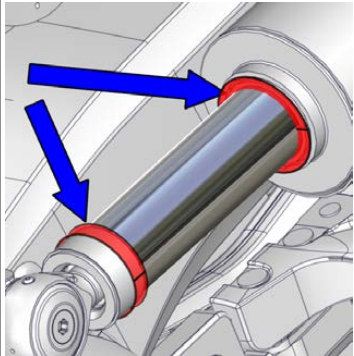
|   | Action                | Note                        |
|---|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 | Clean the piston rod. | Cleaning agent: Isopropanol |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.6.2 Replacing the balancing device guide ring

Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Apply a thin layer of grease across the entire unpainted surface of the piston rod.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Too little grease may result in premature wear of the guide ring. Too much grease may result in an undesirable appearance or a risk of contaminating the surrounding environment.</p> | Grease: 3HAC042536-001                                                                                |
| 3 | Turn on power to the robot again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                       |
| 4 | Jog the robot through the balancing device's full range of motion. Repeat one time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                       |
| 5 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>                                                        |                                                                                                       |
| 6 | Wipe away any excessive grease accumulating in the indicated areas.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <br>xx2400000245 |

### 5.7.1 Replacing the upper arm / upper arm shafts and bearings

## 5.7 Upper arm excluding wrist

### 5.7.1 Replacing the upper arm / upper arm shafts and bearings

---

#### L3 spare part

The upper arm and the upper arm shafts and bearings are classified as L3 spare parts. The repair procedure is not described in the product manual. Contact ABB Service for replacement.

See [Spare part level on page 202](#).

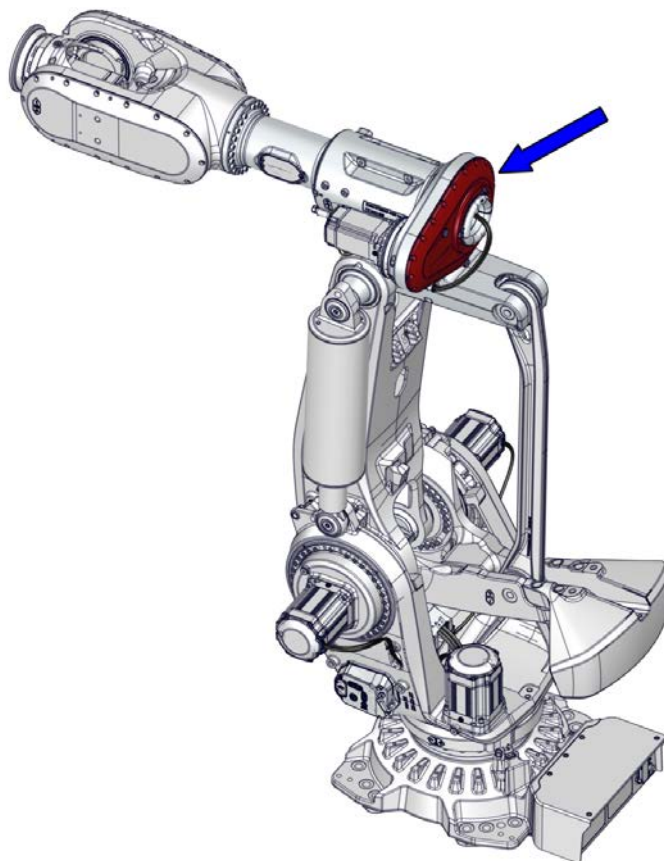
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

#### Location of the arm house cover and cassette sealing

The arm house cover including the cassette sealing is located as shown in the figure.



xx2400000152

#### Summary of the replacement procedure

This is a brief summary of the replacement procedure, containing the major actions to be performed.

- 1 *Protection type Foundry Plus*: Remove the cover.
- 2 Remove the cable harness from the upper arm.
- 3 Remove the cable guide.
- 4 Replace the arm house cover including the cassette sealing.

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

*Continues on next page*



## 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

| Spare part                                 | Article number                                                 | Note                                 | Level |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|
| Arm house cover including cassette sealing | 3HAC084032-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC084032-004 (ABB Orange) | Gasket and cassette sealing included | L2    |

## Required service parts

| Consumable                            | Article number                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover with gasket      | 3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-5 motor                                                                                                            |
| Connection box cover (without gasket) | 3HAC026607-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC026607-004 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID</b>                   |
| Connection box cover with gasket      | 3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br><b>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID</b>                   |
| Gasket                                | 3HAC033489-001                                                 | For axis-6 connection box cover.<br>Replace if damaged.<br><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b> |
| Wrist cover                           | 3HAC085026-002 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC085026-003 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                               |
| O-ring, G 1/2"                        | 3HAC061327-059                                                 | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                                                                                                             |
| Grease                                | 3HAC042536-001                                                 | Shell Gadus S2                                                                                                                                    |
| Locking liquid                        | -                                                              | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)                                                                                                          |
| Rust preventive                       | 3HAC034903-001                                                 | Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.                                                                                            |
| Lubricating oil                       | -                                                              | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gear-boxes on page 153</a> .                                                                               |

## Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                            | Article number | Note                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Replacement tool for arm house cover | 3HAC079878-001 | For removing and fitting the arm house cover, including the axis-4 cassette sealing. |
| Screw, M6 x minimum 70 mm            | -              | Used to support the arm house cover                                                  |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

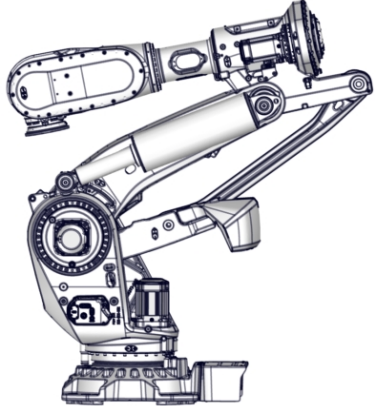
Continued

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Removing the arm house cover including the cassette sealing

Use these procedures to remove the arm house cover including the cassette sealing.

#### Preparations before removing the arm house cover

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Drain the axis-4 gearbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | See <a href="#">Draining the axis-4 gearbox on page 175</a> .                                            |
| 2 | <p>Jog the robot to the specified position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Axis 1: 0°</li><li>• Axis 2: -55°</li><li>• Axis 3: +10°</li><li>• Axis 4: 0°</li><li>• Axis 5: +90°</li><li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li></ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The specified position is a recommended position for service.</p> <p>Axis-5 must be oriented as close as possible to +90° to be able to open the axis-6 motor cover and to remove the axis-6 motor cables, and in order to avoid the spiral of the cable harness in the carrier, being unwound or placed in the wrong position.</p> <p>Depending on what tool is used, the other axes may need to be jogged to another position.</p> |  <p>xx2300001952</p> |
| 3 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                          |

#### Retrieving access to the wrist cabling

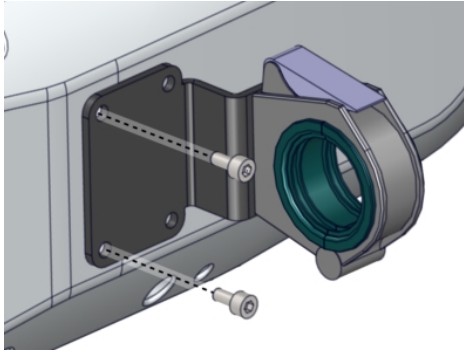
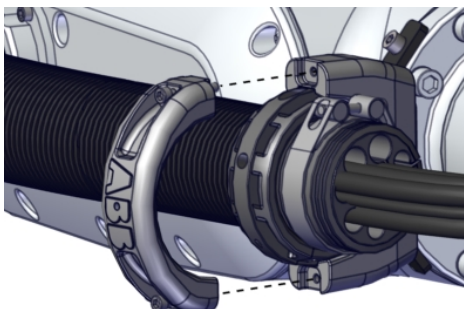
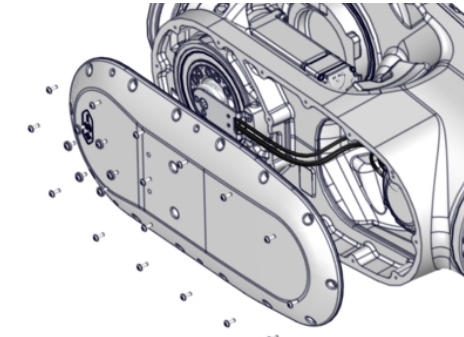
Use this procedure to remove the wrist cover.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |      |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>If DressPack MH3 is installed:<br/>Remove the wrist bracket with the complete ball joint housing still fitted, if the bracket is installed over the two wrist cover screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>No need to remove the bracket if the two wrist cover screws are accessible.</p> |  <p>xx2300001366</p>   |
| 3 | <p>If DressPack is installed:<br/>Open the ball joint housing on the arm tube and remove the DressPack cable package.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2100002709</p>  |
| 4 | Remove the wrist cover.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  <p>xx2300001883</p> |

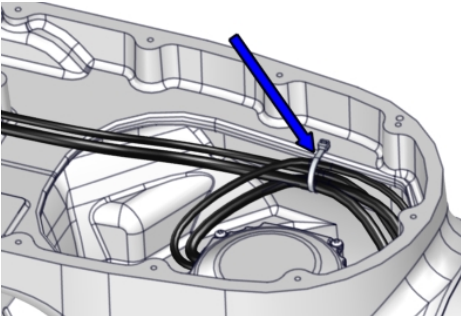
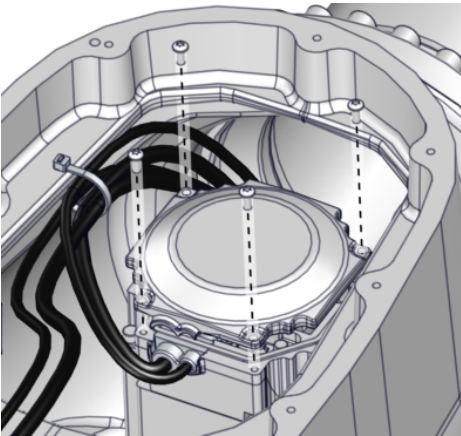
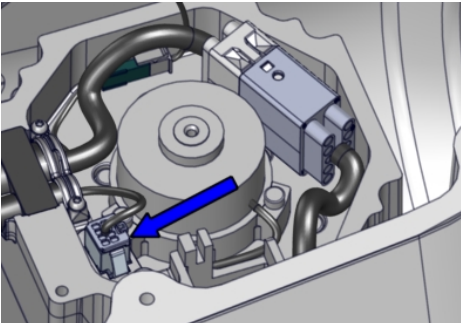
#### Disconnecting the axis-5 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

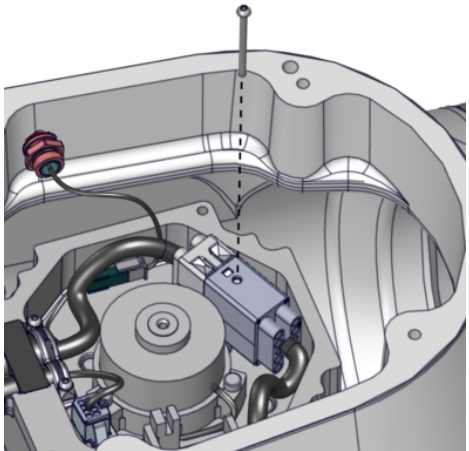
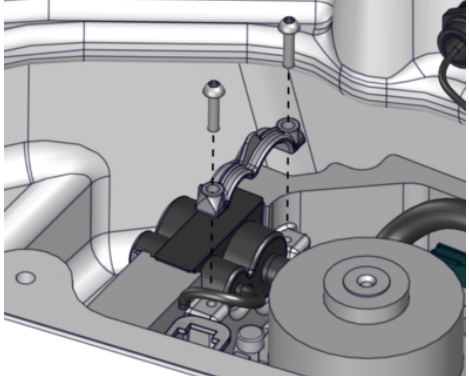
5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
Continued

|   | Action                                         | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Cut the cable tie.                             | <br>xx2300001923   |
| 3 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws. | <br>xx2300001924  |
| 4 | Disconnect the signal cable connector.         | <br>xx2200001734 |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                 | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Disconnect the power cable connector by removing the attachment screw. |  <p>xx2200001733</p>  |
| 6 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.                       |  <p>xx2200001735</p> |
| 7 | Remove the motor cables.                                               |                                                                                                         |

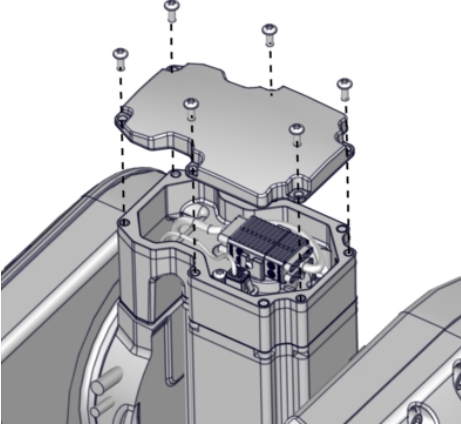
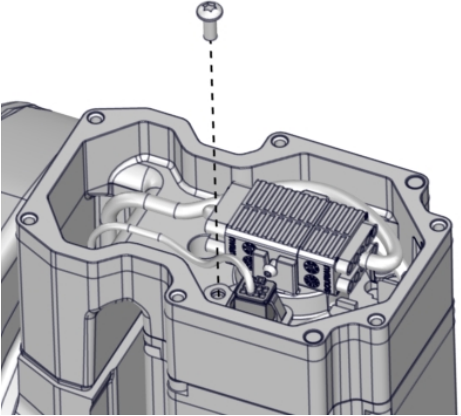
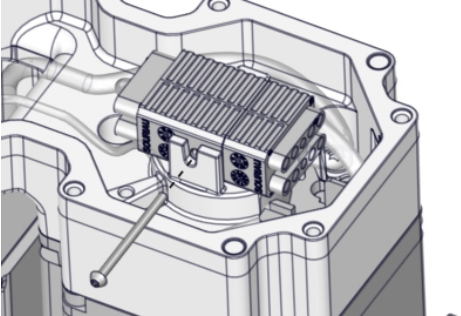
#### Disconnecting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
Continued

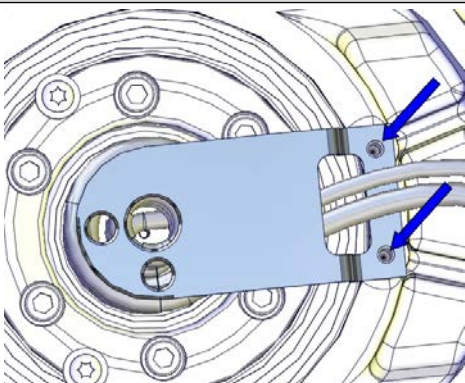
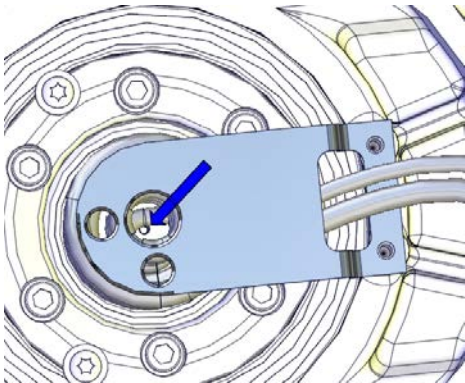
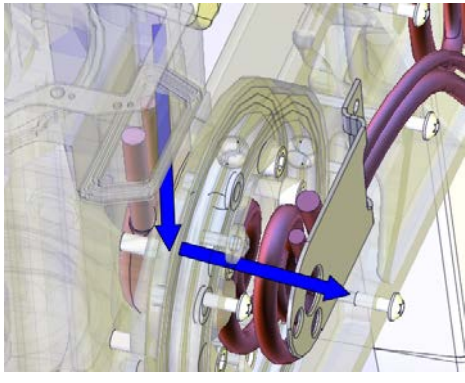
| Action                                                      | Note                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Unscrew the attachment screws and remove the motor cover. | <br>xx2200001434   |
| 3 Remove the connector bracket.                             | <br>xx2200001730  |
| 4 Remove the connector screw.                               | <br>xx2200001731 |
| 5 Disconnect the motor cables.                              |                                                                                                      |

Continues on next page



5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
*Continued*

## Pushing out the axis-6 motor cables

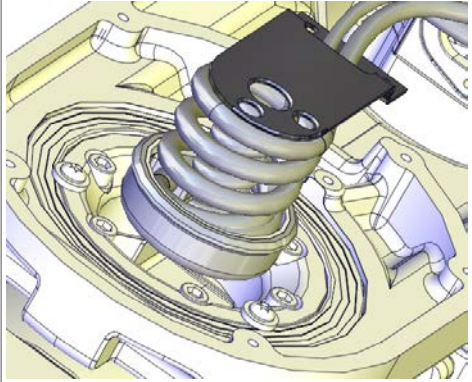
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Unscrew the attachment screws that hold the cable bracket.                                                                                                                                              | <br>xx1300000484   |
| 2 | Unscrew the M4 screw that holds the carrier.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>The screw is located at the bottom of the carrier. | <br>xx1300000485  |
| 3 | Lift out the axis-6 motor cables by holding the cables with one hand at the motor and the other at the carrier.                                                                                         | <br>xx1300000666 |

*Continues on next page*

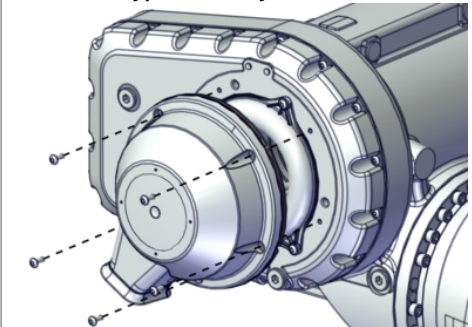
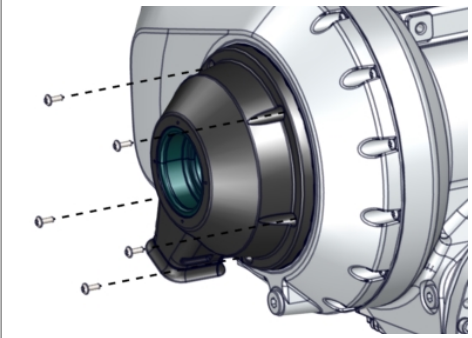
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                  | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Lift out the carrier from its position. | <br>xx1300001113 |

### Removing the cable harness from the wrist and upper arm

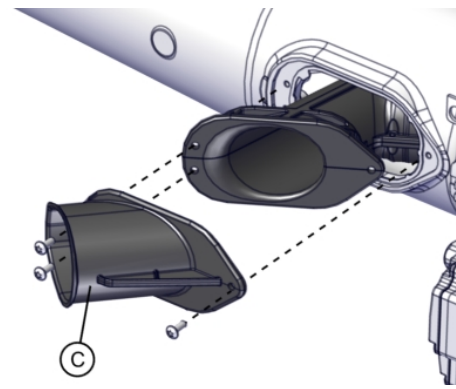
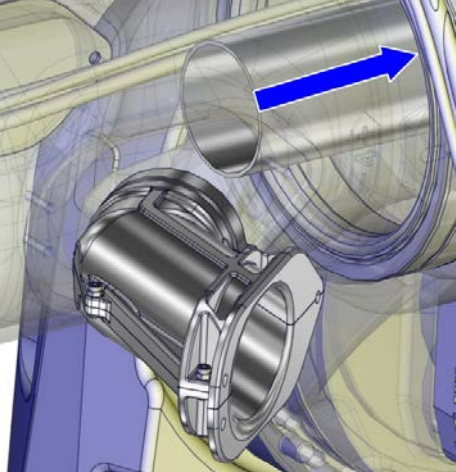
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p><i>Foundry Plus</i><br/><i>DressPack</i><br/>Remove the back cover.</p> <p> <b>Note</b><br/>Use caution not to damage the gasket.</p> | <p><i>Protection type Foundry Plus:</i></p> <br>xx2000000422<br><br><p><i>DressPack</i></p> <br>xx2300001040 |

*Continues on next page*



### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

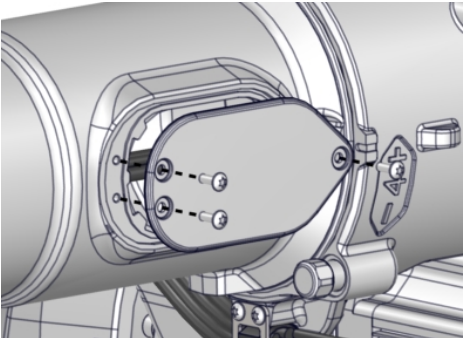
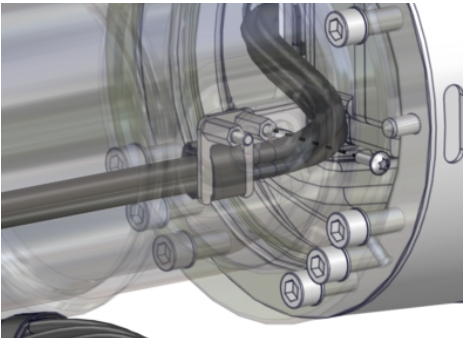
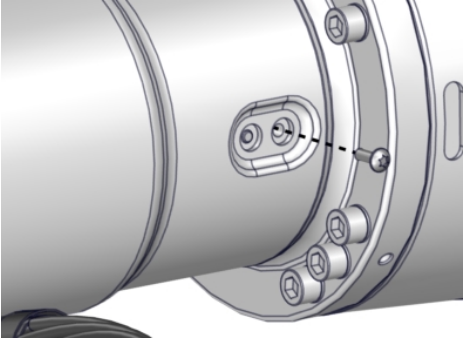
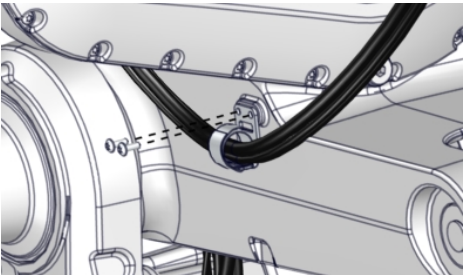
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <b>DressPack</b><br>Loosen the insert.<br>(Cable guard (C) is available for protection type Foundry Plus.)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  <p>xx2100002677</p>   |
| 3 | <b>DressPack</b><br>Push the DressPack tube a little back-wards.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  <p>xx1400000720</p>  |
| 4 |  <b>Tip</b><br>Use tape and tie the axis-5 and axis-6 connectors and carrier into a bundle (if not already done). This is done to facilitate the removal and to avoid damaging the parts. This will also make it easier to run the cable harness through the inside of the upper arm. |  <p>xx1300000668</p> |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

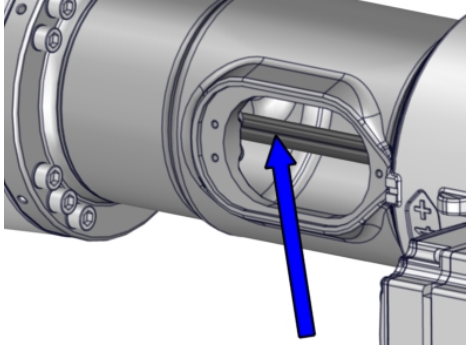
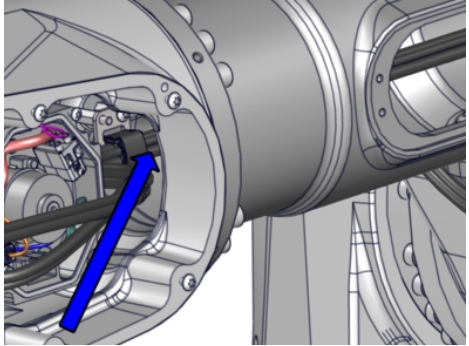
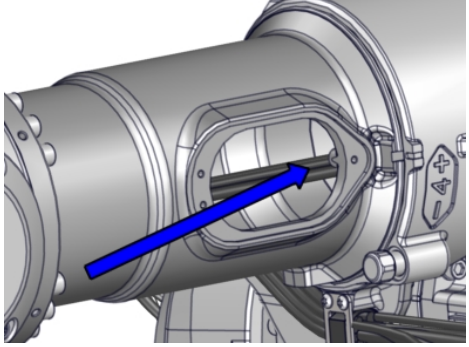
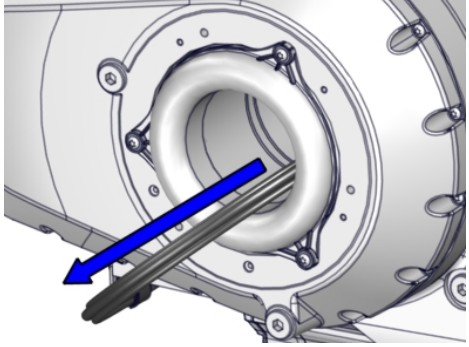
5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 Remove the side cover on the arm tube.                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <br>xx2300000031                                                                                                          |
| 6 Unscrew the attachment screw that secures the axis-4 metal clamp inside the arm tube.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The screw is reached from outside the upper arm. | <br>xx2300000033<br><br>xx2300000032 |
| 7 Remove the arm house metal clamp.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <br>xx2300002013                                                                                                        |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

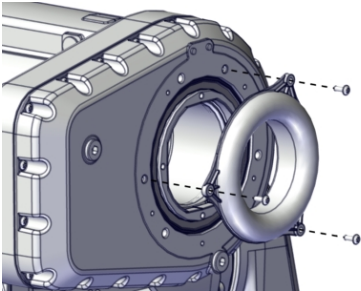
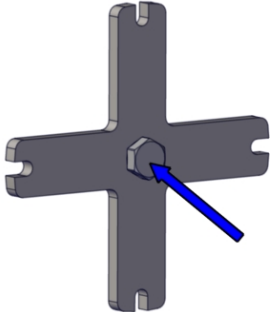
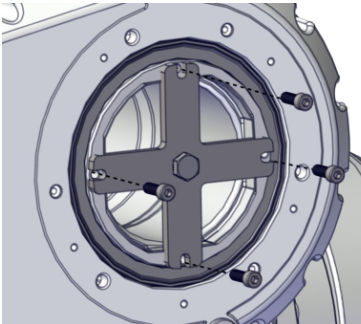
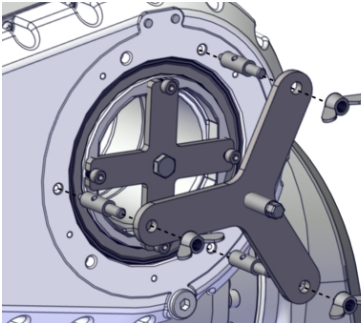
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | <p>Remove the cable harness out from the wrist.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person 1: Put one hand inside the side hole and take a hold of the cable harness.</li> <li>• Person 2: Take a hold on the cable harness inside the wrist.</li> <li>• Together: Move the cable harness past the axis-5 motor and into the arm tube.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Person 1, working at the side hole:</p>  <p>xx2300000035</p> <p>Person 2, working at the wrist:</p>  <p>xx2300000036</p>   |
| 9 | <p>Remove the cable harness out of the arm tube, at the back of the upper arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person 1: Put one hand inside the side hole and take a hold of the cable harness.</li> <li>• Person 2: Take a hold on the cable harness at the back of the robot.</li> <li>• Together: Move the cable harness out of the arm tube.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>To be able to remove the cable harness with the DressPack tube fitted, the tube needs to be pulled out a little, then be placed on the lower left side in the arm tube and the bracket of the cable harness then needs to be placed on the upper right hand side.</p> | <p>Person 1, working at the side hole:</p>  <p>xx2300000037</p> <p>Person 2, working at the back:</p>  <p>xx2300000038</p> |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
Continued

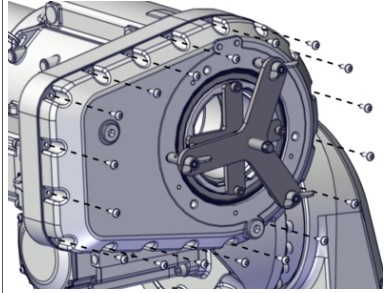
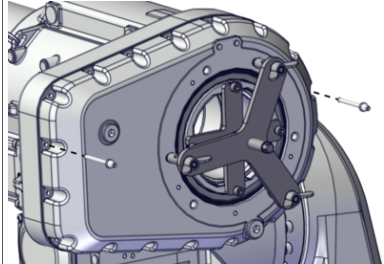
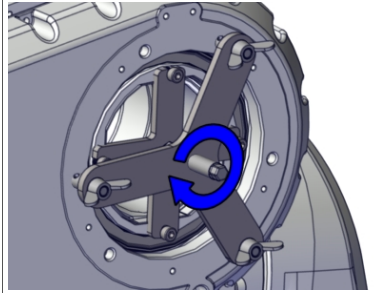
Removing the arm house cover including the cassette sealing

|   | Action                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the cable guide by removing the attachment screws.                                                                       | <br>xx2100001242                                                          |
| 2 | Prepare the removal tool by fitting the middle screw to the part of the tool designed as a cross, all the way until it bottoms. | Replacement tool for arm house cover: 3HAC079878-001<br><br>xx2100001253 |
| 3 | Fit the cross to the tube shaft with four M8 screws.                                                                            | <br>xx2100001243                                                        |
| 4 | Fit the three armed tool part with three screws and wing nuts.                                                                  | <br>xx2100001254                                                        |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                     |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Remove the arm house cover screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2400000151</p>                                  |
| 6 | Insert two screws M6 x minimum 70 mm on each short side, as support so that the cover doesn't fall down when pressed out.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Screw, M6 x minimum 70 mm</p>  <p>xx2200001144</p> |
| 7 | <p>Prepare the area beneath the cover with oil absorbing material.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Oil residues will drip out during removal.<br/>Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Handling gearbox oil involves several safety risks, see <a href="#">Gearbox lubricants (oil or grease) on page 30</a>.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information.</p> |                                                                                                                                          |
| 8 | Fit the M12 bolt and rotate it to press out the complete cover.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  <p>xx2100001256</p>                                |

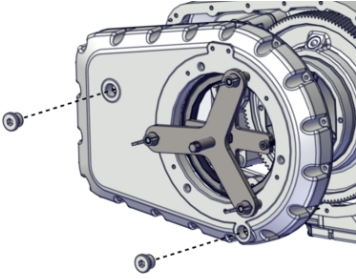
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                    |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | <p>Remove the complete cover.<br/>Remove and save the oil plugs for refitting on the new cover.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Oil residues will drip out during removal.<br/>Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn.</p> |  <p>xx2100001286</p> |
| 10 | Remove the tool from the arm house cover. The tool on the tube shaft can stay fitted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                         |

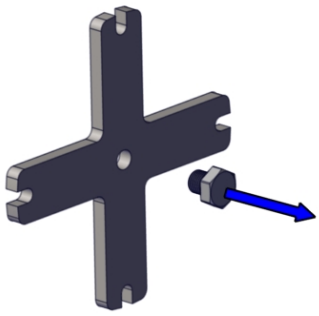
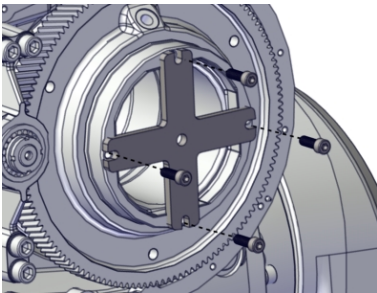
#### Refitting the arm house cover including the cassette sealing

Use these procedures to refit the arm house cover including the cassette sealing.

#### Preparations before refitting the arm house cover

|   | Action                           | Note |
|---|----------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Wipe clean all contact surfaces. |      |

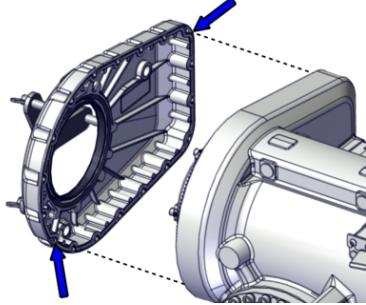
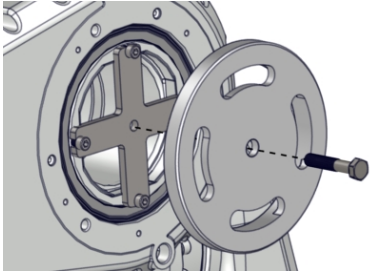
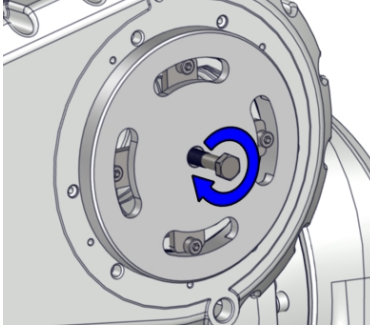
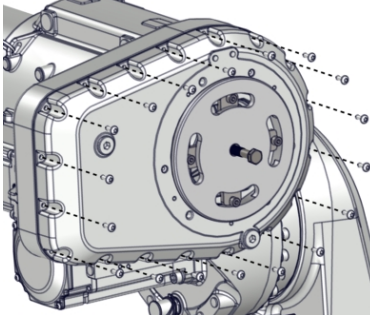
#### Refitting the arm house cover including the cassette sealing

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Prepare the refitting tool by removing the middle screw from the part of the tool designed as a cross.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  <p>xx2100001265</p> |
| 2 | <p>Fit the cross to the tube shaft with four M8 screws.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Center the cross on the tube shaft, to not damage the sealing.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Tighten the screws so that the cross bottoms firmly against the tube shaft.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>If using other screws than the screws enclosed with the tool, make sure that the screw heads do not stick out beyond the tool edge. This would damage the cassette sealing during refitting.</p> |  <p>xx2100001264</p> |

*Continues on next page*

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

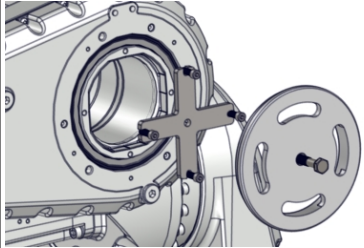
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Fit the arm house cover to the arm house with guidance from the two guide pins in the cover.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Secure the cover temporarily with two screws M6 on each short side, as support to hold the cover.</p> |  <p>xx2100001269</p>                                                                                                           |
| 4 | <p>Fit the press plate to the arm house cover, together with the M12 screw.</p> <p>Align the press plate holes over the four M8 screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>Use the correct press plate: 3HAC079878-009</p>  <p>xx2300001365</p>                                                        |
| 5 | <p>Press the cover and cassette sealing into place by rotating the M12 screw.</p> <p>If used, remove the temporary support screws before pressing the cover completely into place.</p> <p>Check that the guide pins are inserted in the arm house.</p>                                                           |  <p>xx2100001270</p>                                                                                                         |
| 6 | <p>Fit all attachment screws and tighten them crosswise by hand first.</p> <p>Use locking liquid.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80</p> <p>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p>  <p>xx2100001255</p> |
| 7 | <p>Torque tighten the attachment screws crosswise.</p> <p>Ensure gap closure between cover and arm house.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm</p>                                                                                                                                                                                   |

*Continues on next page*

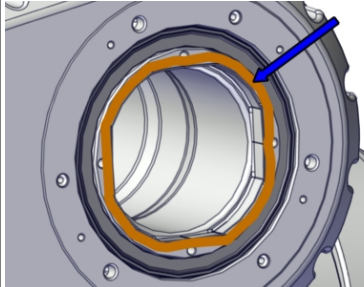
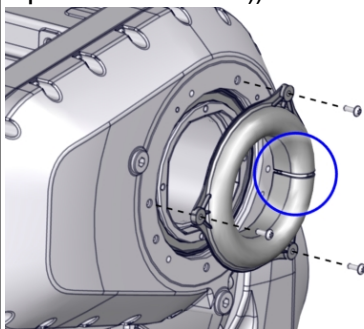
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|   | Action                    | Note                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Remove the tool.          | <br>xx2300001367 |
| 9 | Perform a leak-down test. | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                       |

#### Refitting the arm house cable guide

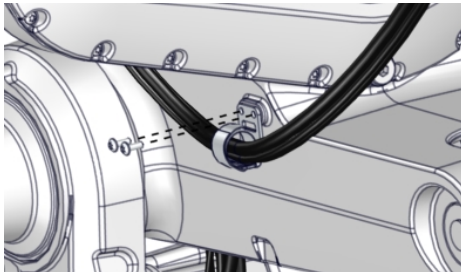
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Apply rust preventive on the arm tube machined surface.                                                                                                               | Rust preventive: 3HAC034903-001 (Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.)<br><br>xx2100001271          |
| 2 | Fit the cable guide with attachment screws. Align the cable guide so that the slot is positioned at 90 degrees clockwise, as shown in the figure. Use locking liquid. | Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br>Locking liquid: - (Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243))<br><br>xx2400001803 |

*Continues on next page*



5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
*Continued*

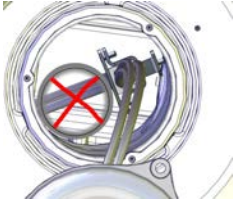
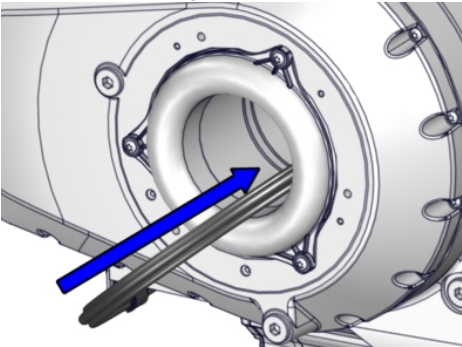
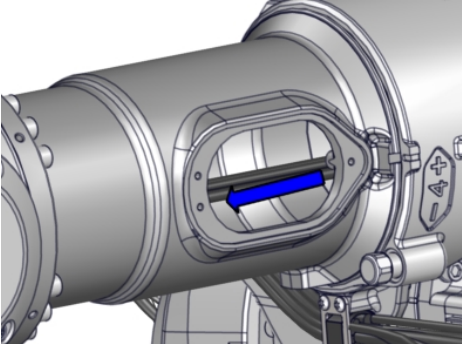
## Refitting the cable harness to the upper arm

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refit the metal clamp beneath the arm house.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300002013</p> |
| 2 | <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Use tape and tie the axis-5 and axis-6 connectors and carrier into a bundle (if not already done). This is done to facilitate the procedure and to avoid damaging the parts during the procedure.</p> <p>This will also make it easier to run the cable harness through the inside of the robot.</p> |  <p>xx1300000668</p>                                                                      |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

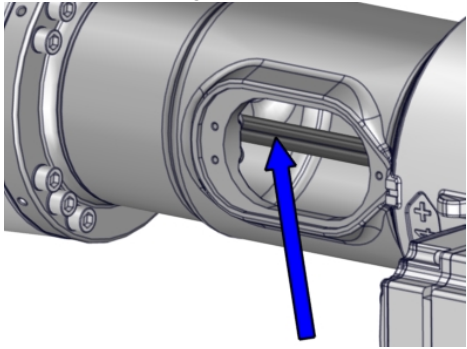
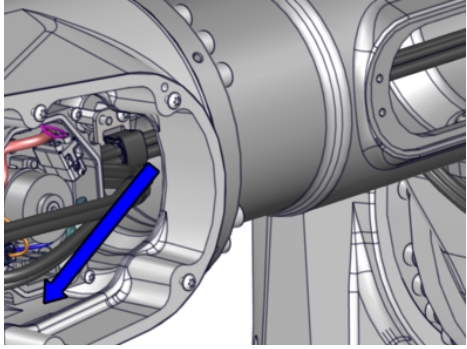
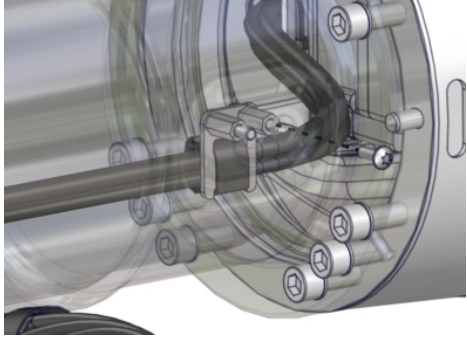
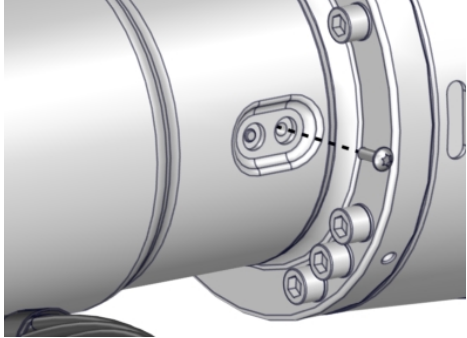
5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>3</div> <div>Run the cable harness through the cable guide and then into and through the upper arm tube.</div> <div> <b>Tip</b></div> <div>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Person 1: Put one hand inside the side hole of the arm tube and take a hold of the cable harness.</li><li>• Person 2: Take a hold on the cable harness at the back of the robot.</li><li>• Together: Use caution and move the cable harness into the arm tube.</li></ul></div> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <div>The cable harness is best placed at the upper right hand side of the DressPack tube, if used, through the arm tube.<br/>Do not run the cable harness into the DressPack tube!</div> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <div>Do not run the cable harness into the DressPack tube, if one is fitted!</div> <div></div> <div>xx1300000820</div> | <div>Person 1, working at the back:</div> <div></div> <div>xx2300000039</div> <div>Person 2, working at the side hole:</div> <div></div> <div>xx2300000040</div> |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

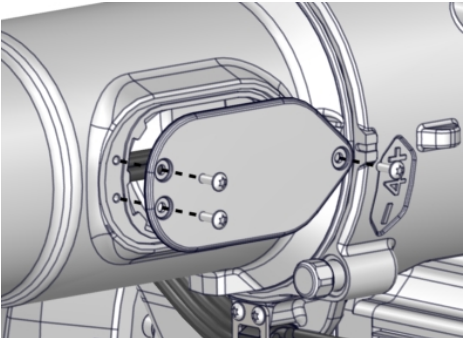
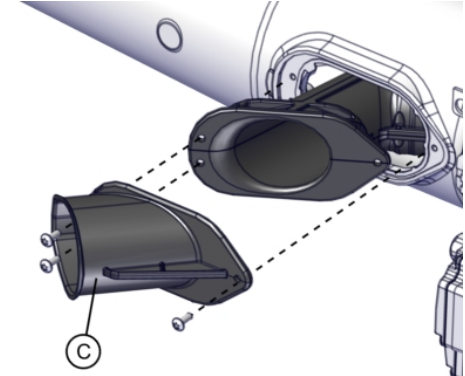
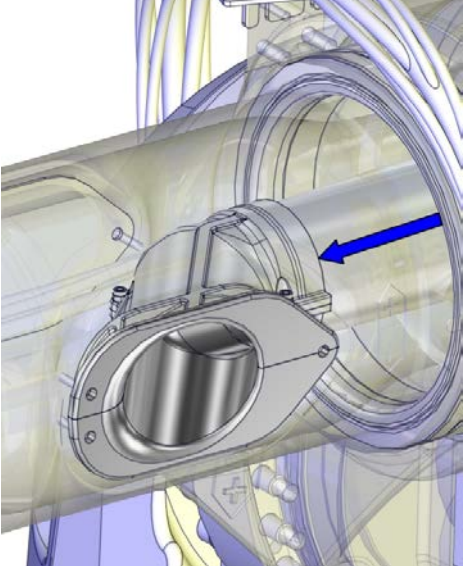
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Use caution and push the cable harness into the wrist.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person 1: Put one hand inside the side cover hole and take a hold of the cable harness.</li> <li>• Person 2: Take a hold of the cable harness from inside the wrist.</li> <li>• Together: Move the cable harness past the axis-5 motor and into the wrist.</li> </ul> | <p>Person 1, working at the side hole:</p>  <p>xx2300000035</p> <p>Person 2, working at the wrist:</p>  <p>xx2300000041</p> |
| 5 | <p>Refit the metal clamp axis-4, inside the arm tube.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The screw is reached from outside the upper arm.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300000033</p>  <p>xx2300000032</p>          |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

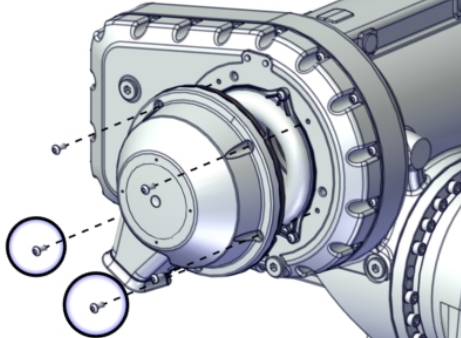
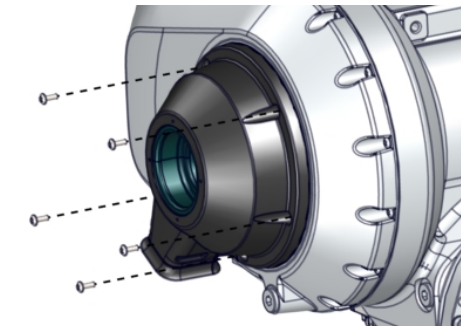
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Refit the side cover (if no DressPack is used).</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure the gasket is fitted correctly on the side cover</li><li>• Use attachment screws made of stainless steel to fit the side cover.</li></ul> |  <p>xx2300000031</p>   |
| 7 | <p>With DressPack:</p> <p>Refit the insert that guides the DressPack cable package through the hole in the upper arm.</p> <p>(Cable guard (C) is available for Foundry cable guard.)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2100002677</p>  |
| 8 | <p>With DressPack:</p> <p>Refit the DressPack tube into the insert.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  <p>xx1400000092</p> |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>9 <i>Foundry Plus</i><br/><i>DressPack</i>:<br/>Refit the back cover with the attachment screws.<br/>Tighten the two screws closest to the outlet first (shown in figure), to avoid deformation.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>With <i>DressPack</i>:<br/>Make sure that the tube is fitted correctly in both ends, when fitting the cover.</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.<br/><i>Foundry Plus</i></p>  <p>xx2100002636</p> <p><i>DressPack</i><br/>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p>  <p>xx2300001040</p> |

#### Inserting the axis-6 motor cables

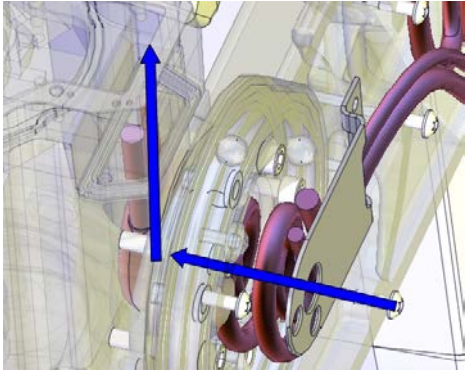
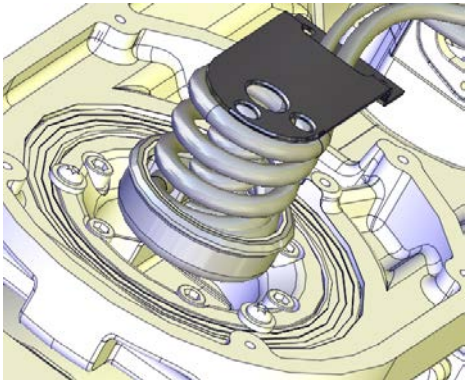
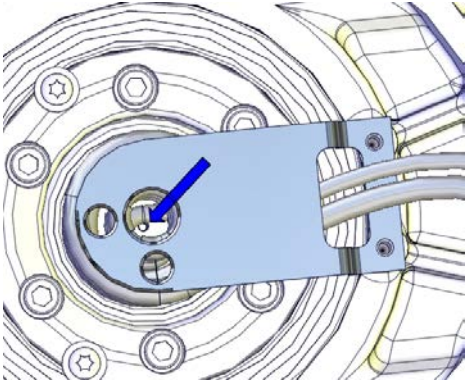
| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>1  <b>Note</b></p> <p>Axis 5 must be in position +90° (or as close as possible) for a correct installation of the cable harness in the wrist. If not, connect the brake release tool to the axis-5 motor connector, release the brakes and move axis 5 manually to +90°.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

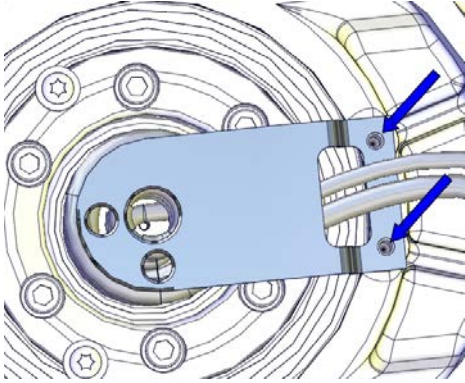
5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>2</div> <div>Push the cable harness into the wrist recess and up into the axis-6 motor.</div> <div> <b>Tip</b></div> <div>Moisten the rubber carrier slightly with water or grease around the contact surface, to make it easier to fit into place.</div>                                                                                                                                                             | <div></div> <div>xx1300000667</div>   |
| <div>3</div> <div>Push the carrier carefully into position.</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <div></div> <div>xx1300001113</div>  |
| <div>4</div> <div>Secure the carrier with the M4x10 screw.</div> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <div>The screw is located at the bottom of the carrier.</div> <div> <b>Tip</b></div> <div>The attachment screw securing the carrier may be difficult to fit. Make sure the carrier is level and completely pressed against the bottom.</div> | <div></div> <div>xx1300000485</div> |

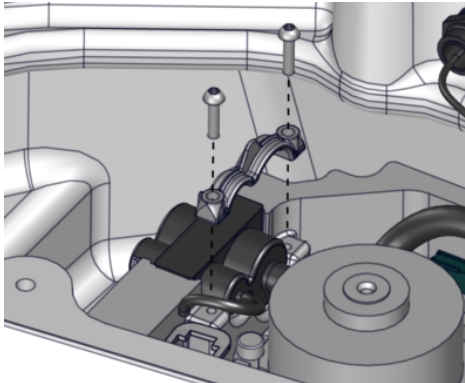
Continues on next page

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Secure the cable bracket with its attachment screws. | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/> Tightening torque: standard torque 10 Nm<br/> (<i>Tightening torque on page 697</i>).</p>  <p>xx1300000484</p> |

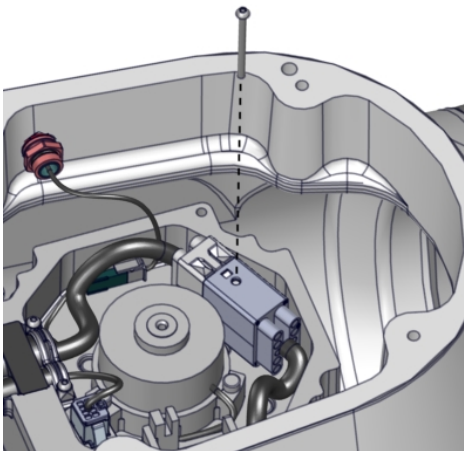
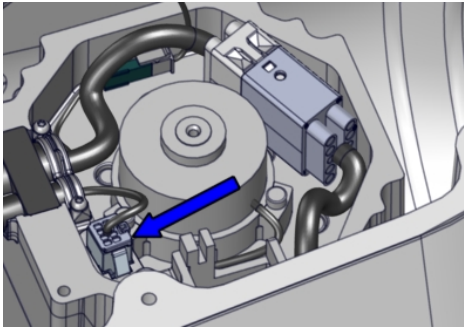
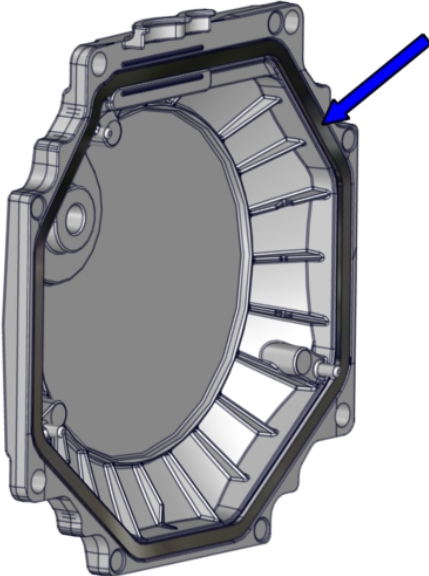
#### Connecting the axis-5 motor cables

|   | Action                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.      | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001735</p> |

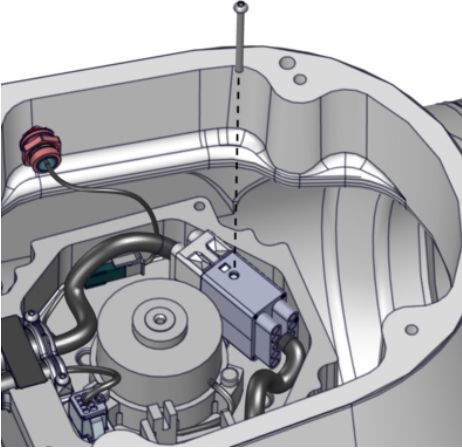
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>3</div> <div>Connect the power cable connector and secure with a screw.<br/>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</div> <div><div></div><div><b>Note</b><br/><br/>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</div></div> | <div>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</div> <div></div> <div>xx2200001733</div>                                                                                 |
| <div>4</div> <div>Connect the signal cable connector.<br/>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <div></div> <div>xx2200001734</div>                                                                                                                   |
| <div>5</div> <div>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <div>Connection box cover with gasket:<br/>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</div> <div></div> <div>xx2200002141</div> |

Tightening torque: 1 Nm



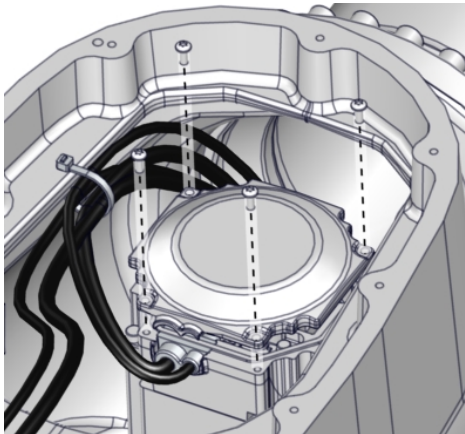
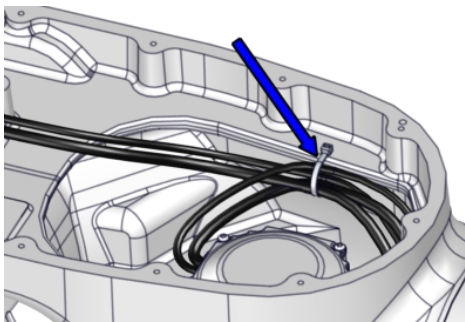
xx2200001733

Continues on next page



### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 7 | Refit the motor cover and the cable protection with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid.                                                                                           | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm. <br>xx2300001924 |
| 8 | Secure the cabling with a cable strap.                                                                                                                                                      | Cable strap, outdoor <br>xx2300001923                                                                                                                    |

#### Connecting the axis-6 motor cables

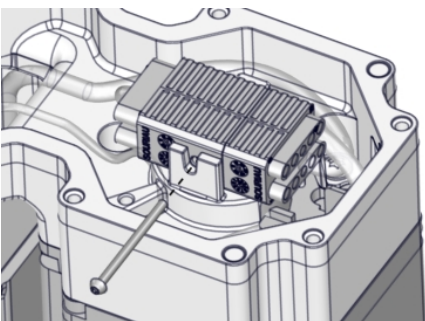
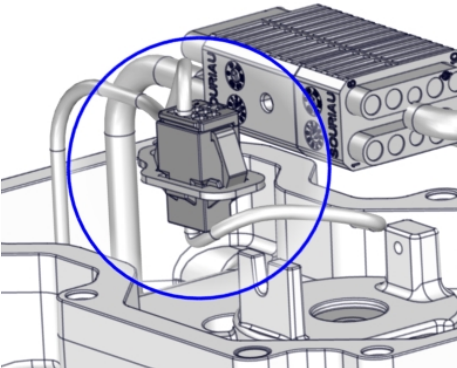
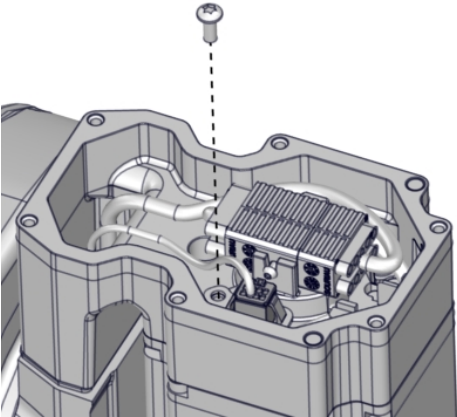
|   | Action                                                                                  | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Connect the motor cables.<br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors. |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

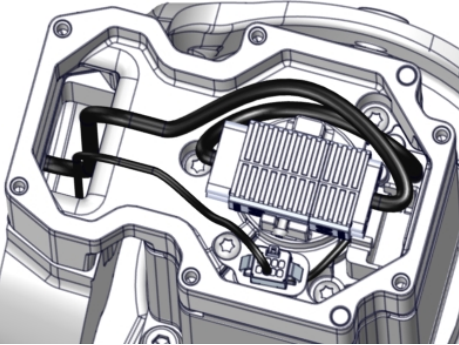
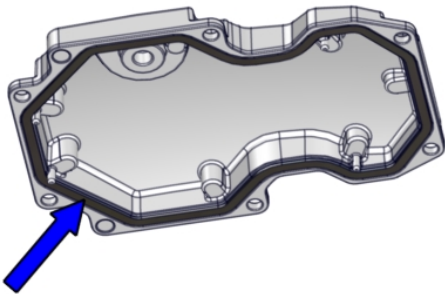
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Position the power connector to the bracket with a screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001731</p>                            |
| 3 | <p>Snap the signal connectors to each other in the bracket.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2200001921</p>                                                          |
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector bracket assembly to the motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The cabling is sensitive to mechanical damage. Handle it with care to avoid damage to the cabling or the connector, avoid any kind of tilt or skew.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001730</p> |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

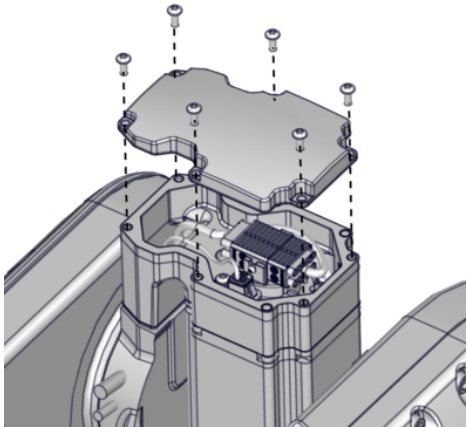
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Verify correct cable layout as shown in the figure.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Route the signal cabling correctly to avoid cable damage.</p> |  <p>xx2300000920</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6 | <p>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Gasket / Connection box cover with gasket:<br/> <b>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b><br/>           3HAC033489-001<br/> <b>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br/>           3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br/>           3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200001922</p> |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p>                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

*Continues on next page*

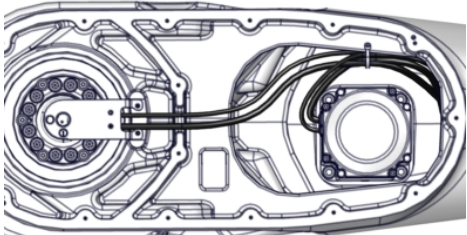
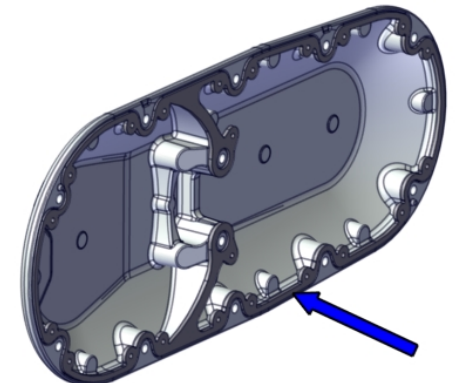
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

|   | Action                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Refit the motor cover. | <p>Torx pan head screw, M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70, 6 pcs<br/>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001434</p> |

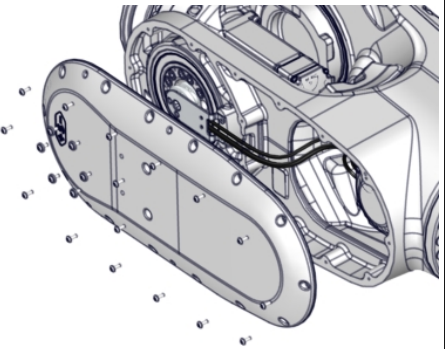
#### Refitting the wrist cover

|   | Action                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Make sure that the cable harness is routed and secured as shown in the figure. |  <p>xx2300001927</p>                               |
| 2 | <b>Foundry Plus:</b><br>Inspect the gasket.<br>Replace if damaged.             | <p>Gasket: 3HAC084758-001</p>  <p>xx2100001407</p> |

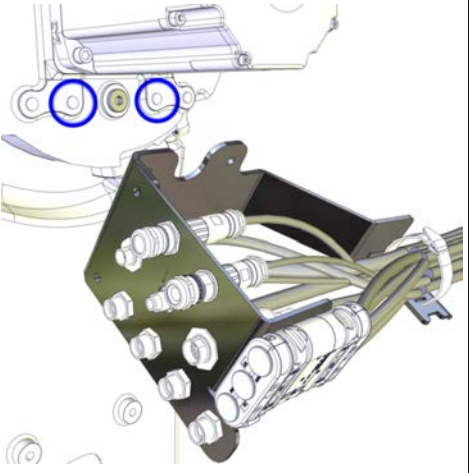
*Continues on next page*

### 5.7.2 Replacing the arm house cover including the axis-4 cassette sealing

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3 Refit the wrist cover and secure with screws.</p> <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i></p> <p>Fit all the screws first, then torque tighten them twice to achieve correct torque (due to compression from the gasket).</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80</p> <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001883</p> |

#### Concluded refitting of the cable harness

| Action                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1 If the robot is equipped with DressPack cable package:<br/>Refit all parts that belong to the DressPack.</p> | <p>See the product manual for the DressPack.</p>                                                        |
| <p>2 If the robot is equipped with DressPack cable package:<br/>Refit the connection plate.</p>                   |  <p>xx1200001332</p> |

#### Concluding procedure

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1 Refill oil to the axis-4 gearbox.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>See <a href="#">Filling oil into the axis-4 gearbox on page 177</a>.</p> |
| <p>2</p>  <p><b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p> |                                                                             |

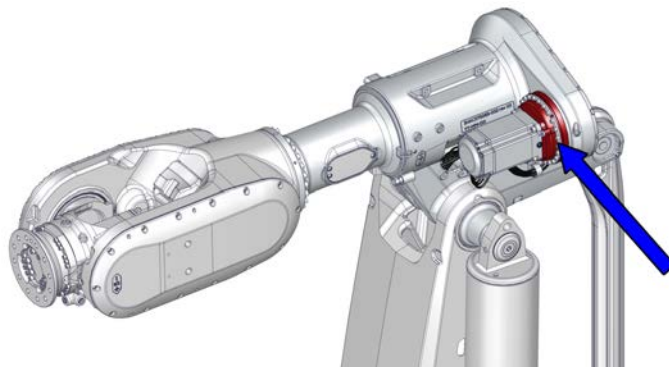
## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

#### Location of the axis-4 motor flange

The axis-4 motor flange is located as shown in the figure.



xx2400000670

#### Summary of the replacement procedure

This is a brief summary of the replacement procedure, containing the major actions to be performed.

- 1 Drain the axis-4 primary gearbox.
- 2 Remove the axis-4 motor.
- 3 Replace the motor flange.

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part   | Article number                                                       | Note |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Motor flange | 3HAC069502-006<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC069502-007<br>(ABB Orange) |      |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment          | Article number | Note                                          |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Brake release tool | 3HAC081310-001 | User instructions are enclosed with the tool. |
| Guide pin, M10x150 | 3HAC15521-2    | Always use guide pins in pairs.               |
| Bits extender      | 3HAC12342-1    | 300 mm, bits 1/2"                             |

*Continues on next page*

## 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

*Continued*

| Equipment                             | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Removal tool motor M12                | 3HAC14631-1                 | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                         |
| Rotation tool M4                      | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M4.                                                                       |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                      | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

**Required service parts**

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                 | Note                                   |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover FS130 with gasket | 3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-4 motor |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                              | Loctite 7200                           |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                              | Loctite 7063                           |
| Flange sealant                         | -                                                              | Loctite 5800                           |

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |

*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

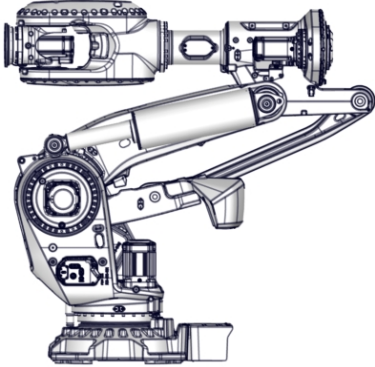
*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                              | Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:<br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. |      |

#### Removing the motor flange

Use these procedures to remove the motor flange.

#### Preparations before removing the motor flange

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Jog the robot into position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Axis 1: no significance</li><li>• Axis 2: jog axis 2 and 3 to a position where the upper arm is horizontal</li><li>• Axis 3: jog axis 2 and 3 to a position where the upper arm is horizontal</li><li>• Axis 4: no significance</li><li>• Axis 5: no significance</li><li>• Axis 6: no significance</li></ul> | <br>xx2400000297 |
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.                                                                  |                                                                                                      |
| 4 | Drain the axis-4 primary gearbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | See <a href="#">Draining the axis-4 gearbox on page 171</a> .                                        |

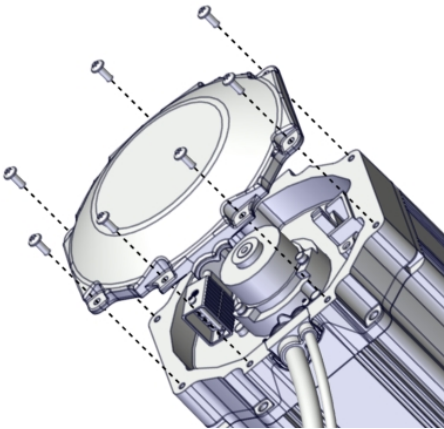
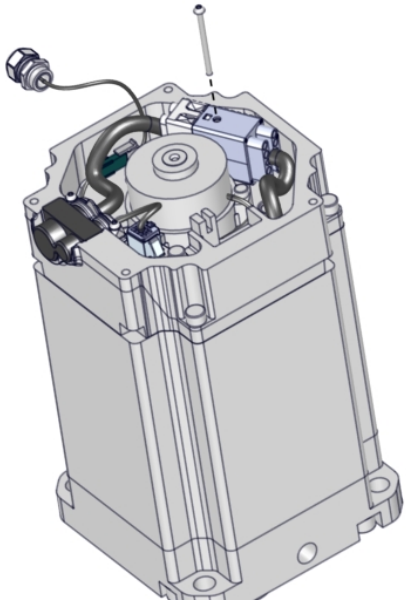
#### Disconnecting the motor cables

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1<br> <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

*Continues on next page*



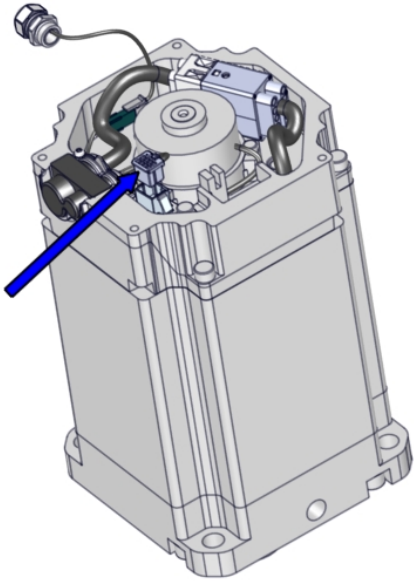
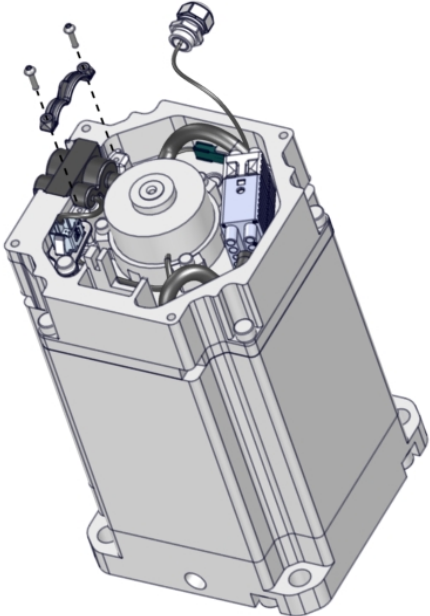
5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange  
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                              | <br>xx210000596   |
| 3 | Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector. | <br>xx2200001736 |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange  
Continued

|   | Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out. | <br><br>xx2200001737  |
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.         | <br><br>xx2200001738 |
| 6 | Remove the motor cables from the motor.                  |                                                                                                         |

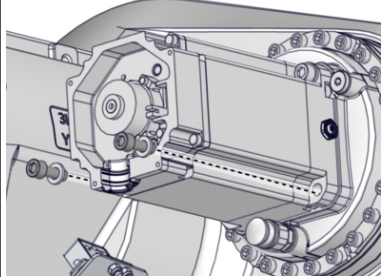
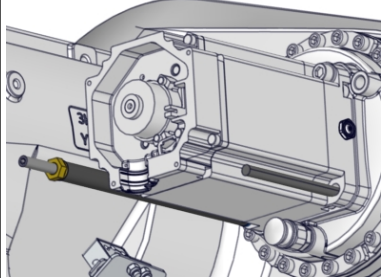
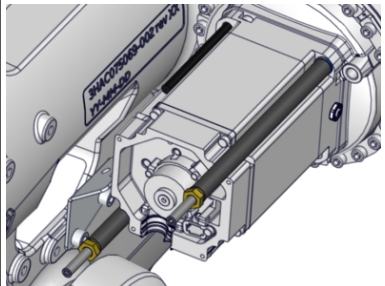
Removing the axis-4 motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

*Continued*

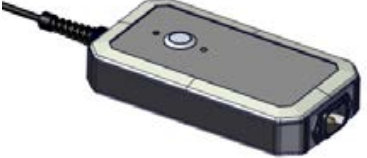
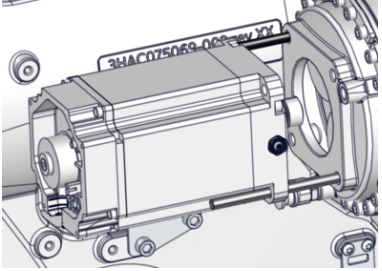
|   | Action                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Before removing the motor, make sure that the gearbox is completely drained.          |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 3 | Remove two of the motor attachment screws.                                            |  <p>xx2400000298</p>                                                                                  |
| 4 | Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole. | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1</p>  <p>xx2400000299</p>  |
| 5 | Remove the remaining screws.                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 6 | Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole. | <p>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1<br/>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2</p>  <p>xx2400000300</p> |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

Continued

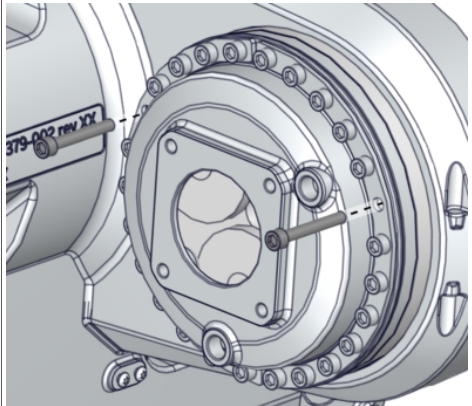
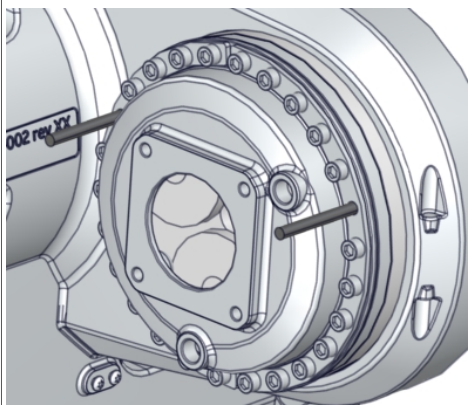
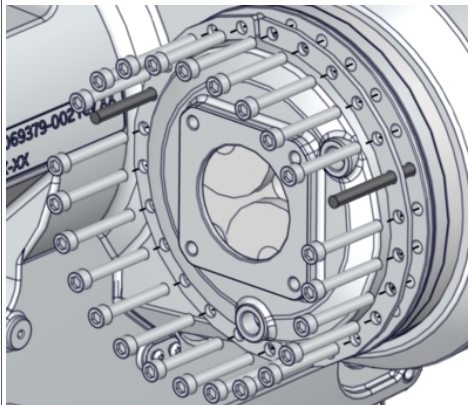
|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7  | <p>Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Releasing the brakes on the axis-4 motor may cause axis-4 to move unexpectedly.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 8  | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 9  | <p>Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 10 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 13 kg</p> <p>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 11 | <p>Remove the motor by lifting it straight out. Make sure the pinion is not damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2400000301</p>                                                                                              |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

*Continued*

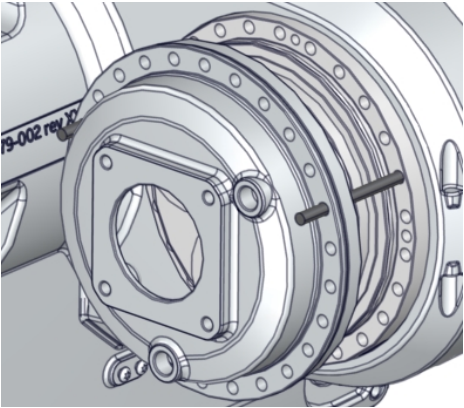
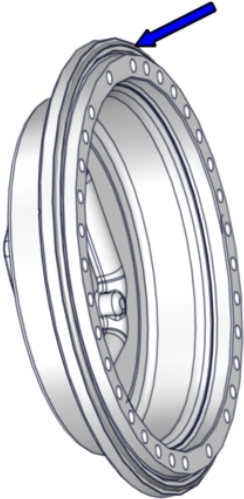
#### Removing the motor flange

|   | Action                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove two attachment screws in opposite holes.         |  <p>xx2400000672</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 2 | Fit guide pins in the holes.                            | <p>, Robot.Motors.Axis4.MotorFlange.Guide-Pin.ArticleNumber</p> <p>Guide pin, M10x150 (IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID)</p> <p>Guide pin, M8x150 (IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID)</p>  <p>xx2400000673</p> |
| 3 | Remove the remaining attachment screws and the washers. |  <p>xx2400000674</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <div> <b>Note</b></div> <div>There will be some oil spill when the motor flange is removed. Put some paper (or similar) to absorb the surplus oil.</div> |                                                                                                                         |
| 5 | Remove the motor flange.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <div></div> <div>xx2400000675</div>   |
| 6 | Make sure the o-ring is present.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <div></div> <div>xx2300001867</div> |

Refitting the motor flange

Use these procedures to refit the motor flange.

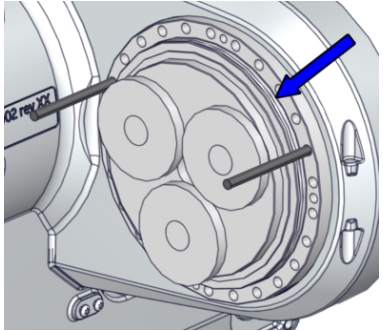
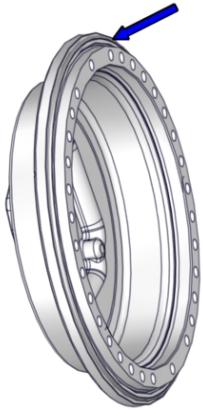
Refitting the motor flange

|   | Action                                                  | Note |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Clean the contact surfaces on gearbox and motor flange. |      |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Clean the o-ring and the o-ring groove on gearbox.                  | <br>xx2400000676                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 3 | Lubricate the o-ring and fit to the gearbox.<br>Replace if damaged. | Grease, Shell Gadus S2:<br>3HAC042536-001.<br>O-ring:<br><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9</b><br><b>IRB 7720-530/3.1</b><br><b>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID</b><br><b>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b><br>3HAC061327-062<br><b>IRB 7720-510/3.3</b><br><b>IRB 7720-450/3.5</b><br><b>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID</b><br><b>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br>3HAC061327-078 |
| 4 | Check the motor flange o-ring.<br>Replace if damaged.               | O-ring: 3HAB3772-160<br><br>xx2300001867                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

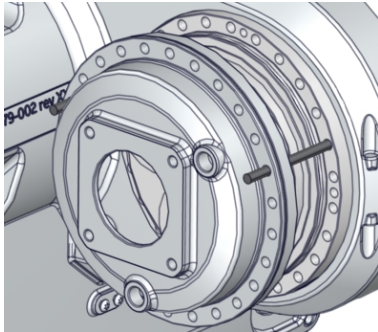
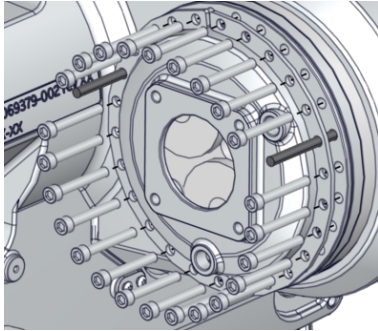
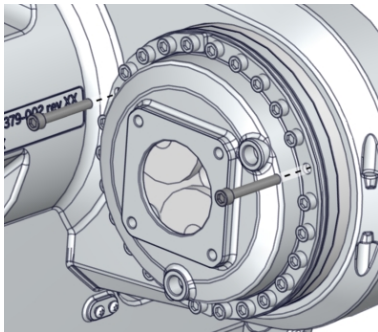
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Lift the motor flange onto the guide pins.                                      | <br>xx2400000675                                                                         |
| 6 | Make sure the o-rings are in position and slide the motor flange into position. |                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 7 | Fit the attachment screws with the two washers.                                 | Hex socket head cap screw:<br>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br>500<br><br>xx2400000674 |
| 8 | Remove the guide pins and attach the remaining screws.                          | <br>xx2400000672                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

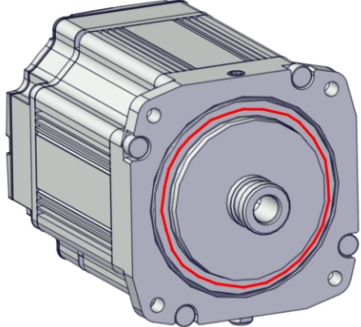


### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

*Continued*

|    | Action                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | Tighten all motor flange screws. | Tightening torque: .<br><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9</b><br><b>IRB 7720-530/3.1</b><br><b>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID</b><br><b>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b><br>standard torque 70 Nm ( <a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a> )<br><b>IRB 7720-510/3.3</b><br><b>IRB 7720-450/3.5</b><br><b>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID</b><br><b>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br>standard torque 35 Nm ( <a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a> ) |
| 10 | Perform a leak-down test.        | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

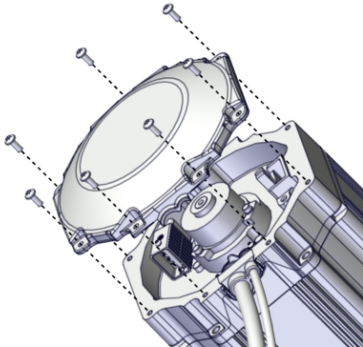
#### Preparations prior to refitting motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                          |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                               |
| 2 | Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface. | Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063                                                                                                    |
| 3 | Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.                                                              | Flange sealant: Loctite 5800<br><br><br><br>xx2100000520 |

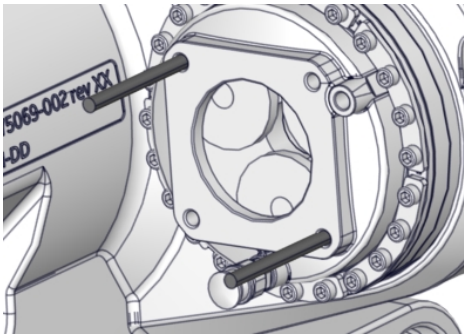
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

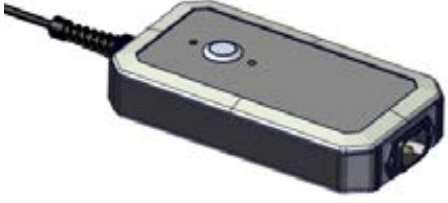
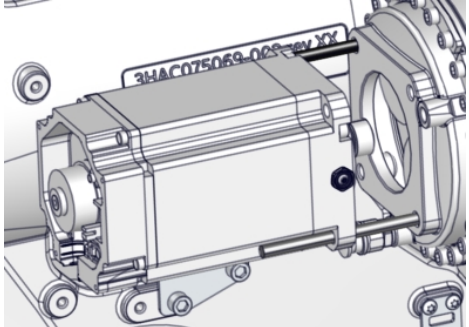
5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange  
Continued

|   | Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor. | <br><br>xx2100000596 |

Refitting the axis-4 motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Fit guide pins in opposite holes.                                                                                                                                                                     | Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br>Always use guide pins in pairs.<br><br><br>xx2400000302 |
| 2 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The weight of the motor is 13 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 3 | Apply the rotation tool.                                                                                                                                                                              | Rotation tool M4: 3HAB7887-1                                                                                                                                                  |

Continues on next page

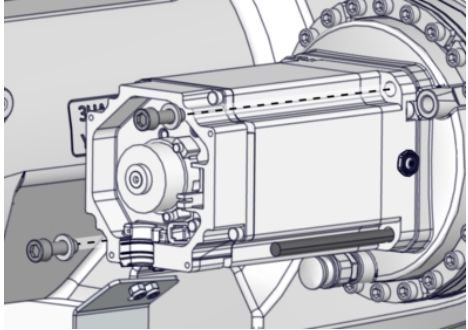
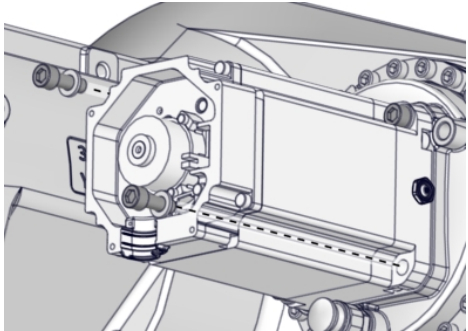
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Release the brakes of the axis-4 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 5 | <p>Lift the motor and put it on the guide pins as close as possible to its final position without pushing the motor pinion into the gear.</p> <p>Use caution and fit the motor in its final position while at the same time rotating the motor pinion slightly using the rotation tool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear of the gearbox.</li> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> <li>• Make sure that the direction of the cable exit is facing the correct way.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure the cable gland opening is turned the correct way.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  <p>xx2400000301</p>                                                                                              |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

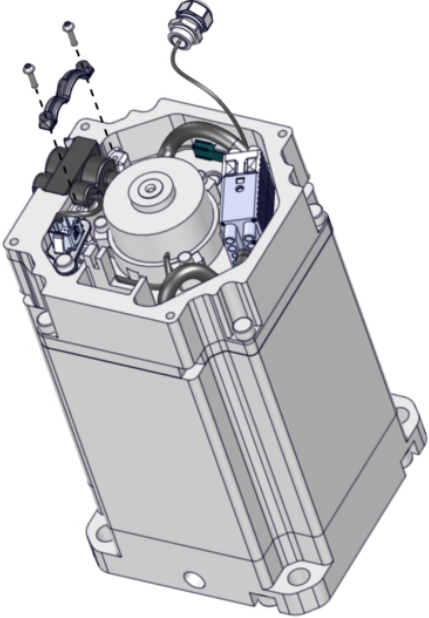
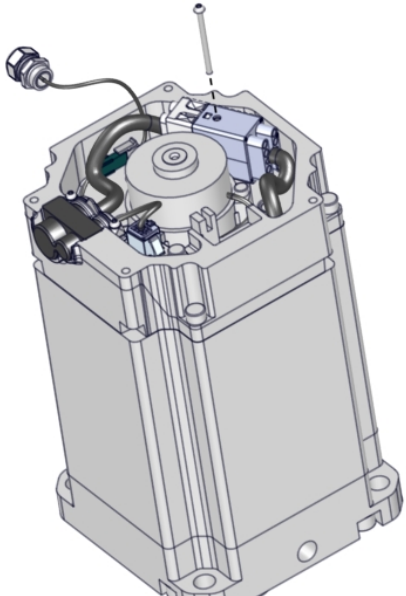
*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7  | Fit two of the attachment screws and washers.<br>Use a bits extender in order to reach the screws. | Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9<br>Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)<br>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2400000303 |
| 8  | Remove the guide pins and replace with the remaining attachment screws.                            | Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9<br>Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)<br><br>xx2400000304                              |
| 9  | Tighten the screws.                                                                                | Tightening torque: 50 Nm.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 10 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 11 | Perform a leak-down test.                                                                          | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                |

#### Connecting the motor cables

|   | Action                                        | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |      |

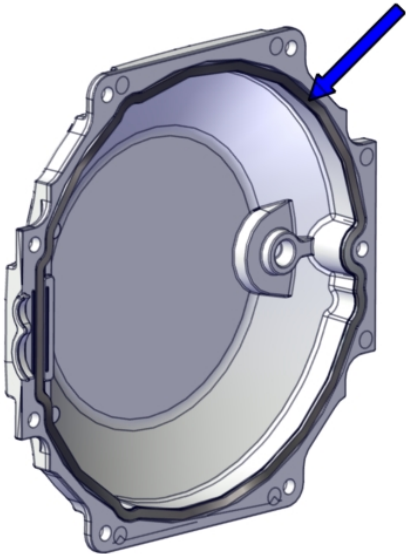
*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | <p>Connect the motor cables.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | <p>Fit a screw to the power connector.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p>                        |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

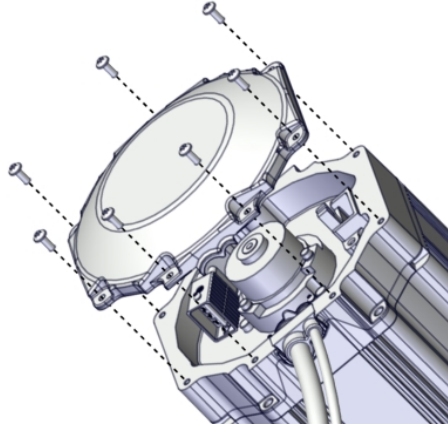
5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.</p> <p>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.</p>                                                                                                                   | <p>Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:<br/>3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br/>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br/>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)</p> <p>Axis-4:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:<br/>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2100000600</p> |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

Continues on next page

### 5.7.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor flange

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | <p>Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.</p> <p>Use locking liquid.</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p> <p>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2100000596</p> |

#### Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refill the gearbox with oil.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | See <a href="#">Filling oil into the axis-4 gearbox on page 172</a> . |
| 2 | Re-calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> .                         |
| 3 |  <p><b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p> |                                                                       |

## 5 Repair

---

### 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

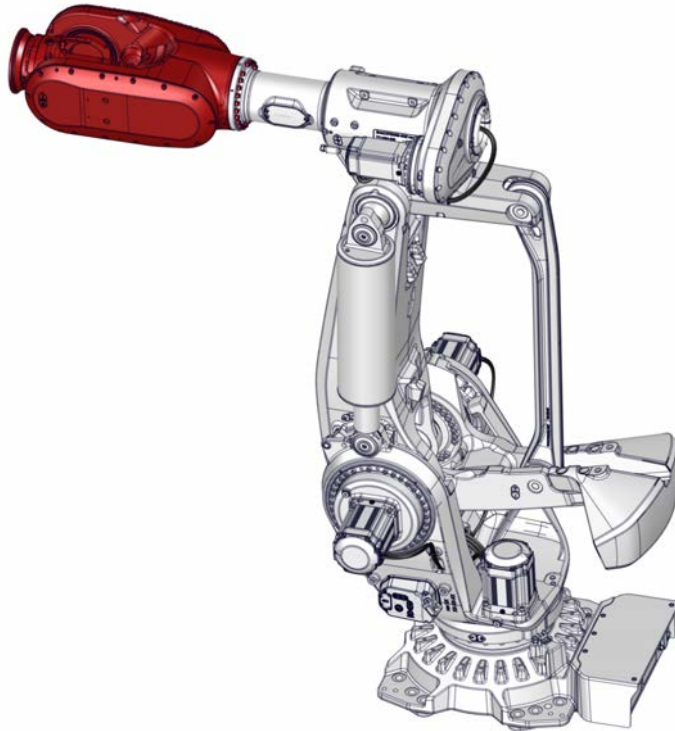
## 5.8 Wrist

### 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

---

#### Location of the wrist

The wrist is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001929

---

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robotics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

*Continues on next page*



| Spare part | Article number                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note | Level |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------|
| Wrist      | IRB 7720-620/2.9<br>IRB 7720-530/3.1<br>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:<br>3HAC085021-002 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC085021-003 (ABB Orange)<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br>IRB 7720-450/3.5<br>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:<br>3HAC085018-002 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC085018-003 (ABB Orange) |      | L2    |

**Required tools and equipment**

| Equipment                       | Article number | Note                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Guide pin, M12x150              | 3HAC13056-2    | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                      |
| Brake release tool              | 3HAC081310-001 | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                        |
| Bit holder and hexagon bit SW10 |                | Bit holder dimension: 5/16" (14x18 mm)<br>Used for screw access in narrow locations. |
| Roundsling, 1 m                 | -              | Length: 1 m.                                                                         |
| Standard toolkit                | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .         |

**Required service parts**

| Consumable                            | Article number                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover (without gasket) | 3HAC026607-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC026607-004 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID                   |
| Connection box cover with gasket      | 3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID                   |
| Gasket                                | 3HAC033489-001                                                 | For axis-6 connection box cover.<br>Replace if damaged.<br>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID: |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

*Continued*

| Consumable                       | Article number                                                 | Note                                    |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover with gasket | 3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-5 motor  |
| Wrist cover                      | 3HAC085026-002 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC085026-003 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.                     |
| Gasket                           | 3HAC084758-001                                                 | For wrist cover.<br>Replace if damaged. |
| Cable strap, out-door            | -                                                              |                                         |

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br><br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b><br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

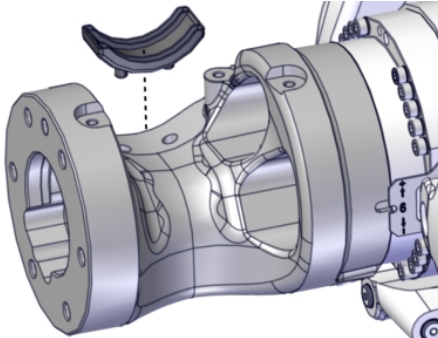
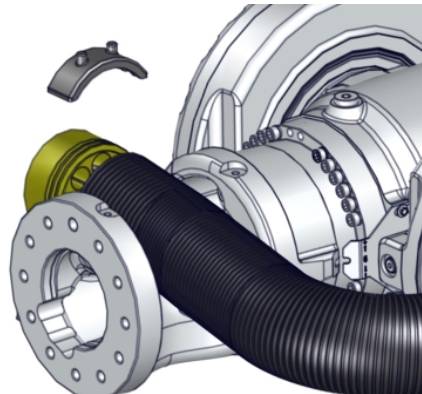
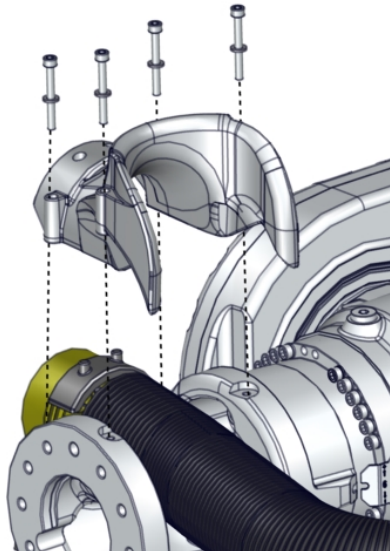
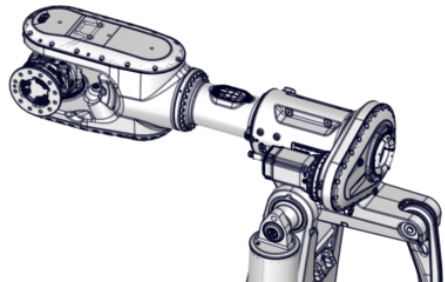
#### Removing the wrist

Use these procedures to remove the wrist.

##### Preparations before removing the wrist

|   | Action                                                                                                         | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. |      |
| 2 | Remove tools and other equipment fitted to the wrist.                                                          |      |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>If used, open the DressPack axis-6 cable support and remove the DressPack cable package from the process turning disk.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Use caution not to lose the two clamp jaws on either side of the DressPack cable package.</p>  <p>xx2100002712</p> |  <p>xx2300001210</p>  <p>xx2300001211</p> |
| 4 | <p>Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: jog axis 2 and 3 to a position where the upper arm is horizontal</li> <li>• Axis 3: jog axis 2 and 3 to a position where the upper arm is horizontal</li> <li>• Axis 4: +90°</li> <li>• Axis 5: +90°</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance</li> </ul>                                                                |  <p>xx2300001931</p>                                                                                                         |
| 5 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p>                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

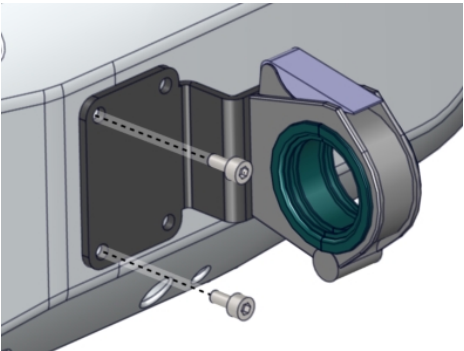
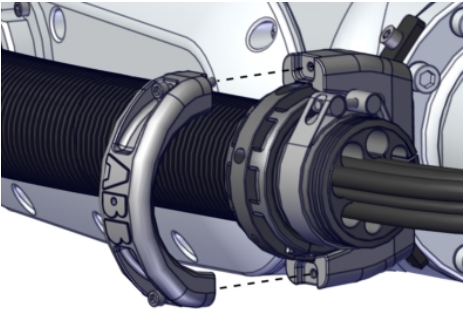
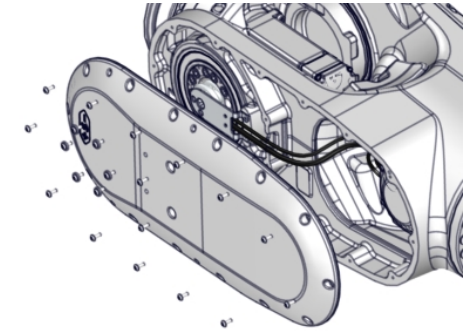
*Continues on next page*

# 5 Repair

## 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist Continued

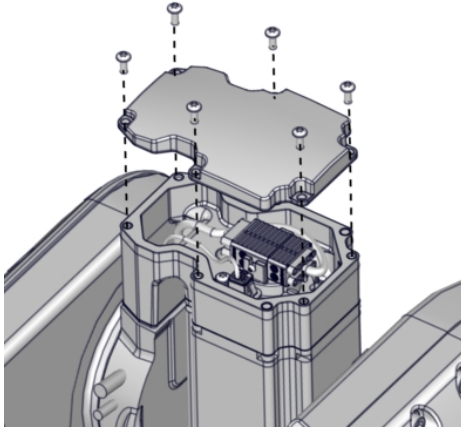
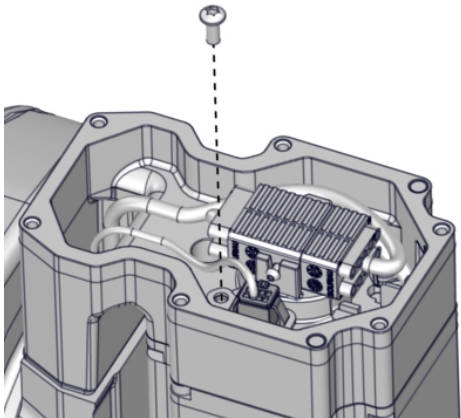
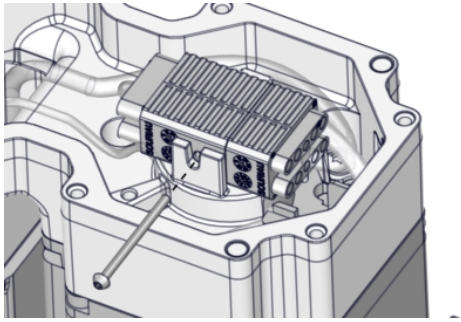
### Retrieving access to the wrist cabling

Use this procedure to remove the wrist cover.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                          |
| 2 | If DressPack MH3 is installed:<br>Remove the wrist bracket with the complete ball joint housing still fitted, if the bracket is installed over the two wrist cover screws.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>No need to remove the bracket if the two wrist cover screws are accessible. | <br><br>xx2300001366   |
| 3 | If DressPack is installed:<br>Open the ball joint housing on the arm tube and remove the DressPack cable package.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <br><br>xx2100002709 |
| 4 | Remove the wrist cover.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <br><br>xx2300001883 |

Continues on next page

## Disconnecting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Unscrew the attachment screws and remove the motor cover.                                                                                                                                                 | <br>xx2200001434  |
| 3 | Remove the connector bracket.                                                                                                                                                                             | <br>xx2200001730 |
| 4 | Remove the connector screw.                                                                                                                                                                               | <br>xx2200001731 |
| 5 | Disconnect the motor cables.                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                      |

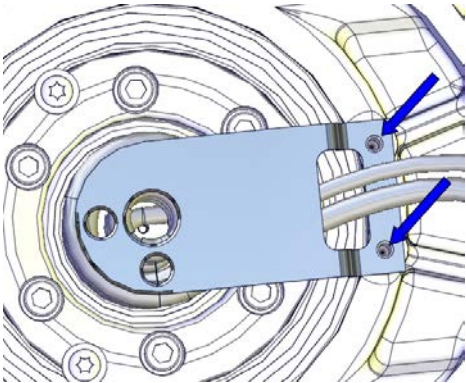
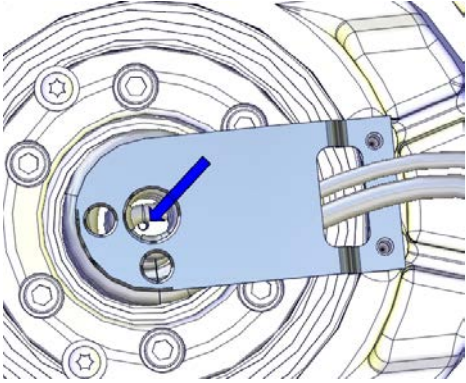
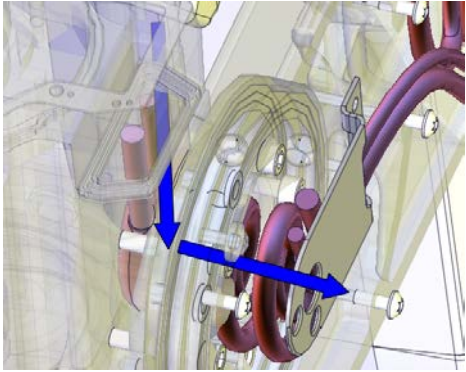
Continues on next page

# 5 Repair

## 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

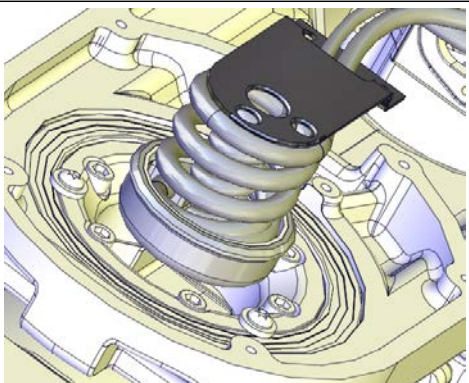
Continued

Pushing out the axis-6 motor cables

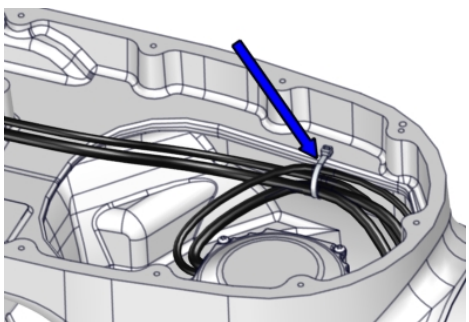
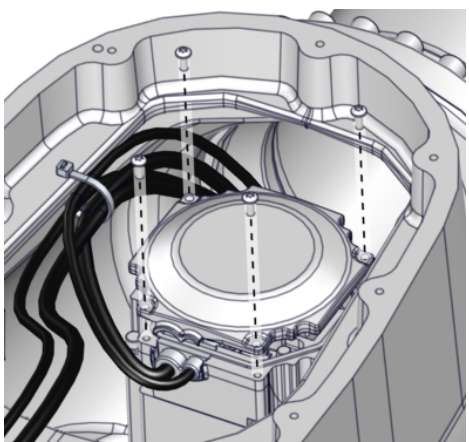
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Unscrew the attachment screws that hold the cable bracket.                                                                                                                                              | <br>xx1300000484   |
| 2 | Unscrew the M4 screw that holds the carrier.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>The screw is located at the bottom of the carrier. | <br>xx1300000485  |
| 3 | Lift out the axis-6 motor cables by holding the cables with one hand at the motor and the other at the carrier.                                                                                         | <br>xx1300000666 |

Continues on next page



|   | Action                                  | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Lift out the carrier from its position. | <br>xx1300001113 |

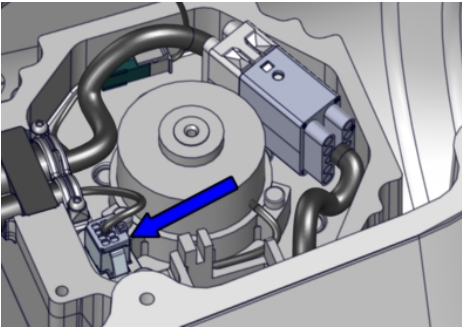
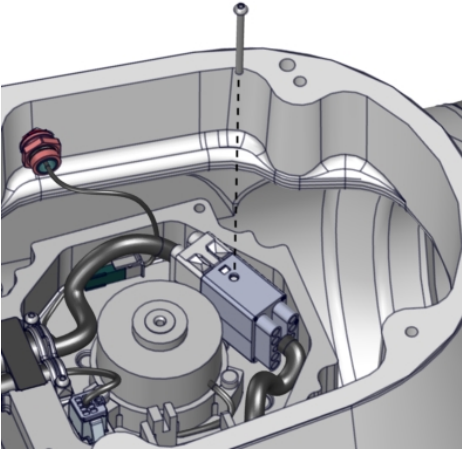
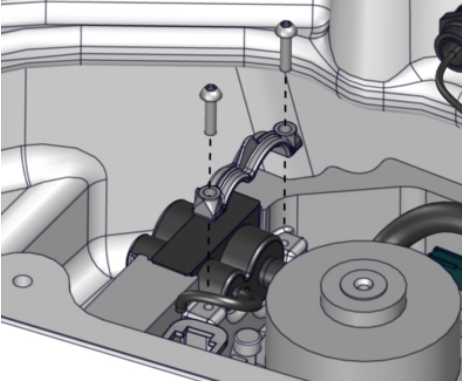
## Disconnecting the axis-5 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Cut the cable tie.                                                                                                                                                                                        | <br>xx2300001923 |
| 3 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                                                                                                                            | <br>xx2300001924 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

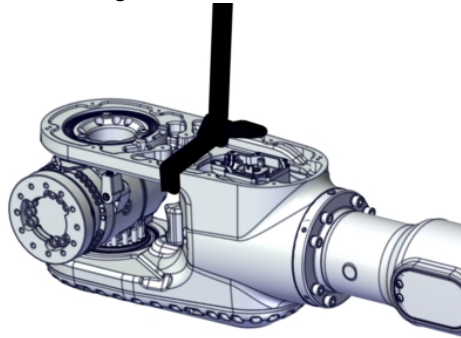
5.8.1 Replacing the wrist  
Continued

| Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 Disconnect the signal cable connector.                                 | <br>xx2200001734   |
| 5 Disconnect the power cable connector by removing the attachment screw. | <br>xx2200001733  |
| 6 Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.                       | <br>xx2200001735 |
| 7 Remove the motor cables.                                               |                                                                                                      |

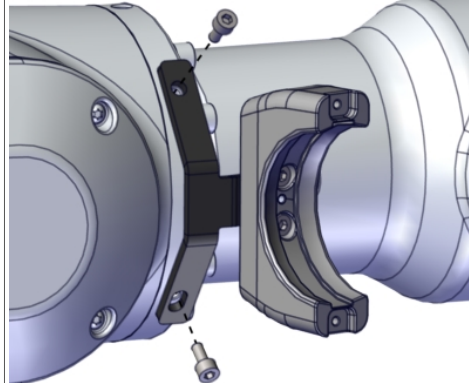
Continues on next page



## Attaching the lifting accessories to the wrist

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                       |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the wrist is<br>170 kg (IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5)<br>225 kg (IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1)<br>188 kg (IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID)<br>242 kg (IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID)<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                            |
| 2 | Attach a roundsling to the wrist as shown in the figure.<br><br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>The roundsling placement shown in the figure keeps the wrist balanced when lifted, which reduces risk of damage or injury.<br>Do not attach the roundsling around the axis-5 gearbox!                                             | Roundsling, 1 m<br><br> |
| 3 | Secure the roundsling to an overhead crane and stretch the roundsling to carry the weight of the wrist.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | xx2100001290                                                                                               |

## Removing the wrist

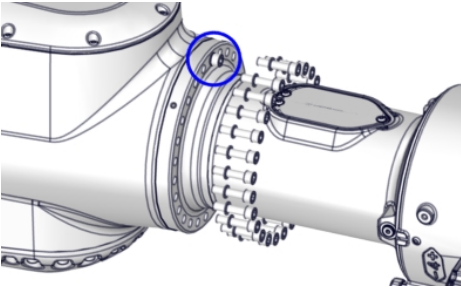
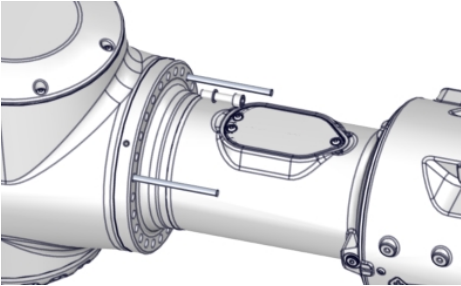
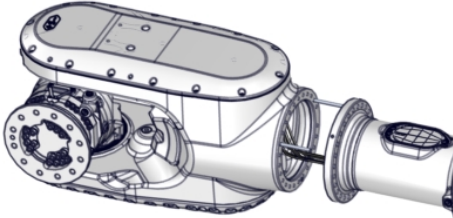
|   | Action                                                                            | Note                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | If used, remove the bracket with the part of the ball joint housing still fitted. |  |
|   |                                                                                   | xx2100002805                                                                         |

Continues on next page

# 5 Repair

## 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove all attachment screws but leave one.                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <br>xx2300001932                                                                                     |
| 3 | Fit guide pins to the wrist unit.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Guide pin, M12x150:<br>3HAC13056-2                                                                                                                                                     |
| 4 | Remove the remaining screw.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <br>xx2300001933                                                                                    |
| 5 | <p>Pull out the wrist a bit and bring out the cabling from the wrist unit.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Make sure that the cabling does not get damaged.</p> | <p>Bit holder and hexagon bit SW10<br/>Bit holder dimension: 5/16" (14x18 mm)</p> <br>xx2300001934 |
| 6 | Lift away the wrist.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                        |

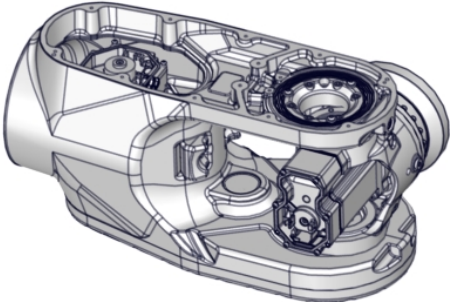
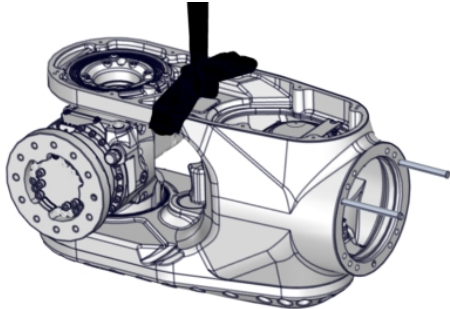
### Refitting the wrist

These procedures describe how to refit the wrist.

#### Preparations before refitting the wrist

|   | Action                           | Note |
|---|----------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Wipe clean all contact surfaces. |      |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Prepare a new wrist spare part by removing the wrist cover and the motor covers.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2200002149</p>                                                                                              |
| 3 | <p>If axis 5 is not already in position <math>+90^\circ</math>, connect the brake release tool, release the brakes and move the axis manually into that position.</p> <p>Release the brakes of the axis-5 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br/>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 4 | <p>Attach a roundsling and guide pins to the wrist as shown in the figure.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The roundsling placement shown in the figure keeps the wrist balanced when lifted, which reduces risk of damage or injury. Do not attach the roundsling around the axis-5 gearbox!</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <p>Roundsling, 1 m: Length: 1 m.<br/>Guide pin, M12x150:<br/>3HAC13056-2</p>  <p>xx2300000019</p>               |

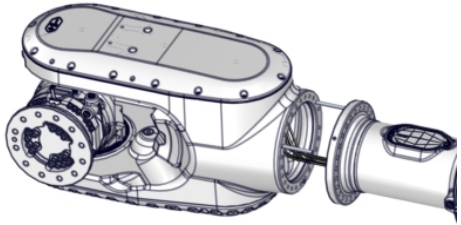
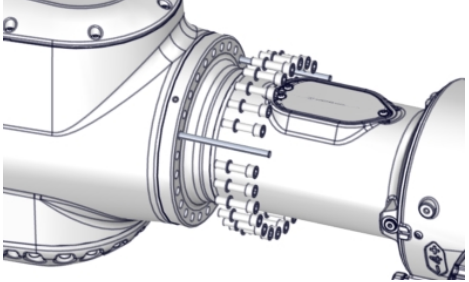
Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

*Continued*

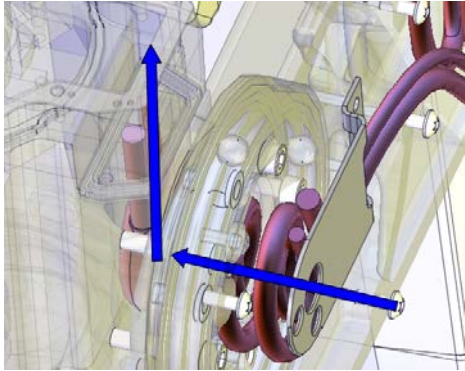
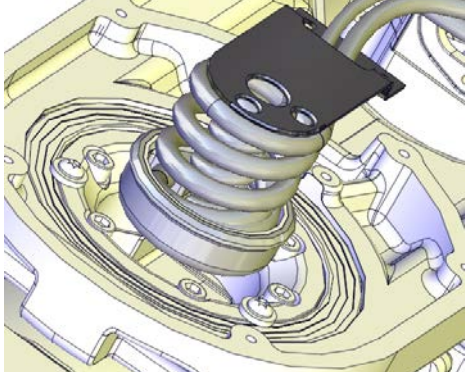
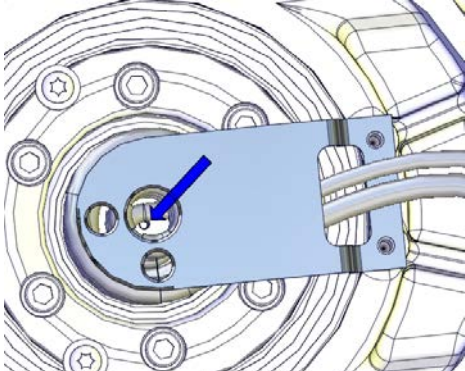
#### Refitting the wrist

|   | Action                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Lift the wrist into mounting position and run the cabling into the wrist housing.<br>Be careful not to damage any part of the cable harness. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Slide the wrist into fitting position.                                                                                                       | <br>xx2300001934                                                                                                                                                   |
| 3 | Fit the attachment screws and washers.<br>Then remove the guide pins and fit the remaining two screws.                                       | Hex socket head cap screw:<br>M12x50 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500<br>Bit holder and hexagon bit SW10<br>Bit holder dimension: 5/16" (14x18 mm)<br><br>xx2400000153 |
| 4 | Tighten the attachment screws.                                                                                                               | Tightening torque: standard torque 120 Nm<br>( <a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a> ).                                                                                                                                                      |

#### Inserting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>Note</b><br>Axis 5 must be in position +90° (or as close as possible) for a correct installation of the cable harness in the wrist. If not, connect the brake release tool to the axis-5 motor connector, release the brakes and move axis 5 manually to +90°. |      |

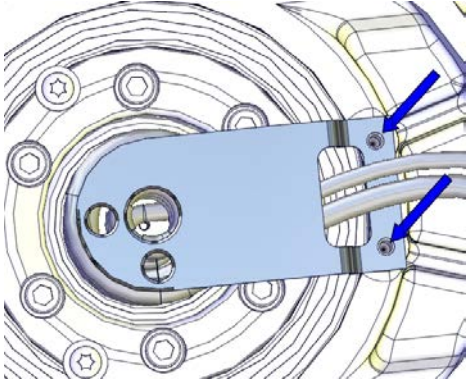
*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Push the cable harness into the wrist recess and up into the axis-6 motor.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Moisten the rubber carrier slightly with water or grease around the contact surface, to make it easier to fit into place.</p>                                                                                                                                                     |  <p>xx1300000667</p>   |
| 3 | <p>Push the carrier carefully into position.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  <p>xx1300001113</p>  |
| 4 | <p>Secure the carrier with the M4x10 screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The screw is located at the bottom of the carrier.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The attachment screw securing the carrier may be difficult to fit. Make sure the carrier is level and completely pressed against the bottom.</p> |  <p>xx1300000485</p> |

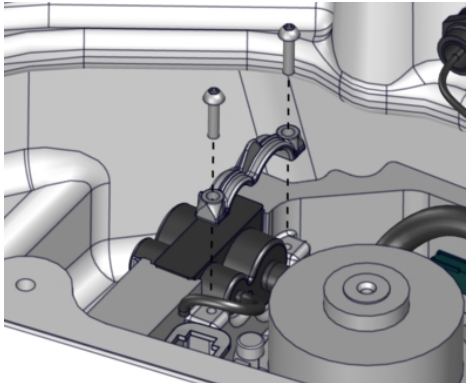
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.8.1 Replacing the wrist  
Continued

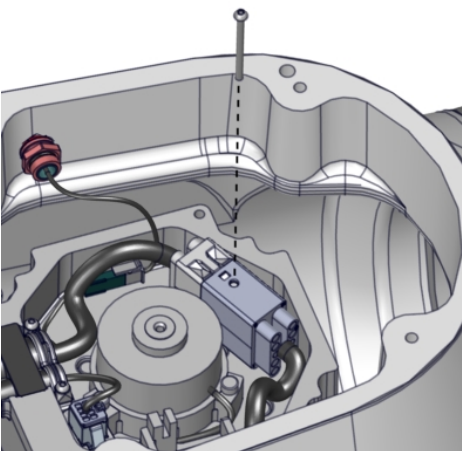
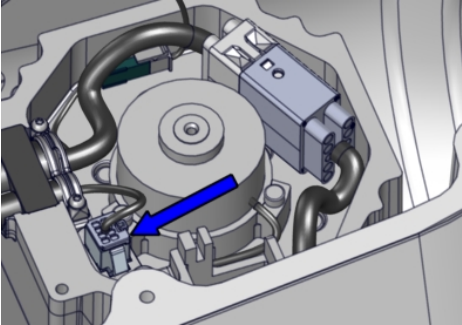
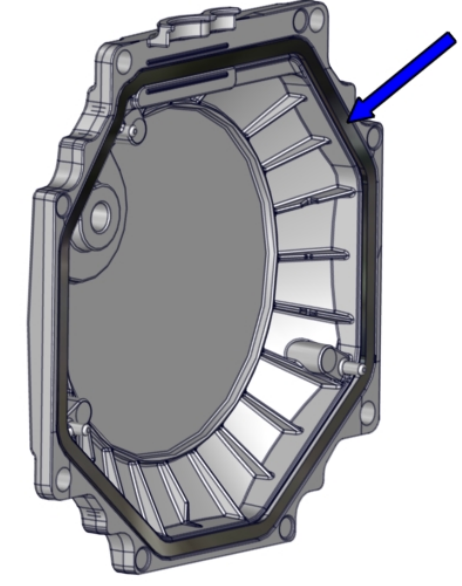
| Action                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 Secure the cable bracket with its attachment screws. | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque: standard torque 10 Nm<br/>(<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p>  <p>xx1300000484</p> |

Connecting the axis-5 motor cables

| Action                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 Refit the cable bracket with the screws.      | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001735</p> |

Continues on next page



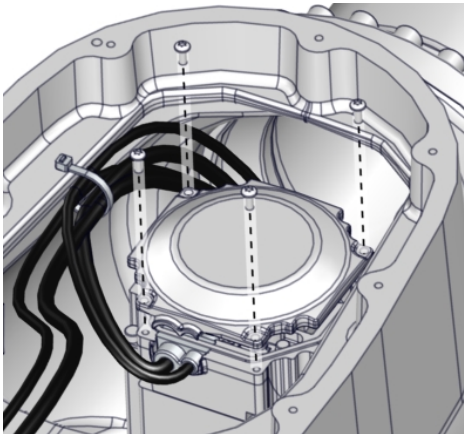
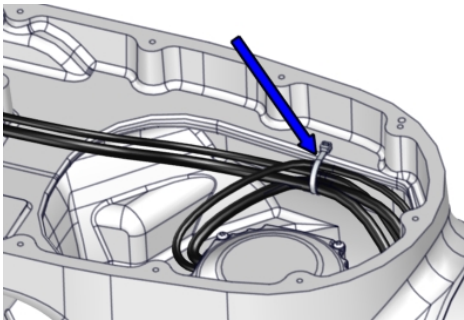
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Connect the power cable connector and secure with a screw.<br/>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001733</p>                                                                                 |
| 4 | <p>Connect the signal cable connector.<br/>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2200001734</p>                                                                                                               |
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Connection box cover with gasket:<br/>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200002141</p> |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

*Continued*

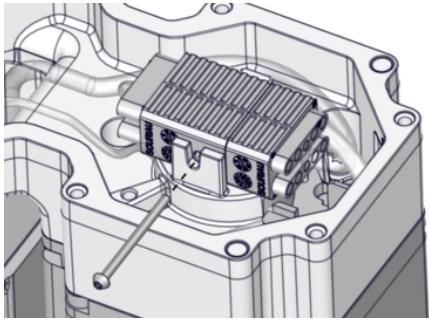
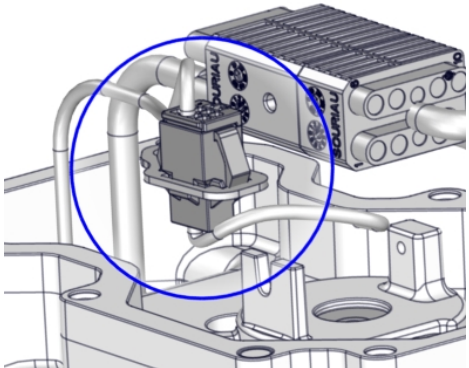
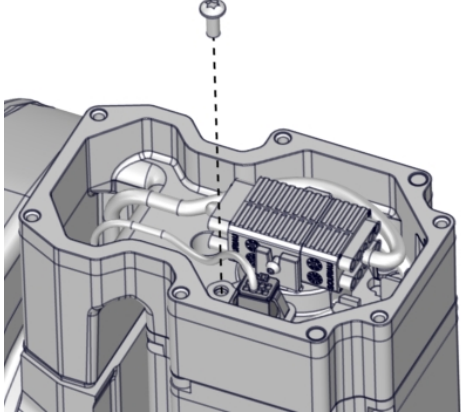
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 7 | Refit the motor cover and the cable protection with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid.                                                                                           | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001924 |
| 8 | Secure the cabling with a cable strap.                                                                                                                                                      | Cable strap, outdoor<br><br>xx2300001923                                                                                                                    |

#### Connecting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                  | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Connect the motor cables.<br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors. |      |

*Continues on next page*



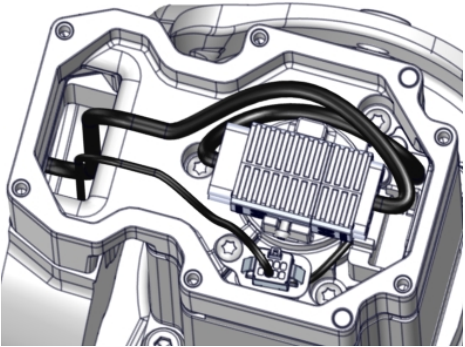
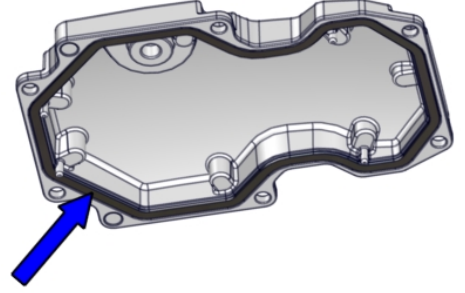
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Position the power connector to the bracket with a screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001731</p>                            |
| 3 | <p>Snap the signal connectors to each other in the bracket.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2200001921</p>                                                          |
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector bracket assembly to the motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The cabling is sensitive to mechanical damage. Handle it with care to avoid damage to the cabling or the connector, avoid any kind of tilt or skew.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001730</p> |

Continues on next page

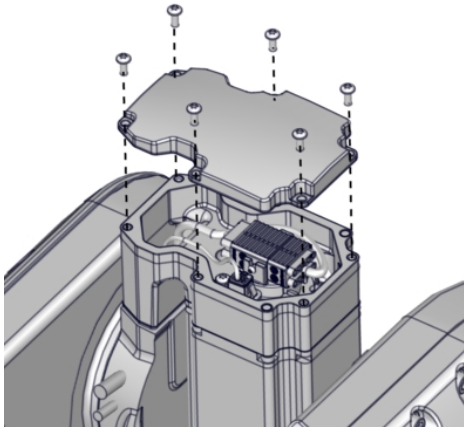
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

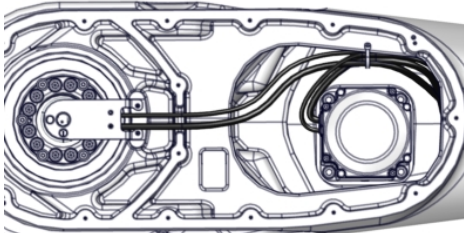
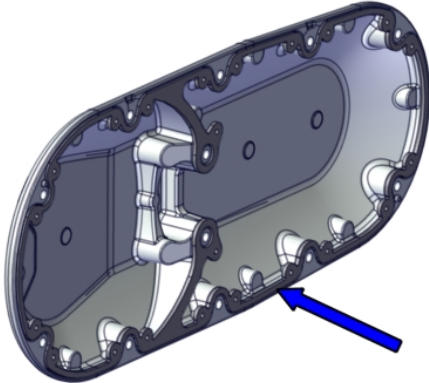
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Verify correct cable layout as shown in the figure.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Route the signal cabling correctly to avoid cable damage.</p> |  <p>xx2300000920</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6 | <p>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Gasket / Connection box cover with gasket:<br/>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:<br/>3HAC033489-001<br/>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:<br/>3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200001922</p> |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p>                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Refit the motor cover. | <p>Torx pan head screw, M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70, 6 pcs<br/>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001434</p> |

## Refitting the wrist cover

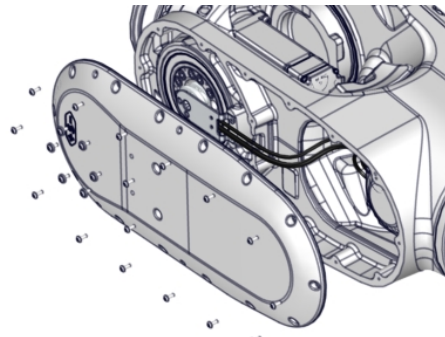
|   | Action                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Make sure that the cable harness is routed and secured as shown in the figure. |  <p>xx2300001927</p>                               |
| 2 | <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i><br/>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>    | <p>Gasket: 3HAC084758-001</p>  <p>xx2100001407</p> |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.8.1 Replacing the wrist

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Refit the wrist cover and secure with screws.</p> <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i></p> <p>Fit all the screws first, then torque tighten them twice to achieve correct torque (due to compression from the gasket).</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80</p> <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001883</p> |

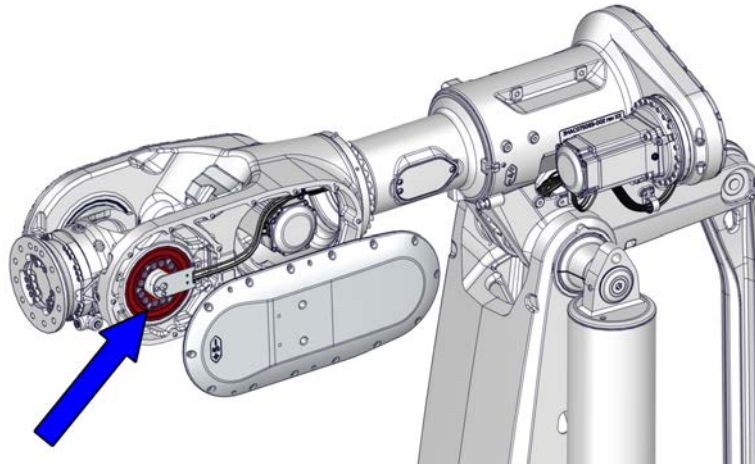
#### Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i></p> <p>Refit protection plugs.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                     |
| 2 | <p>If used, refit the DressPack cable package on the wrist.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>See product manual for the DressPack.</p>        |
| 3 | <p>Calibrate the robot.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <p>See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a>.</p> |
| 4 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p> |                                                     |

## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

### Location of the support shaft and bearing

The support shaft and bearing is located as shown in the figure.



xx2500001990

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part                      | Article number                                                 | Note                            | Level |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------|
| Support shaft including bearing | 3HAC085078-002 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC085078-003 (ABB Orange) | Includes o-ring 3HAC071417-003. | L2    |

### Required service parts

| Consumable     | Article number | Note                                            |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Cleaning agent | -              | Isopropanol                                     |
| O-ring         | 3HAC071417-003 | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-5 support shaft. |
| Grease         | 3HAC042536-001 | Shell Gadus S2                                  |

### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                    | Article number | Note                            |
|------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------|
| Screws M8x85, fully threaded | -              | 2 pcs<br>Used as removal tools. |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

| Equipment                  | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|----------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Screw, M12 x minimum 75 mm | -              | 3 pcs<br>Used to pull in the support shaft into the tilt house.              |
| Standard toolkit           | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b><br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

#### Removing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

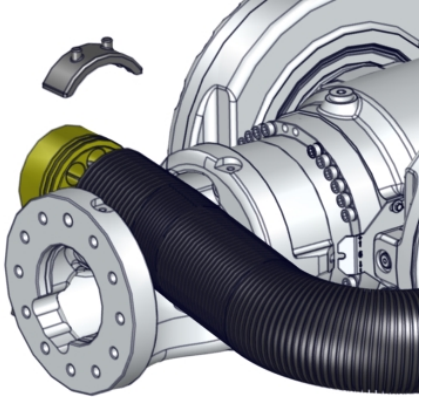
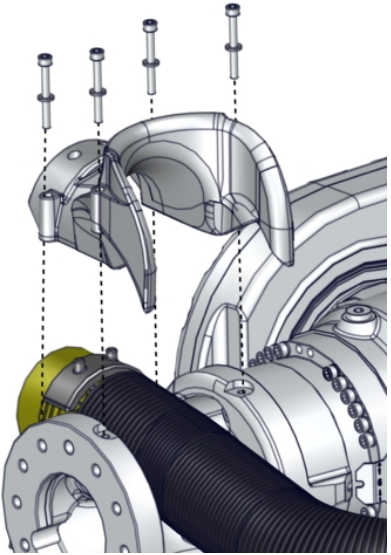
Use these procedures to remove the support shaft including bearing.

#### Preparations before removing the axis-5 support shaft

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.                                                                                                                                                                                               |      |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>electric power supply</li><li>hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |      |

*Continues on next page*

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing  
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Remove all equipment fitted on the turning disc.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 4 | If used, open the DressPack axis-6 cable support and remove the DressPack cable package from the process turning disk.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>Use caution not to lose the two clamp jaws on either side of the DressPack cable package. | <br>xx2300001210<br><br>xx2300001211 |

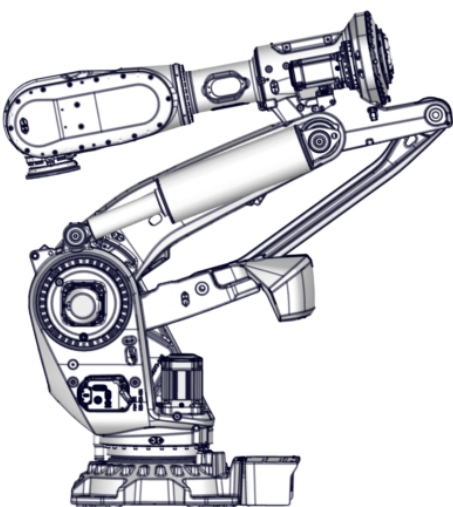
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 2: comfortable working position</li> <li>• Axis 3: comfortable working position</li> <li>• Axis 4: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5: +90°</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The specified position is a recommended position.</p> <p>Orient axis-5 as close as possible to +90° to be able to open the axis-6 motor cover and to remove the axis-6 motor cables. The axis-5 position is also important to avoid the spiral of the cable harness in the carrier being unwound or placed in wrong position. Depending on what tool is used, the other axes may need to be jogged to another position.</p> |  <p>xx2300001952</p> |
| 6 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                        |

#### Retrieving access to the wrist cabling

Use this procedure to remove the wrist cover.

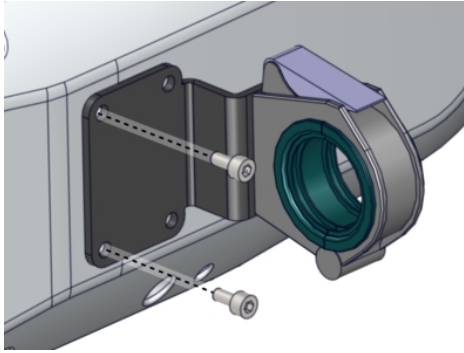
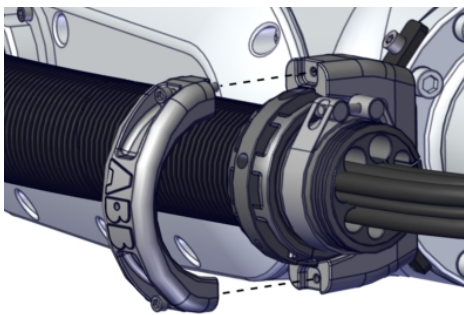
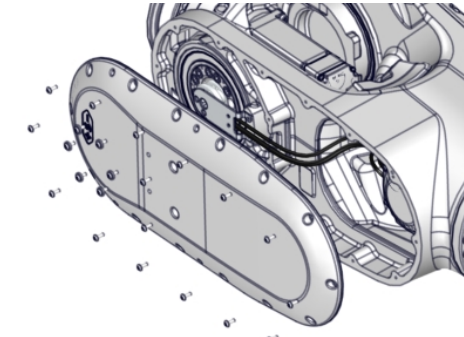
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*



## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>If DressPack MH3 is installed:<br/>Remove the wrist bracket with the complete ball joint housing still fitted, if the bracket is installed over the two wrist cover screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>No need to remove the bracket if the two wrist cover screws are accessible.</p> |  <p>xx2300001366</p>   |
| 3 | <p>If DressPack is installed:<br/>Open the ball joint housing on the arm tube and remove the DressPack cable package.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2100002709</p>  |
| 4 | Remove the wrist cover.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  <p>xx2300001883</p> |

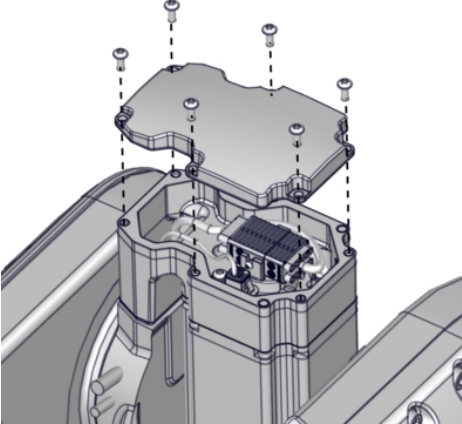
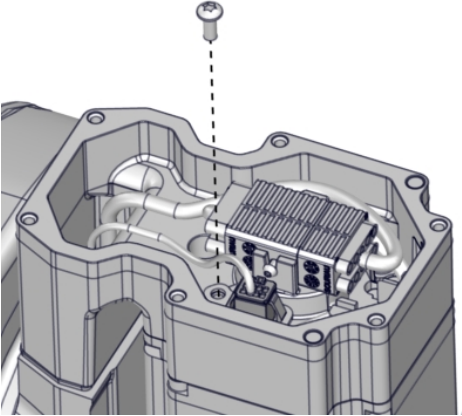
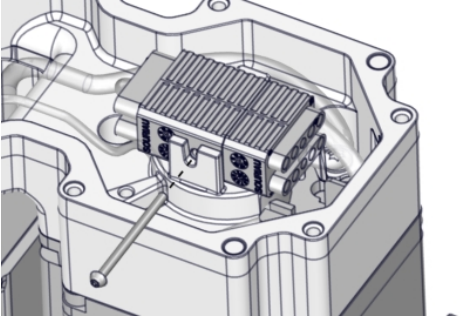
### Disconnecting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

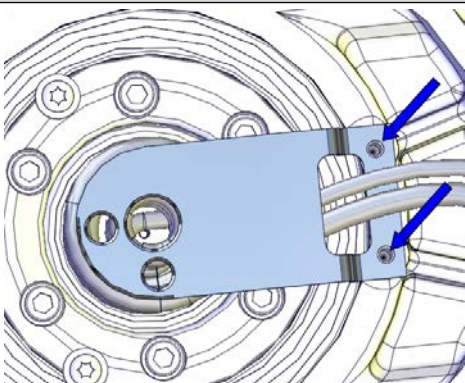
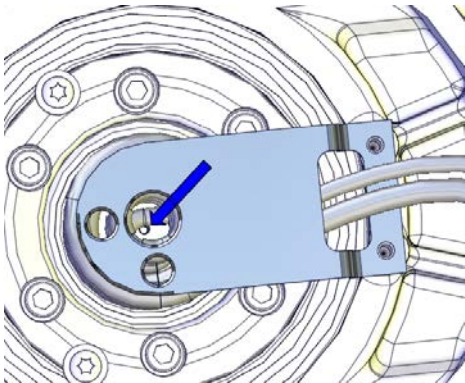
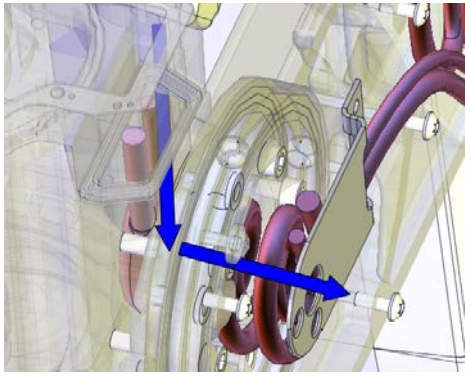
5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing  
Continued

| Action                                                      | Note                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Unscrew the attachment screws and remove the motor cover. | <br>xx2200001434   |
| 3 Remove the connector bracket.                             | <br>xx2200001730  |
| 4 Remove the connector screw.                               | <br>xx2200001731 |
| 5 Disconnect the motor cables.                              |                                                                                                      |

Continues on next page

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing  
*Continued*

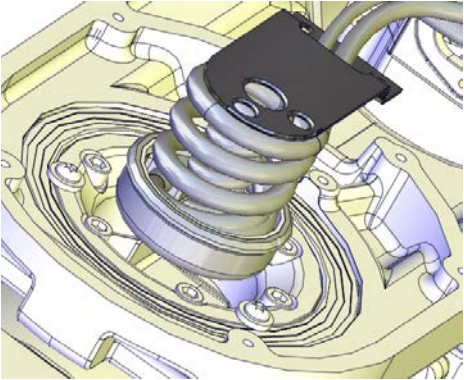
## Pushing out the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Unscrew the attachment screws that hold the cable bracket.                                                                                                                                              | <br>xx1300000484   |
| 2 | Unscrew the M4 screw that holds the carrier.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>The screw is located at the bottom of the carrier. | <br>xx1300000485  |
| 3 | Lift out the axis-6 motor cables by holding the cables with one hand at the motor and the other at the carrier.                                                                                         | <br>xx1300000666 |

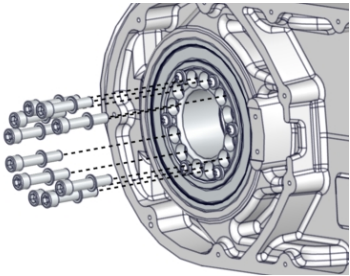
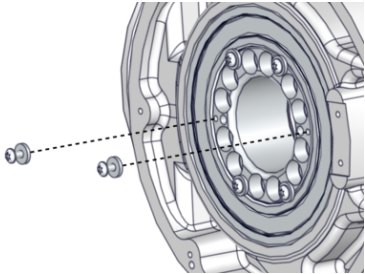
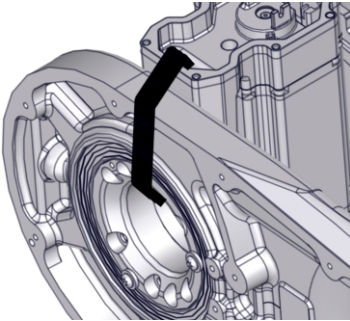
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing  
Continued

|   | Action                                  | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Lift out the carrier from its position. | <br>xx1300001113 |

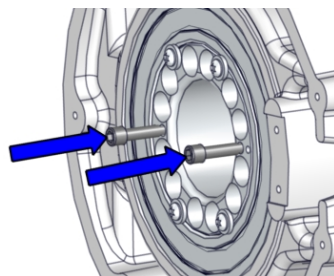
Removing the support shaft

|   | Action                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the support shaft attachment screws.                                            | <br>xx2500002012  |
| 2 | Remove any bearing support screw and washer that is in the way for the push-out holes. | <br>xx2500002013 |
| 3 | Secure the support shaft from dropping with a strap.                                   | <br>xx2600000027 |

Continues on next page

## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Use screws to push out the support shaft from the wrist. | Screws M8x85, fully threaded<br><br>xx2500002014 |

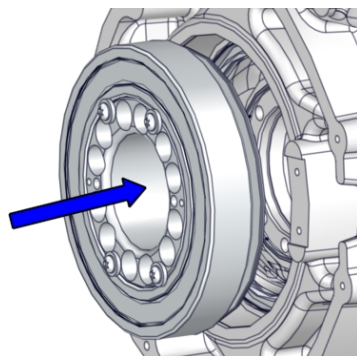
### Refitting the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

Use these procedures to refit the support shaft including bearing.

#### Preparations before refitting the axis-5 support shaft

|   | Action                                                                                         | Note                                                              |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Wipe the contact surfaces between wrist and axis-5 support shaft clean from any contamination. | Cleaning agent: Isopropanol                                       |
| 2 | Check and lubricate the o-ring.<br>Replace if damaged.                                         | O-ring: 3HAC071417-003<br>Grease, Shell Gadus S2: 3HAC042536-001. |

#### Refitting the support shaft

|   | Action                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Insert the support shaft including bearing into mounting position in the wrist.          | <br>xx2500002015 |
| 2 | Use three temporary screws to pull the support shaft into contact with the tilt housing. | Temporary screws: Screw, M12 x minimum 75 mm.                                                         |

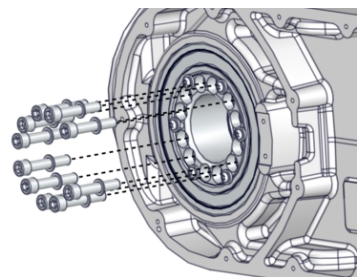
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

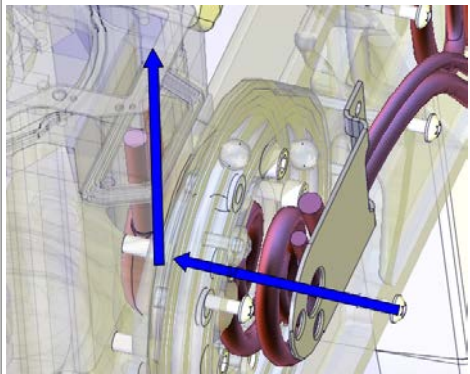
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Remove the temporary screws and instead insert the support shaft attachment screws and washers. Pull the shaft the remaining distance into the tilt house by tightening the screws crosswise. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M12x60 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500</p> <p>Washer: 3HAA1001-134</p> <p>Quantity: 12 pcs<sup>i</sup> / 10 pcs<sup>ii</sup>.</p>  <p>xx2500002012</p> |
| 4 | Torque tighten the attachment screws.                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 120 Nm (<i>Tightening torque for lubricated screws (Molykote, Gleitmo or equivalent) with allen head screws on page 698</i>).</p>                                                                                             |

<sup>i</sup> Valid for IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID.

<sup>ii</sup> Valid for IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID. Two screw holes are unused.

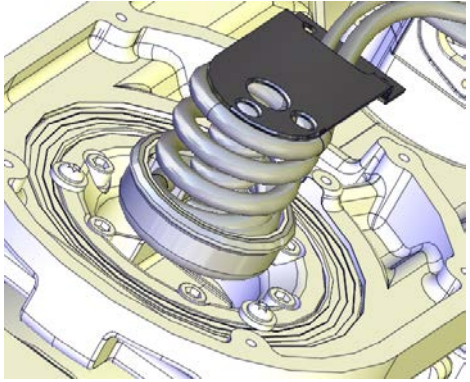
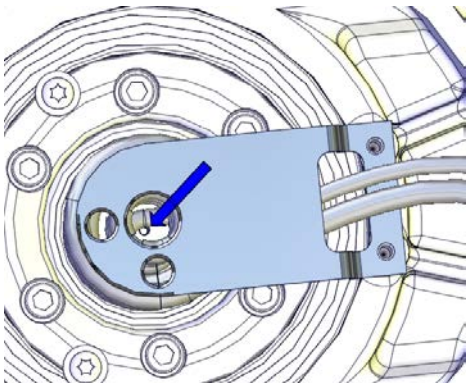
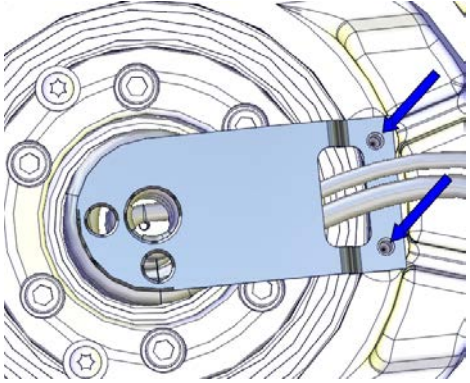
#### Inserting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>Note</b> <p>Axis 5 must be in position +90° (or as close as possible) for a correct installation of the cable harness in the wrist. If not, connect the brake release tool to the axis-5 motor connector, release the brakes and move axis 5 manually to +90°.</p> |                                                                                                          |
| 2 | <p>Push the cable harness into the wrist recess and up into the axis-6 motor.</p>  <b>Tip</b> <p>Moisten the rubber carrier slightly with water or grease around the contact surface, to make it easier to fit into place.</p>                                         |  <p>xx1300000667</p> |

Continues on next page

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3 Push the carrier carefully into position.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  <p>xx1300001113</p>                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>4 Secure the carrier with the M4x10 screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The screw is located at the bottom of the carrier.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The attachment screw securing the carrier may be difficult to fit. Make sure the carrier is level and completely pressed against the bottom.</p> |  <p>xx1300000485</p>                                                                                                                                  |
| <p>5 Secure the cable bracket with its attachment screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80</p> <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 10 Nm (<i>Tightening torque on page 697</i>).</p>  <p>xx1300000484</p> |

#### Connecting the axis-6 motor cables

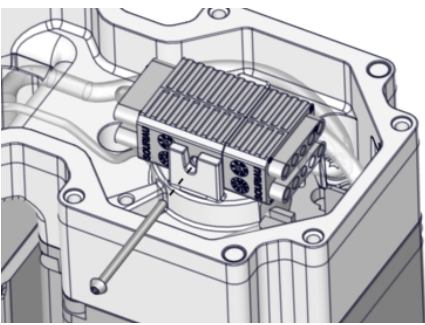
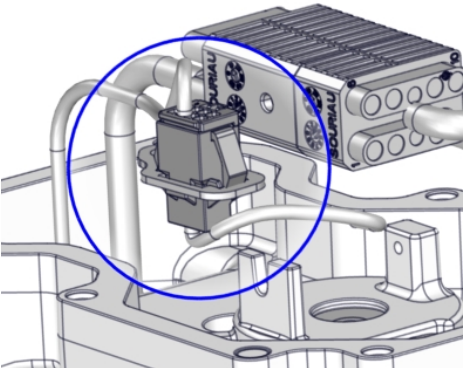
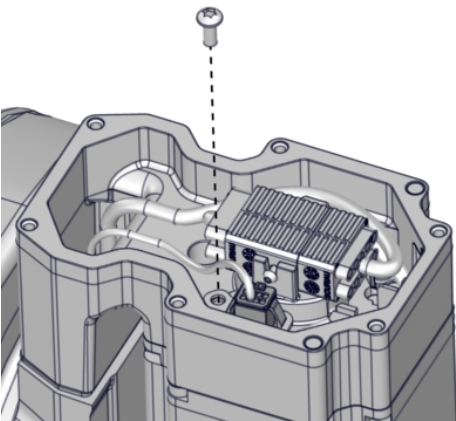
| Action                                                                                               | Note |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>1 Connect the motor cables.</p> <p>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

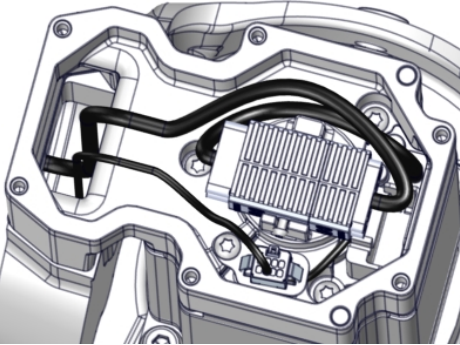
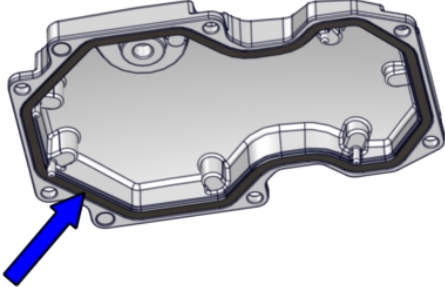
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Position the power connector to the bracket with a screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001731</p>                            |
| 3 | <p>Snap the signal connectors to each other in the bracket.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2200001921</p>                                                          |
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector bracket assembly to the motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The cabling is sensitive to mechanical damage. Handle it with care to avoid damage to the cabling or the connector, avoid any kind of tilt or skew.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001730</p> |

*Continues on next page*



## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

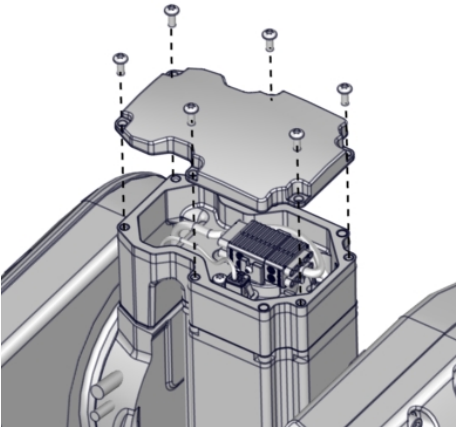
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Verify correct cable layout as shown in the figure.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Route the signal cabling correctly to avoid cable damage.</p> |  <p>xx2300000920</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 6 | <p>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Gasket / Connection box cover with gasket:<br/> <b>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b><br/>           3HAC033489-001<br/> <b>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br/>           3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br/>           3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200001922</p> |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p>                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

*Continues on next page*

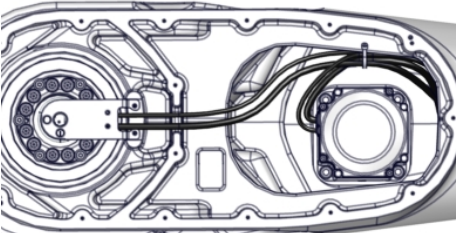
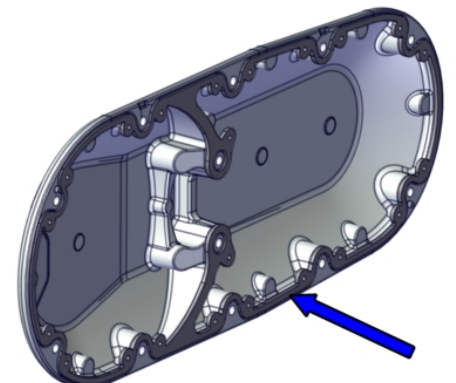
## 5 Repair

### 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

|   | Action                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Refit the motor cover. | <p>Torx pan head screw, M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70, 6 pcs<br/>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001434</p> |

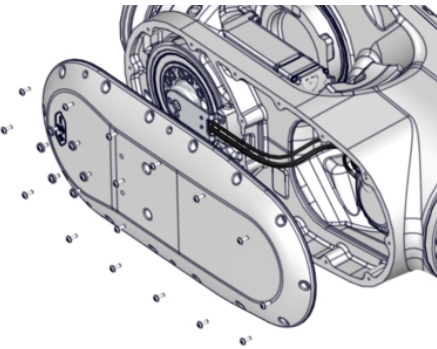
### Refitting the wrist cover

|   | Action                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Make sure that the cable harness is routed and secured as shown in the figure. |  <p>xx2300001927</p>                               |
| 2 | <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i><br/>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>    | <p>Gasket: 3HAC084758-001</p>  <p>xx2100001407</p> |

*Continues on next page*

## 5.8.2 Replacing the axis-5 support shaft including bearing

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Refit the wrist cover and secure with screws.</p> <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i></p> <p>Fit all the screws first, then torque tighten them twice to achieve correct torque (due to compression from the gasket).</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80</p> <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001883</p> |

### Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                           |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i></p> <p>Refit protection plugs.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                |
| 2 | Update the revolution counters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | See <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 660</a> . |
| 3 | If used, refit the DressPack cable package on the wrist.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | See product manual for the DressPack.                          |
| 4 |  <p><b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p> |                                                                |

## 5 Repair

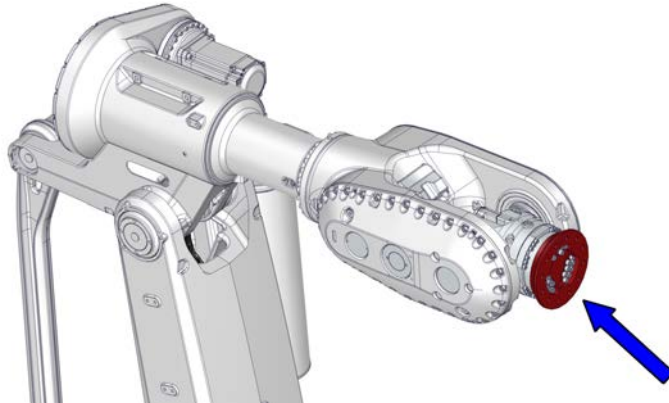
### 5.8.3 Replacing the turning disc

### 5.8.3 Replacing the turning disc

#### Location of the turning disc

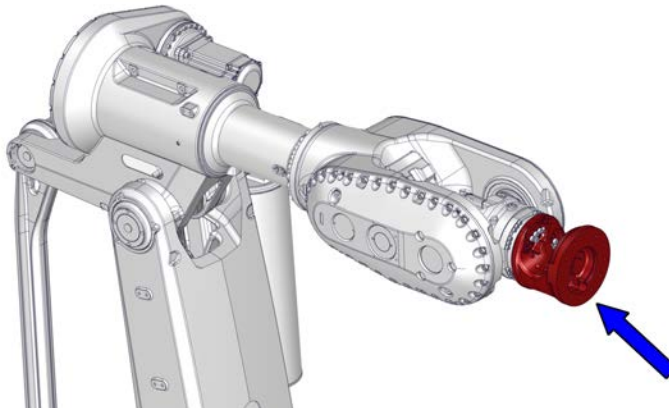
The turning disc is located as shown in the figure.

IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5:



xx2400000165

IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:



xx2400000166

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

*Continues on next page*

| Spare part           | Article number                                                                                                                       | Note | Level |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------|
| Turning disc         | IRB 7720-620/2.9<br>IRB 7720-530/3.1:<br>3HAC085104-002<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br>IRB 7720-450/3.5:<br>3HAC085063-002                   |      | L2    |
| Process turning disc | IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID,<br>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:<br>3HAC084762-004<br>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID,<br>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:<br>3HAC084761-004 |      | L2    |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br><br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br><br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br><br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b><br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

#### Removing the turning disc

Use these procedures to remove the turning disc.

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.8.3 Replacing the turning disc

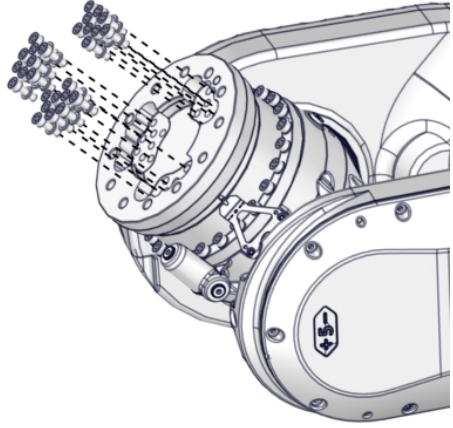
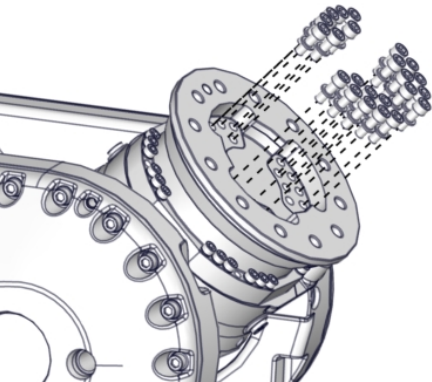
*Continued*

Preparations before removing the turning disc

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Run the robot to a position most comfortable for the removal of the turning disc.<br>Jog axis 6 to synchronization position.                                                                                                                                                                                    |      |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |      |
| 3 | Remove any equipment fitted to the turning disc.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |      |

*Continues on next page*

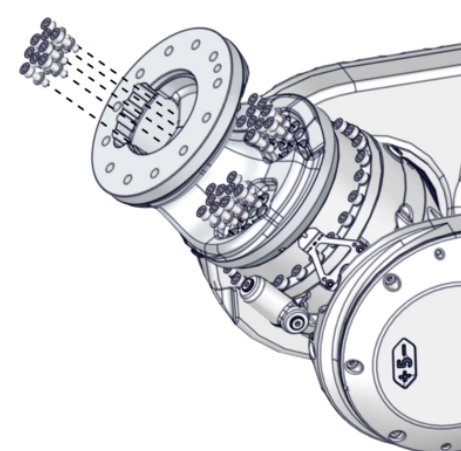
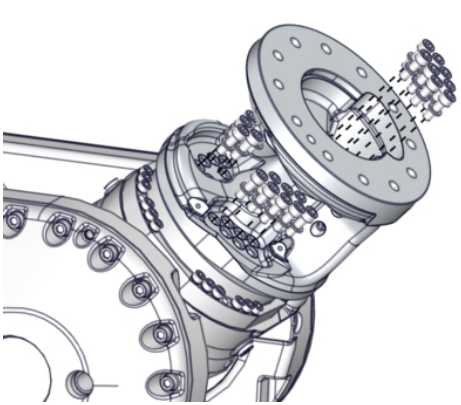
## Removing the turning disc

|   | Action                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the screws and washers, that secure the turning disc. | <p><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-530/3.1:</b></p>  <p><small>xx2400000168</small><br/><b>IRB 7720-510/3.3</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</b></p>  <p><small>xx2400000167</small><br/><b>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b></p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the turning disc  
Continued

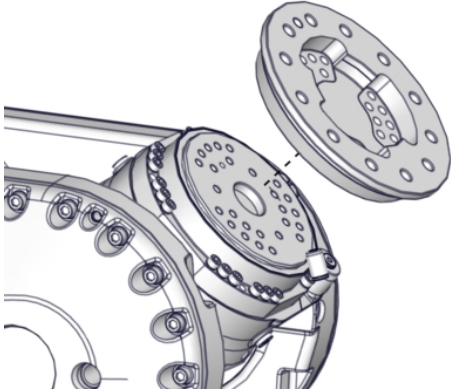
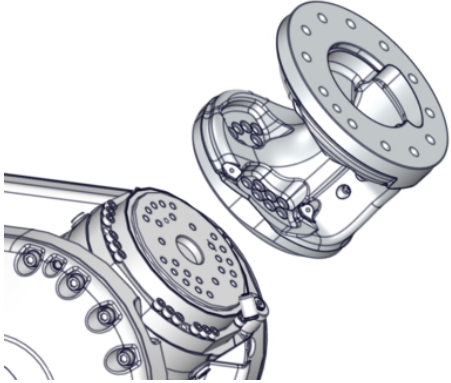
| Action | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | <div><p>xx2400000173</p><p><b>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b></p><p>xx2400000172</p></div> |

Continues on next page



### 5.8.3 Replacing the turning disc

*Continued*

| Action                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Remove the turning disc. | <p>IRB 7720-620/2.9<br/>           IRB 7720-530/3.1<br/>           IRB 7720-510/3.3<br/>           IRB 7720-450/3.5:</p>  <p>xx2400000174</p> <p>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br/>           IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID<br/>           IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br/>           IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</p>  <p>xx2400000176</p> |

#### Refitting the turning disc

Use these procedures to refit the turning disc.

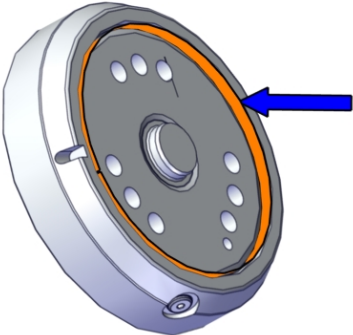
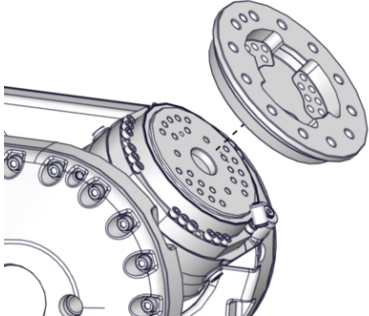
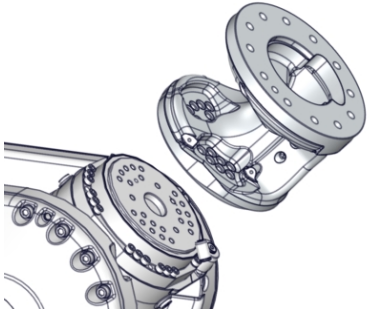
#### Refitting the turning disc

| Action                             | Note |
|------------------------------------|------|
| 1 Wipe clean the contact surfaces. |      |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

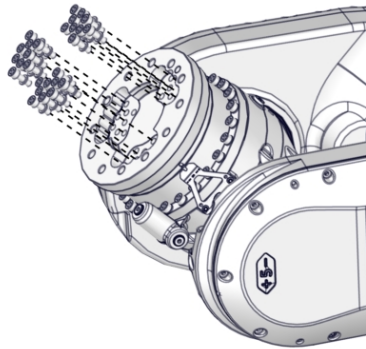
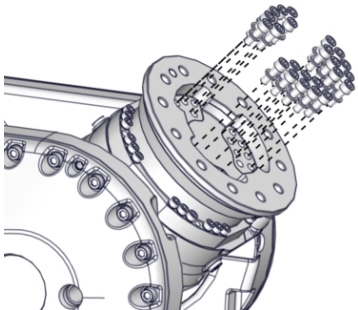
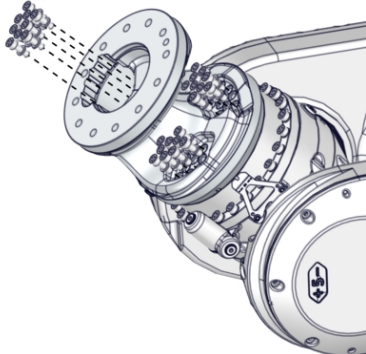
5.8.3 Replacing the turning disc  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <i>Protection type Foundry Plus:</i><br>Apply rust preventive to the surface shown in the figure. | <p>Rust preventive: 3HAC034903-001 ( Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.)</p>  <p>xx2100002232</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 3 | Fit the turning disc to the wrist.<br>Orient the disc according to the synchronization marks.     | <p>IRB 7720-620/2.9<br/>IRB 7720-530/3.1<br/>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br/>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</p>  <p>xx2400000174</p> <p>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br/>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</p>  <p>xx2400000176</p> |

Continues on next page

## 5.8.3 Replacing the turning disc

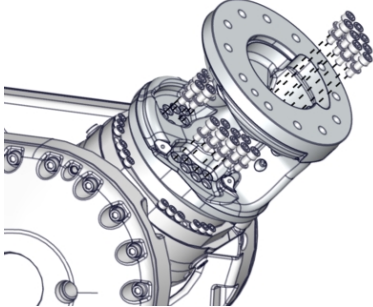
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Secure the turning disc with its attachment screws and washers. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500</p> <p>Washers: Steel 11x17x2</p> <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 70 Nm (<i>Tightening torque for lubricated screws (Molykote, Gleitmo or equivalent) with allen head screws on page 698</i>)..</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-530/3.1:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000168</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-510/3.3</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000167</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000173</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID</b></p> |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.8.3 Replacing the turning disc  
Continued

| Action | Note                                                                                                                                |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | <b>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br><br>xx2400000172 |

Concluding procedure

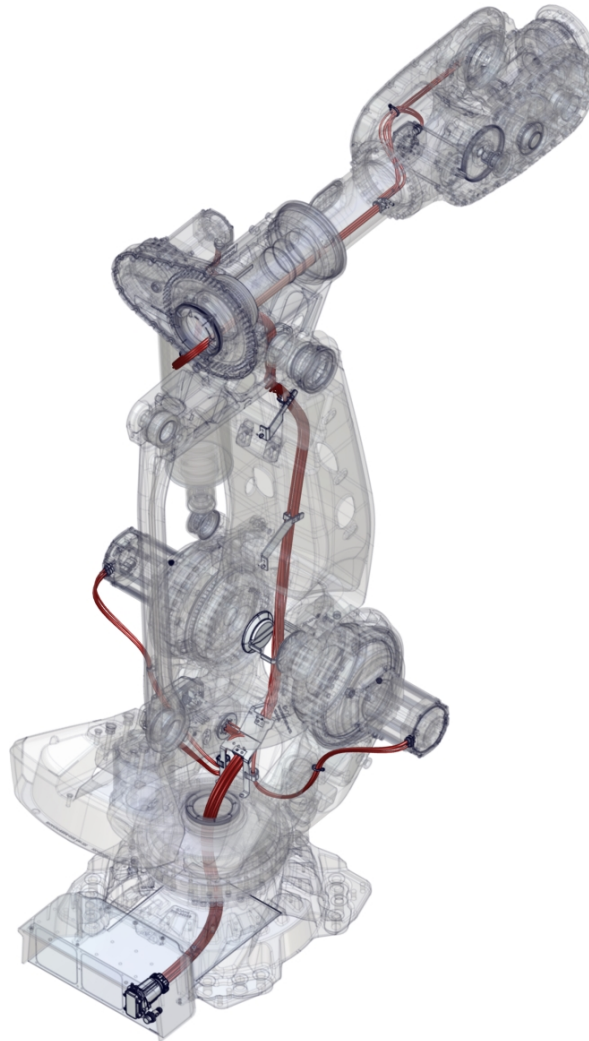
| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1<br> <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |      |

## 5.9 Electronic parts

### 5.9.1 Removing the cable harness

#### Location of the cable harness

The cable harness is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001882

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part    | Article number | Note | Level |
|---------------|----------------|------|-------|
| Cable harness | 3HAC084561-001 |      | L2    |

*Continues on next page*

# 5 Repair

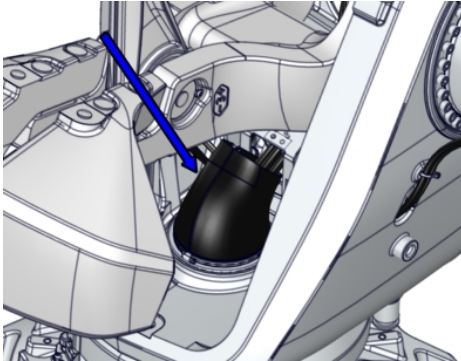
## 5.9.1 Removing the cable harness

Continued

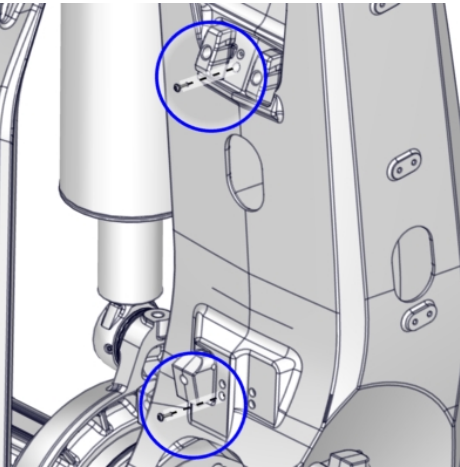
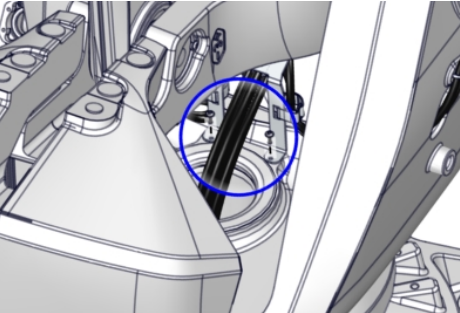
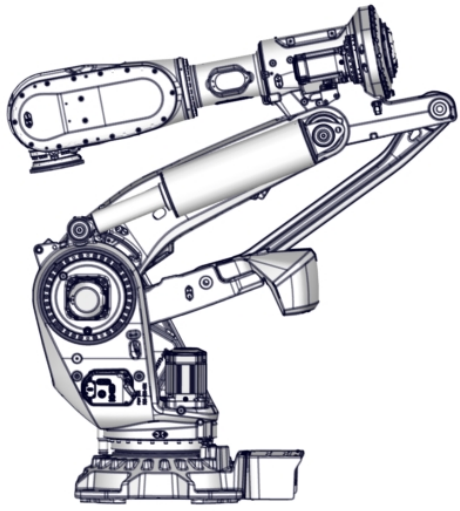
### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

### Preparations before removing the cable harness

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to the calibration position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                         |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                         |
| 3 | <i>Protection type Foundry Plus</i><br>Remove the axis-1 cable protection.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <br><br>xx2300001954 |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Loosen the cable brackets on the back of the lower arm and inside the frame, by removing the screws.</p> <p>The space is cramped after the robot is jogged into working position.</p> <p>Use a bit extender on the lower arm cable bracket screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Bit extender</p>  <p>xx2300001951</p>  <p>xx2300001950</p> |
| 5 | Turn on the power to the robot again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6 | <p>Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 2: comfortable working position</li> <li>• Axis 3: comfortable working position</li> <li>• Axis 4: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5: +90°</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The specified position is a recommended position.</p> <p>Orient axis-5 as close as possible to +90° to be able to open the axis-6 motor cover and to remove the axis-6 motor cables. The axis-5 position is also important to avoid the spiral of the cable harness in the carrier being unwound or placed in wrong position.</p> <p>Depending on what tool is used, the other axes may need to be jogged to another position.</p> |  <p>xx2300001952</p>                                                                                                                           |

Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.9.1 Removing the cable harness

*Continued*

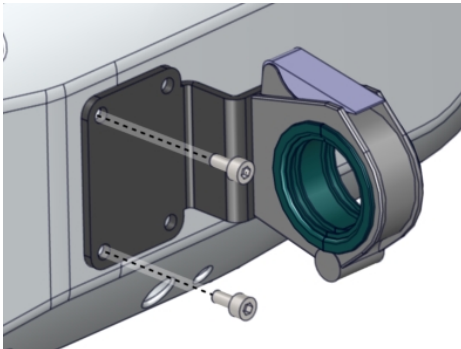
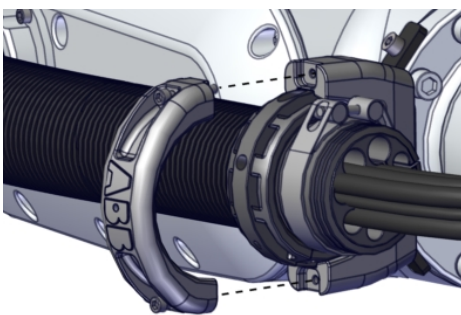
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 7 |  <b>Note</b><br><br>If only the manipulator harness shall be removed, the DressPack cable package can stay fitted on the process turning disk. |      |

#### Removing the cable harness - upper arm and wrist

These procedures describe how to remove the cable harness in the upper arm and wrist.

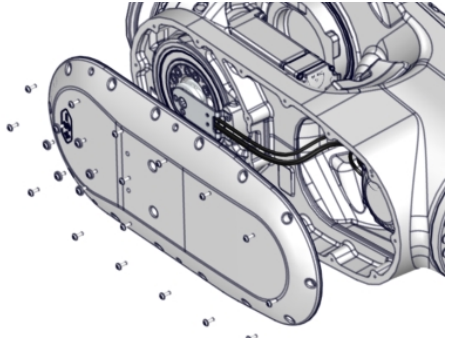
#### Retrieving access to the wrist cabling

Use this procedure to remove the wrist cover.

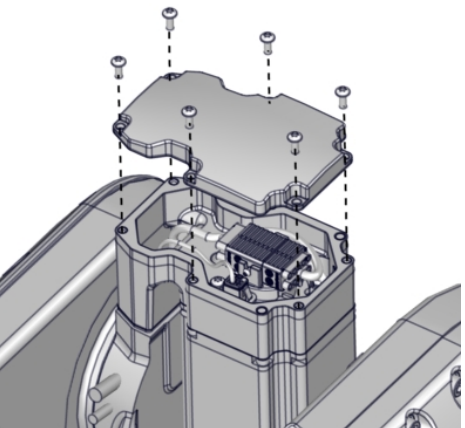
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | If DressPack MH3 is installed:<br>Remove the wrist bracket with the complete ball joint housing still fitted, if the bracket is installed over the two wrist cover screws.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>No need to remove the bracket if the two wrist cover screws are accessible. | <br>xx2300001366 |
| 3 | If DressPack is installed:<br>Open the ball joint housing on the arm tube and remove the DressPack cable package.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2100002709 |

*Continues on next page*



|   | Action                  | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Remove the wrist cover. | <br>xx2300001883 |

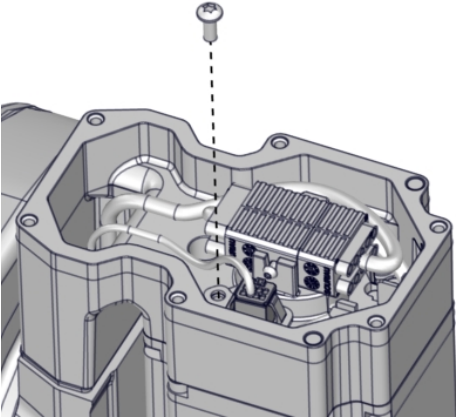
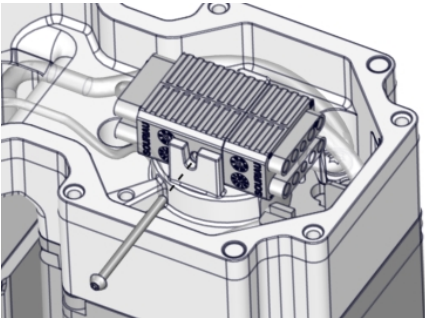
## Disconnecting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Unscrew the attachment screws and remove the motor cover.                                                                                                                                                 | <br>xx2200001434 |

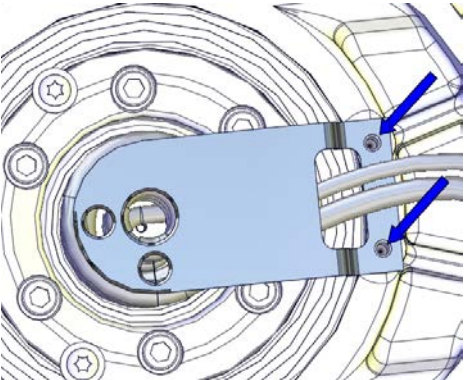
Continues on next page

5 Repair

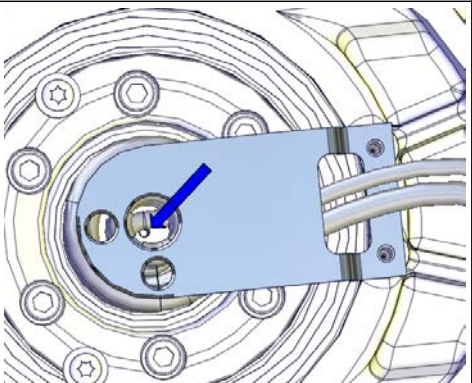
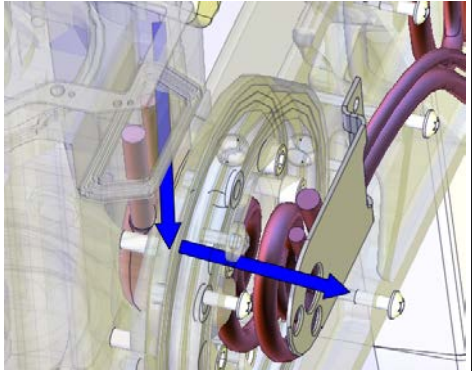
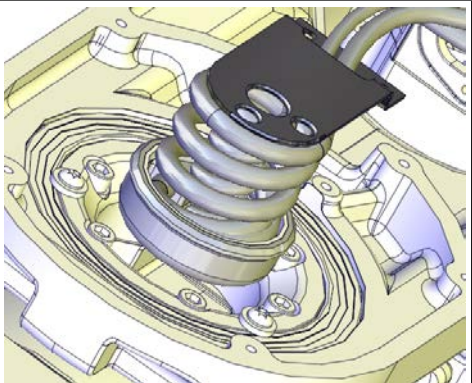
5.9.1 Removing the cable harness  
Continued

|   | Action                        | Note                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Remove the connector bracket. | <br>xx2200001730  |
| 4 | Remove the connector screw.   | <br>xx2200001731 |
| 5 | Disconnect the motor cables.  |                                                                                                     |

Pushing out the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                     | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Unscrew the attachment screws that hold the cable bracket. | <br>xx1300000484 |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Unscrew the M4 screw that holds the carrier.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>The screw is located at the bottom of the carrier. | <br>xx1300000485   |
| 3 | Lift out the axis-6 motor cables by holding the cables with one hand at the motor and the other at the carrier.                                                                                             | <br>xx1300000666  |
| 4 | Lift out the carrier from its position.                                                                                                                                                                     | <br>xx1300001113 |

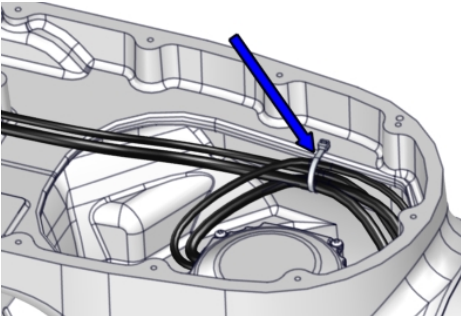
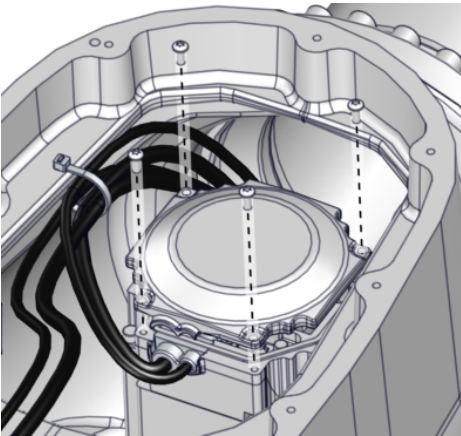
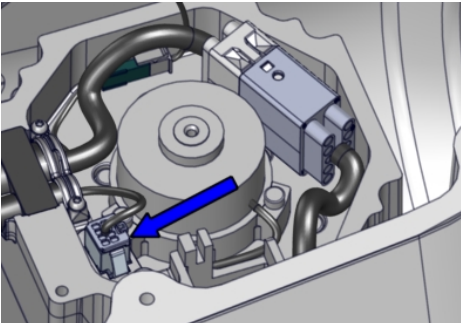
## Disconnecting the axis-5 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

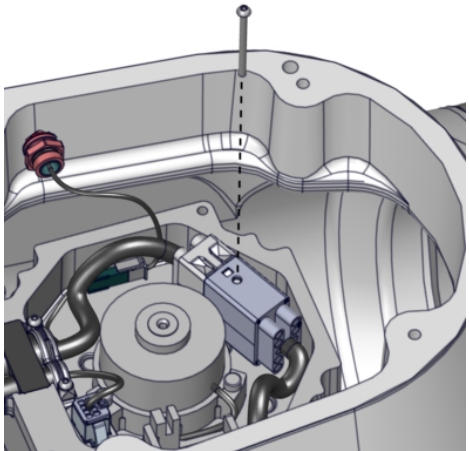
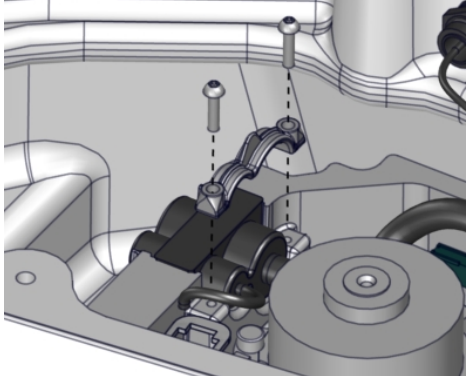
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.9.1 Removing the cable harness  
Continued

|   | Action                                         | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Cut the cable tie.                             | <br>xx2300001923   |
| 3 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws. | <br>xx2300001924  |
| 4 | Disconnect the signal cable connector.         | <br>xx2200001734 |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                 | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Disconnect the power cable connector by removing the attachment screw. |  <p>xx2200001733</p>  |
| 6 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.                       |  <p>xx2200001735</p> |
| 7 | Remove the motor cables.                                               |                                                                                                         |

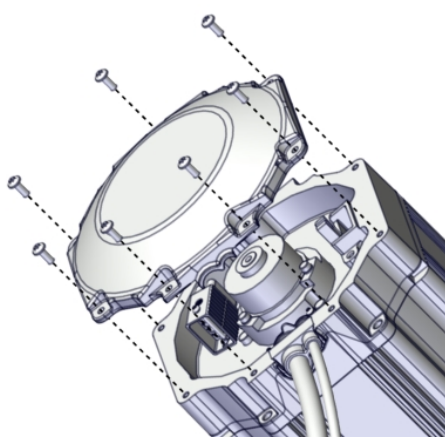
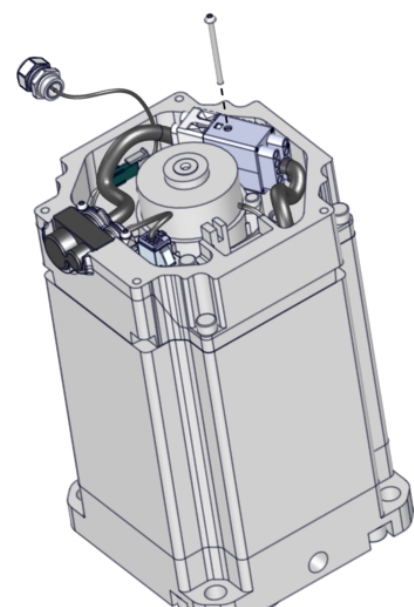
## Disconnecting the axis-4 motor cable

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

*Continues on next page*

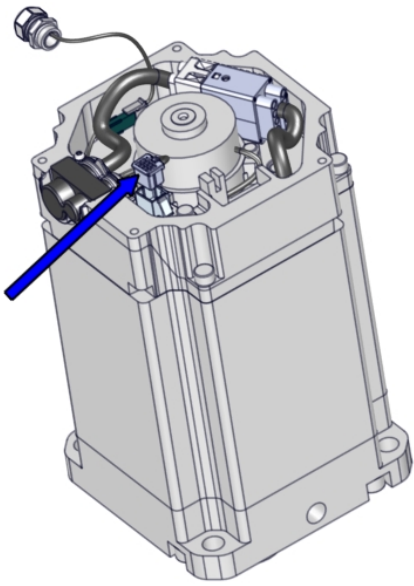
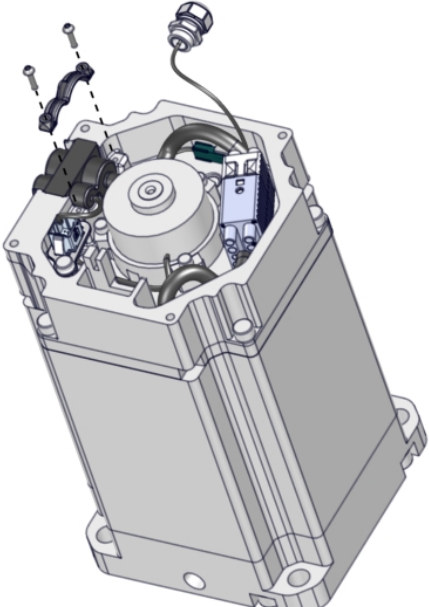
5 Repair

5.9.1 Removing the cable harness  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                              | <br>xx210000596   |
| 3 Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector. | <br>xx2200001736 |

Continues on next page



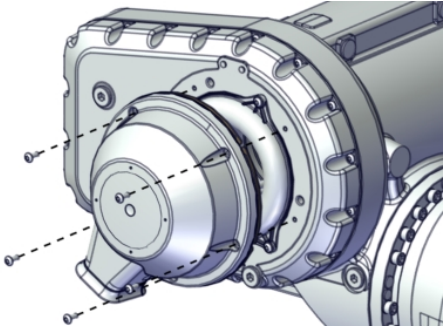
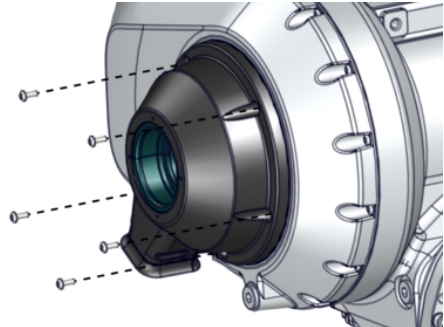
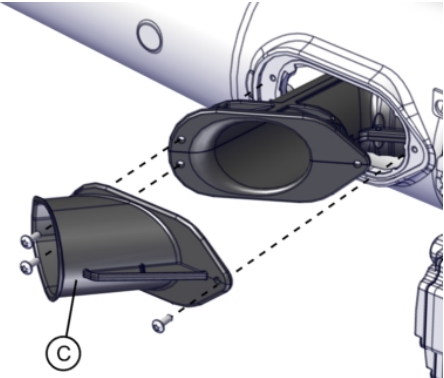
|   | Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out. | <br>xx2200001737 |
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.         | <br>xx2200001738 |
| 6 | Remove the motor cables from the motor.                  |                                                                                                     |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

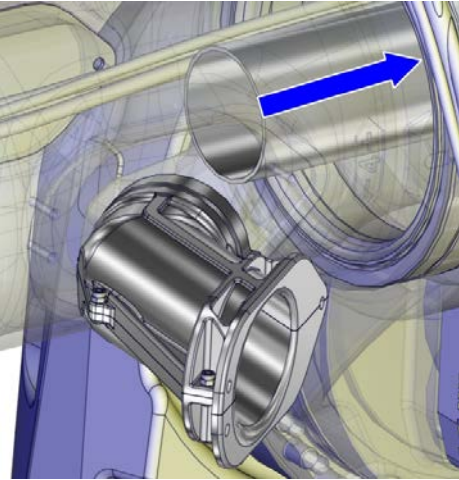
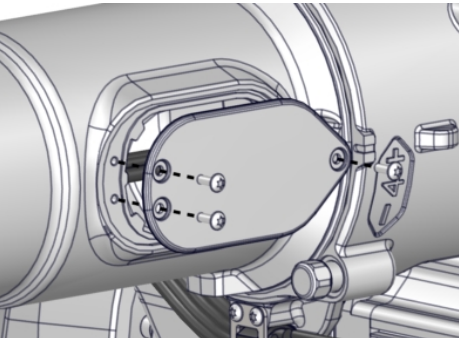
5.9.1 Removing the cable harness  
Continued

Removing the cable harness from the wrist and upper arm

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p><i>Foundry Plus</i><br/><i>DressPack</i><br/>Remove the back cover.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>Use caution not to damage the gasket.</p> | <p><i>Protection type Foundry Plus:</i></p>  <p>xx2000000422</p> <p><i>DressPack</i></p>  <p>xx2300001040</p> |
| 2 | <p><i>DressPack</i><br/>Loosen the insert.<br/>(Cable guard (C) is available for protection type Foundry Plus.)</p>                                                                                                              |  <p>xx2100002677</p>                                                                                                                                                                           |

Continues on next page

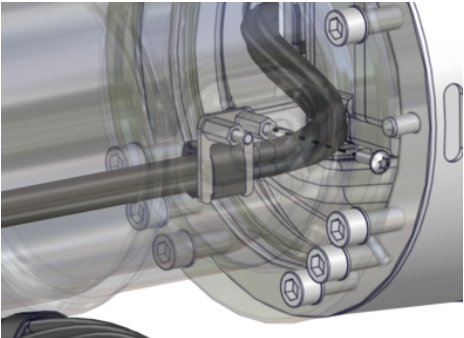
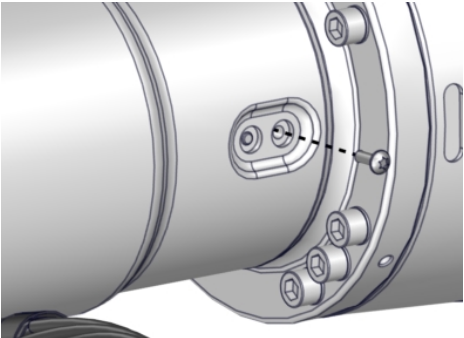
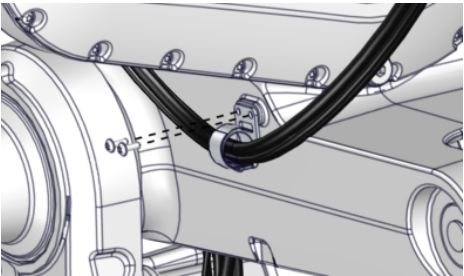


|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <b>DressPack</b><br>Push the DressPack tube a little backwards.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <br>xx1400000720   |
| 4 |  <b>Tip</b><br><br>Use tape and tie the axis-5 and axis-6 connectors and carrier into a bundle (if not already done). This is done to facilitate the removal and to avoid damaging the parts. This will also make it easier to run the cable harness through the inside of the upper arm. | <br>xx1300000668  |
| 5 | Remove the side cover on the arm tube.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <br>xx2300000031 |

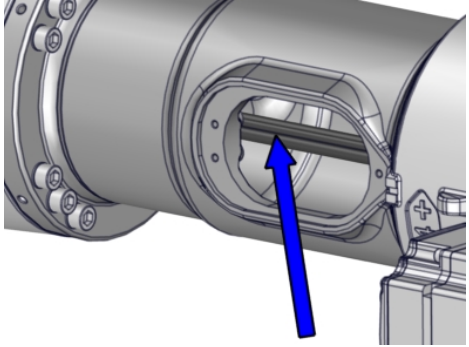
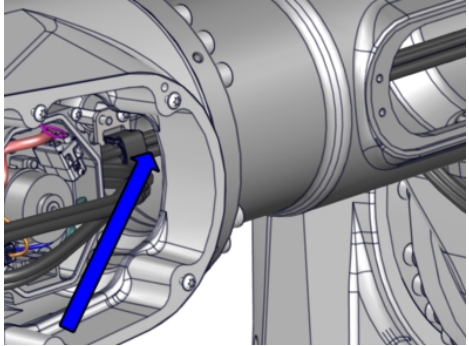
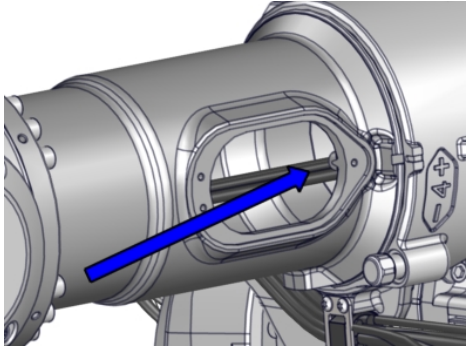
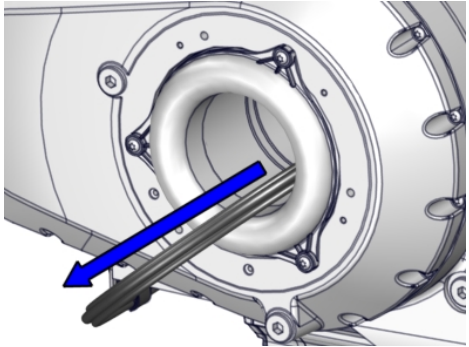
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.9.1 Removing the cable harness  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>6</div> <div>Unscrew the attachment screw that secures the axis-4 metal clamp inside the arm tube.</div> <div><div></div><div>Note</div></div> <div>The screw is reached from outside the upper arm.</div> | <div></div> <div>xx2300000033</div> <div></div> <div>xx2300000032</div> |
| <div>7</div> <div>Remove the arm house metal clamp.</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <div></div> <div>xx2300002013</div>                                                                                                                      |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | <p>Remove the cable harness out from the wrist.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person 1: Put one hand inside the side hole and take a hold of the cable harness.</li> <li>• Person 2: Take a hold on the cable harness inside the wrist.</li> <li>• Together: Move the cable harness past the axis-5 motor and into the arm tube.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Person 1, working at the side hole:</p>  <p>xx2300000035</p> <p>Person 2, working at the wrist:</p>  <p>xx2300000036</p>   |
| 9 | <p>Remove the cable harness out of the arm tube, at the back of the upper arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person 1: Put one hand inside the side hole and take a hold of the cable harness.</li> <li>• Person 2: Take a hold on the cable harness at the back of the robot.</li> <li>• Together: Move the cable harness out of the arm tube.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>To be able to remove the cable harness with the DressPack tube fitted, the tube needs to be pulled out a little, then be placed on the lower left side in the arm tube and the bracket of the cable harness then needs to be placed on the upper right hand side.</p> | <p>Person 1, working at the side hole:</p>  <p>xx2300000037</p> <p>Person 2, working at the back:</p>  <p>xx2300000038</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

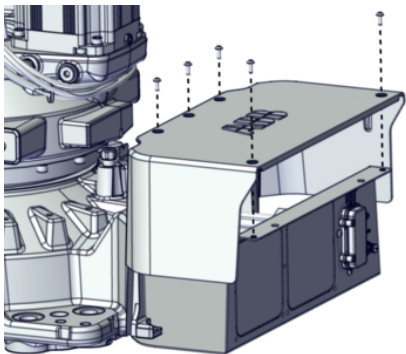
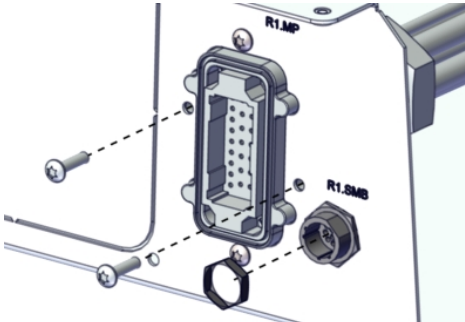
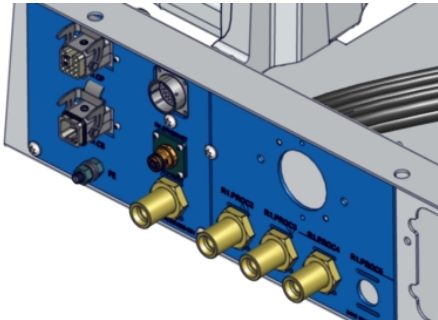
5.9.1 Removing the cable harness

Continued

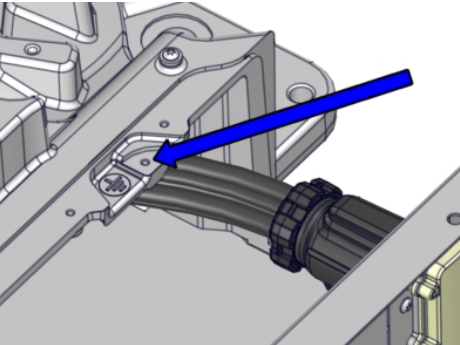
Removing the cable harness - base, frame and lower arm

These procedures describe how to remove the cable harness from base, frame and lower arm.

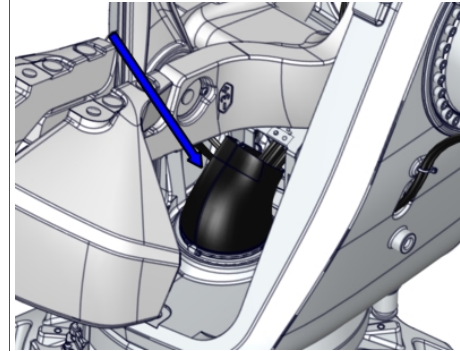
Preparations before removing the cable harness in the base

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 Remove the base cover.                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2100000981  |
| 3 Loosen the connectors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• R1.MP</li><li>• R1.SMB</li></ul>                                                                                                           | <br>xx2100001109 |
| 4 If used, disconnect the DressPack hoses in the base.                                                                                                                                                      | <br>xx2300001093 |

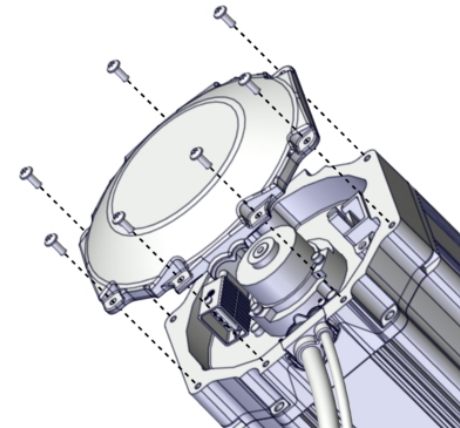
Continues on next page

|   | Action                      | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Disconnect the earth cable. | <br>xx2200001790 |

## Removing the covers for Foundry Plus and floor mounted robots

|   | Action                                                                     | Note                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <i>Protection type Foundry Plus</i><br>Remove the axis-1 cable protection. | <br>xx2300001954 |

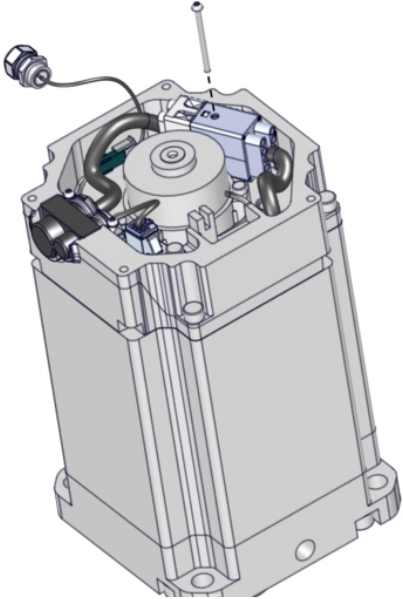
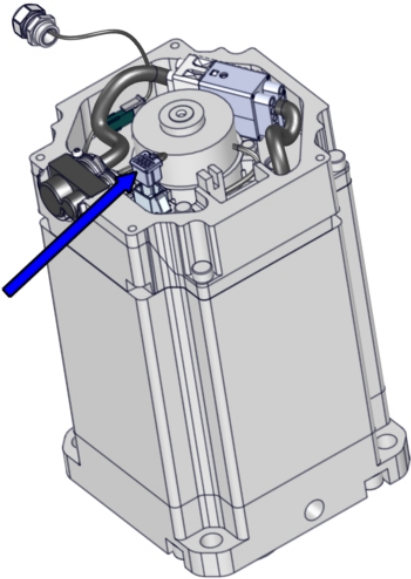
## Disconnecting the axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                                                                                                                              | <br>xx2100000596 |

*Continues on next page*

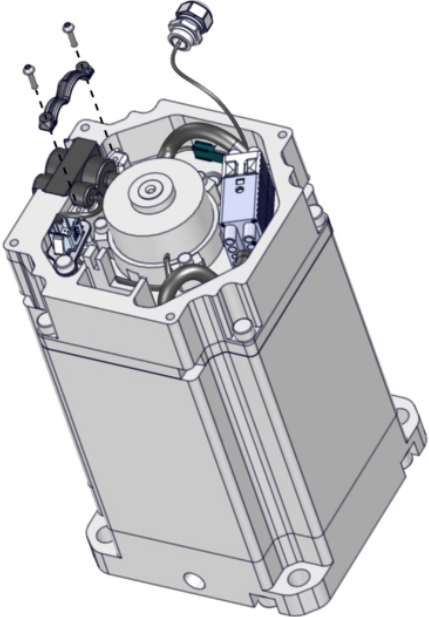
5 Repair

5.9.1 Removing the cable harness  
Continued

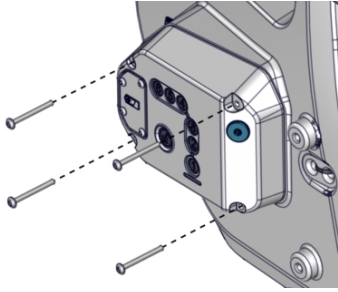
| Action                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector. | <br>xx2200001736  |
| 4 Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out.                                                    | <br>xx2200001737 |

Continues on next page



|   | Action                                           | Note                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws. |  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 6 | Remove the motor cables from the motor.          |                                                                                                        |

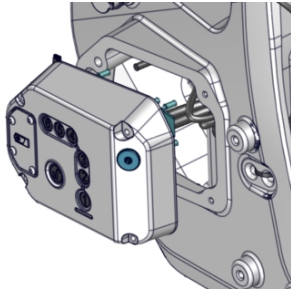
## Removing the electronic box

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                |                                                                                                           |
| 2 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</i> . |                                                                                                           |
| 3 | Remove the electronic box screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2200001721</p> |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

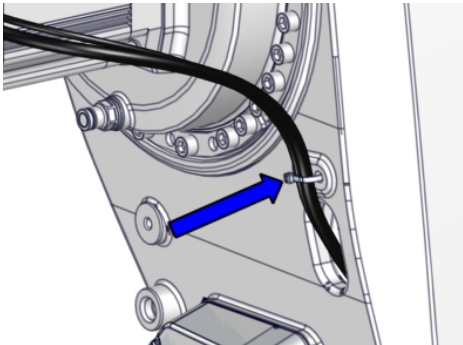
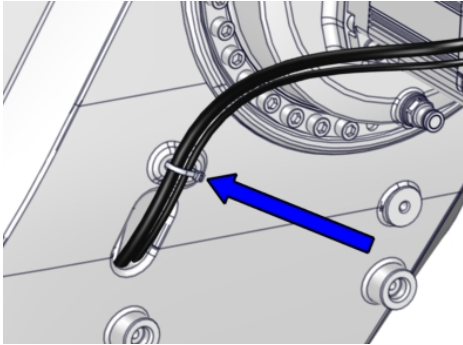
5.9.1 Removing the cable harness  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>4</div> <div>Remove the electronic box, including all internal equipment.</div> <div><div>!</div><div>CAUTION</div></div> <div>Clean cover from metal residues before opening.<br/>Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.</div> | <div></div> <div>xx2200001720</div> |

Disconnecting the SMB and brake release units

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <div>1</div> <div><div></div><div>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</div></div> <div>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54.</i></div> |      |
| <div>2</div> <div>Disconnect all connectors from the SMB board.</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |
| <div>3</div> <div>Disconnect the connectors R2.BU1 and R2.BU2 from the brake release board.</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |      |

Removing the cable harness from the frame

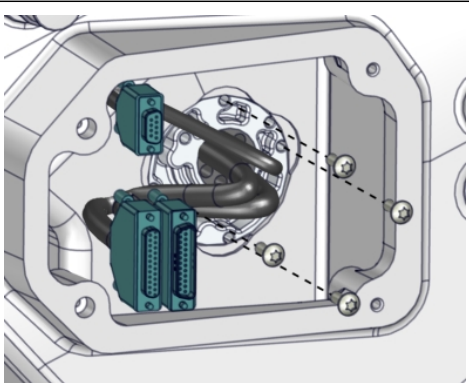
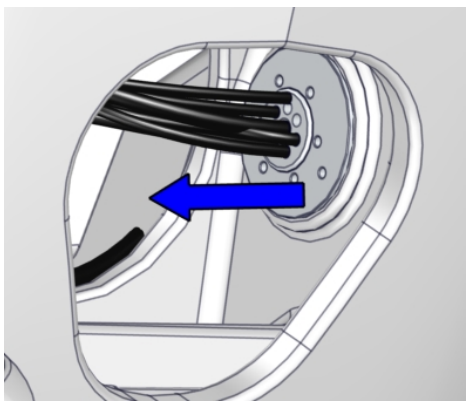
| Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>1</div> <div>Cut the cable ties at the frame.</div> | <div></div> <div>xx2300002016</div> <div></div> <div>xx2400000191</div> |

Continues on next page

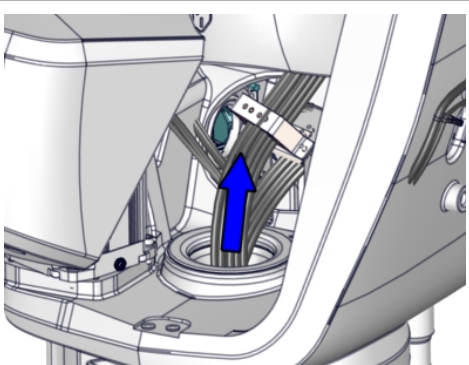


## 5.9.1 Removing the cable harness

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the cable inlet screws inside the SMB recess                                            | <br>xx2200001725  |
| 3 | Loosen the cable inlet by cutting any sealing compound and carefully knocking the inlet loose. | <br>xx2300002015 |

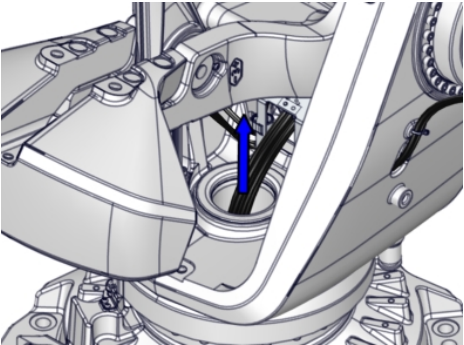
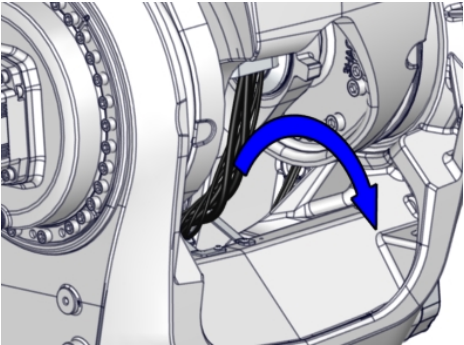
## Removing the cable harness from the base

|   | Action                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | If equipped with DressPack, pull out the DressPack cables through the protection tube. | <br>xx2400000192 |

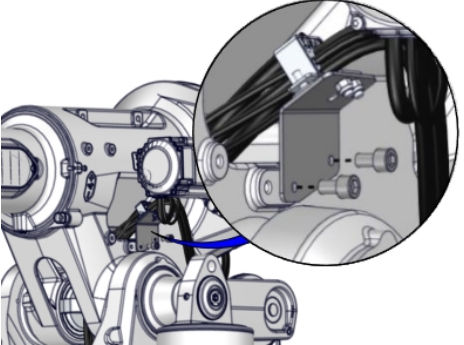
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

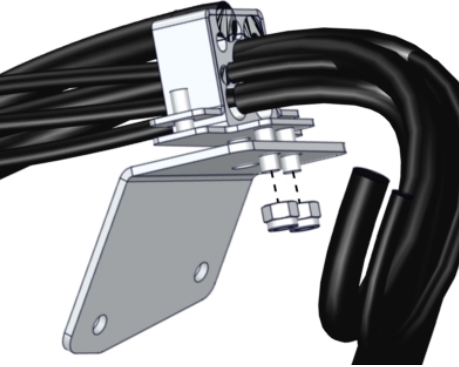
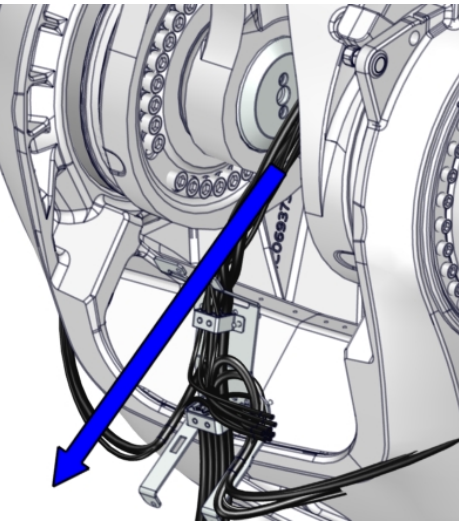
5.9.1 Removing the cable harness  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Pull up the robot cable harness through the protection tube and out through the frame recess. Guide the SMB cables out from the SMB recess at the same time. | <br>xx2300001944<br><br>xx2300002017 |
| 3 Place the cable harness safely on the floor.                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

Removing the cable harness from the lower arm

| Action                                         | Note                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Remove the cable bracket from the arm house. | <br>xx2300001953 |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the cable bracket from the harness cable clamp.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2300002039  |
| 3 | <p>Use caution and pull the cable harness out from the lower arm.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Person 1: From the front of the robot, pull the cable harness out from the lower arm.</li><li>• Person 2: From the back of the robot, push the cable harness down through the lower arm.</li><li>• Together: Move the cable harness out of the lower arm.</li></ul> | <br>xx2300002040 |

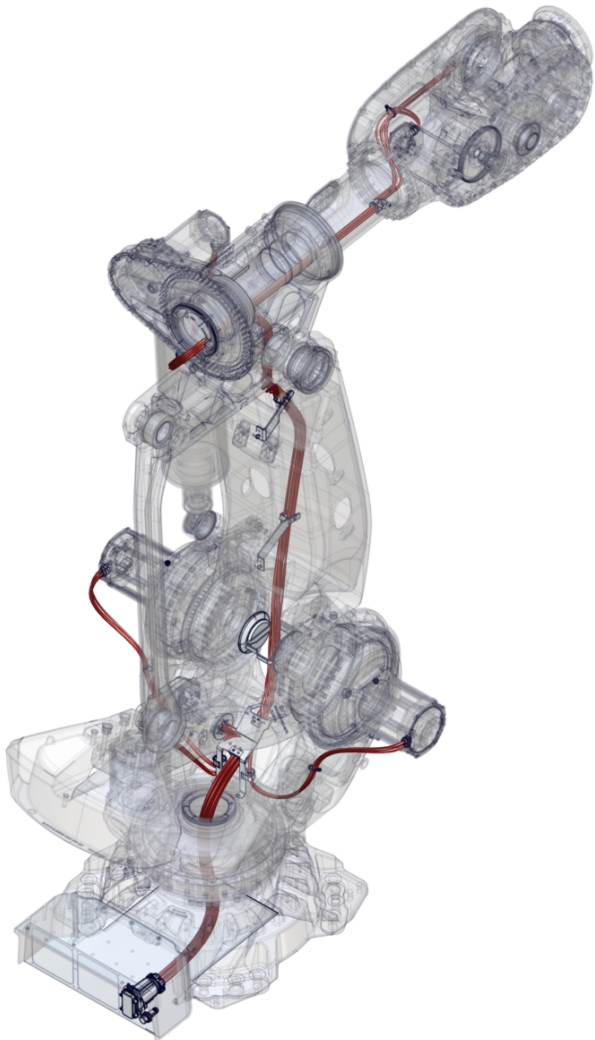
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

#### Location of the cable harness

The cable harness is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001882

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robotics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part    | Article number | Note | Level |
|---------------|----------------|------|-------|
| Cable harness | 3HAC084561-001 |      | L2    |

*Continues on next page*

## Required service parts

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover with gasket       | 3HAC072863-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005<br>(ABB Orange)                                                                                                                   | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-5 motor                                                                                                     |
| Connection box cover (without gasket)  | 3HAC026607-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC026607-004<br>(ABB Orange)                                                                                                                   | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID                   |
| Connection box cover with gasket       | 3HAC079381-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC079381-004<br>(ABB Orange)                                                                                                                   | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID                   |
| Gasket                                 | 3HAC033489-001                                                                                                                                                                         | For axis-6 connection box cover.<br>Replace if damaged.<br>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID: |
| Wrist cover                            | 3HAC085026-002<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC085026-003<br>(ABB Orange)                                                                                                                   | Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                        |
| Connection box cover FS180 with gasket | 3HAC072864-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005<br>(ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004<br>(Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005<br>(ABB Orange, threaded connection) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-1 motor<br>A threaded connection is required for cooling fan option.                                        |
| Connection box cover FS180 with gasket | 3HAC072864-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005<br>(ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004<br>(Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005<br>(ABB Orange, threaded connection) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-2 motor<br>A threaded connection is required for cooling fan option.                                        |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

*Continued*

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover FS180 with gasket | 3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-3 motor<br>A threaded connection is required for cooling fan option.                                        |
| Connection box cover FS130 with gasket | 3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)                                                                                                             | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-4 motor                                                                                                     |
| Connection box cover with gasket       | 3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)                                                                                                             | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-5 motor                                                                                                     |
| Connection box cover with gasket       | 3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange)                                                                                                             | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID                   |
| Connection box cover (without gasket)  | 3HAC026607-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC026607-004 (ABB Orange)                                                                                                             | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID                   |
| Gasket                                 | 3HAC033489-001                                                                                                                                                             | For axis-6 connection box cover.<br>Replace if damaged.<br>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID: |
| Wrist cover                            | 3HAC085026-002 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC085026-003 (ABB Orange)                                                                                                             | Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                        |
| Cover, electronics                     | 3HAC081189-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC081189-004 (ABB Orange)                                                                                                             | Includes gasket.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                                                                    |
| Cable strap, outdoor                   | -                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                            |
| Metal strap                            | 3HAC033886-001                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                            |
| Locking liquid                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)                                                                                                   |
| Sealing compound                       | 3HAC026759-002                                                                                                                                                             | Sikaflex 521 FC                                                                                                                            |

*Continues on next page*

## Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

## Refitting the cable harness - base, frame and lower arm

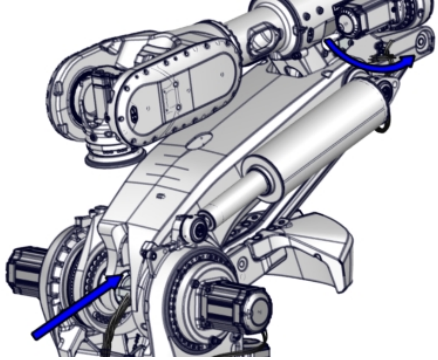
These procedures describe how to refit the cable harness in base, frame and lower arm.

## Preparations before refitting the cable harness

Use this procedure to understand the layout of the new cable harness spare part.

|   | Action                                                                                                            | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Lay the new cable harness on the floor, and place the lower part around the manipulator to understand the layout. |      |

## Refitting the cable harness in the lower arm

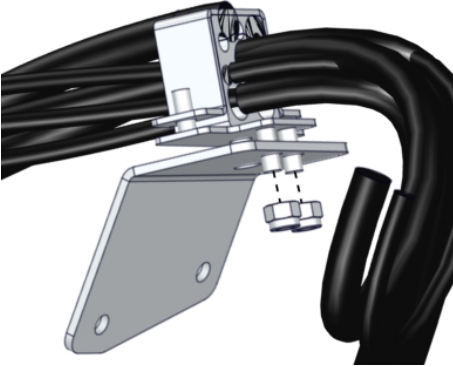
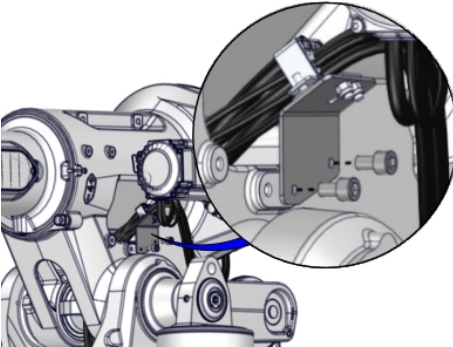
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>Tip</b><br>Use tape and tie the axis-5 and axis-6 connectors and carrier into a bundle (if not already done). This is done to facilitate the procedure and to avoid damaging the parts during the procedure.<br>This will also make it easier to run the cable harness through the inside of the robot.                                                                                                                 | <br>xx1300000668 |
| 2 | Run the upper part of the cable harness through the lower arm.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br>This step is best performed by two persons working together: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person 1: From the front of the robot, push the cable harness up into the lower arm.</li> <li>• Person 2: From the back of the robot, pull the cable harness up through the lower arm and out through the arm house.</li> </ul> | <br>xx2400000193 |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

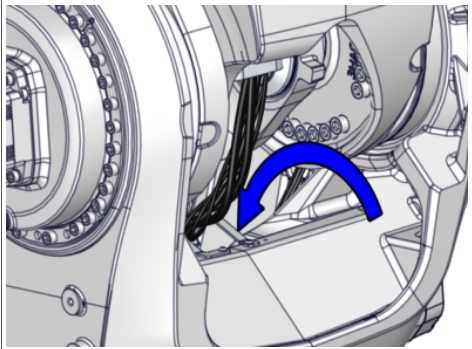
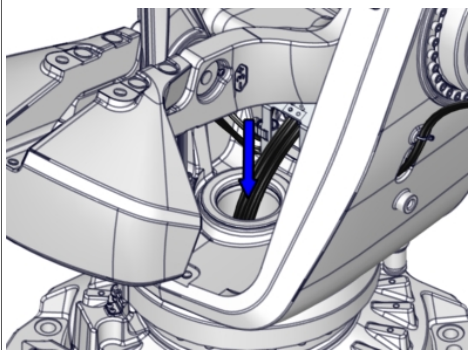
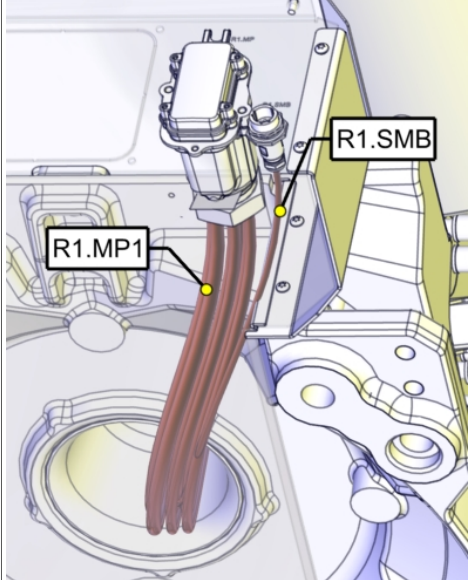
*Continued*

|   | Action                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Refit the cable bracket to the harness cable clamp. |  <p>xx2300002039</p>                                                                        |
| 4 | Refit the cable bracket assembly to the arm house.  | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001953</p> |

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the cable harness in the base

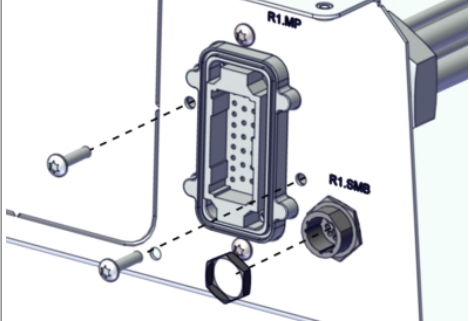
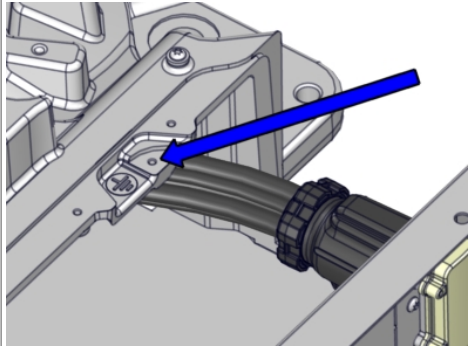
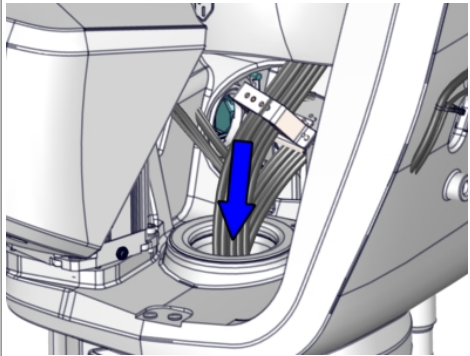
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Run the robot cable harness through the frame recess and down through the protection tube. Guide the SMB cables into the SMB recess at the same time.</p>                                                                                                                                                   |  <p>xx2400000194</p>  <p>xx2400000195</p> |
| 2 | <p>Run the cabling through the base.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the cables are not twisted. Each cable must be in line with its position on the base plate.</li> <li>• Make sure that the R1.SMB cable will run on the correct side of the R1.MP1, see the figure.</li> </ul> |  <p>xx1300000736</p>                                                                                                       |
| 3 | <p>Make sure that the markings on the cables are facing the base cover, when connected.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

Continues on next page

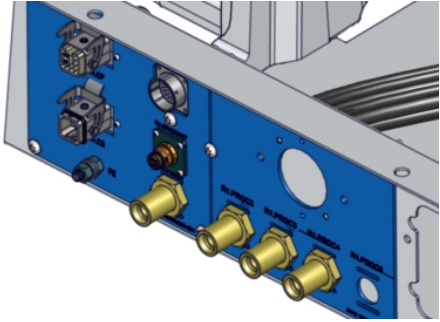
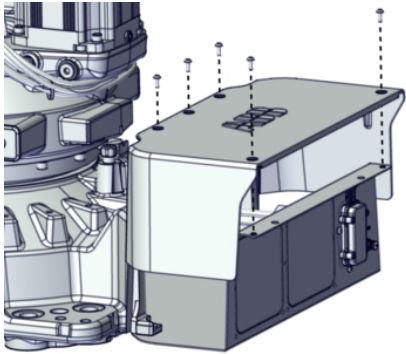
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

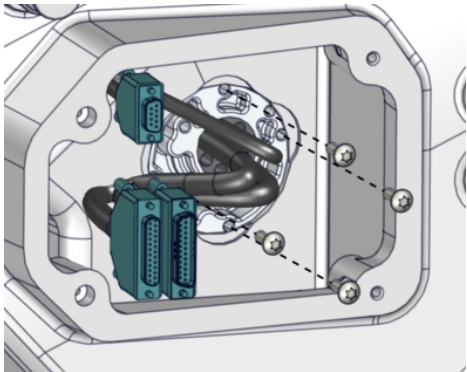
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Connect connectors R1.MP and R1.SMB.                                                                                                             | <p>Screw dimension for R1.MP: M6x25 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque for R1.MP: 6 Nm.<br/>Tightening torque for R1.SMB: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2100001109</p> |
| 5 | Connect the earth cable.                                                                                                                         | <p>Screw dimension: M6x16.<br/>Washer dimension: 6.4x17x3.<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001790</p>                                 |
| 6 | If used, run the DressPack hoses through the protection tube in the base.<br>Make sure that the hoses are running correctly and are not twisted! |  <p>xx2400000196</p>                                                                                                                             |

*Continues on next page*

| Action                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 If used, connect the DressPack cable package on the base plate. | <br>xx2300001093                                                                                                |
| 8 Refit the base cover.                                           | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 Stainless steel A2-70 (5 pcs)<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p> <br>xx2100000981 |

## Refitting the SMB cabling

| Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Refit and secure the cable inlet with the screws inside the SMB recess | <br>xx2200001725 |
| 2 Seal the cable inlet with sealing compound.                            | Sealing compound: 3HAC026759-002 ( )<br>Sikaflex 521 FC                                              |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

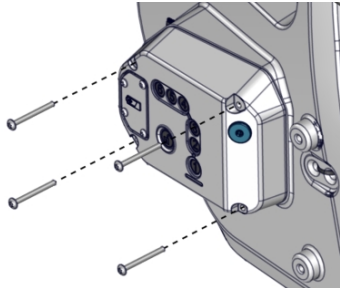
### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

*Continued*

#### Reconnecting the SMB and BU units

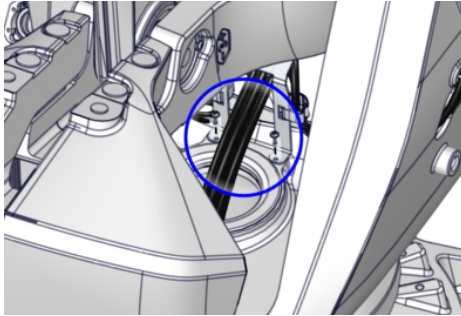
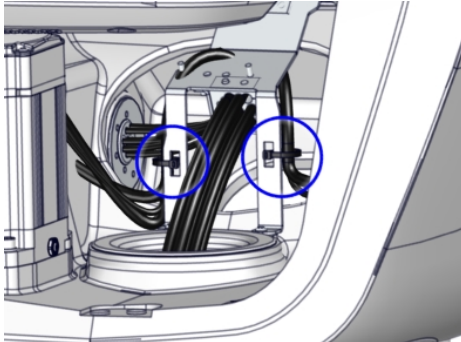
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54.</i> |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Check the electronic box gasket.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Cover, electronics:<br>3HAC081189-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC081189-004 (ABB Orange)                |
| 3 | Connect all connectors to the SMB board: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• R1.SMB1-3, R1.SMB4-6 and R2.SMB</li><li>• If cabling is used for 7th axis (option), refit the connector R1.SMB7</li></ul>                                                                  | <br>xx2200001726 |
| 4 | Connect the connectors R2.BU1 and R2.BU2 to the brake release board.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |

#### Refitting the electronic box

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54.</i> |                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 2 | Refit the electronic box with the attachment screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Torx pan head screw: M6x60 (4 pcs)<br>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.<br><br>xx2200001721 |

*Continues on next page*

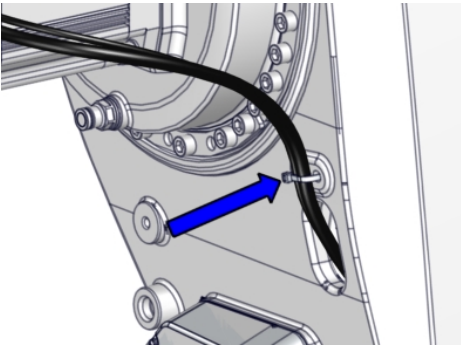
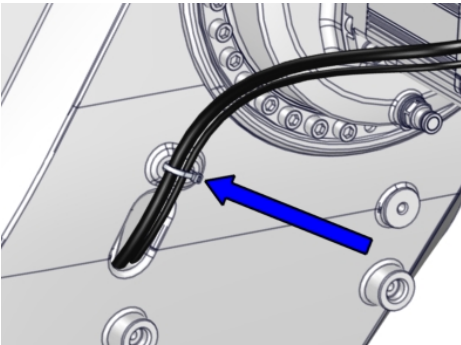
## Refitting the cable harness to the frame

|   | Action                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refit the cable brackets to the frame.<br>Collect and secure the cabling to the cable brackets with cable straps. | <p>Cable strap, outdoor<br/>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001950</p>  <p>xx2400000197</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

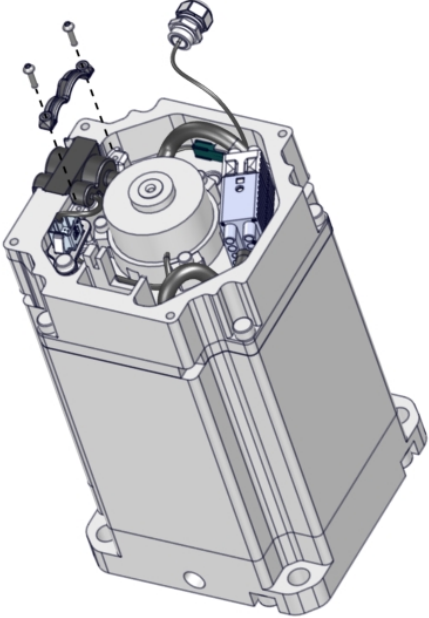
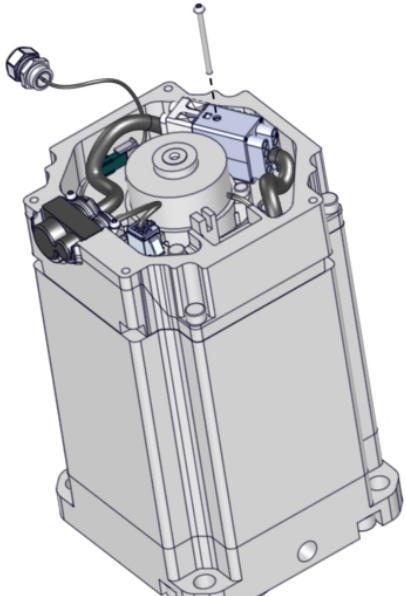
5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness  
Continued

|   | Action                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Secure the cabling to the frame with cable ties. | <div>Cable strap, outdoor: - (1 pcs)</div> <div><br/>xx2300002016</div> <div><br/>xx2400000191</div> |

Reconnecting the axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3 motor cables

|   | Action                                        | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |      |

Continues on next page

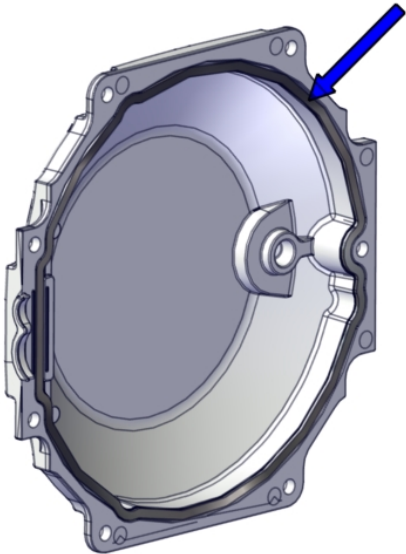
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | Connect the motor cables.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | Fit a screw to the power connector.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms. | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p>                        |

Continues on next page



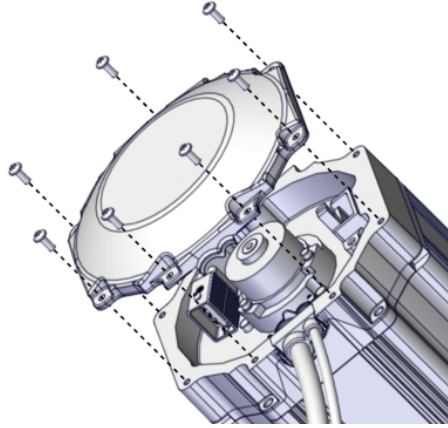
5 Repair

5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Inspect the gasket.<br>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.                                                                                                                   | Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:<br>Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:<br>3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)<br>Axis-4:<br>Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:<br>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)<br><br>xx2100000600 |
| 6 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

Continues on next page

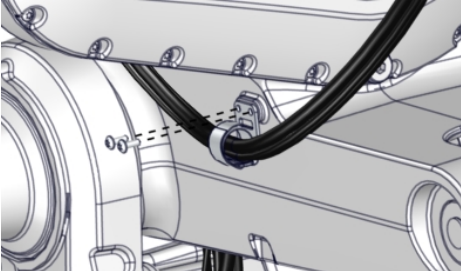


|   | Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid. | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2100000596 |

### Refitting the cable harness - upper arm and wrist

These procedures describe how to refit the cable harness in upper arm and wrist.

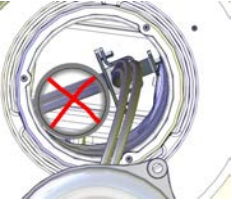
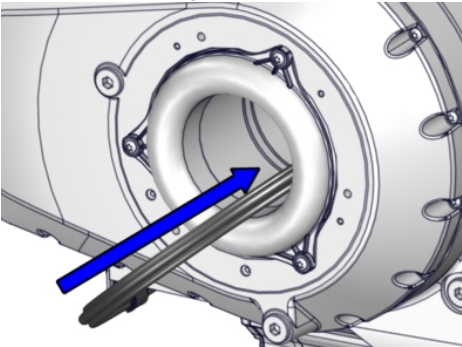
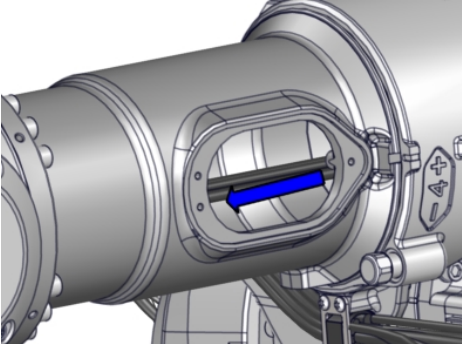
#### Refitting the cable harness to the upper arm

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refit the metal clamp beneath the arm house.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.<br><br>xx2300002013 |
| 2 |  <b>Tip</b><br>Use tape and tie the axis-5 and axis-6 connectors and carrier into a bundle (if not already done). This is done to facilitate the procedure and to avoid damaging the parts during the procedure.<br>This will also make it easier to run the cable harness through the inside of the robot. | <br>xx1300000668                                                                  |

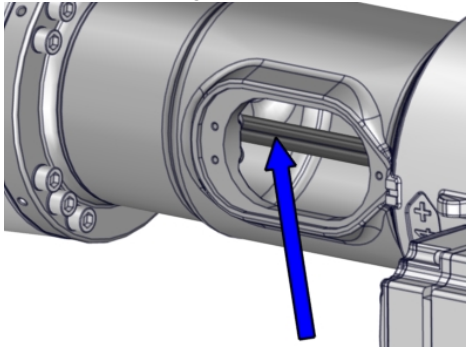
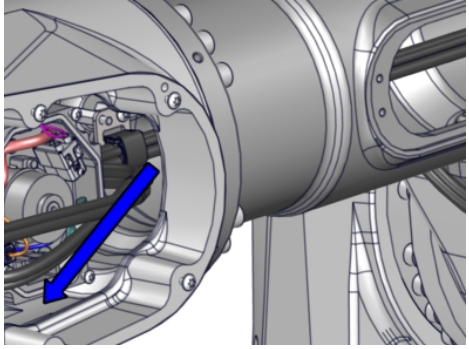
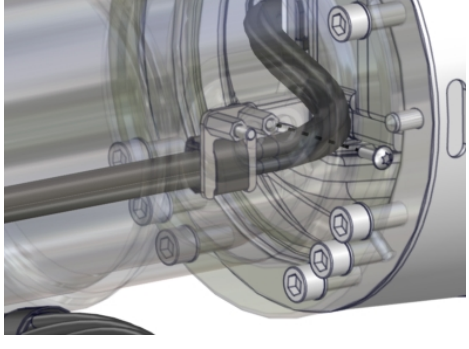
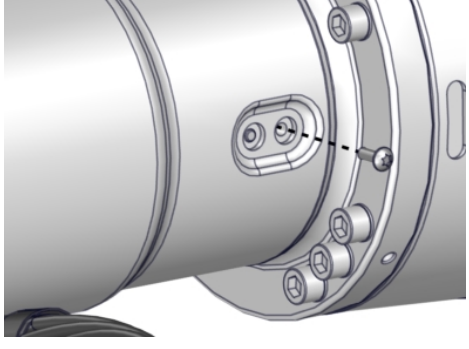
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>3</div> <div>Run the cable harness through the cable guide and then into and through the upper arm tube.</div> <div> <b>Tip</b></div> <div>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</div> <div><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Person 1: Put one hand inside the side hole of the arm tube and take a hold of the cable harness.</li><li>• Person 2: Take a hold on the cable harness at the back of the robot.</li><li>• Together: Use caution and move the cable harness into the arm tube.</li></ul></div> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <div>The cable harness is best placed at the upper right hand side of the DressPack tube, if used, through the arm tube.</div> <div>Do not run the cable harness into the DressPack tube!</div> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <div>Do not run the cable harness into the DressPack tube, if one is fitted!</div> <div></div> <div>xx1300000820</div> | <div>Person 1, working at the back:</div> <div></div> <div>xx2300000039</div> <div>Person 2, working at the side hole:</div> <div></div> <div>xx2300000040</div> |

Continues on next page

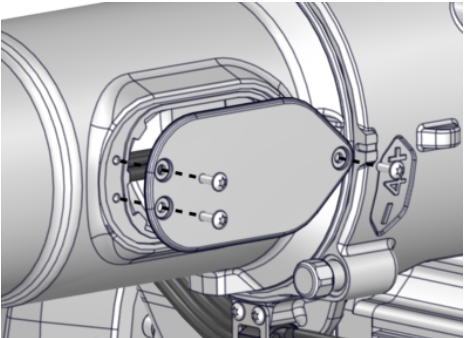
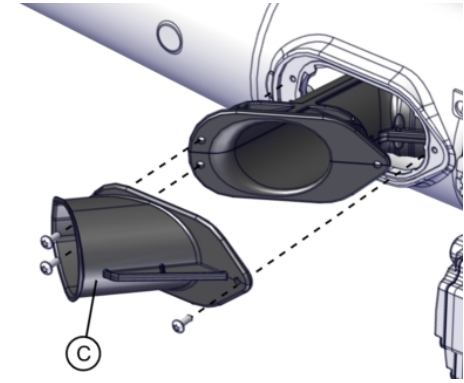
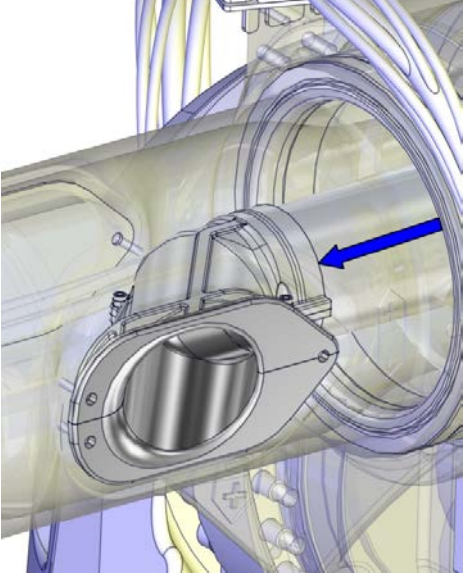
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Use caution and push the cable harness into the wrist.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This step is best performed by two persons working together:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Person 1: Put one hand inside the side cover hole and take a hold of the cable harness.</li> <li>• Person 2: Take a hold of the cable harness from inside the wrist.</li> <li>• Together: Move the cable harness past the axis-5 motor and into the wrist.</li> </ul> | <p>Person 1, working at the side hole:</p>  <p>xx2300000035</p> <p>Person 2, working at the wrist:</p>  <p>xx2300000041</p> |
| 5 | <p>Refit the metal clamp axis-4, inside the arm tube.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The screw is reached from outside the upper arm.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300000033</p>  <p>xx2300000032</p>          |

Continues on next page

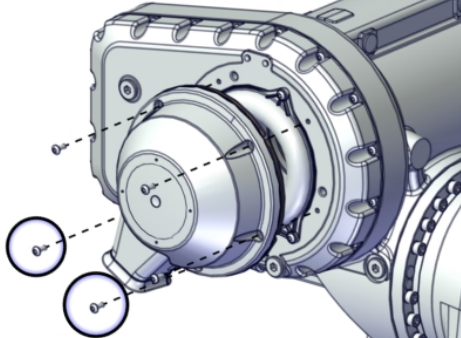
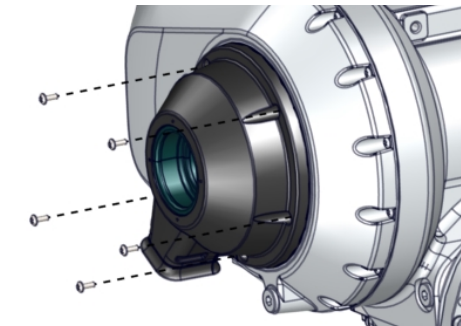
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Refit the side cover (if no DressPack is used).</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure the gasket is fitted correctly on the side cover</li><li>• Use attachment screws made of stainless steel to fit the side cover.</li></ul> |  <p>xx2300000031</p>   |
| 7 | <p>With DressPack:</p> <p>Refit the insert that guides the DressPack cable package through the hole in the upper arm.</p> <p>(Cable guard (C) is available for Foundry cable guard.)</p>                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2100002677</p>  |
| 8 | <p>With DressPack:</p> <p>Refit the DressPack tube into the insert.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  <p>xx1400000092</p> |

Continues on next page

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>9 <i>Foundry Plus</i><br/><i>DressPack</i>:<br/>Refit the back cover with the attachment screws.<br/>Tighten the two screws closest to the outlet first (shown in figure), to avoid deformation.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>With <i>DressPack</i>:<br/>Make sure that the tube is fitted correctly in both ends, when fitting the cover.</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p> <p><i>Foundry Plus</i></p>  <p>xx2100002636</p> <p><i>DressPack</i><br/>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p>  <p>xx2300001040</p> |

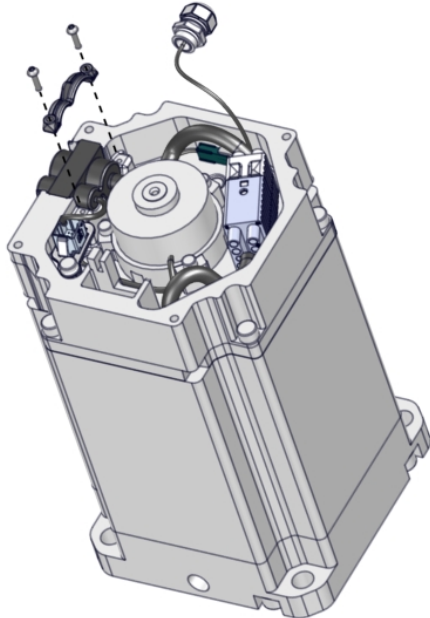
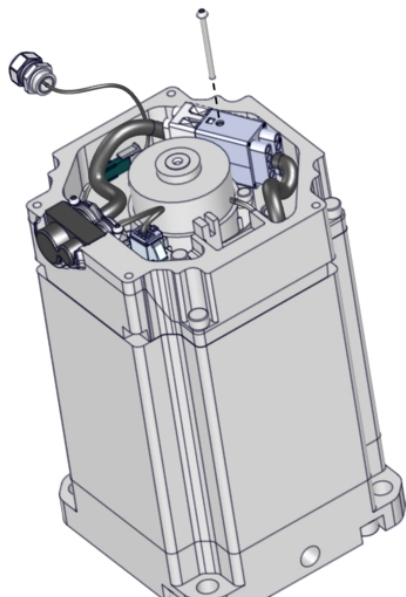
## Reconnecting the axis-4 motor cables

| Action                                                 | Note |
|--------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>1 Put the motor cables in place in the opening.</p> |      |

Continues on next page

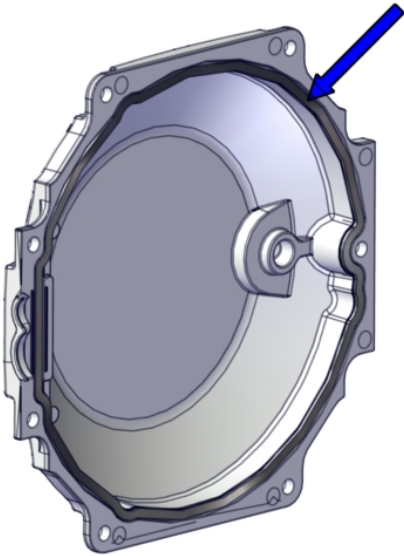
5 Repair

5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | Connect the motor cables.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | Fit a screw to the power connector.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms. | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p>                        |

Continues on next page



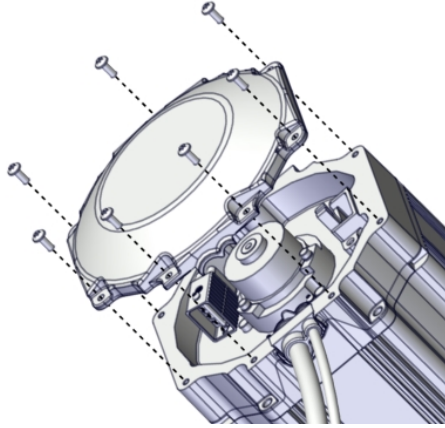
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.</p> <p>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.</p>                                                                                                                   | <p>Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:<br/>           Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:<br/>           3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br/>           3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br/>           3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br/>           3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)</p> <p>Axis-4:<br/>           Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:<br/>           3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br/>           3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2100000600</p> |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

Continues on next page

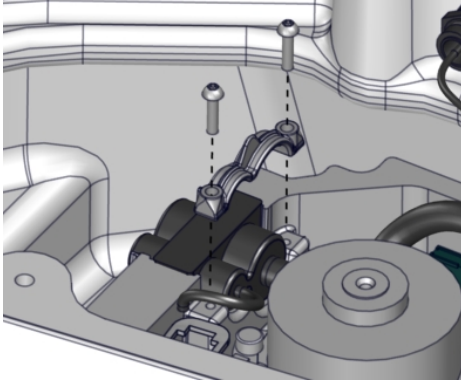
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

*Continued*

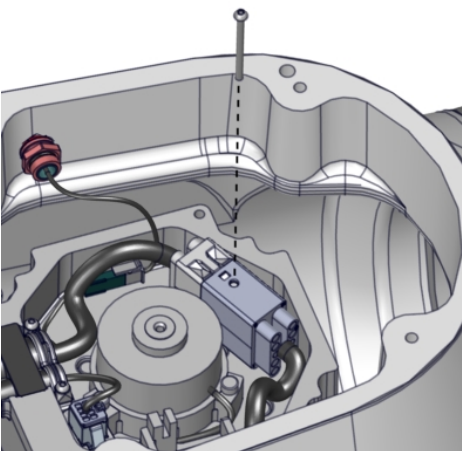
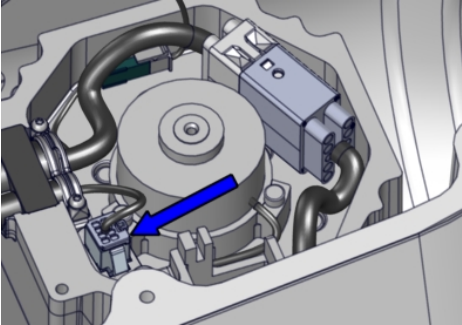
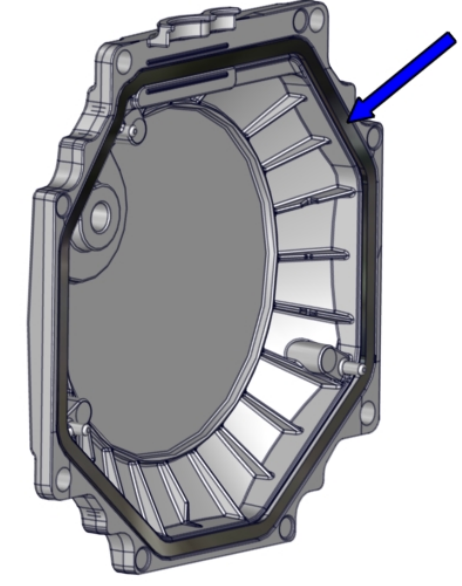
|   | Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid. | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p> <p>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2100000596</p> |

### Connecting the axis-5 motor cables

|   | Action                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.      | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001735</p> |

*Continues on next page*



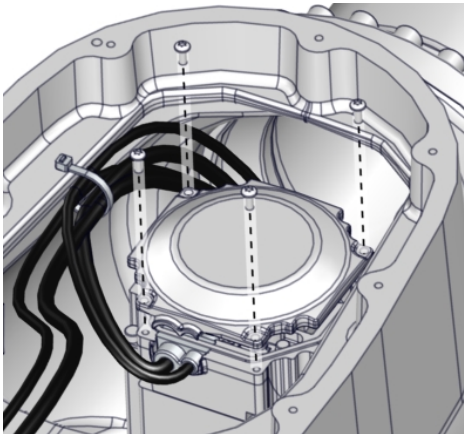
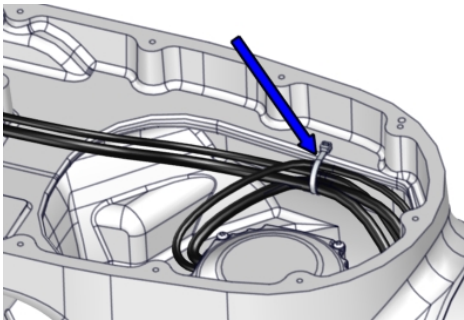
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Connect the power cable connector and secure with a screw.<br/>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001733</p>                                                                                 |
| 4 | <p>Connect the signal cable connector.<br/>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2200001734</p>                                                                                                               |
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Connection box cover with gasket:<br/>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200002141</p> |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

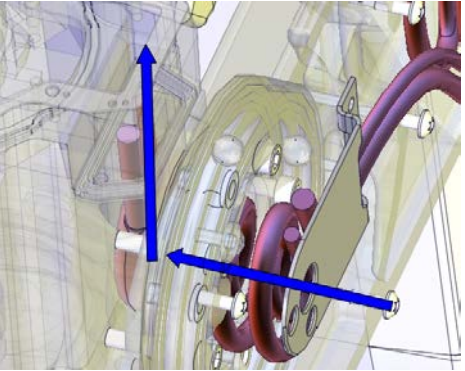
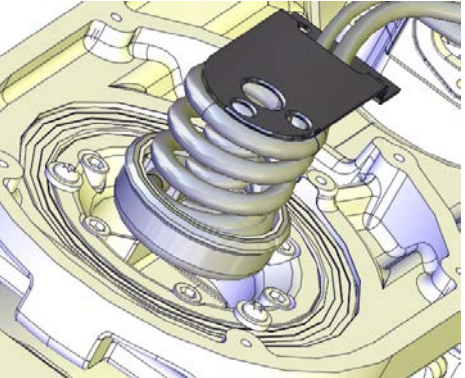
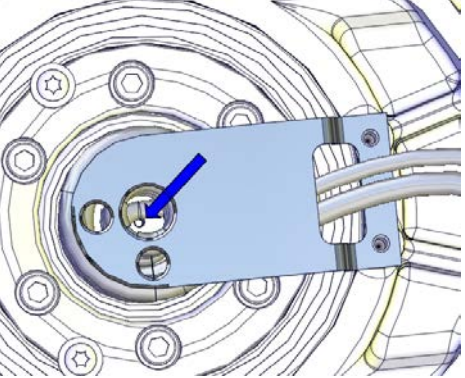
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 7 | Refit the motor cover and the cable protection with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid.                                                                                           | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001924 |
| 8 | Secure the cabling with a cable strap.                                                                                                                                                      | Cable strap, outdoor<br><br>xx2300001923                                                                                                                    |

#### Inserting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>Note</b><br>Axis 5 must be in position +90° (or as close as possible) for a correct installation of the cable harness in the wrist. If not, connect the brake release tool to the axis-5 motor connector, release the brakes and move axis 5 manually to +90°. |      |

Continues on next page

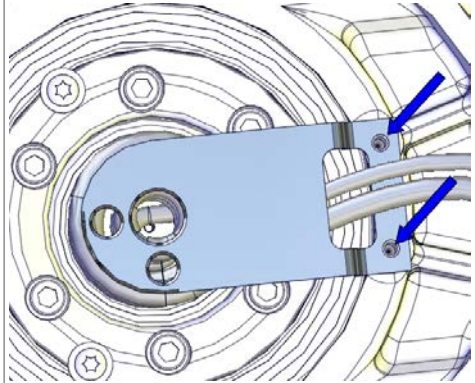
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Push the cable harness into the wrist recess and up into the axis-6 motor.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Moisten the rubber carrier slightly with water or grease around the contact surface, to make it easier to fit into place.</p>                                                                                                                                                     |  <p>xx1300000667</p>   |
| 3 | <p>Push the carrier carefully into position.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  <p>xx1300001113</p>  |
| 4 | <p>Secure the carrier with the M4x10 screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The screw is located at the bottom of the carrier.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>The attachment screw securing the carrier may be difficult to fit. Make sure the carrier is level and completely pressed against the bottom.</p> |  <p>xx1300000485</p> |

Continues on next page

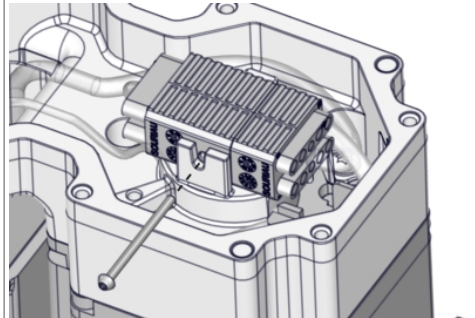
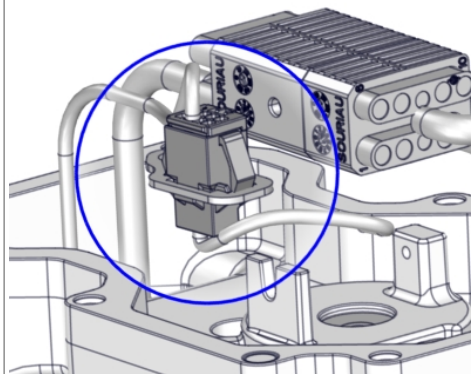
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

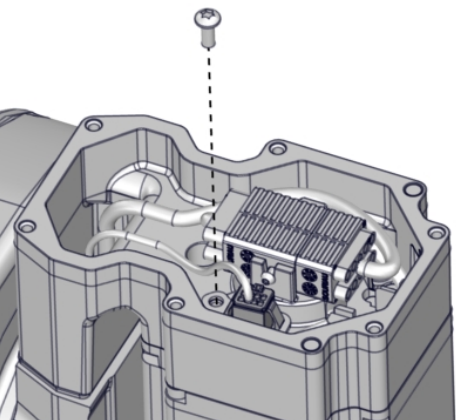
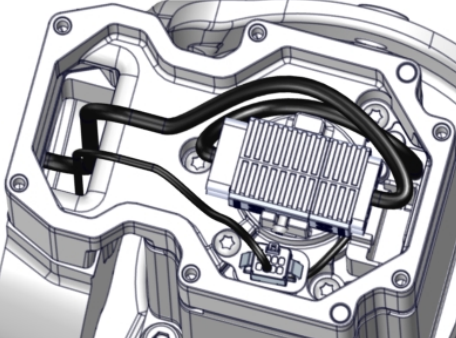
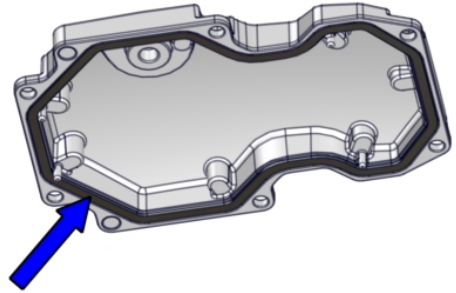
Continued

|   | Action                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Secure the cable bracket with its attachment screws. | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80</p> <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 10 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p>  <p>xx1300000484</p> |

### Connecting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                    |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Connect the motor cables.<br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                         |
| 2 | <p>Position the power connector to the bracket with a screw.</p> <div></div> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001731</p> |
| 3 | Snap the signal connectors to each other in the bracket.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  <p>xx2200001921</p>                                |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector bracket assembly to the motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The cabling is sensitive to mechanical damage. Handle it with care to avoid damage to the cabling or the connector, avoid any kind of tilt or skew.</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001730</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 5 | <p>Verify correct cable layout as shown in the figure.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Route the signal cabling correctly to avoid cable damage.</p>                                                                                         |  <p>xx2300000920</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6 | <p>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Gasket / Connection box cover with gasket:<br/> <b>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b><br/>           3HAC033489-001<br/> <b>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br/>           3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br/>           3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200001922</p> |

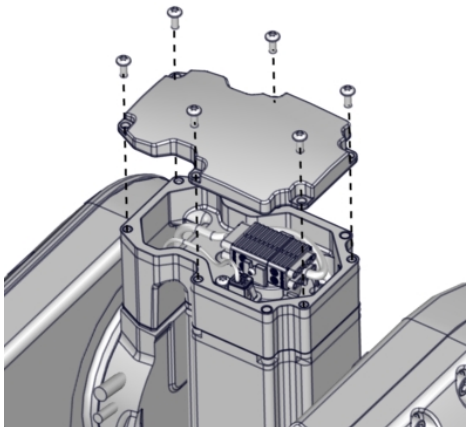
Continues on next page



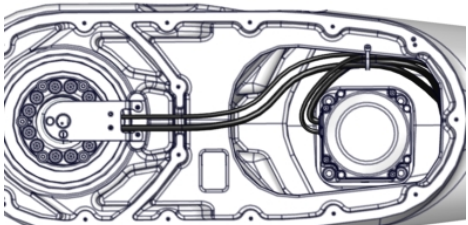
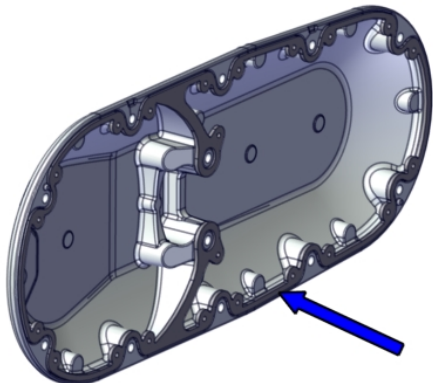
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

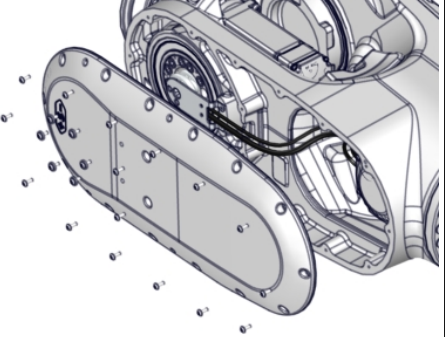
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 8 | Refit the motor cover.                                                                                                                                                                      | Torx pan head screw, M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70, 6 pcs<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2200001434 |

### Refitting the wrist cover

|   | Action                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Make sure that the cable harness is routed and secured as shown in the figure. | <br>xx2300001927                           |
| 2 | <b>Foundry Plus:</b><br>Inspect the gasket.<br>Replace if damaged.             | Gasket: 3HAC084758-001<br><br>xx2100001407 |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Refit the wrist cover and secure with screws.</p> <p><i>Foundry Plus:</i></p> <p>Fit all the screws first, then torque tighten them twice to achieve correct torque (due to compression from the gasket).</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80</p> <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001883</p> |

## Concluding procedure

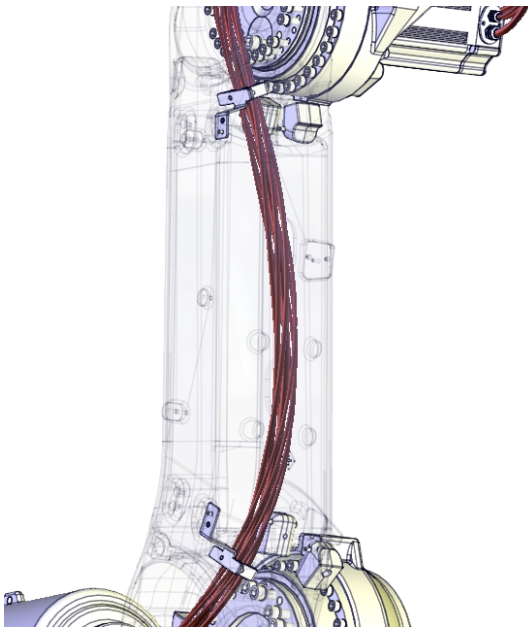
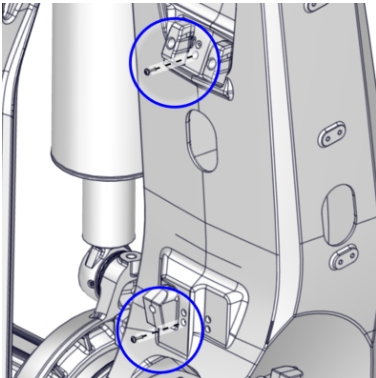
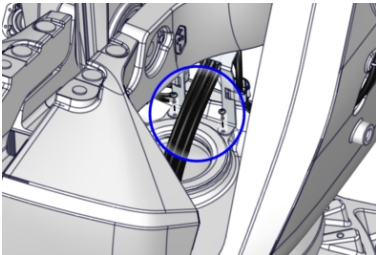
|   | Action                                                   | Note                                  |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | If used, refit the DressPack cable package on the wrist. | See product manual for the DressPack. |
| 2 | Turn on the power to the robot.                          |                                       |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.9.2 Refitting the cable harness

Continued

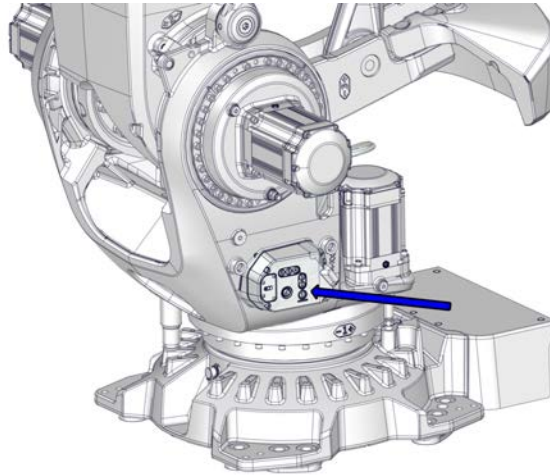
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Jog axis 2 so that the cable brackets on the back of the lower arm and inside the frame are accessible.</p> <p>Secure the cable brackets.</p> <p>Use a bit extender on the lower arm cable bracket screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The screws are reached from the outside of the lower arm.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Check that the cabling will stay a little bit twisted between the cable clamps. Do not change the position of the brackets!</p>  <p>xx1300000595</p> | <p>Bit extender</p> <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x20 A4-80</p> <p>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001951</p>  <p>xx2300001950</p> |
| 4 | <p>Make an overall inspection of the installed cable harness.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <p>See <a href="#">Inspecting the cable harness on page 122</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 5 | <p>Update the revolution counters.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>See <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 660</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 6 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |



### 5.9.3 Replacing the brake release unit

#### Location of the brake release unit

The brake release unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001541

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part         | Article number | Note | Level |
|--------------------|----------------|------|-------|
| Brake release unit | 3HAC073540-001 |      | L2    |

#### Required service parts

| Consumable         | Article number                                                       | Note                                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Cover, electronics | 3HAC081189-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC081189-004<br>(ABB Orange) | Includes gasket.<br>Replace if damaged. |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

#### Removing the brake release unit

Use this procedure to remove the brake release unit.

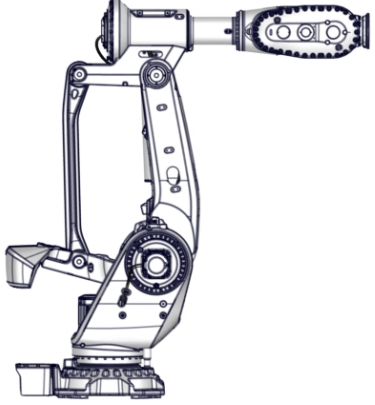
*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

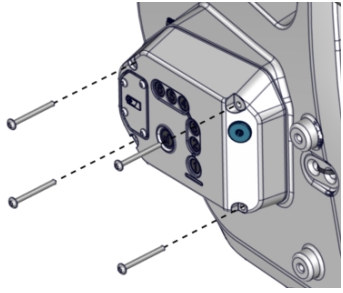
### 5.9.3 Replacing the brake release unit

*Continued*

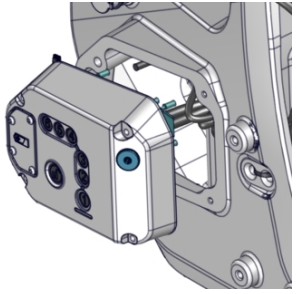
#### Preparations before removing the brake release unit

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to calibration position, if possible. This position facilitates updating of the revolution counters afterwards.                                                                                                                                                                                       | <br>xx2300001691 |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                     |

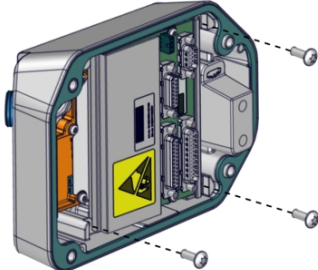
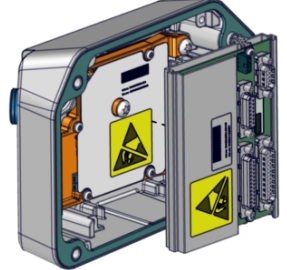
#### Removing the electronic box

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                         |                                                                                                       |
| 2 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</a> . |                                                                                                       |
| 3 | Remove the electronic box screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <br>xx2200001721 |

*Continues on next page*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>4 Remove the electronic box, including all internal equipment.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Clean cover from metal residues before opening.<br/>Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.</p> |  <p>xx2200001720</p> |

## Disconnecting and removing the SMB unit

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1  <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>                                                                         |                                                                                                           |
| <p>2  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</a>.</p> |                                                                                                           |
| 3 Disconnect all connectors from the SMB board.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                           |
| 4 Remove the screws that secure the SMB unit.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2200001723</p> |
| 5 Snap loose and remove the SMB unit.<br>Put the unit in an ESD bag.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  <p>xx2200001724</p> |

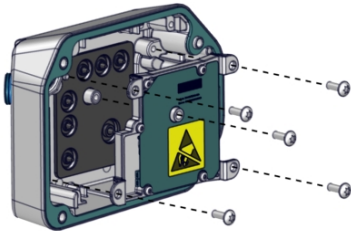
Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.9.3 Replacing the brake release unit

*Continued*

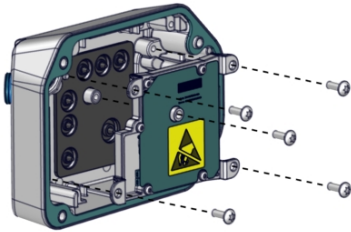
#### Disconnecting and removing the brake release unit

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                |                                                                                                      |
| 2 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</i> . |                                                                                                      |
| 3 | Disconnect the connectors R2.BU1 and R2.BU2 from the brake release board.                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                      |
| 4 | Remove the brake release unit by removing the screws.<br>Put the unit in an ESD bag.                                                                                                                                                                                     | <br>xx2200001728 |

#### Refitting the brake release unit

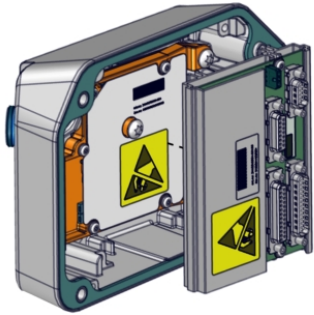
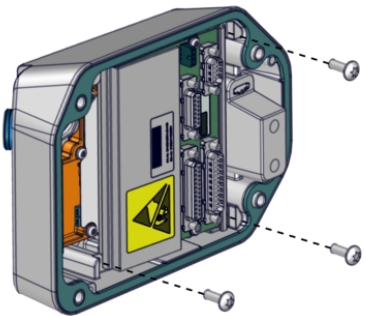
Use this procedure to refit the brake release unit.

#### Refitting the brake release unit

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</i> . |                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2 | Fit brake release unit into the electronic box and secure with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Torx pan head tapping screw:<br>Steel-Fe/Zn 8c M6x16<br>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.<br><br>xx2200001728 |

*Continues on next page*

## Refitting and connecting the SMB unit

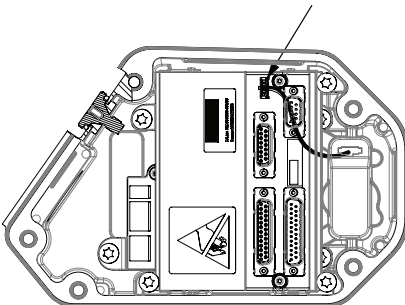
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 3 | Check the electronic box gasket.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Cover, electronics:<br>3HAC081189-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC081189-004 (ABB Orange)                                                                                                   |
| 4 | Fit the SMB unit into the electronic box.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <br>xx2200001724                                                                                    |
| 5 | Secure the SMB unit with the attachment screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Torx pan head tapping screw: Steel-Fe/Zn 8c M6x16<br>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.<br><br>xx2200001723 |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.9.3 Replacing the brake release unit

Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>6 Connect the battery cable to the SMB unit.<br/>Make sure the lock snaps into place during refitting.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure that the connector is assembled in the correct direction according to its keying.</p> |  <p>xx2100002161</p>  |
| <p>7 Connect all connectors to the SMB board:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R1.SMB1-3, R1.SMB4-6 and R2.SMB</li> <li>• If cabling is used for 7th axis (option), refit the connector R1.SMB7</li> </ul>                                                                                                |  <p>xx2200001726</p> |

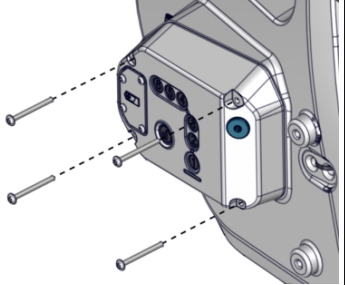
### Reconnecting the brake release unit

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</i>.</p> |                                                                                                      |
| <p>2 Check the electronic box gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>Cover, electronics:</p> <p>3HAC081189-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC081189-004 (ABB Orange)</p> |
| <p>3 Reconnect the connectors R2.BU1 and R2.BU2 to the brake release board.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |

### Refitting the electronic box

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>1  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</i>.</p> |      |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the electronic box with the attachment screws. | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x60 (4 pcs)<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001721</p> |

## Concluding procedures

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                           |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Update the revolution counters if the battery has been disconnected.                                                                                                                                                                                                       | See <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 660</a> . |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                |

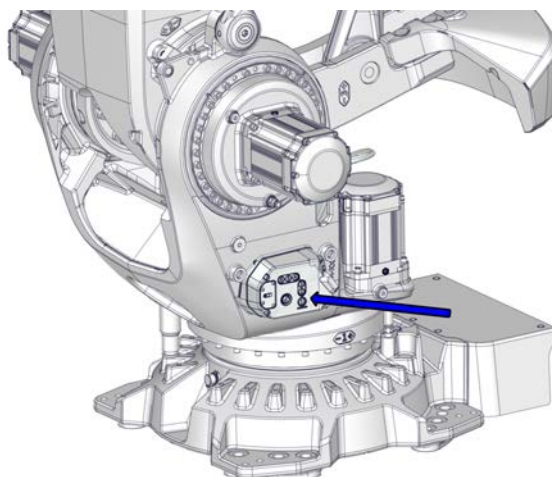
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.4 Replacing the SMB unit

### 5.9.4 Replacing the SMB unit

#### Location of the SMB unit

The SMB unit is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001541

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part              | Article number | Note | Level |
|-------------------------|----------------|------|-------|
| Serial measurement unit | 3HAC043904-001 |      | L2    |

#### Required service parts

| Consumable         | Article number                                                       | Note                                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Cover, electronics | 3HAC081189-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC081189-004<br>(ABB Orange) | Includes gasket.<br>Replace if damaged. |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment        | Article number | Note                                                                         |
|------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> . |

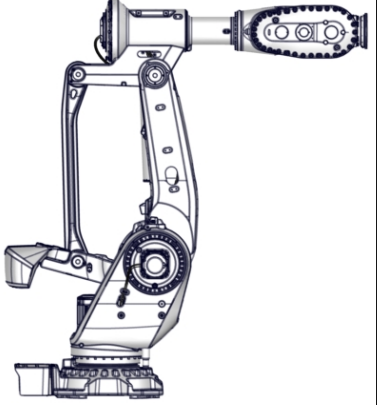
#### Removing the SMB unit

Use these procedures to disconnect and remove the SMB unit.

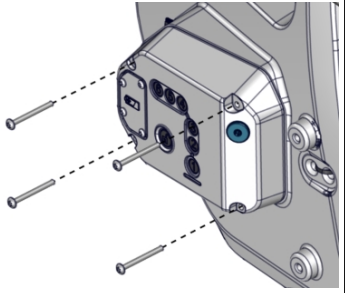
*Continues on next page*



## Preparations before removing the SMB unit

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to calibration position, if possible.<br>This position facilitates updating of the revolution counters afterwards.                                                                                                                                                                                    | <br>xx2300001691 |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                     |

## Removing the electronic box

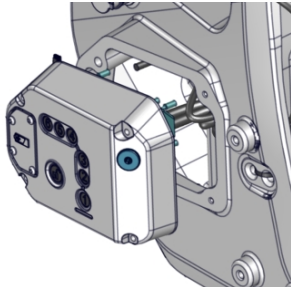
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                |                                                                                                       |
| 2 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <i>The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</i> . |                                                                                                       |
| 3 | Remove the electronic box screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <br>xx2200001721 |

Continues on next page

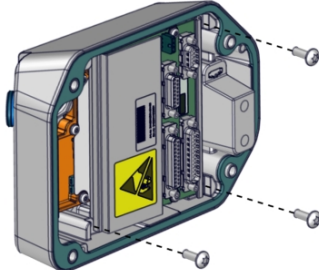
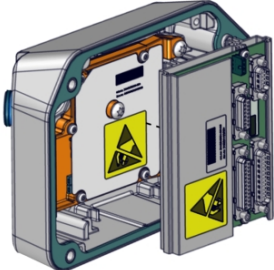
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.4 Replacing the SMB unit

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>4 Remove the electronic box, including all internal equipment.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Clean cover from metal residues before opening.<br/>Metal residues can cause shortage on the boards which can result in hazardous failures.</p> |  <p>xx2200001720</p> |

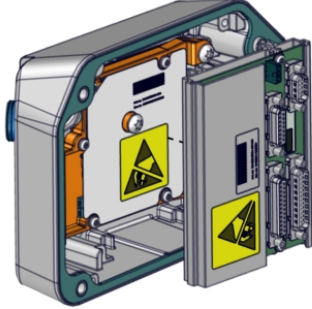
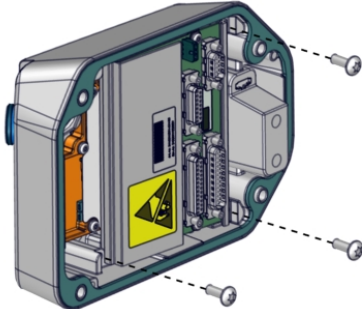
#### Disconnecting and removing the SMB unit

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1  <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>                                                                         |                                                                                                           |
| <p>2  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</a>.</p> |                                                                                                           |
| 3 Disconnect all connectors from the SMB board.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                           |
| 4 Remove the screws that secure the SMB unit.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2200001723</p> |
| 5 Snap loose and remove the SMB unit.<br>Put the unit in an ESD bag.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  <p>xx2200001724</p> |

*Continues on next page*

## Refitting the SMB unit

## Refitting and connecting the SMB unit

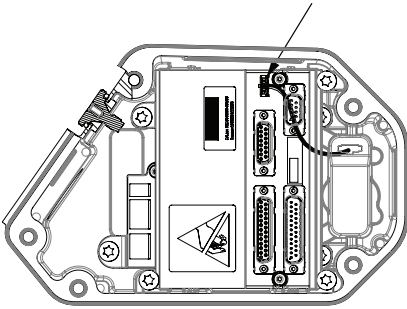
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2 |  <b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b><br>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 3 | Check the electronic box gasket.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Cover, electronics:<br>3HAC081189-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC081189-004 (ABB Orange)                                                                                                   |
| 4 | Fit the SMB unit into the electronic box.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <br>xx2200001724                                                                                    |
| 5 | Secure the SMB unit with the attachment screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Torx pan head tapping screw: Steel-Fe/Zn 8c M6x16<br>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.<br><br>xx2200001723 |

Continues on next page

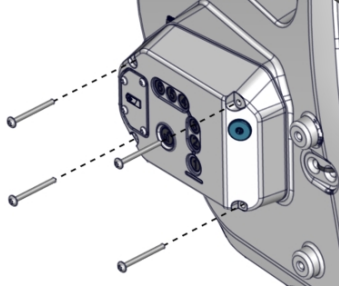
## 5 Repair

### 5.9.4 Replacing the SMB unit

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Connect the battery cable to the SMB unit.<br/>Make sure the lock snaps into place during refitting.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure that the connector is assembled in the correct direction according to its keying.</p> |  <p>xx2100002161</p>  |
| 7 | <p>Connect all connectors to the SMB board:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• R1.SMB1-3, R1.SMB4-6 and R2.SMB</li> <li>• If cabling is used for 7th axis (option), refit the connector R1.SMB7</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                         |  <p>xx2200001726</p> |

#### Refitting the electronic box

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <div>  </div> <p><b>ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD)</b></p> <p>The unit is sensitive to ESD. Before handling the unit read the safety information in section <a href="#">The unit is sensitive to ESD on page 54</a>.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 2 | <p>Refit the electronic box with the attachment screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x60 (4 pcs)<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001721</p> |

*Continues on next page*

## Concluding procedures

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                           |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Update the revolution counters.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | See <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 660</a> . |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                |

## 5 Repair

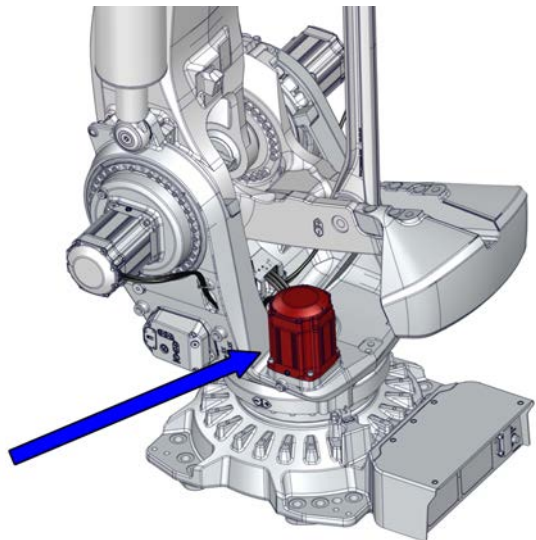
### 5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

## 5.10 Motors

### 5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

#### Location of the motor

The motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001591

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part                                       | Article number                                                       | Note | Level |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------|
| Motor unit (including connection box and pinion) | 3HAC085097-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC085097-004<br>(ABB Orange) |      | L2    |

*Continues on next page*

**Required service parts**

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover FS180 with gasket | 3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-1 motor<br>A threaded connection is required for cooling fan option. |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7200                                                                                        |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7063                                                                                        |
| Flange sealant                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 5800                                                                                        |
| O-ring, G 1/2"                         | 3HAC061327-059                                                                                                                                                             | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                                                               |

**Required tools and equipment**

| Equipment                             | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bits extender                         | 3HAC12342-1                 | 300 mm, bits 1/2"                                                                                                       |
| Guide pin, M10x150                    | 3HAC15521-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Removal tool motor M12                | 3HAC14631-1                 | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                         |
| Brake release tool                    | 3HAC081310-001              | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                           |
| Lifting accessory, motor              | 3HAC076550-001              |                                                                                                                         |
| Rotation tool M4                      | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M4.                                                                       |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                      | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

*Continued*

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b><br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

#### Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the motor.

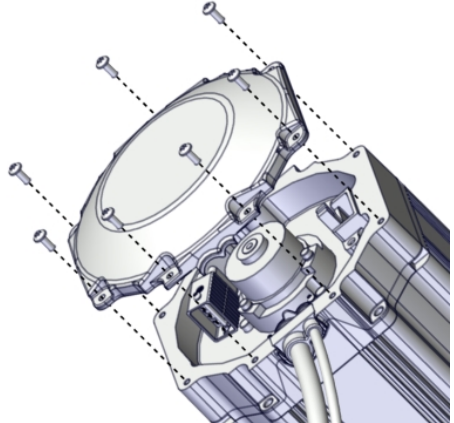
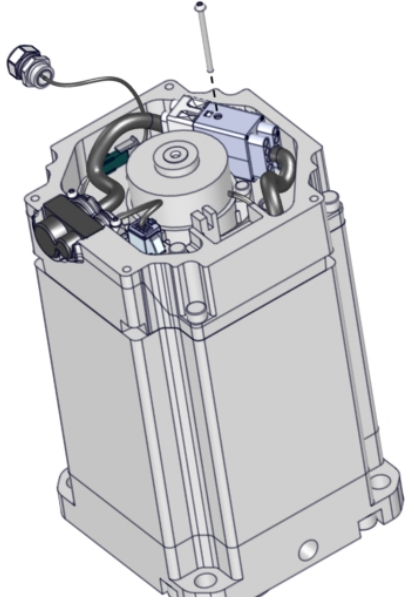
#### Preparations before removing the motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |
| 2 | If needed, jog the robot to an appropriate working position that allows space for motor replacement.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |      |
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>electric power supply</li><li>hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |      |

*Continues on next page*



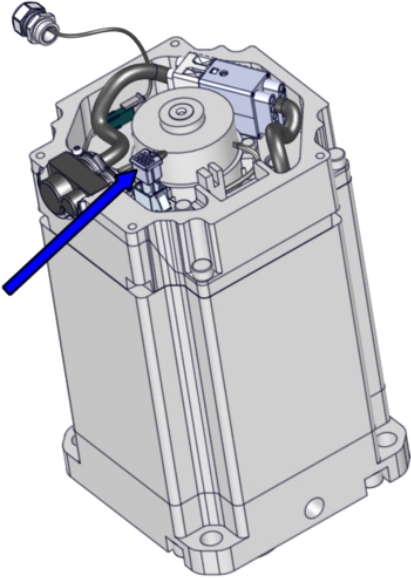
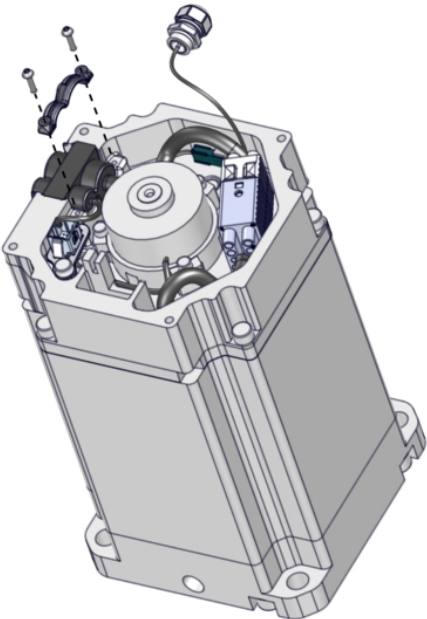
## Floor-mounted robot: Disconnecting the axis-1 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                                                                                                                            | <br>xx2100000596  |
| 3 | Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector.                                                                                               | <br>xx2200001736 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

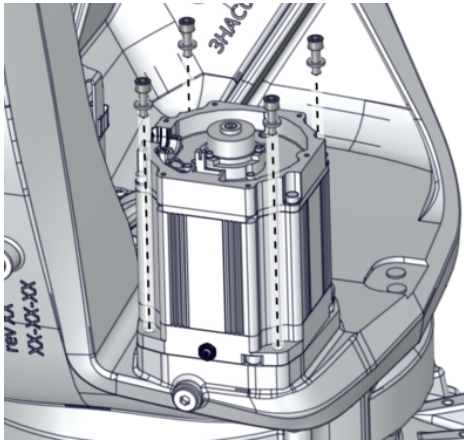
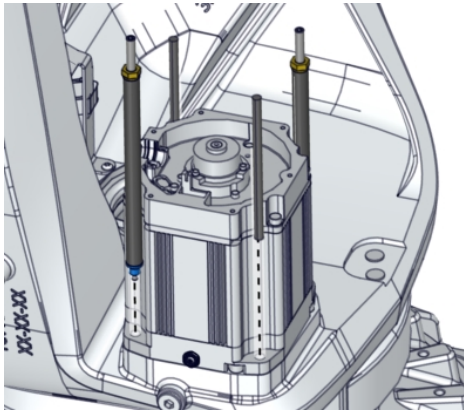
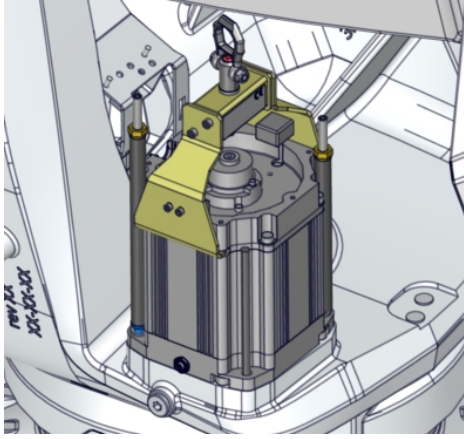
5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor  
Continued

| Action                                                     | Note                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out. | <br><br>xx2200001737  |
| 5 Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.         | <br><br>xx2200001738 |
| 6 Remove the motor cables from the motor.                  |                                                                                                         |

Floor-mounted robot: Removing the axis-1 motor

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Unscrew the attachment screws and washers.<br>Use a bits extender to reach the screws. | Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2300001721                                                                                    |
| 3 | Fit guide pins in the non-threaded holes.                                              | Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 4 | Fit removal tools in the threaded holes.                                               | Always use guide pins in pairs.<br>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.<br><br>xx2300001723 |
| 5 | Apply the lifting accessory.                                                           | Lifting accessory, motor: 3HAC076550-001<br><br>xx2400000491                                                                    |

Continues on next page

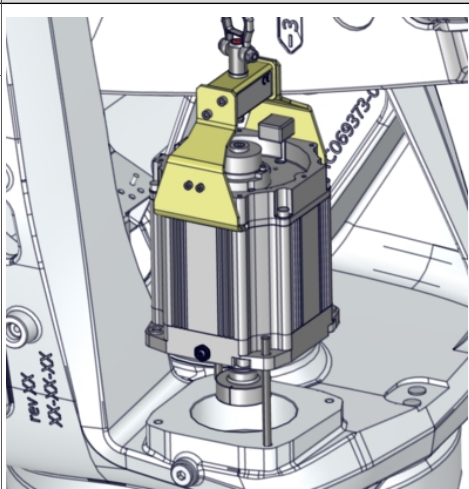
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Release the brakes of the axis-1 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 23 kg</p> <p>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 8 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

|    | Action                                                                             | Note                                                                                               |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.                    | <br>xx2400000492 |
| 10 | Use caution and lift the motor straight up to get the pinion parted from the gear. |                                                                                                    |
| 11 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                 |                                                                                                    |

### Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the motor.

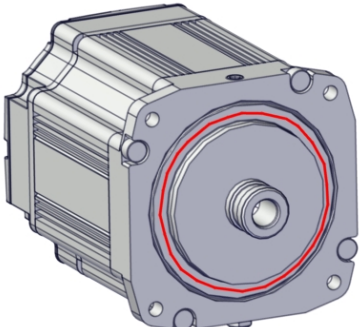
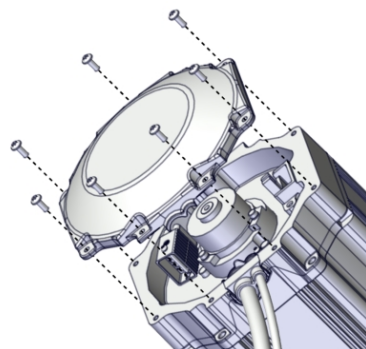
#### Preparations prior to refitting motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                       |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                                                |                                            |
| 2 | Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface. | Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063 |

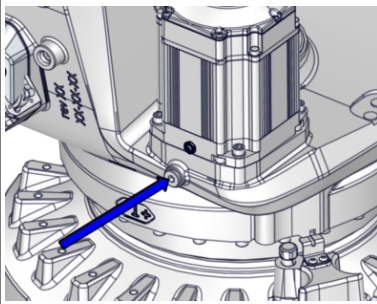
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.</p> | <p>Flange sealant: Loctite 5800</p>  <p>xx2100000520</p> |
| 4 | <p>Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2100000596</p>                                    |

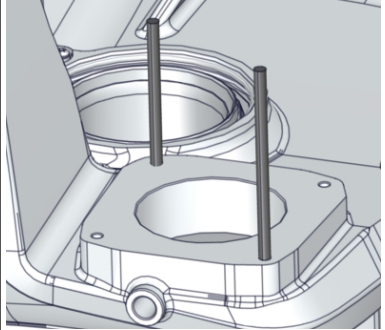
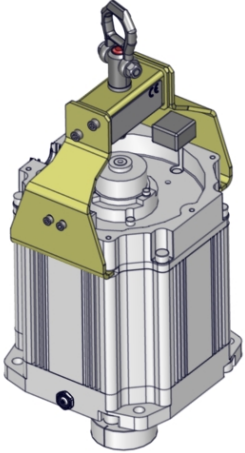
Floor-mounted robot: Refitting the axis-1 motor

|   | Action                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Remove the plug from the venting hole. This is done to evacuate air during refitting of the motor.</p> |  <p>xx2300001600</p> |

Continues on next page

## 5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

*Continued*

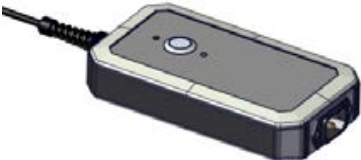
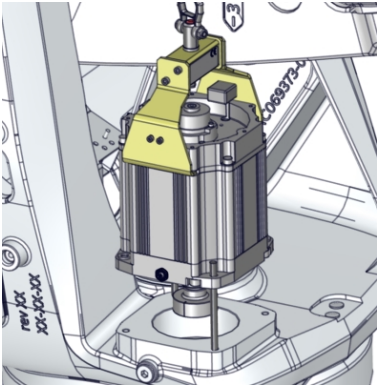
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Fit guide pins in opposite holes.                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2</p> <p>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2300001801</p> |
| 3 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the motor is 23 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 4 | Apply the lifting accessory.                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>Lifting accessory, motor:<br/>3HAC076550-001</p>  <p>xx2400000493</p>                         |
| 5 | Fit the rotation tool.                                                                                                                                                                          | Rotation tool M4: 3HAB7887-1                                                                                                                                                          |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

Continued

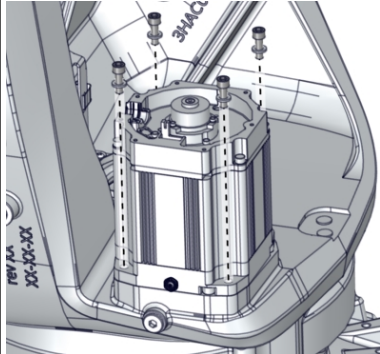
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 8 | <p>Lower the motor into position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear in the gearbox.</li> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> <li>• Make sure that the direction of the cable gland exit is facing the correct way.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  <p>xx2400000492</p>                                                                                              |

Continues on next page

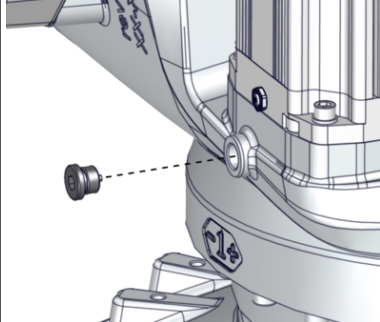


## 5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | Secure the motor with its attachment screws and washers.<br>Use a bits extender to reach the screws. | Hex socket head cap screw:<br>M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br>500 (4 pcs)<br>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br>Tightening torque: 50 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001721 |
| 10 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 11 | Perform a leak-down test.                                                                            | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## Refitting the oil plug

|   | Action                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged. | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001686 |

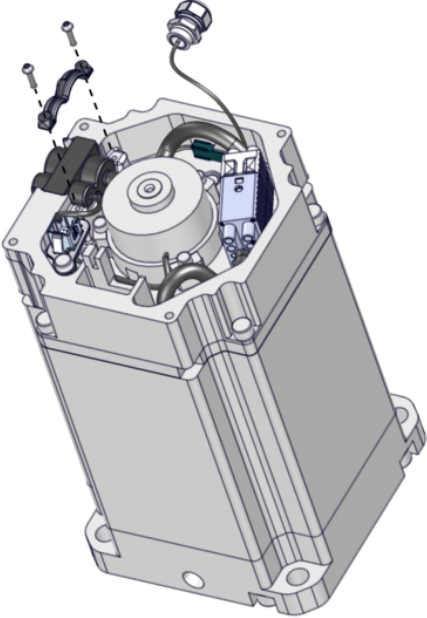
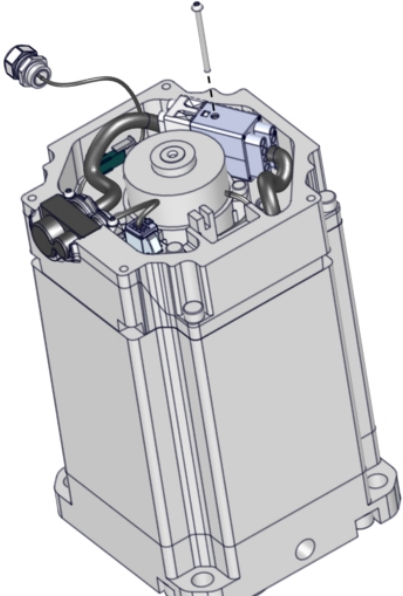
## Connecting the motor cables

|   | Action                                        | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |      |

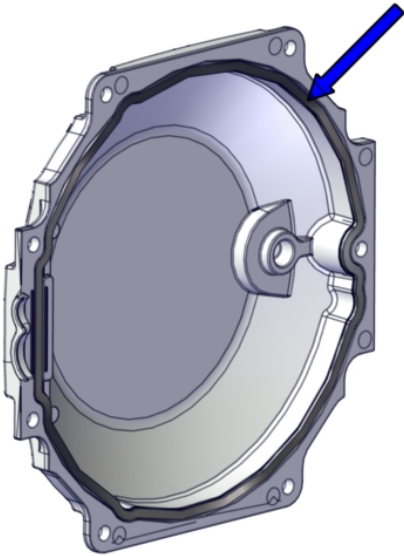
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | Connect the motor cables.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | Fit a screw to the power connector.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms. | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p>                        |

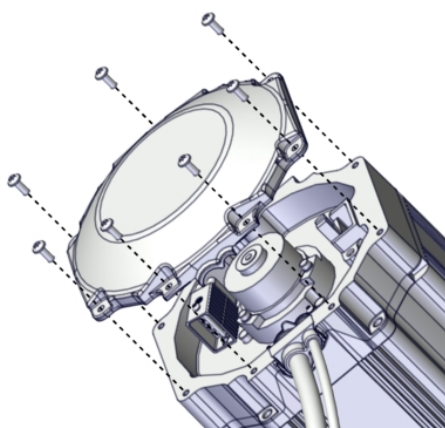
Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.</p> <p>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.</p>                                                                                                                   | <p>Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:</p> <p>3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)</p> <p>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)</p> <p>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)</p> <p>Axis-4:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:</p> <p>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2100000600</p> |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.1 Replacing the axis-1 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid. | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2100000596 |

#### Concluding procedure

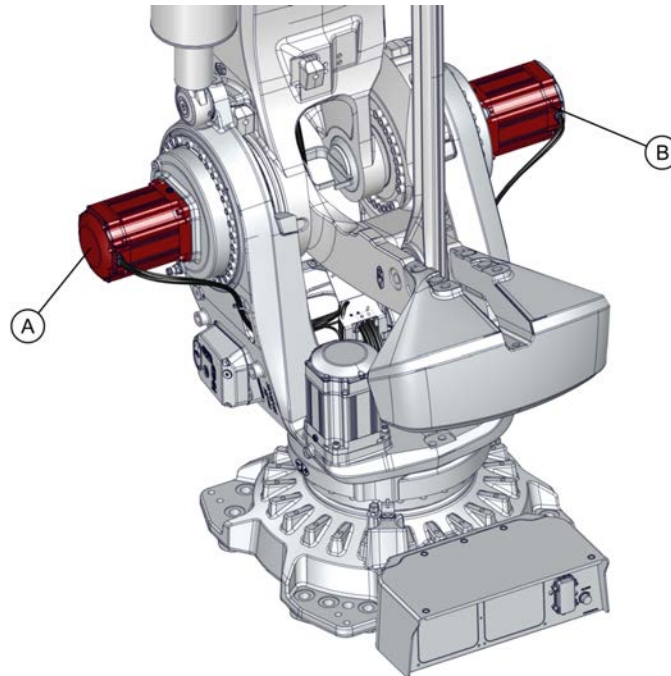
Use this procedure for the concluding refitting.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                          |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Re-calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> . |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                               |

## 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

### Location of the motor

The motors are located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001592

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| A | Axis-2 motor |
| B | Axis-3 motor |

### Summary of the replacement procedure

This list is a brief summary of the replacement procedure, containing the major actions to be performed.

- 1 Drain the relevant gearbox.
- 2 Secure the movable arm structure with a lock screw.
- 3 Replace the motor.

### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part                                       | Article number                                                 | Note | Level |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------|
| Motor unit (including connection box and pinion) | 3HAC085098-002 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC085098-003 (ABB Orange) |      | L2    |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

*Continued*

#### Required service part

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover FS180 with gasket | 3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-2 and axis-3 motor                   |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7200                                                        |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7063                                                        |
| O-ring, G 1/2"                         | 3HAC061327-059                                                                                                                                                             | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                               |
| Lubricating oil                        | -                                                                                                                                                                          | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gear-boxes on page 153</a> . |
| Flange sealant                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 5800                                                        |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                             | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lock screw, M16x80                    | -                           | Used to secure lower arm / movable arm structure.                                                                       |
| Brake release tool                    | 3HAC081310-001              | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                           |
| Bits extender                         | 3HAC12342-1                 | 300 mm, bits 1/2"                                                                                                       |
| Guide pin, M10x150                    | 3HAC15521-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Removal tool motor M12                | 3HAC14631-1                 | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                         |
| Lifting accessory, motor              | 3HAC15534-1                 | Lifting instruction 3HAC15640-2 enclosed.                                                                               |
| Lifting accessory (chain)             | 3HAC15556-1                 | Lifting instruction 3HAC15880-2 enclosed.                                                                               |
| Rotation tool M4                      | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M4.                                                                       |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                      | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

*Continues on next page*

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b><br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

**Removing the motor**

Use these procedures to remove the motor.

**Preparations before removing the motor**

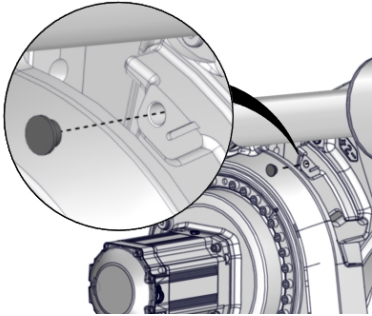
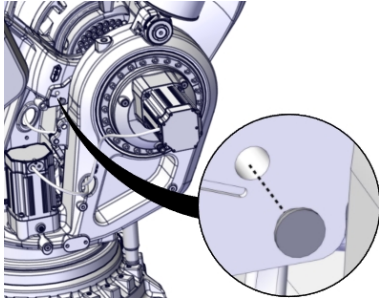
|   | Action                                                                                                         | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. |      |

*Continues on next page*

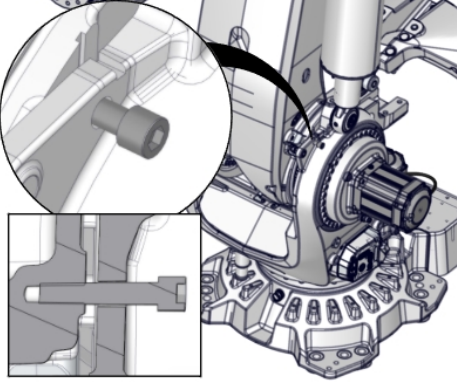
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Jog axis-2 to a position where the plastic plug for the relevant axis lock screw hole is accessible.                                                                                                                                              | <p>Axis-2 lock screw hole:</p>  <p>xx2400001682</p> <p>Axis-3 lock screw hole:</p>  <p>xx1500002366</p> |
| 3 | <p>Remove the plastic plug that covers the lock screw hole.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Keep the plastic plugs. They must be refitted after the work is done.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | Jog the robot to the synchronization position.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 5 | Drain the oil from the relevant gearbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>See <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox on page 160</a>.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox on page 165</a>.</p>                                                                                                                          |

When removing axis-2 motor: locking the axis-2 position

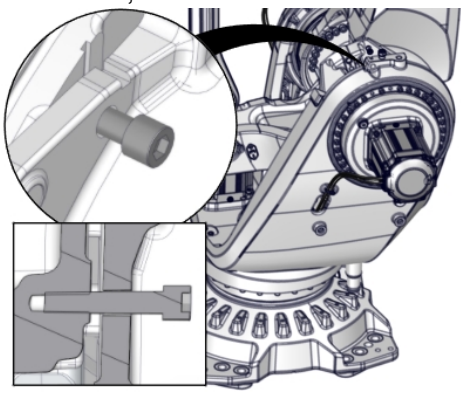
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Insert the lock screw into the axis-2 lock screw hole. Do not tighten. If needed, adjust the position of the robot to make it possible to insert the lock screw.</p> <p>The lock screw is used to secure the weight of the movable arm structure, in order to avoid accidents or damage.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not insert the screw fully, leave space underneath the screw head.</p> <p>Inserting the screw all the way will result in tension in the arm system which may cause damage to the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes.</p> | <p>Lock screw, M16x80</p>  <p>xx2300001881</p> |
| 2 | Release the brakes on axis-2 using the brake release button, and let the axis rest on the lock screw.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                    |

*Continues on next page*



|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |      |

When removing axis-3 motor: locking the axis-3 position

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                      |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Insert the lock screw into the axis-3 lock screw hole. Do not tighten. If needed, adjust the position of the robot to make it possible to insert the lock screw.<br>The lock screw is used to secure the weight of the movable arm structure, in order to avoid accidents or damage.<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>Do not insert the screw fully, leave space underneath the screw head.<br>Inserting the screw all the way will result in tension in the arm system which may cause damage to the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes. | Lock screw, M16x80<br><br>xx2400000236 |
| 2 | Release the brakes on axis-3 using the brake release button, and let the axis rest on the lock screw.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                           |
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                           |

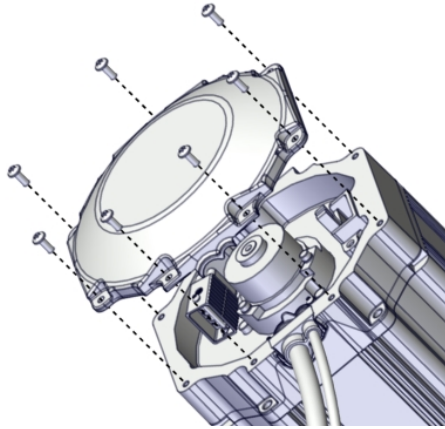
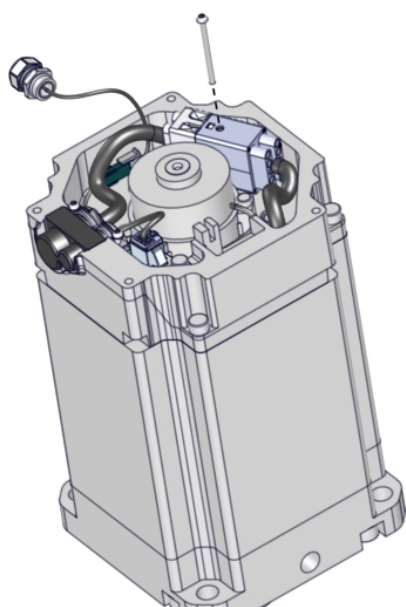
Disconnecting the motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

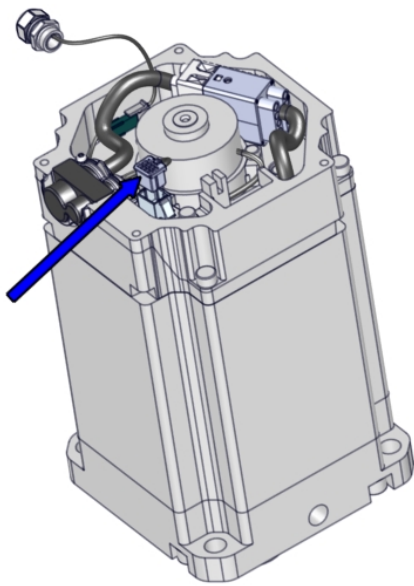
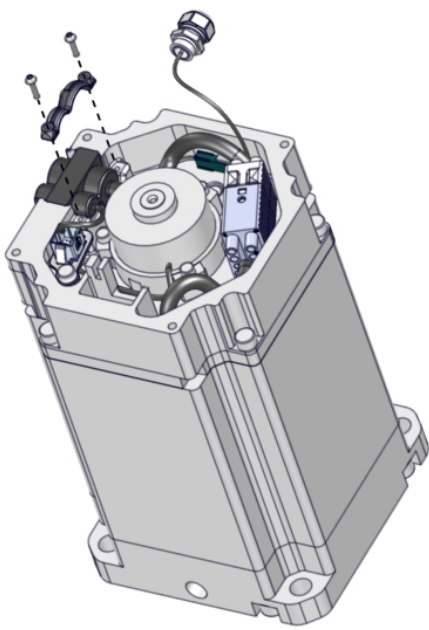
5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                              | <br><br>xx2100000596  |
| 3 | Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector. | <br><br>xx2200001736 |

Continues on next page

## 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

*Continued*

| Action |                                                          | Note                                                                                                |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4      | Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out. | <br>xx2200001737 |
| 5      | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.         | <br>xx2200001738 |
| 6      | Remove the motor cables from the motor.                  |                                                                                                     |

## Removing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

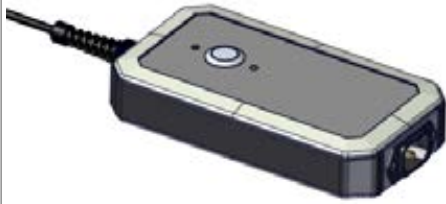
| Action |                                                                              | Note |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1      | Before removing the motor, make sure that the gearbox is completely drained. |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

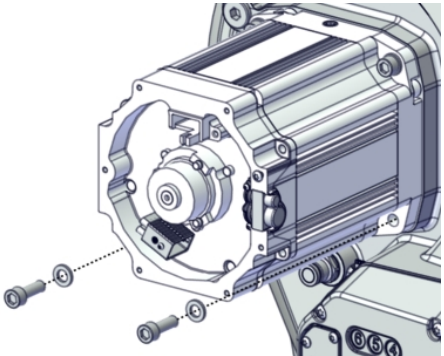
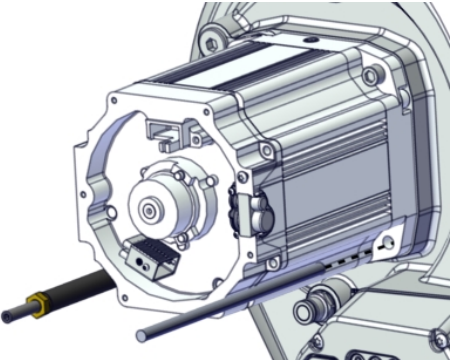
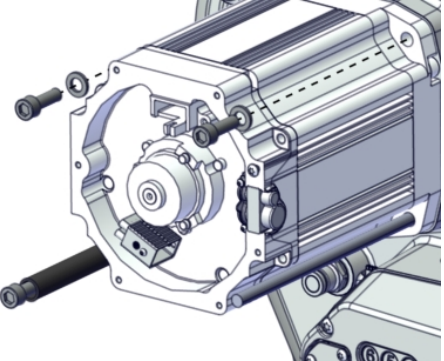
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>When releasing the holding brakes of the motor, the lower arm will be movable and may fall down if not secured. Verify that the lower arm is secured as previously described, before continuing.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 3 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>Releasing the brakes on the axis-2 or axis-3 motor results in weight transfer of upper and lower arm weight to the inserted lock screw in the lower arm or to the attached lifting accessories (whichever is used). If lifting accessories are used, verify that the lifting chains and roundslings are stretched by raising the overhead crane, before releasing the brakes.<br><br>Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool, to unload the weight:<br><ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li><li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li><li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li></ol><br>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.<br><br> <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.<br>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.<br><br> <b>WARNING</b><br><br>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk. | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br/>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p> <br><br>xx2100000666 |

*Continues on next page*

## 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

*Continued*

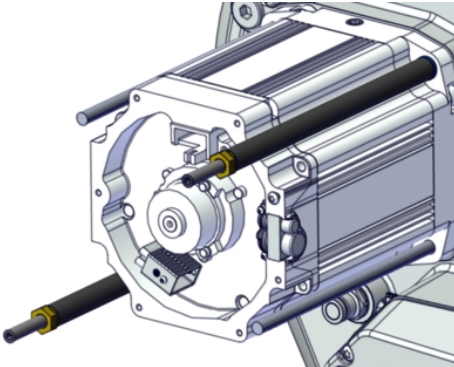
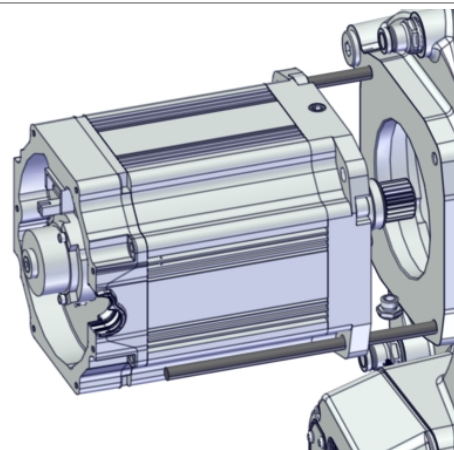
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Remove the two lower screws.<br/>Use a bits extender in order to reach the screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1</p>  <p>xx2000000468</p>                                               |
| 5 | <p>Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br/>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the motor slide better.</p> | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1</p>  <p>xx2000000456</p> |
| 6 | <p>Remove the remaining two screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1</p>  <p>xx2200001150</p>                                             |

*Continues on next page*

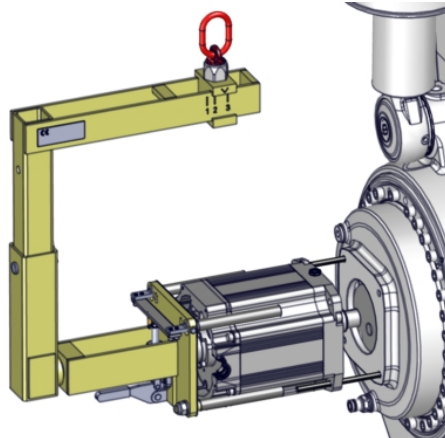
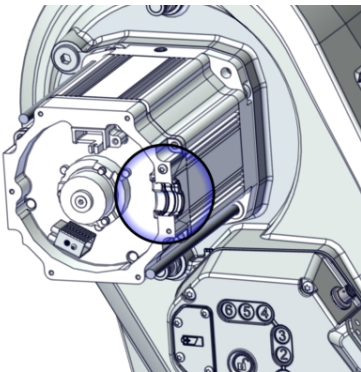
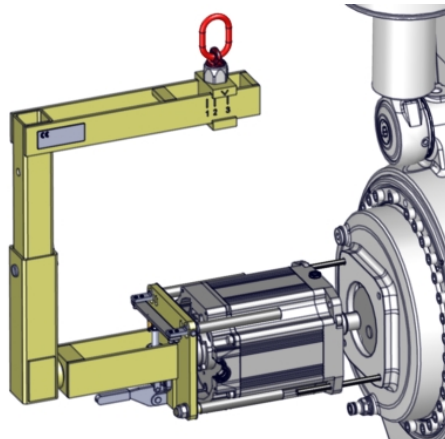
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7  | <p>Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br/>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the motor slide better.</p> | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1</p>  <p>xx2300000043</p> |
| 8  | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gear-box, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 9  | <p>Activate the brake release tool again (release the brakes).</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>The power is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p>                                                                                                                    |
| 10 | <p>Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.<br/>Remove the removal tools.</p>                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br/>Always use removal tools in pairs.</p>                                                                                               |
| 11 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 24 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 12 | <p>Carefully lift the motor out on the guide pins, in order to get the pinion away from the gear and let it rest on the guide pins.</p>                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2000000457</p>                                                                              |
| 13 | <p>Disconnect the brake release tool.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>14 Fasten the lifting accessory. Attach the lifting chain to the accessory and an overhead crane.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Lifting accessory, motor: 3HAC15534-1<br/>Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1</p>  <p>xx2400000263</p> |
| <p>15 Remove the motor by sliding it out on the guide pins and lift it off.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make a note in which direction the cable gland hole is facing. The motor shall be refitted in the same position.</p>  <p>xx2100000595</p> |  <p>xx2400000263</p> <p>Make sure the pinion is not damaged.</p>                                            |

### Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 or axis-3 motor.

#### Preparations prior to refitting motor

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>1  <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |      |

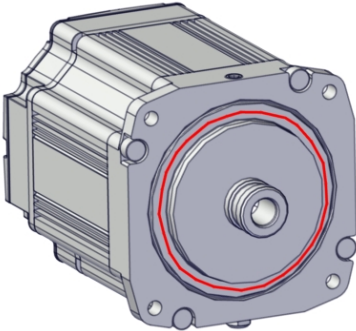
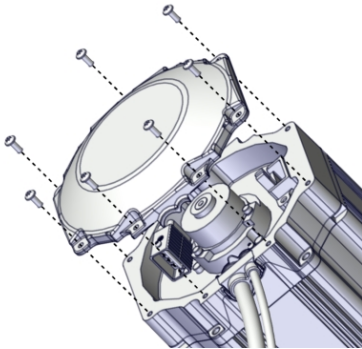
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

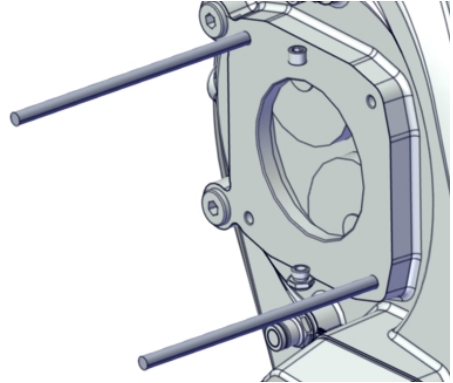
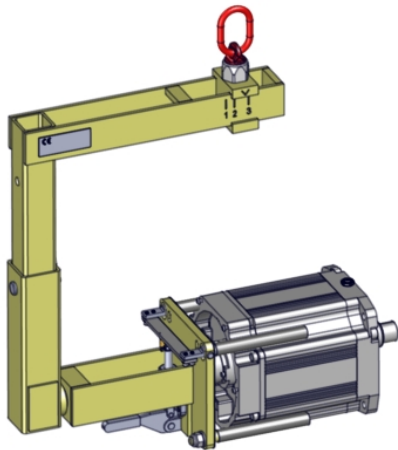
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                        |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface.</p> | <p>Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063</p>                                                                                           |
| 3 | <p>Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.</p>                                                              | <p>Flange sealant: Loctite 5800</p>  <p>xx2100000520</p> |
| 4 | <p>Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  <p>xx2100000596</p>                                   |

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

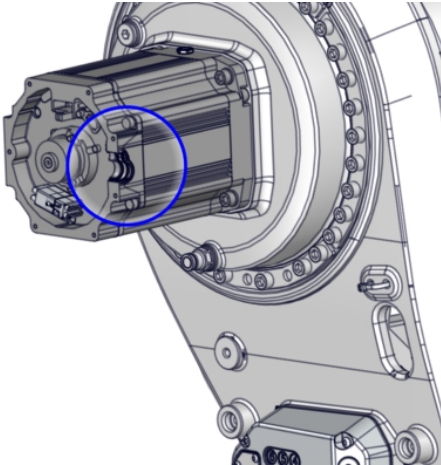
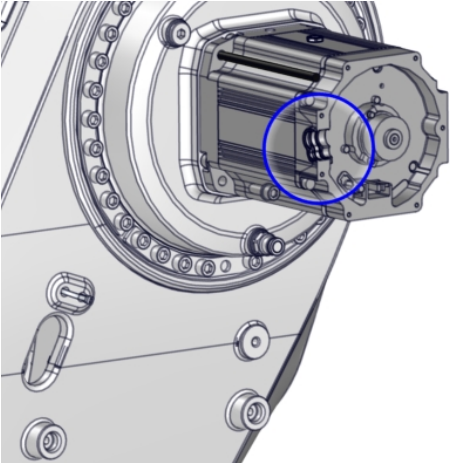
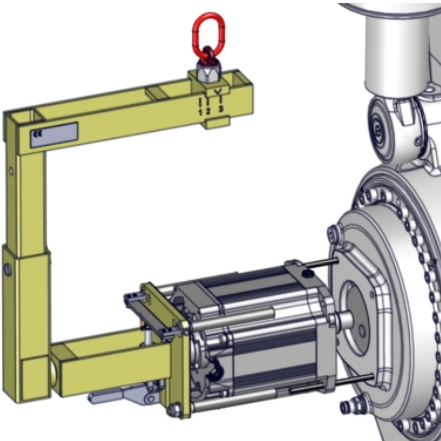
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Fit guide pins in opposite holes.                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2100000593</p>                 |
| 2 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 24 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 3 | Apply the lifting accessory.                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Lifting accessory, motor: 3HAC15534-1<br/>Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1</p>  <p>xx2400000264</p> |

Continues on next page

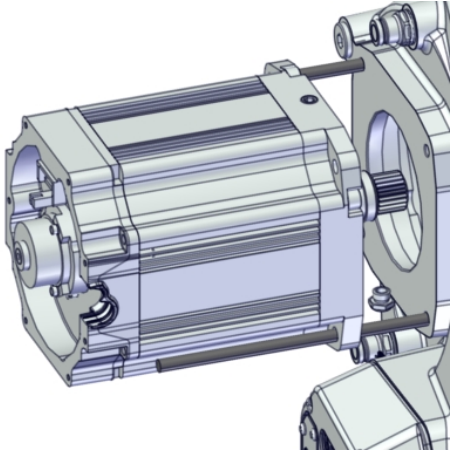
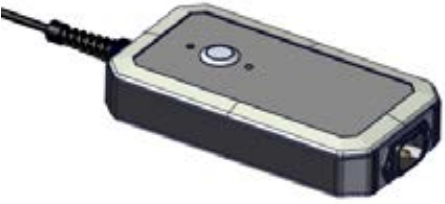
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p></p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure the cable gland opening is turned the correct way.</p> | <p><b>Axis-2 motor:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000265</p> <p><b>Axis-3 motor:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000266</p> |
| 5 | <p>Lift the motor and put it on the guide pins as close as possible to its final position without pushing the motor pinion into the gear.</p>                                                                                         |  <p>xx2400000263</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

*Continues on next page*

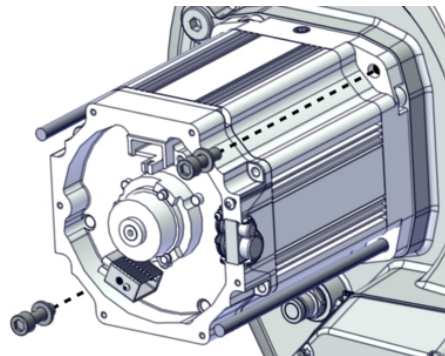
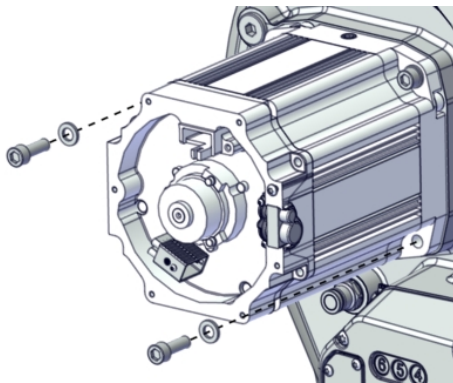
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Remove the lifting accessory and allow the motor to rest on the guide pins.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  <p>xx2000000457</p>                                                                                              |
| 7 | <p>Release the brakes of the motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br/>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 8 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gear-box, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

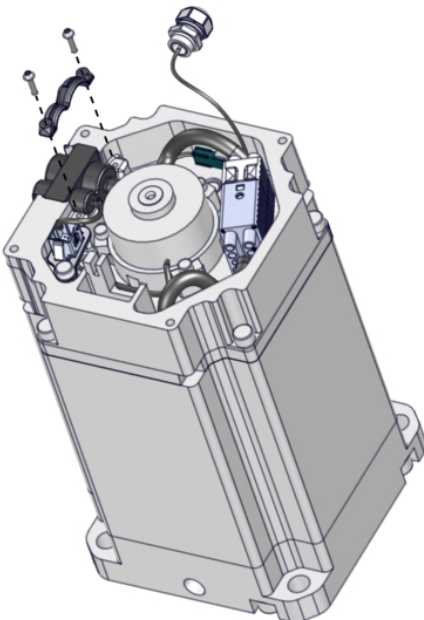
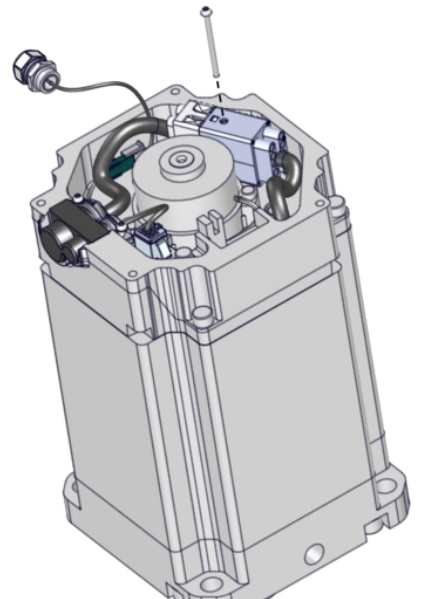
*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | <p>Apply the rotation tool.</p> <p>Use caution and fit the motor in its final position while at the same time rotating the motor pinion slightly using the rotation tool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear of the gearbox.</li> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> <li>• Make sure that the direction of the cable exit is facing the correct way.</li> </ul> | Rotation tool M4: 3HAB7887-1                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 10 | <p>Fit two of the attachment screws and washers.</p> <p>Use a bits extender in order to reach the screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1</p>  <p>xx2000000467</p> |
| 11 | <p>Remove the guide pins and refit the remaining attachment screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000044</p>                                  |
| 12 | Tighten the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Tightening torque: 50 Nm.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 13 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 14 | Perform a leak-down test.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                          |

#### Connecting the motor cables

|   | Action                                        | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |      |

*Continues on next page*

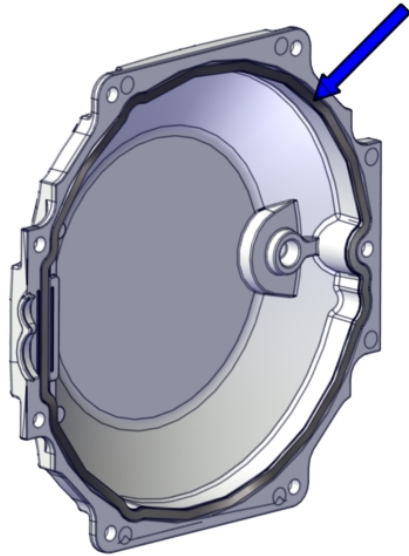
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | Connect the motor cables.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | Fit a screw to the power connector.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms. | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p>                        |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

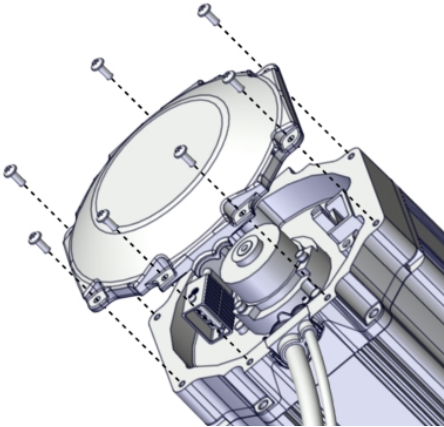
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Inspect the gasket.<br>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.                                                                                                                   | <p>Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:<br/>Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:<br/>3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br/>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br/>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)</p> <p>Axis-4:<br/>Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:<br/>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2100000600</p> |
| 6 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

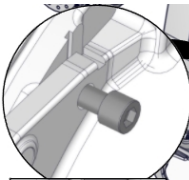
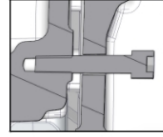
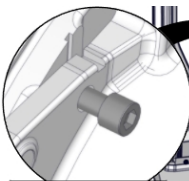
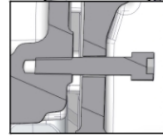
*Continues on next page*

## 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid. | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2100000596 |

## Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Turn on the power to the robot.                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 | Use caution and jog axis-2 or axis-3 a little to facilitate the removal of the lock screw that secures the lower arm / movable arm structure. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 3 | Remove the lock screw.                                                                                                                        | <br><br>xx2300001881<br><br><br>xx2400000236 |

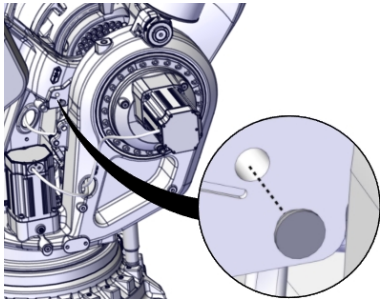
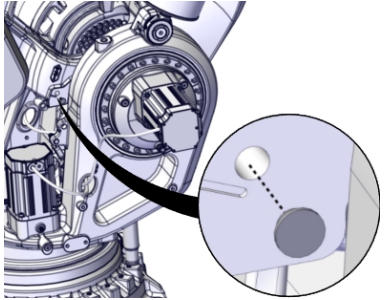
*Continues on next page*



## 5 Repair

### 5.10.2 Replacing the axis-2 or axis-3 motor

*Continued*

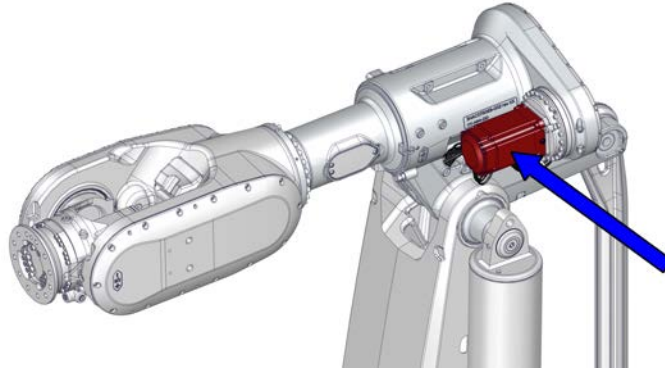
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Jog axis 2 or axis 3 to be able to attach the plastic plugs.<br>Refit the plastic plugs.                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>Axis-2 lock screw hole:</p>  <p>xx1500002366</p> <p>Axis-3 lock screw hole:</p>  <p>xx1500002366</p> |
| 5 | Refill the gearbox with oil.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | See <a href="#">Filling oil into the axis-2 gearbox on page 162</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 6 | Re-calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 7 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |



### 5.10.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor

#### Location of the motor

The motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001593

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part                                       | Article number                     | Note | Level |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------|-------|
| Motor unit (including connection box and pinion) | IRB 7720-620/2.9                   |      | L2    |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-530/3.1                   |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-560/2.9                   |      |       |
|                                                  | LID                                |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-480/3.1                   |      |       |
|                                                  | LID:                               |      |       |
|                                                  | 3HAC084135-003<br>(Graphite White) |      |       |
|                                                  | 3HAC084135-004<br>(ABB Orange)     |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-510/3.3                   |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-450/3.5                   |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-400/3.3                   |      |       |
|                                                  | LID                                |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-400/3.5                   |      |       |
|                                                  | LID:                               |      |       |
|                                                  | 3HAC084261-003<br>(Graphite White) |      |       |
|                                                  | 3HAC084261-004<br>(ABB Orange)     |      |       |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor

*Continued*

#### Required service parts

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                 | Note                                   |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover FS130 with gasket | 3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-4 motor |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                              | Loctite 7200                           |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                              | Loctite 7063                           |
| Flange sealant                         | -                                                              | Loctite 5800                           |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                             | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Brake release tool                    | 3HAC081310-001              | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                           |
| Guide pin, M10x150                    | 3HAC15521-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Bits extender                         | 3HAC12342-1                 | 300 mm, bits 1/2"                                                                                                       |
| Removal tool motor M12                | 3HAC14631-1                 | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                         |
| Rotation tool M4                      | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M4.                                                                       |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                      | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

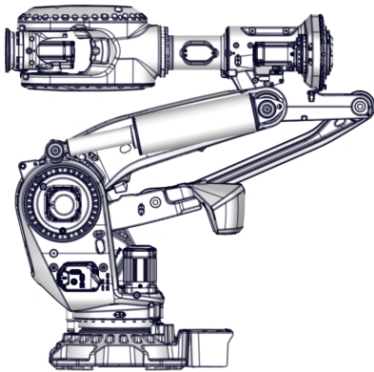
#### Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the motor.

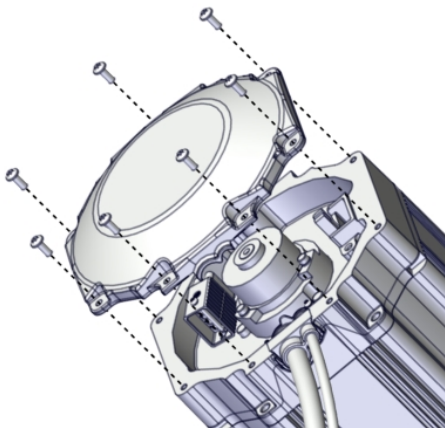
#### Preparations before removing the motor

|   | Action                                                                                                         | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. |      |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: jog axis 2 and 3 to a position where the upper arm is horizontal</li> <li>• Axis 3: jog axis 2 and 3 to a position where the upper arm is horizontal</li> <li>• Axis 4: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 5: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance</li> </ul> |  <p>xx2400000297</p> |
| 3 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>                                                            |                                                                                                         |
| 4 | Drain the axis-4 primary gearbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | See <a href="#">Draining the axis-4 gearbox on page 171</a> .                                           |

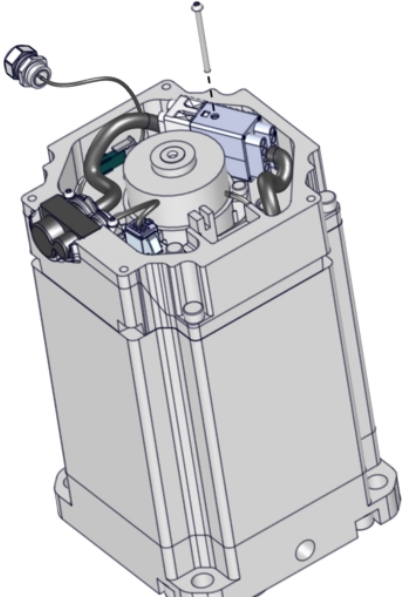
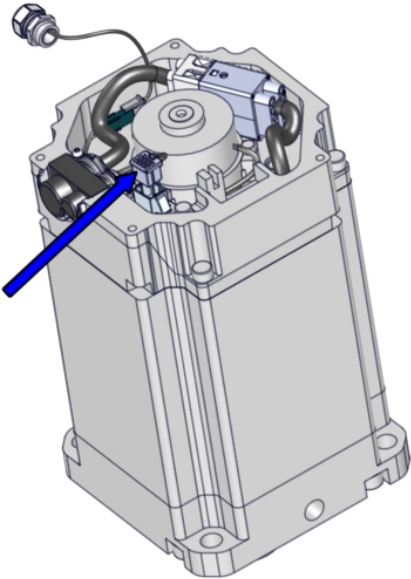
## Disconnecting the motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |                                                                                                          |
| 2 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                                                                                                                                         |  <p>xx2100000596</p> |

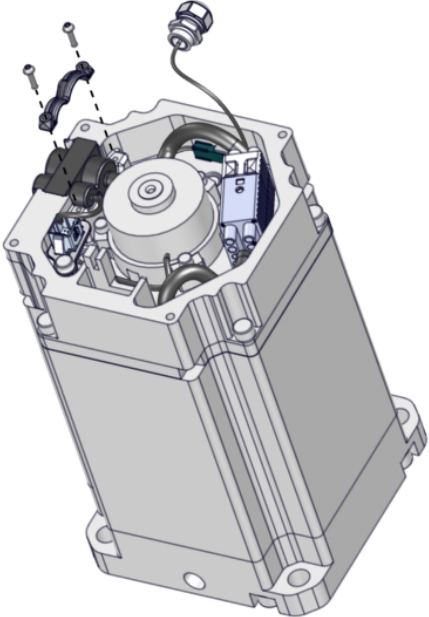
Continues on next page

5 Repair

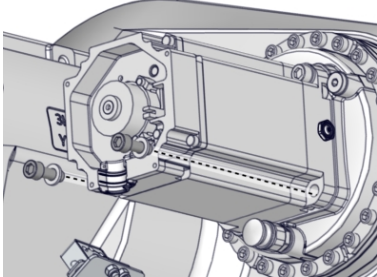
5.10.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3<br>Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector. | <br>xx2200001736  |
| 4<br>Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out.                                                    | <br>xx2200001737 |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                           | Note                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws. |  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 6 | Remove the motor cables from the motor.          |                                                                                                        |

## Removing the axis-4 motor

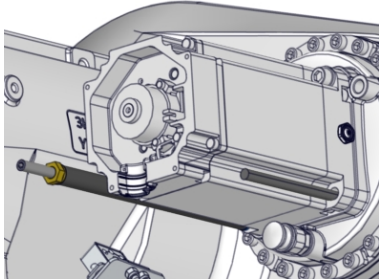
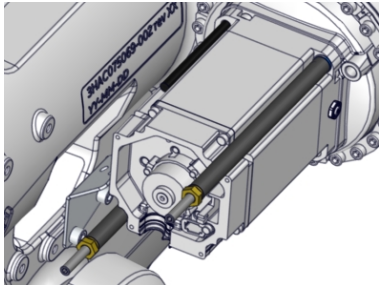
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                           |
| 2 | Before removing the motor, make sure that the gearbox is completely drained.                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                           |
| 3 | Remove two of the motor attachment screws.                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2400000298</p> |

*Continues on next page*

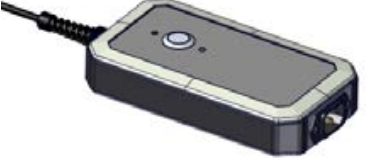
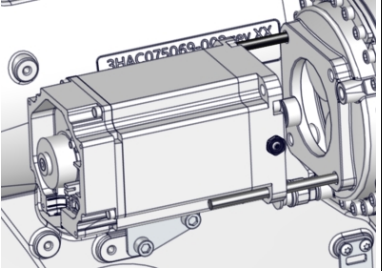
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole. | Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1<br><br>xx2400000299  |
| 5 | Remove the remaining screws.                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 6 | Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole. | Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1<br>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br><br>xx2400000300 |

*Continues on next page*

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7  | <p>Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Releasing the brakes on the axis-4 motor may cause axis-4 to move unexpectedly.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 8  | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 9  | <p>Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 10 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 13 kg</p> <p>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 11 | <p>Remove the motor by lifting it straight out. Make sure the pinion is not damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2400000301</p>                                                                                              |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

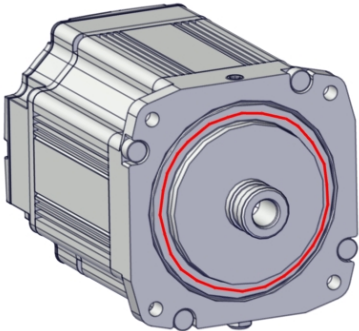
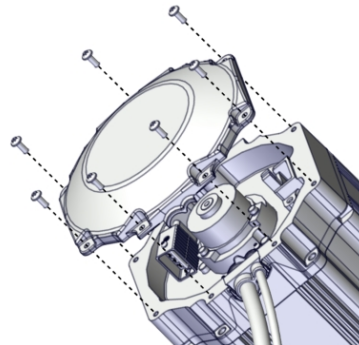
### 5.10.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor

*Continued*

#### Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the motor.

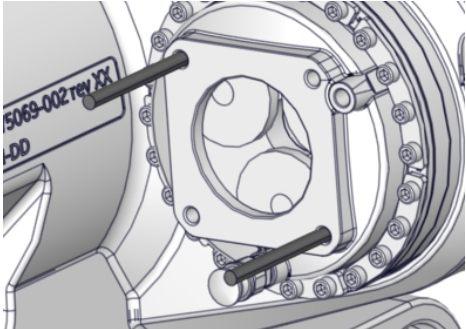
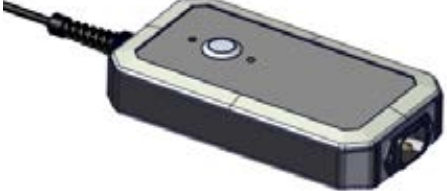
#### Preparations prior to refitting motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                          |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                               |
| 2 | Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface. | Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063                                                                                                    |
| 3 | Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.                                                            | Flange sealant: Loctite 5800<br><br><br><br>xx2100000520 |
| 4 | Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <br><br>xx2100000596                                     |

*Continues on next page*



## Refitting the axis-4 motor

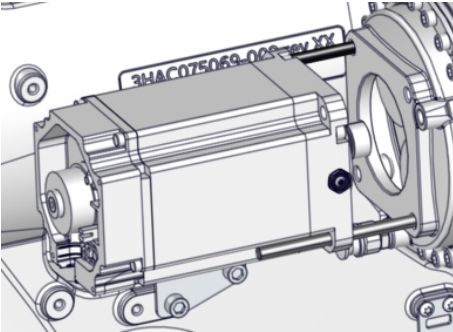
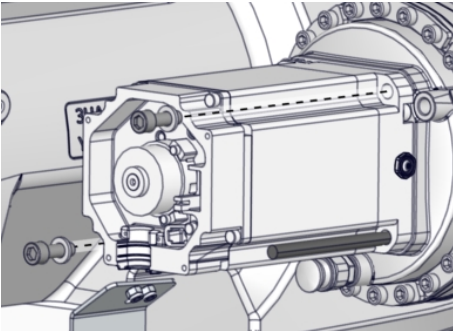
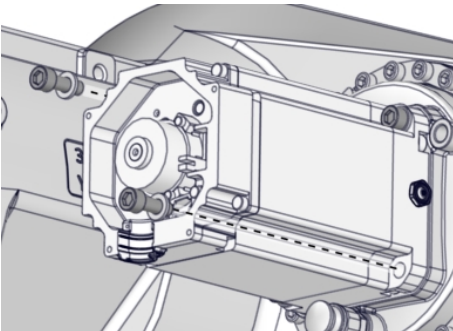
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Fit guide pins in opposite holes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2400000302</p>                    |
| 2 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 13 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 3 | Apply the rotation tool.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Rotation tool M4: 3HAB7887-1                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 4 | <p>Release the brakes of the axis-4 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.<br/>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br/>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor

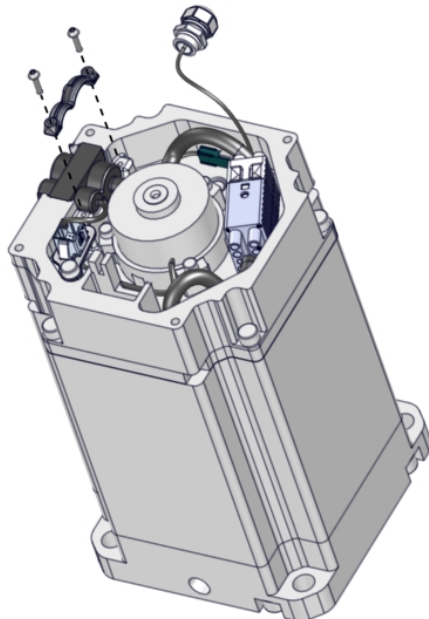
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Lift the motor and put it on the guide pins as close as possible to its final position without pushing the motor pinion into the gear.</p> <p>Use caution and fit the motor in its final position while at the same time rotating the motor pinion slightly using the rotation tool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear of the gearbox.</li> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> <li>• Make sure that the direction of the cable exit is facing the correct way.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure the cable gland opening is turned the correct way.</p> |  <p>xx2400000301</p>                                                                                                               |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 7 | <p>Fit two of the attachment screws and washers.</p> <p>Use a bits extender in order to reach the screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)<br/>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1</p>  <p>xx2400000303</p> |
| 8 | <p>Remove the guide pins and replace with the remaining attachment screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2400000304</p>                                |

Continues on next page

|    | Action                             | Note                                                          |
|----|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | Tighten the screws.                | Tightening torque: 50 Nm.                                     |
| 10 | Disconnect the brake release tool. |                                                               |
| 11 | Perform a leak-down test.          | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> . |

## Connecting the motor cables

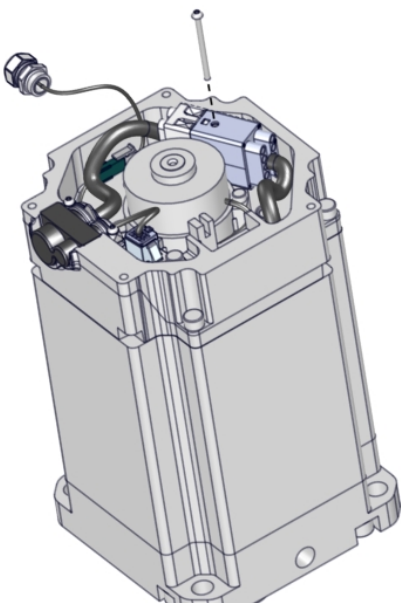
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening.                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | <p>Connect the motor cables.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                 |

Continues on next page

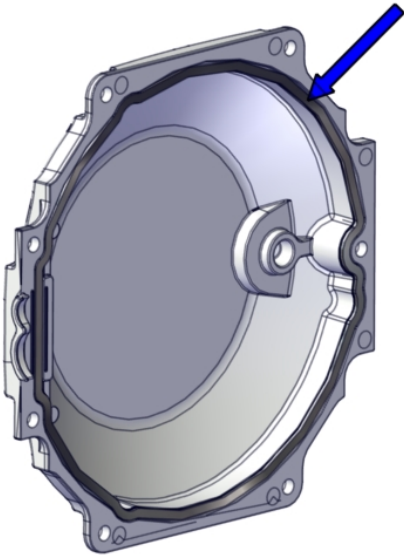
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                  |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Fit a screw to the power connector.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p> |

*Continues on next page*

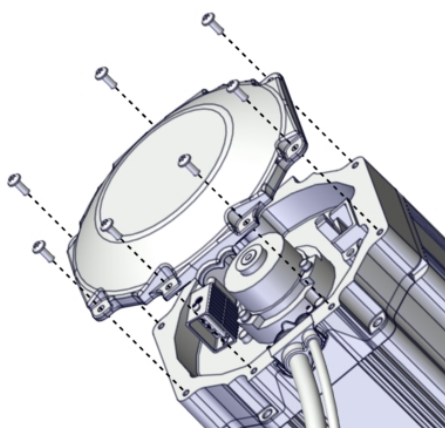
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.</p> <p>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.</p>                                                                                                                   | <p>Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:</p> <p>3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)</p> <p>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)</p> <p>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)</p> <p>Axis-4:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:</p> <p>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2100000600</p> |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.3 Replacing the axis-4 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid. | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2100000596 |

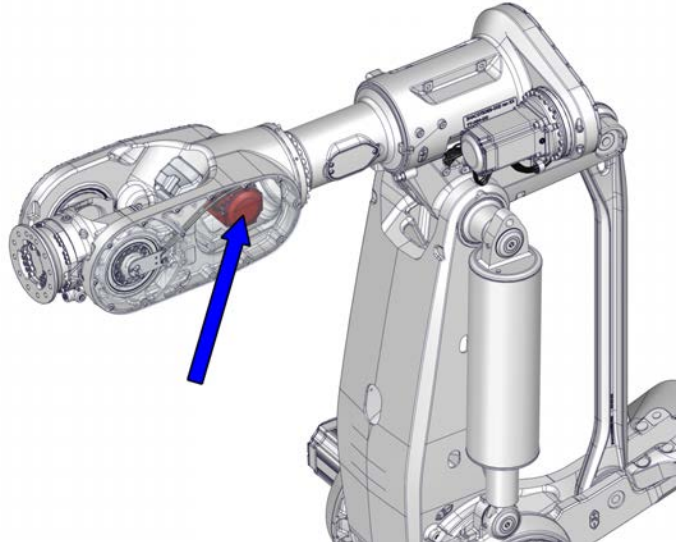
#### Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refill the gearbox with oil.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | See <a href="#">Filling oil into the axis-4 gearbox on page 172</a> . |
| 2 | Re-calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> .                         |
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                       |

### 5.10.4 Replacing the axis-5 motor

#### Location of the motor

The motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001594

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part                                       | Article number   | Note | Level |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------|------|-------|
| Motor unit (including connection box and pinion) | IRB 7720-620/2.9 |      | L2    |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-530/3.1 |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-560/2.9 |      |       |
|                                                  | LID              |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-480/3.1 |      |       |
|                                                  | LID:             |      |       |
|                                                  | 3HAC076986-003   |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-510/3.3 |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-450/3.5 |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-400/3.3 |      |       |
|                                                  | LID              |      |       |
|                                                  | IRB 7720-400/3.5 |      |       |
|                                                  | LID:             |      |       |
|                                                  | 3HAC076984-003   |      |       |

#### Required service parts

| Consumable     | Article number | Note         |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| Flange sealant | -              | Loctite 5800 |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.4 Replacing the axis-5 motor

*Continued*

| Consumable                       | Article number                                                       | Note                                   |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Cleaning agent                   | -                                                                    | Loctite 7200                           |
| Cleaning agent                   | -                                                                    | Loctite 7063                           |
| Connection box cover with gasket | 3HAC072863-003<br>(Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005<br>(ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-5 motor |
| Cable strap, outdoor             | -                                                                    |                                        |

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                             | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Brake release tool                    | 3HAC081310-001              | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                           |
| Guide pin, M10x150                    | 3HAC15521-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Bits extender                         | 3HAC12342-1                 | 300 mm, bits 1/2"                                                                                                       |
| Removal tool motor M12                | 3HAC14631-1                 | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                         |
| Rotation tool M4                      | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M4.                                                                       |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                      | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

#### Removing the motor

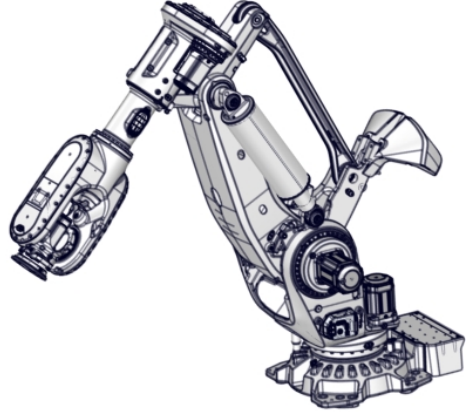
Use these procedures to remove the motor.

#### Preparations before removing the axis-5 motor

|   | Action                                                                                                         | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. |      |

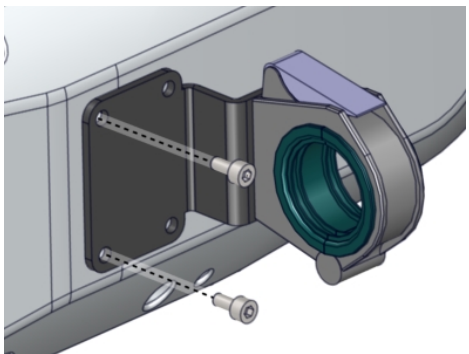
*Continues on next page*



|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                   |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: suitable working position to replace axis-5 motor (for example: +25°)</li> <li>• Axis 3: suitable working position to replace axis-5 motor (for example: +45°)</li> <li>• Axis 4: +90°</li> <li>• Axis 5: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance</li> </ul> <p>With the robot in this position, there is no need to drain oil from the axis-5 gearbox when the motor is replaced.</p> |  <p>xx2300001922</p> |
| 3 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                        |

## Retrieving access to the wrist cabling

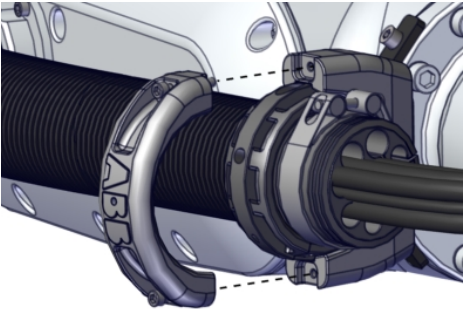
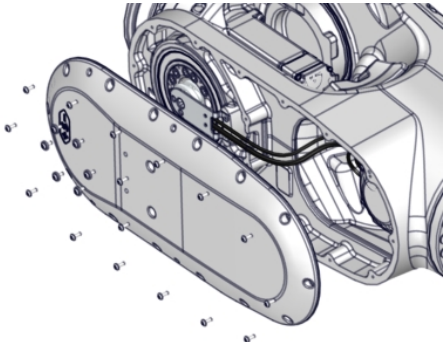
Use this procedure to remove the wrist cover.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                          |
| 2 | <p>If DressPack MH3 is installed:</p> <p>Remove the wrist bracket with the complete ball joint housing still fitted, if the bracket is installed over the two wrist cover screws.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>No need to remove the bracket if the two wrist cover screws are accessible.</p> |  <p>xx2300001366</p> |

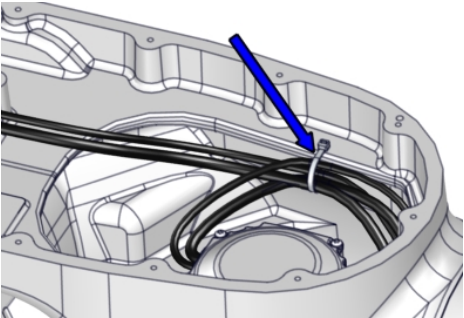
Continues on next page

5 Repair

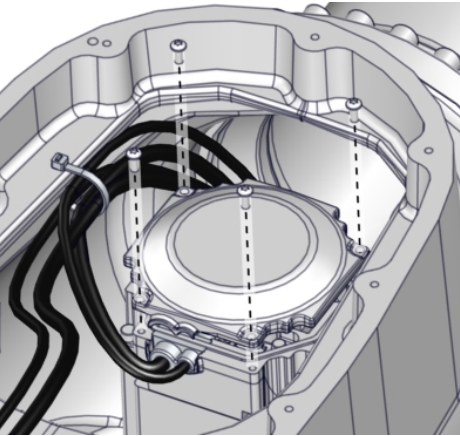
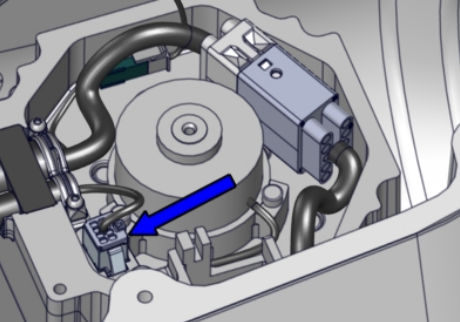
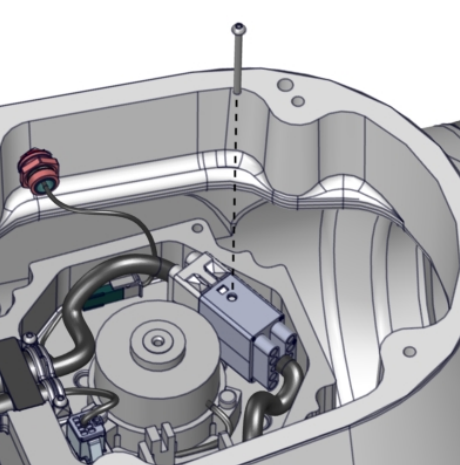
5.10.4 Replacing the axis-5 motor  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 If DressPack is installed:<br>Open the ball joint housing on the arm tube and remove the DressPack cable package. | <br><br>xx2100002709  |
| 4 Remove the wrist cover.                                                                                           | <br><br>xx2300001883 |

Disconnecting the axis-5 motor cables

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                          |
| 2 Cut the cable tie.                                                                                                                                                                                          | <br><br>xx2300001923 |

Continues on next page

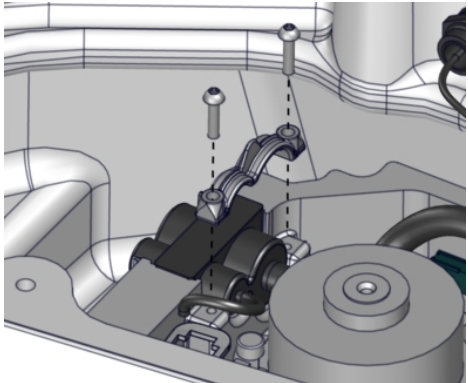
|   | Action                                                                 | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                         |  <p>xx2300001924</p>   |
| 4 | Disconnect the signal cable connector.                                 |  <p>xx2200001734</p>  |
| 5 | Disconnect the power cable connector by removing the attachment screw. |  <p>xx2200001733</p> |

Continues on next page

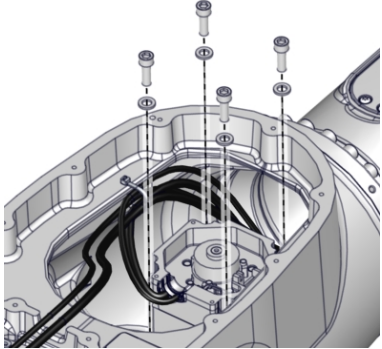
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.4 Replacing the axis-5 motor

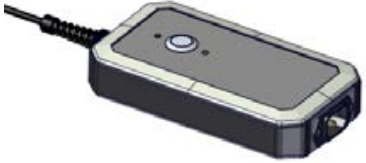
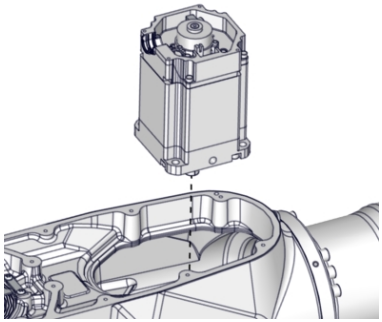
*Continued*

|   | Action                                           | Note                                                                                               |
|---|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws. | <br>xx2200001735 |
| 7 | Remove the motor cables.                         |                                                                                                    |

#### Removing the axis-5 motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                                                     |
| 2 | Unscrew the attachment screws that secure the motor, using a bits extender.                                                                                                                               | Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2300001926 |
| 3 | Fit guide pins in the non-threaded holes.                                                                                                                                                                 | Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2                                                                                                     |
| 4 | Fit removal tools in the threaded holes.                                                                                                                                                                  | Removal tool motor M12<br>3HAC14631-1                                                                                               |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 13 kg</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 8 | <p>Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Used to push out the motor, if necessary.</p> <p>Always use removal tools in pairs.</p>                                                                                                             |
| 9 | <p>Remove the motor by carefully lifting it straight out/straight up.</p> <p>Make sure the pinion is not damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  <p>xx2300000204</p>                                                                                              |

### Refitting the motor

Use these procedures to refit the motor.

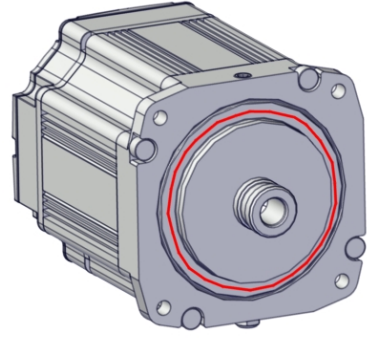
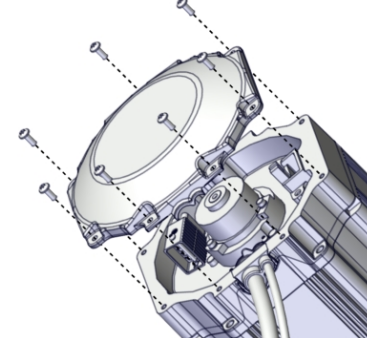
*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.4 Replacing the axis-5 motor

*Continued*

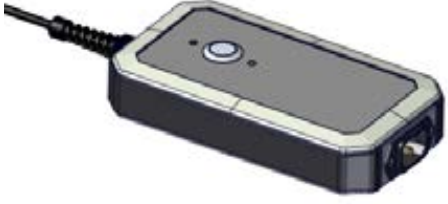
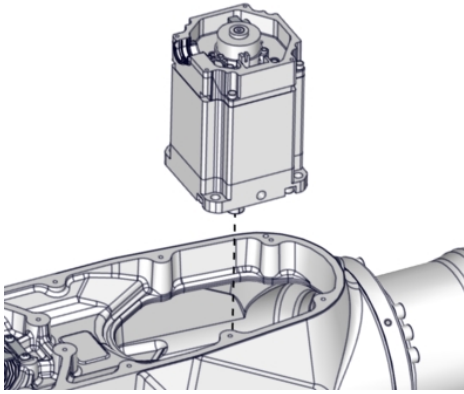
#### Preparations prior to refitting motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                         |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                              |
| 2 | Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface. | Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063                                                                                                   |
| 3 | Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.                                                             | Flange sealant: Loctite 5800<br><br><br><br>xx2100000520 |
| 4 | Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <br><br>xx2100000596                                    |

#### Refitting the axis-5 motor

|   | Action                                  | Note                              |
|---|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | Apply two guide pins in opposite holes. | Guide pin, M10x150<br>3HAC15521-2 |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 3 | Apply the rotation tool and use it to rotate the pinion when mating it into the gear.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Rotation tool M4: 3HAB7887-1                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 4 | Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool.<br>1 Turn off the brake release tool.<br>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).<br>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.<br>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.<br><br> <b>DANGER</b><br>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.<br>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.<br><br> <b>WARNING</b><br>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk. | Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.<br><br><br><br>xx2100000666 |
| 5 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the motor is 13 kg                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 6 | Use caution and lower the motor into position on the guide pins, while at the same time rotating the motor pinion slightly.<br>Make sure that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear of the gearbox.</li> <li>the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> <li>the direction of the cable exit is facing the same way as before removal.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Rotation tool M4, 3HAB7887-1<br><br><br><br>xx2300000204                                                      |

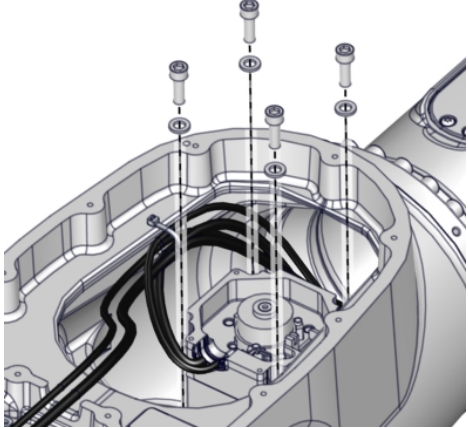
Continues on next page



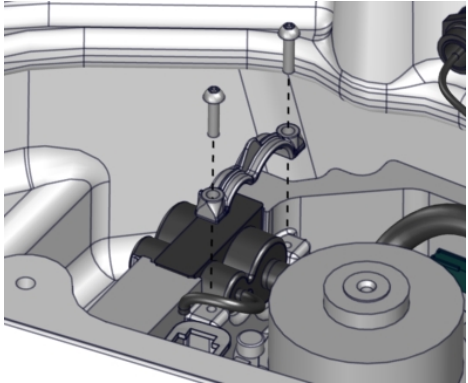
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.4 Replacing the axis-5 motor

*Continued*

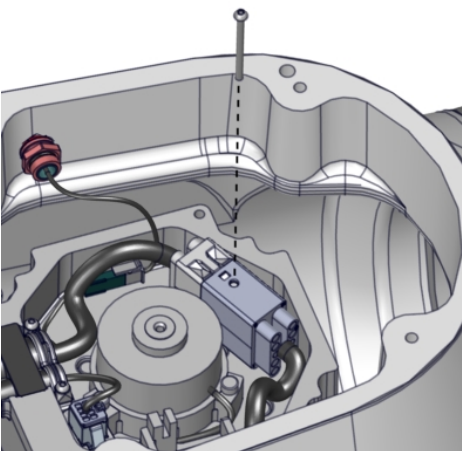
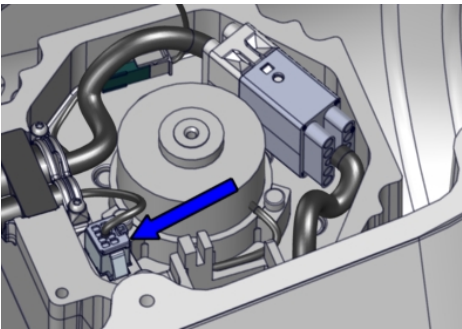
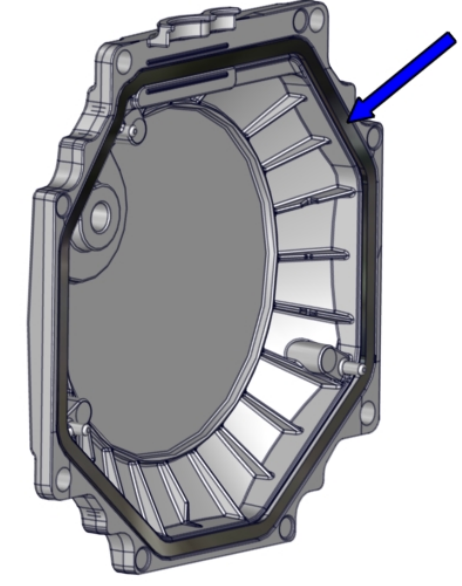
|    | Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7  | Remove the guide pins.                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 8  | Secure the motor with its attachment screws and washers. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9<br/>Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)<br/>Tightening torque: 50 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2300001926</p> |
| 9  | Perform a leak-down test.                                | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                         |
| 10 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

### Connecting the axis-5 motor cables

|   | Action                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.      | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001735</p> |

*Continues on next page*

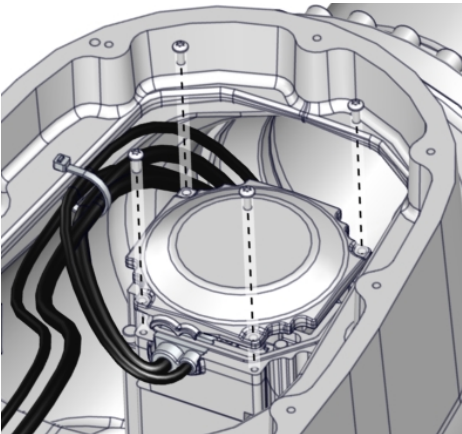
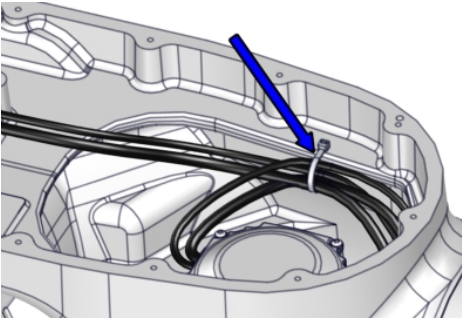


|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Connect the power cable connector and secure with a screw.<br/>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001733</p>                                                                                 |
| 4 | <p>Connect the signal cable connector.<br/>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2200001734</p>                                                                                                               |
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Connection box cover with gasket:<br/>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200002141</p> |

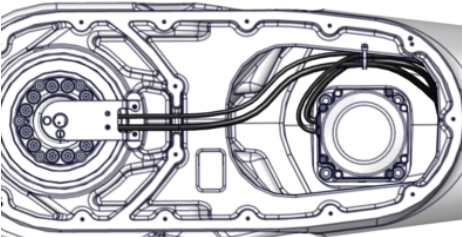
Continues on next page

5 Repair

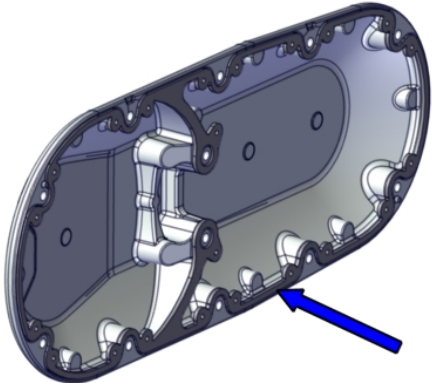
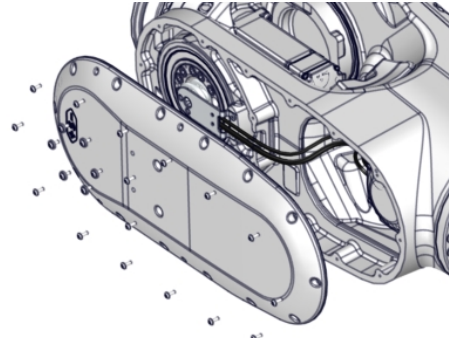
5.10.4 Replacing the axis-5 motor  
Continued

| Action |                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6      |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 7      | Refit the motor cover and the cable protection with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid.                                                                                               | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001924 |
| 8      | Secure the cabling with a cable strap.                                                                                                                                                          | Cable strap, outdoor<br><br>xx2300001923                                                                                                                    |

Refitting the wrist cover

| Action |                                                                                | Note                                                                                                 |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1      | Make sure that the cable harness is routed and secured as shown in the figure. | <br>xx2300001927 |

Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <b>Foundry Plus:</b><br>Inspect the gasket.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                                | Gasket: 3HAC084758-001<br><br>xx2100001407                                         |
| 3 | Refit the wrist cover and secure with screws.<br><b>Foundry Plus:</b><br>Fit all the screws first, then torque tighten them twice to achieve correct torque (due to compression from the gasket). | Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001883 |

## Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | If used, refit the DressPack cable package on the wrist.                                                                                                                                                                                                                | See product manual for the DressPack.                                 |
| 2 | Refill the gearbox with oil, if drained.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | See <a href="#">Filling oil into the axis-5 gearbox on page 181</a> . |
| 3 | Re-calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> .                         |
| 4 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                       |

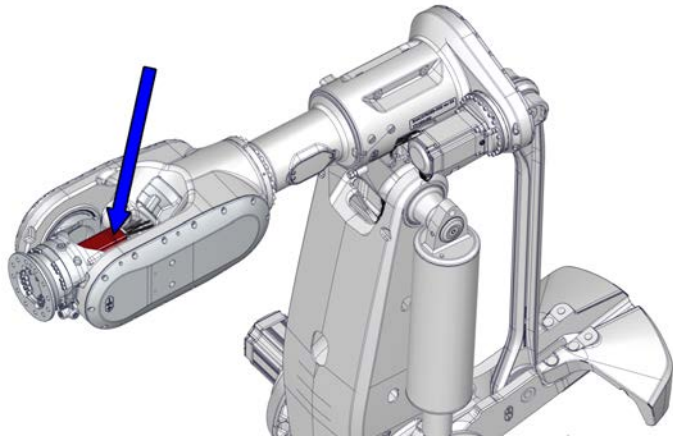
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.5 Replacing the axis-6 motor

#### 5.10.5 Replacing the axis-6 motor

##### Location of the motor

The motor is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001595

##### Required spare parts



##### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part                                       | Article number                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note | Level |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-------|
| Motor unit (including connection box and pinion) | IRB 7720-620/2.9<br>IRB 7720-530/3.1<br>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:<br>3HAC076987-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC076987-004 (ABB Orange)<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br>IRB 7720-450/3.5<br>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:<br>3HAC076985-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC076985-004 (ABB Orange) |      | L2    |

*Continues on next page*

## Required service parts

| Consumable                            | Article number                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover (without gasket) | 3HAC026607-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC026607-004 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID                   |
| Connection box cover with gasket      | 3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-6 motor<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID                   |
| Gasket                                | 3HAC033489-001                                                 | For axis-6 connection box cover.<br>Replace if damaged.<br>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID: |
| Cleaning agent                        | -                                                              | Loctite 7200                                                                                                                               |
| Cleaning agent                        | -                                                              | Loctite 7063                                                                                                                               |
| Flange sealant                        | -                                                              | Loctite 5800                                                                                                                               |

## Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                             | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Brake release tool                    | 3HAC081310-001              | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                           |
| Removal tool motor M10                | 3HAC14972-1                 | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                         |
| Guide pin, M8x150                     | 3HAC15520-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Rotation tool M3                      | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M3.                                                                       |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                      | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

## Removing the motor

Use these procedures to remove the motor.

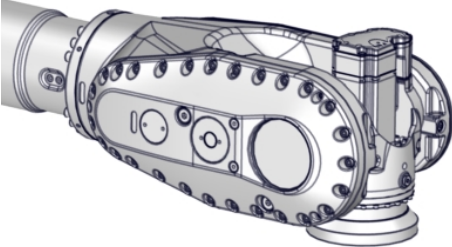
Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

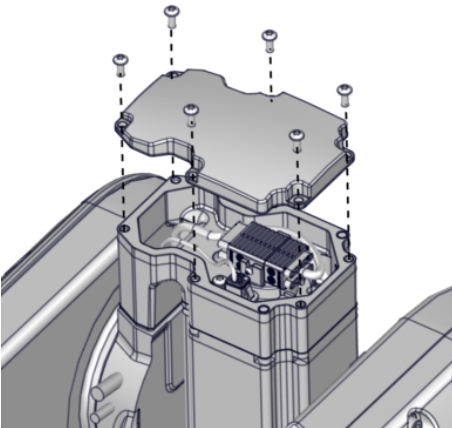
### 5.10.5 Replacing the axis-6 motor

*Continued*

#### Preparations before removing the axis-6 motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                               |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                    |
| 2 | <p>Jog the robot to a position where axis 5 can be positioned with the axis-6 motor pointing straight up at an acceptable working position.</p> <p>With axis 5 in this position it is possible to replace the axis-6 motor without draining the oil from the axis-6 gearbox.</p>                                                   | <br>xx2200001818 |
| 3 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p> |                                                                                                    |

#### Disconnecting the axis-6 motor cables

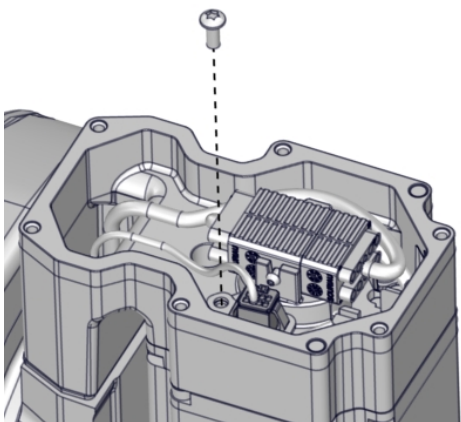
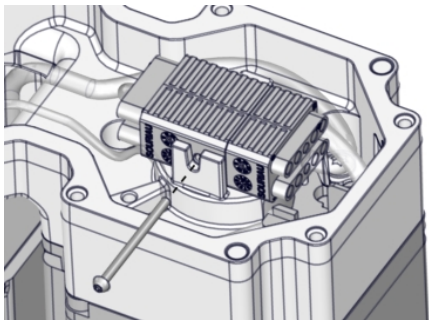
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Unscrew the attachment screws and remove the motor cover.                                                                                                                                                              | <br>xx2200001434 |

*Continues on next page*

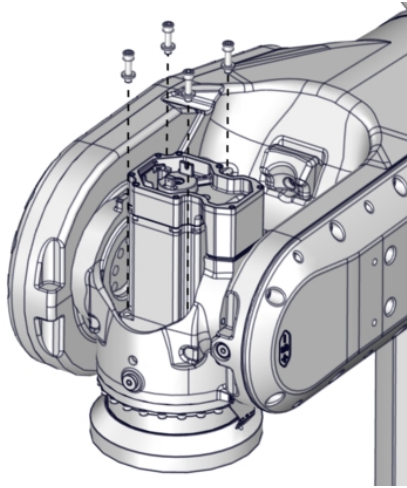


## 5.10.5 Replacing the axis-6 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                        | Note                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Remove the connector bracket. | <br>xx2200001730  |
| 4 | Remove the connector screw.   | <br>xx2200001731 |
| 5 | Disconnect the motor cables.  |                                                                                                     |

## Removing the axis-6 motor

|   | Action                                    | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Unscrew the motor attachment screws.      | <br>xx2200001806 |
| 2 | Fit guide pins in the non-threaded holes. | Guide pin, M8x150                                                                                     |
| 3 | Fit removal tools in the threaded holes.  | Removal tool motor M10:<br>3HAC14972-1                                                                |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

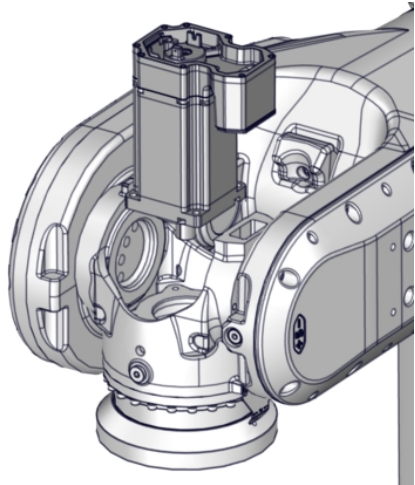
### 5.10.5 Replacing the axis-6 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Release the brakes on the axis-6 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 5 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gear-box, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 6 | <p>Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>Used to push out the motor, if necessary. Always use removal tools in pairs.</p>                                                                                                                   |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is</p> <p>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID<br/>12 kg</p> <p>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID<br/>7.5 kg</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*



|   | Action                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8 | Remove the motor by lifting it straight up from the gear.<br>Make sure the motor pinion is not damaged! | <br>xx2200001805 |
| 9 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                                      |                                                                                                     |

**Refitting the motor**

Use these procedures to refit the motor.

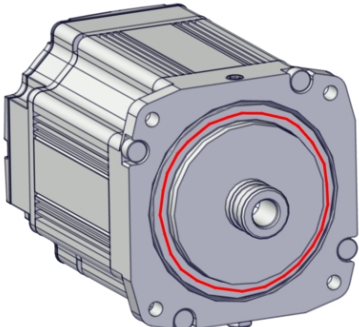
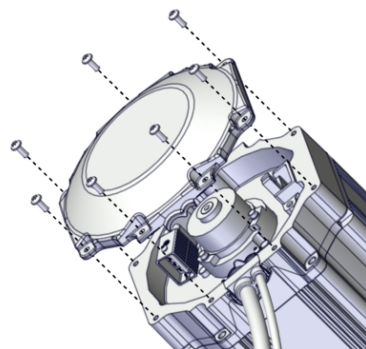
**Preparations prior to refitting motor**

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                       |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                                                |                                            |
| 2 | Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface. | Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063 |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

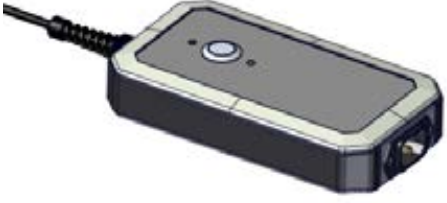
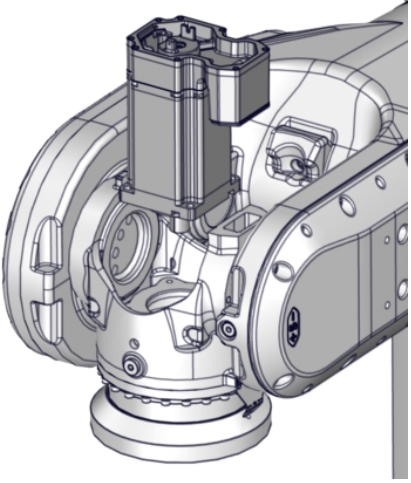
5.10.5 Replacing the axis-6 motor  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.</p> | <p>Flange sealant: Loctite 5800</p>  <p>xx2100000520</p> |
| 4 | <p>Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2100000596</p>                                    |

Refitting the axis-6 motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Apply two guide pins in opposite holes.</p>                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Guide pin, M8x150</p> |
| 2 | <div> <b>DANGER</b></div> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |                          |

Continues on next page

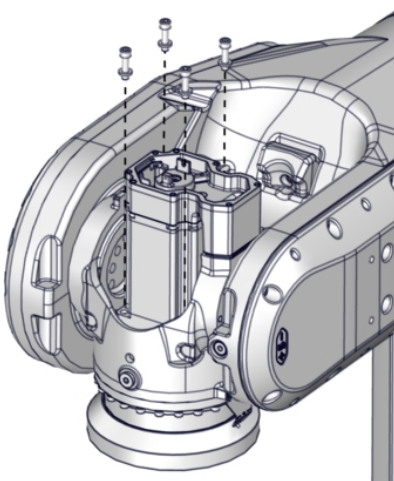
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Release the brakes on the axis-6 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 4 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 5 | <p>Use caution and lower the motor into position on the guide pins, while at the same time rotating the motor pinion slightly.</p> <p>Make sure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear of the gearbox.</li> <li>• the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Rotation tool M3, 3HAB7887-1</p>  <p>xx2200001805</p>                                                         |
| 6 | Remove the guide pins.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

Continues on next page

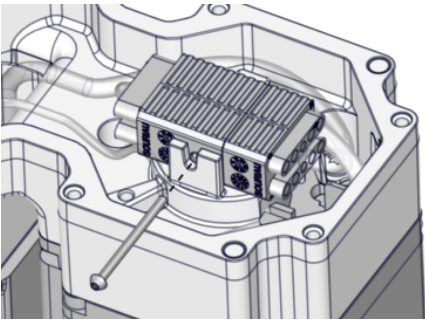
## 5 Repair

### 5.10.5 Replacing the axis-6 motor

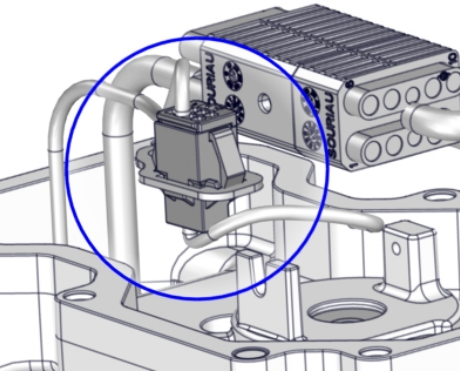
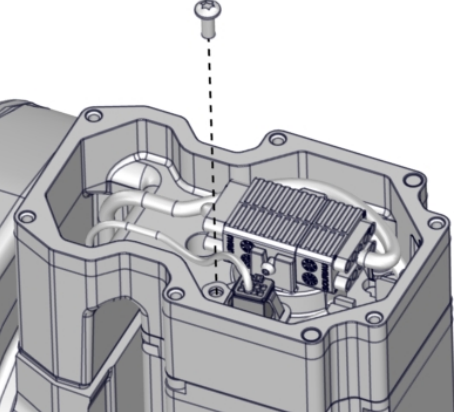
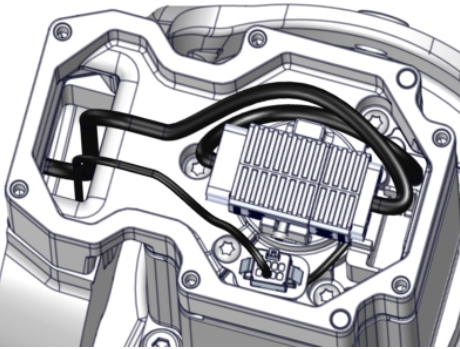
*Continued*

|   | Action                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Secure the motor with its attachment screws. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M8x30 12.9<br/>Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (4 pcs)<br/>Tightening torque: 24 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001806</p> |
| 8 | Perform a leak-down test.                    | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                        |

### Connecting the axis-6 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                    |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Connect the motor cables.<br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                         |
| 2 | <p>Position the power connector to the bracket with a screw.</p> <div>  </div> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001731</p> |

*Continues on next page*

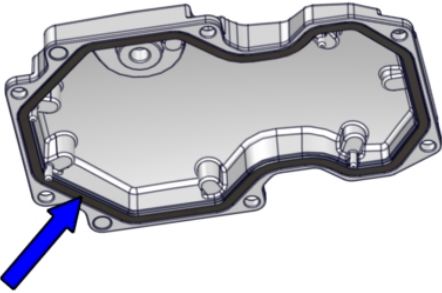
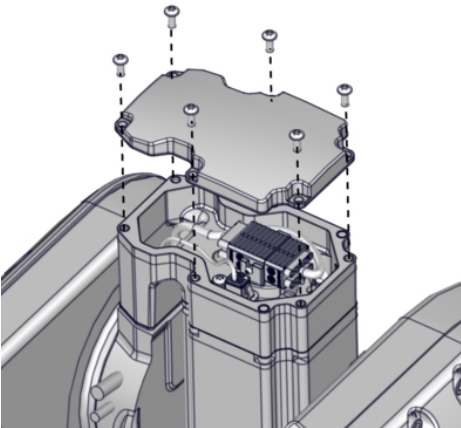
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Snap the signal connectors to each other in the bracket.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <br>xx2200001921                                                          |
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector bracket assembly to the motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The cabling is sensitive to mechanical damage. Handle it with care to avoid damage to the cabling or the connector, avoid any kind of tilt or skew.</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p> <br>xx2200001730 |
| 5 | <p>Verify correct cable layout as shown in the figure.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Route the signal cabling correctly to avoid cable damage.</p>                                                                                        | <br>xx2300000920                                                        |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.10.5 Replacing the axis-6 motor

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Inspect the gasket.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                                                       | <p>Gasket / Connection box cover with gasket:<br/>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:<br/>3HAC033489-001<br/>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:<br/>3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br/>3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200001922</p> |
| 7 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 8 | Refit the motor cover.                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Torx pan head screw, M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70, 6 pcs<br/>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001434</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

#### Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                   | Note                                          |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 1 | If used, refit the DressPack cable package on the wrist. | See product manual for the DressPack.         |
| 2 | Re-calibrate the robot.                                  | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> . |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |      |

## 5 Repair

---

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

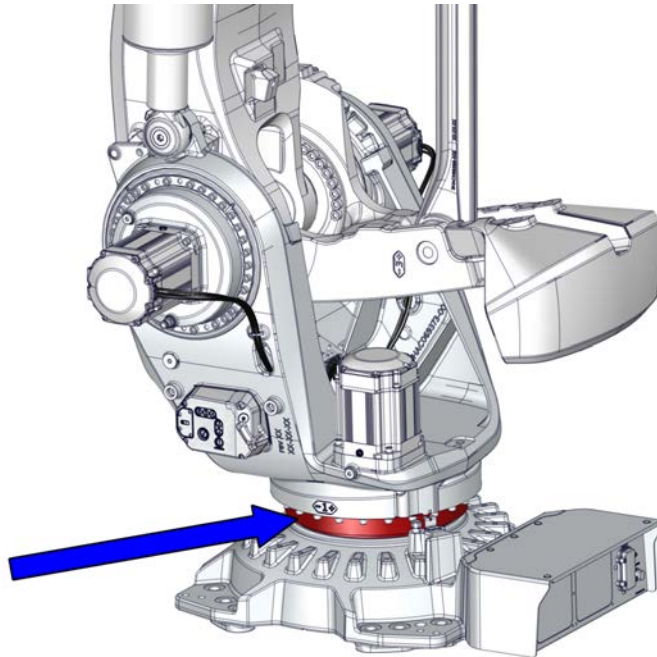
## 5.11 Gearboxes

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

---

#### Location of the gearbox

The gearbox is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001596

---

#### Summary of the replacement procedure

This is a brief summary of the replacement procedure, containing the major actions to be performed.

- 1 Secure the manipulator on top of four support legs.
- 2 Drain the axis-1 gearbox.
- 3 Remove the cabling from the base.
- 4 Remove the axis-1 motor.
- 5 Remove the upper arm, lower arm and frame (complete manipulator excluding the base and axis-1 gearbox) as an assembly.
- 6 Replace the axis-1 gearbox.

---

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

*Continues on next page*



## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

| Spare part | Article number                                                 | Note                           | Level |
|------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------|
| Gearbox    | 3HAC085094-002 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC085094-003 (ABB Orange) | Includes o-ring 3HAC061327-105 | L2    |

## Required service parts

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| O-ring                                 | 3HAC061327-105                                                                                                                                                             | On gearbox.<br>Included in gearbox spare part, but replace if damaged.                              |
| O-ring                                 | 3HAC061327-033                                                                                                                                                             | 1 pcs.<br>At the oil inlet hole on the gearbox.                                                     |
| O-ring, G 1/2"                         | 3HAC061327-059                                                                                                                                                             | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                                                               |
| Connection box cover FS180 with gasket | 3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-1 motor<br>A threaded connection is required for cooling fan option. |
| O-ring                                 | 3HAB3772-57                                                                                                                                                                | On axis-1 protection ring.                                                                          |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Isopropanol                                                                                         |
| Rust preventive                        | 3HAC034903-001                                                                                                                                                             | Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.                                              |
| Grease                                 | 3HAC042536-001                                                                                                                                                             | Shell Gadus S2                                                                                      |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7200                                                                                        |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7063                                                                                        |
| Flange sealant                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 5800                                                                                        |
| Sealant (grey)                         | 3HAC026759-001                                                                                                                                                             | Sikaflex 521FC.<br><i>Protection type Foundry Plus.</i>                                             |
| Protection plug                        | 3HAC4836-21                                                                                                                                                                | For lifting holes.                                                                                  |
| Lubricating oil                        | -                                                                                                                                                                          | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gearboxes on page 153</a> .                                  |

## Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                               | Article number | Note                                 |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| Swivel eye bolt M20                     | -              | M20                                  |
| Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain | -              | Complete length 1.86 m <sup>i</sup>  |
| Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain | -              | Complete length 1.78 m <sup>ii</sup> |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

| Equipment                               | Article number                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Roundsling                              | -                             | 4 m                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Supporting pillars                      | 3HAC061213-001                | Used for elevation of the robot to remove and refit axis-1 gearbox.<br>Includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Supporting pillars (4 pcs)</li> <li>User instructions (3HAC062411-002)</li> <li>Screws 3HAC061400-001 (4 pcs)</li> </ul> |
| Bit holder and hexagon bit SW10         |                               | Bit holder dimension: 5/16" (14x18 mm)<br>Used for screw access in narrow locations.                                                                                                                                                             |
| Bits extender                           | 3HAC12342-1                   | 300 mm, bits 1/2"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Guide pin, M10x150                      | 3HAC15521-2                   | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Removal tool motor M12                  | 3HAC14631-1                   | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Brake release tool                      | 3HAC081310-001                | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Lifting accessory, motor                | 3HAC076550-001                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Guide pin, M12x150 / Guide pin, M12x200 | 3HAC13056-2 / 3HAC13056-3     | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Lifting eye VLBG                        | 3HAC16131-1                   | M12, 2 pcs<br>Use M12 washers beneath the lifting eyes, if the lifting eyes need to be elevated somewhat not to damage the o-ring on the gearbox.                                                                                                |
| Lifting accessory (chain)               | 3HAC15556-1                   | Lifting instruction 3HAC15880-2 enclosed.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Guide for reduction gear                | 3HAC043870-009                | Used to guide axis-1 gear and frame during refitting.                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Rotation tool M4                        | 3HAB7887-1                    | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M4.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration   | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>iii</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot.                                                                                                                          |
| Standard toolkit                        | -                             | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                                                                                                                                                     |

- <sup>i</sup> Use a roundsling (for example 1 m) to avoid scratches on the manipulator combined with lifting chains, to get the exact length of the lifting accessory for a balanced lift of the manipulator.
- <sup>ii</sup> Use a roundsling (for example 1 m) to avoid scratches on the manipulator combined with lifting chains, to get the exact length of the lifting accessory for a balanced lift of the manipulator.
- <sup>iii</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

*Continues on next page*

**Deciding calibration routine**

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b><br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

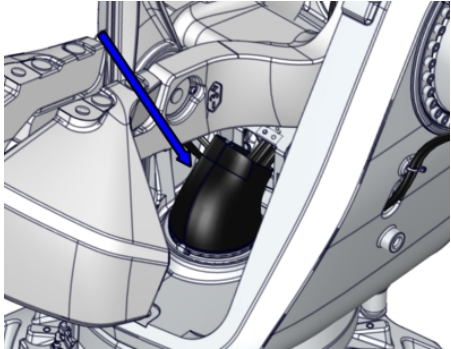
**Removing the gearbox**

These procedures describe how to remove the gearbox.

**Removing tools and equipment from the turning disc**

|   | Action                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                          |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove any payload, tools or other equipment fitted on the turning disc.<br>DressPack can stay fitted for the time being. | This is done to achieve the best stability of the arm assembly, when removing and lifting it, and when it is resting by itself after removal. |

**Removing the covers for Foundry Plus and floor mounted robots**

|   | Action                                                                     | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>Protection type Foundry Plus</b><br>Remove the axis-1 cable protection. | <br>xx2300001954 |

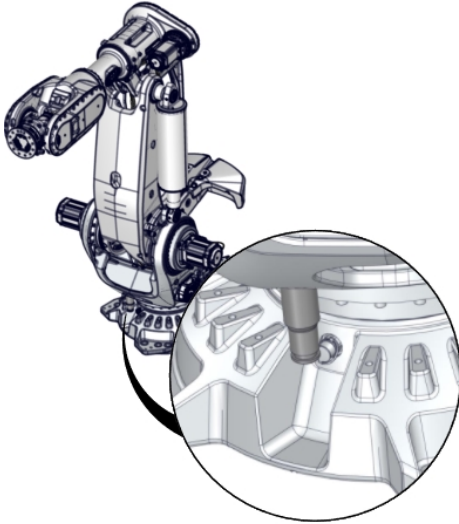
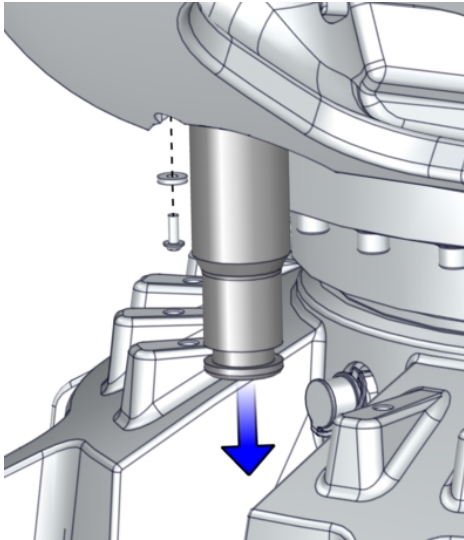
*Continues on next page*

# 5 Repair

## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

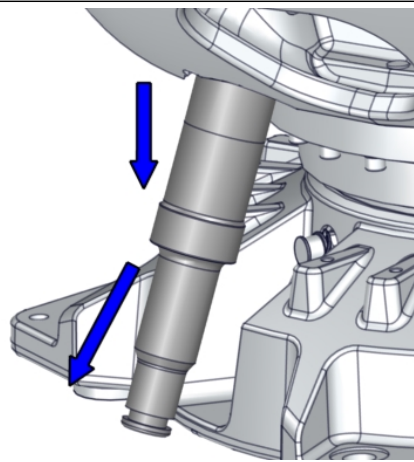
### Removing the mechanical stop pin

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>1</div> <div>Jog axis-1 to the position where it is possible to replace the mechanical stop pin.</div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <div></div> <div>xx2300001710</div>                            |
| <div>2</div> <div><div> <b>DANGER</b></div><div>Turn off all:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</div></div> |                                                                                                                                                  |
| <div>3</div> <div><div>Take a firm grip on the stop pin with one hand and unscrew the set screw with the other hand.</div><div><div> <b>Note</b></div><div>Always use a flat head Allen key, to not damage the screw head.</div></div></div>                           | <div>Torx bit: T30</div> <div></div> <div>xx2300001711</div> |

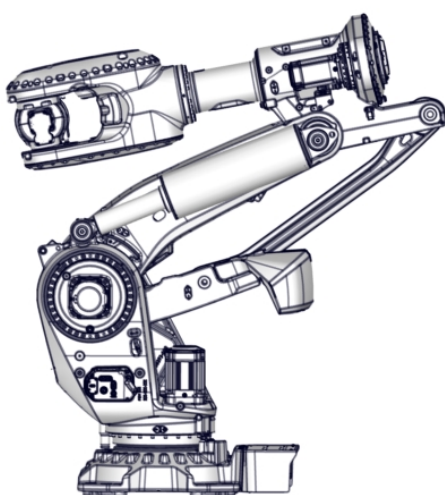
Continues on next page

## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 Remove the stop pin by sliding it down, out off its hole and moving it slightly forwards. | <br>xx2300001713 |

Position for the floor mounted robot

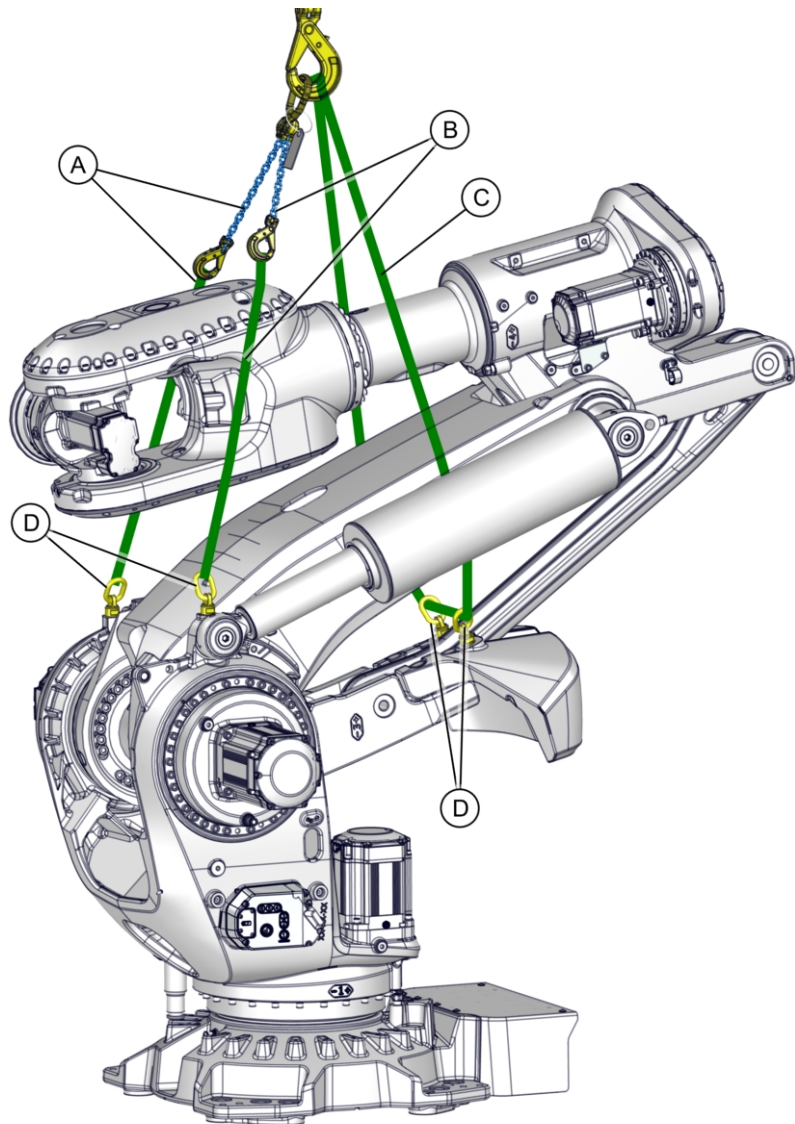
| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Turn on the power to the robot temporarily.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                     |
| 2 Jog the robot into position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 2: -55°</li> <li>• Axis 3: +10°</li> <li>• Axis 4: +90°</li> <li>• Axis 5: -90°</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul>                                                                                       | <br>xx2300001531 |
| 3  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                     |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

Attaching the lifting accessories to the arm system  
Illustration for installing lifting accessories



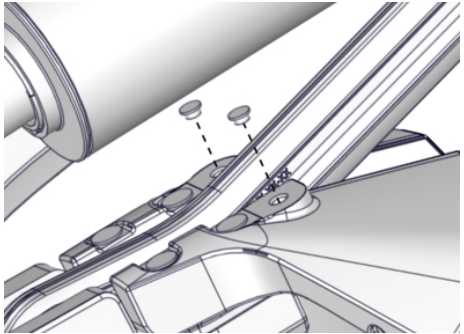
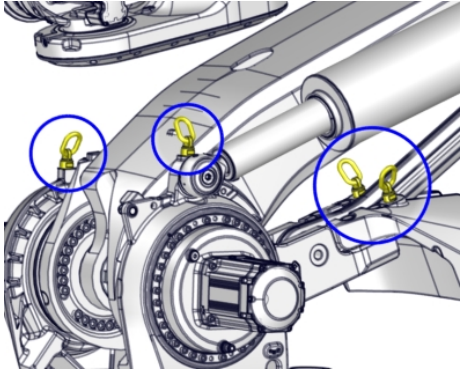
xx2300001539

| Pos | Description                             | Note                                 | Quantity |
|-----|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------|
| A   | Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain | Complete length 1.86 m <sup>i</sup>  | 1 pcs    |
| B   | Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain | Complete length 1.78 m <sup>ii</sup> | 1 pcs    |
| C   | Roundsling                              | 4 m                                  | 1 pcs    |
| D   | Swivel eye bolt M20                     | M20                                  | 4 pcs    |

- <sup>i</sup> Use a roundsling (for example 1 m) to avoid scratches on the manipulator combined with lifting chains, to get the exact length of the lifting accessory for a balanced lift of the manipulator.
- <sup>ii</sup> Use a roundsling (for example 1 m) to avoid scratches on the manipulator combined with lifting chains, to get the exact length of the lifting accessory for a balanced lift of the manipulator.

Continues on next page



|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                               |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the IRB 7720 robot is 2,590 - 2,690 kg (depending on robot variant)<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                    |
| 2 | Remove the plastic plugs that cover the lifting eye holes on the counter balancing weight.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>Keep the plastic plugs for refitting.         | <br>xx2300001714                                 |
| 3 | Fit two lifting eyes to the holes in the frame and two lifting eyes to the holes in the counter weight.                                                                                                                                          | Swivel eye bolt M20 (4 pcs)<br><br>xx2300001540 |
| 4 | Attach the roundslings to the robot according to the figure.<br>Make sure the roundslings do not rub against any sharp edges.                                                                                                                    | See <a href="#">Illustration for installing lifting accessories on page 504</a> .                                                  |
| 5 | Stretch the lifting accessories to take the weight of the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                    |

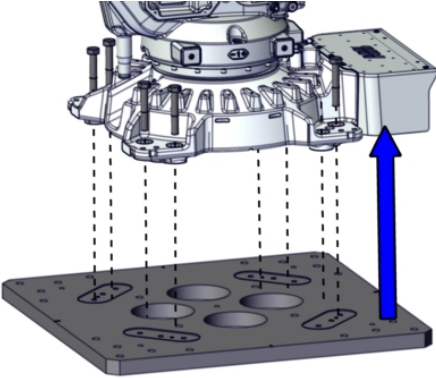
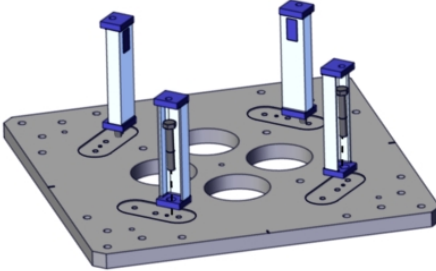
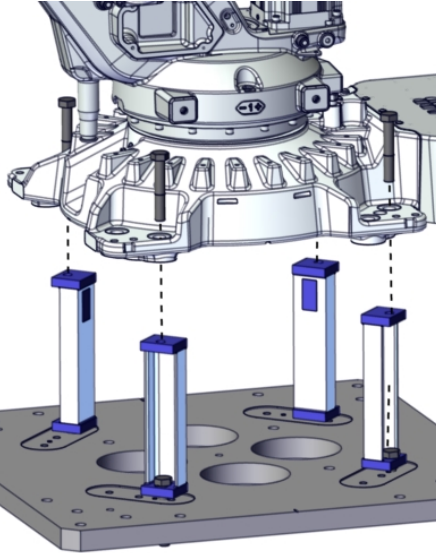
## Fitting support legs under the floor mounted robot

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the IRB 7720 robot is 2,590 - 2,690 kg (depending on robot variant)<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |      |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

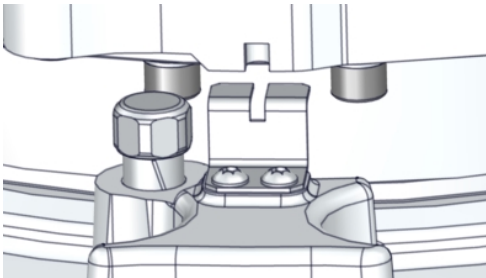
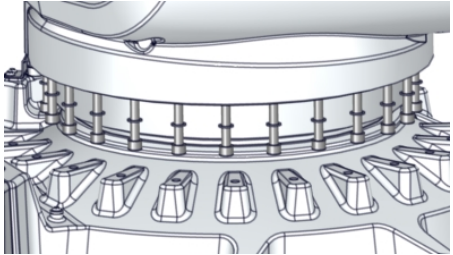
| Action                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Unscrew the attachment screws from the foundation and lift away the robot to be able to fit the four support legs to the foundation. | <br>xx2100001115                                                                                                                            |
| 3 Secure the support legs to the foundation using the same holes as to secure the base.                                                | Supporting pillars: 3HAC061213-001<br>Tightening torque: 325 Nm<br>Follow user instructions enclosed with the pillars.<br><br>xx2100001114 |
| 4 Lower the robot to the support legs and secure.                                                                                      | Use the screws enclosed with the pillars.<br><br>xx2100001113                                                                             |

Continues on next page



## Preparations before removing the axis-1 gearbox

Use this procedure to do the necessary preparations, before removing the gearbox.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 3 | Begin draining the axis-1 gearbox.<br> <b>Note</b><br>There will be some oil left in the gear after draining.                                                                                                                           | See <a href="#">Floor-mounted robot: Draining the axis-1 gearbox on page 156</a> .                                                                                               |
| 4 | Remove the attachment screws.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Leave the screws behind the synchronization plate and calibration pin for now.<br><br>xx2300001877 | Bit holder and hexagon bit SW10<br>Bit holder dimension: 5/16" (14x18 mm)<br><br>xx2300001876 |

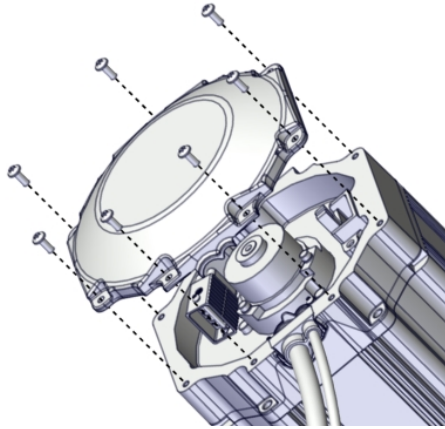
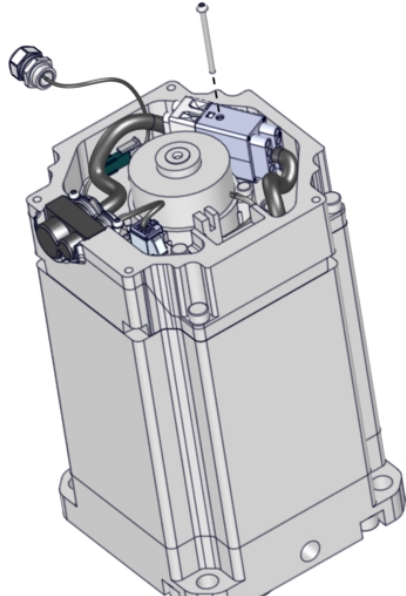
## Disconnecting the axis-1 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

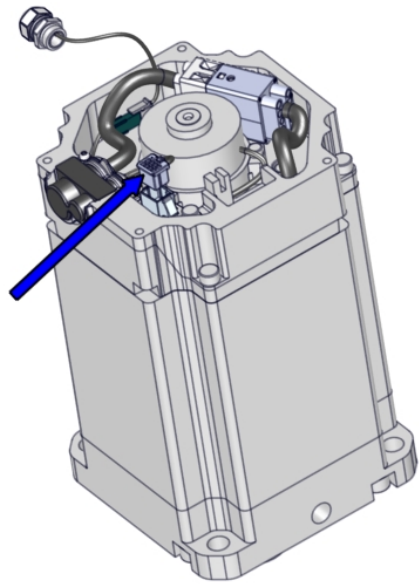
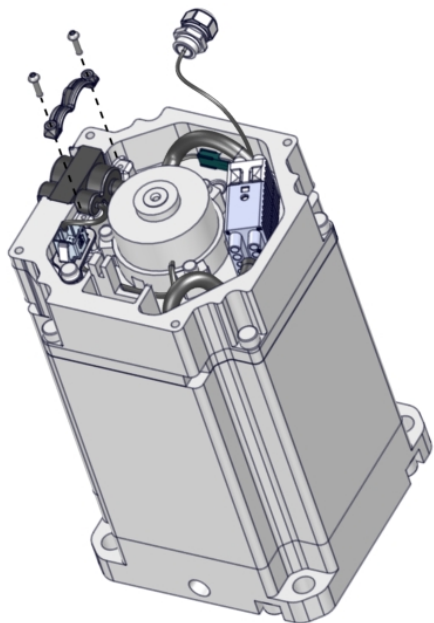
5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

| Action |                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2      | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                              | <br>xx2100000596  |
| 3      | Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector. | <br>xx2200001736 |

Continues on next page

## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

| Action |                                                          | Note                                                                                                |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4      | Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out. | <br>xx2200001737 |
| 5      | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.         | <br>xx2200001738 |
| 6      | Remove the motor cables from the motor.                  |                                                                                                     |

## Removing the axis-1 motor

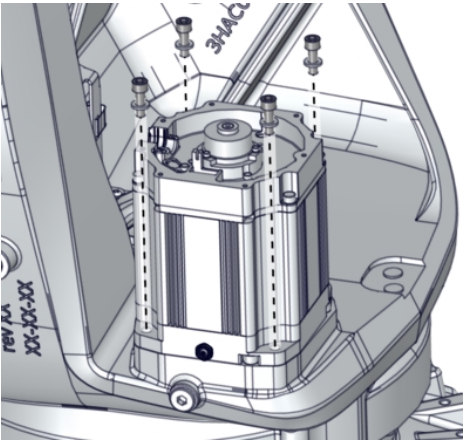
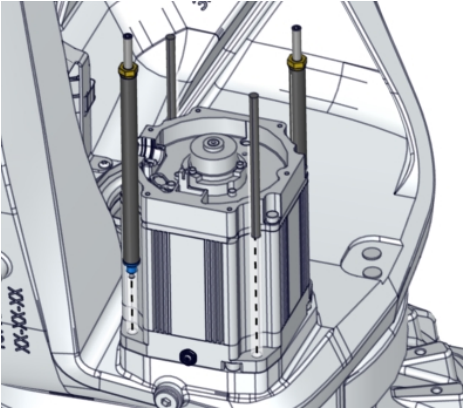
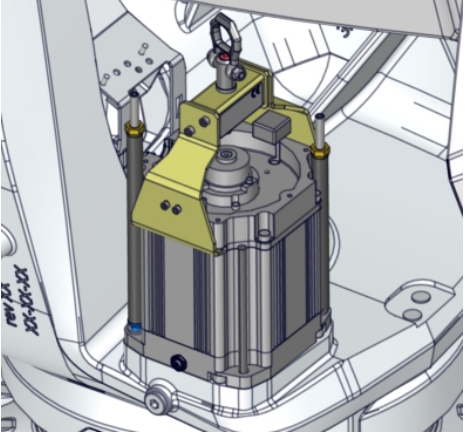
| Action |                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1      |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

*Continues on next page*

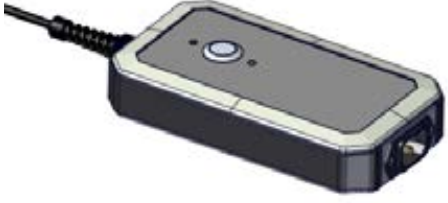
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Unscrew the attachment screws and washers.<br>Use a bits extender to reach the screws. | Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2300001721                                                                                    |
| 3 | Fit guide pins in the non-threaded holes.                                              | Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 4 | Fit removal tools in the threaded holes.                                               | Always use guide pins in pairs.<br>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.<br><br>xx2300001723 |
| 5 | Apply the lifting accessory.                                                           | Lifting accessory, motor: 3HAC076550-001<br><br>xx2400000491                                                                    |

*Continues on next page*

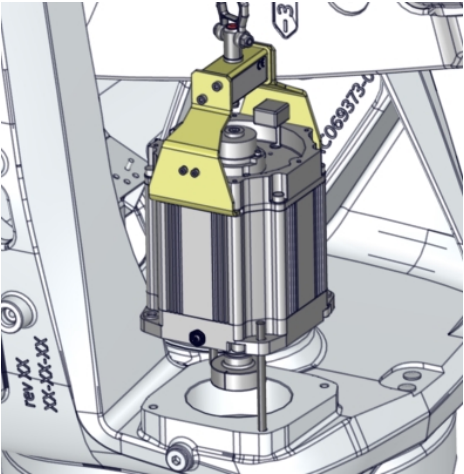
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Release the brakes of the axis-1 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 23 kg</p> <p>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 8 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

Continues on next page

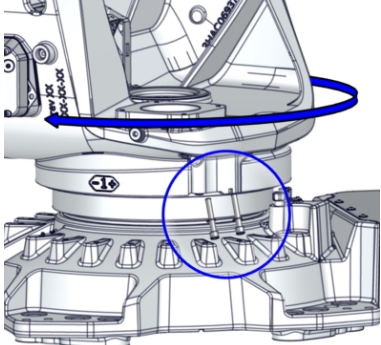
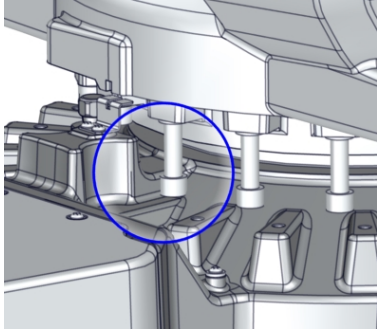
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

|    | Action                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.                    |  <p>xx2400000492</p> |
| 10 | Use caution and lift the motor straight up to get the pinion parted from the gear. |                                                                                                                                     |
| 11 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                 |                                                                                                                                     |

#### Removing the remaining frame screws

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                      |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Rotate the robot by hand to access the screws behind the synchronization plate and loosen the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  <p>xx2400000305</p> |
|   | <div> </div> <div> <p><b>Note</b></p> </div> <div> <p>The already loosened screws must be lifted over the casting tab during rotation.</p> </div>  <p>xx24000002138</p> |                                                                                                                                           |

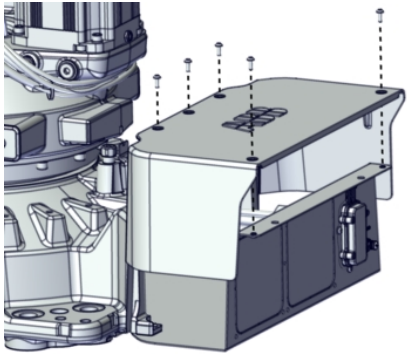
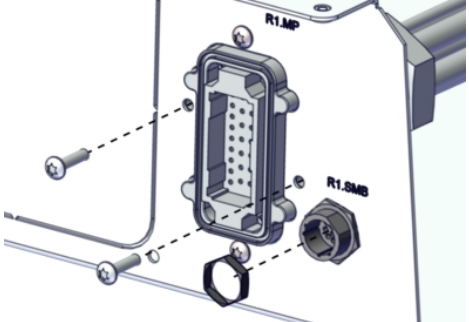
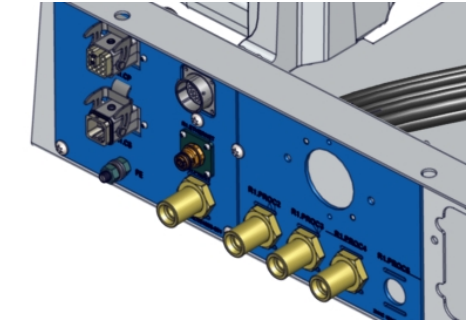
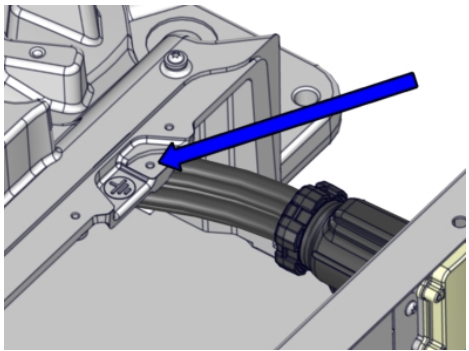
#### Preparations before removing the cable harness in the base

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <div> </div> <div> <p><b>DANGER</b></p> </div> <div> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> </div> |      |

Continues on next page

## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the base cover.                                                                          | <br>xx2100000981   |
| 3 | Loosen the connectors: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• R1.MP</li><li>• R1.SMB</li></ul> | <br>xx2100001109  |
| 4 | If used, disconnect the DressPack hoses in the base.                                            | <br>xx2300001093 |
| 5 | Disconnect the earth cable.                                                                     | <br>xx2200001790 |

*Continues on next page*

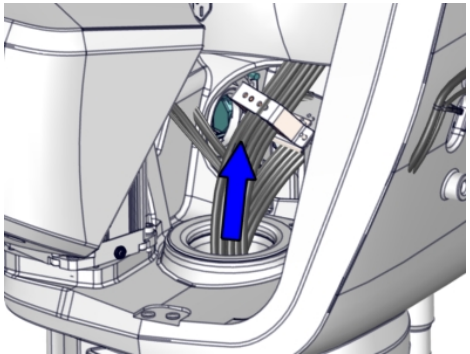
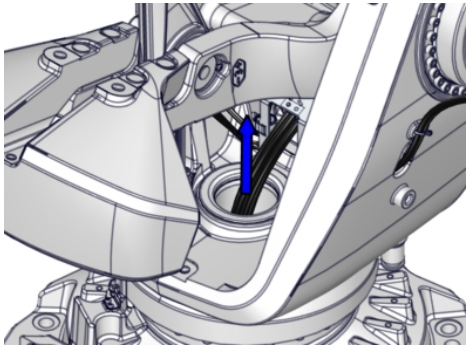


## 5 Repair

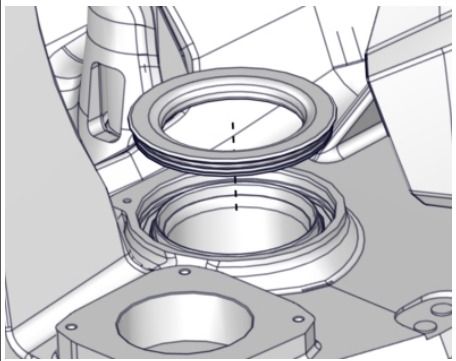
### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Removing the cable harness from the base

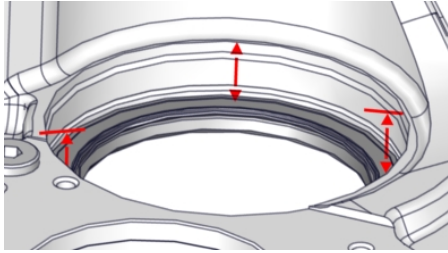
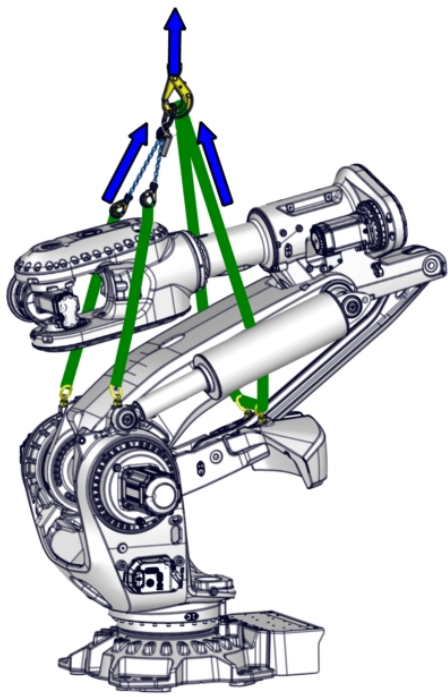
|   | Action                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | If equipped with DressPack, pull out the DressPack cables through the protection tube. | <br>xx2400000192  |
| 2 | Pull out the robot cable harness through the protection tube.                          | <br>xx2300001944 |
| 3 | Place the cable harness safely on the frame or on the axis-2 motor.                    |                                                                                                     |

#### Lifting away the complete arm system

|   | Action                                                                           | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check that the axis-1 gearbox is drained and then remove the draining equipment. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Remove the protection ring from the frame.                                       | <br>xx2300001764 |

*Continues on next page*

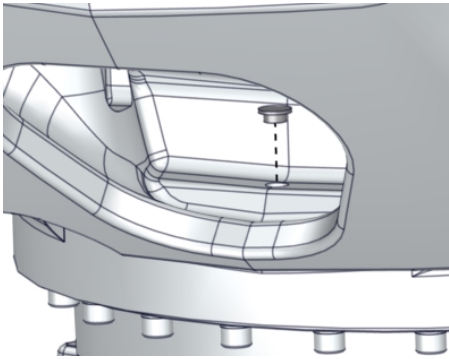
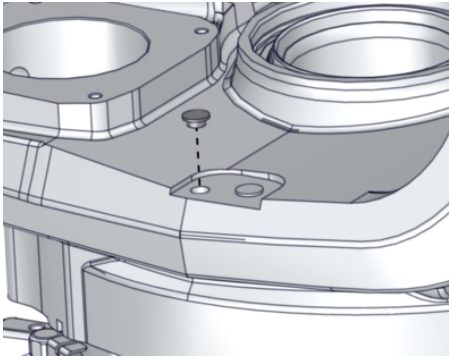
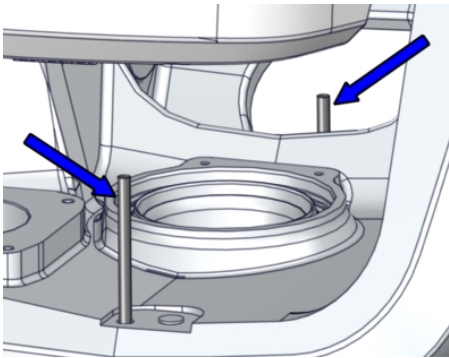
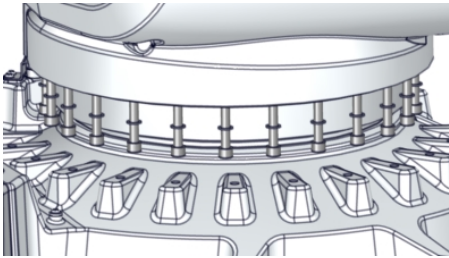


|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Measure the distance from the edge of the frame to the radial sealing at three different locations and make notes.</p> <p>The measurement is used as a verification after the arm system has been refitted.</p> |  <p>xx2200001611</p>  |
| 4 | <p>Raise the overhead crane to stretch all lifting accessories.</p>                                                                                                                                                |  <p>xx2300001769</p> |

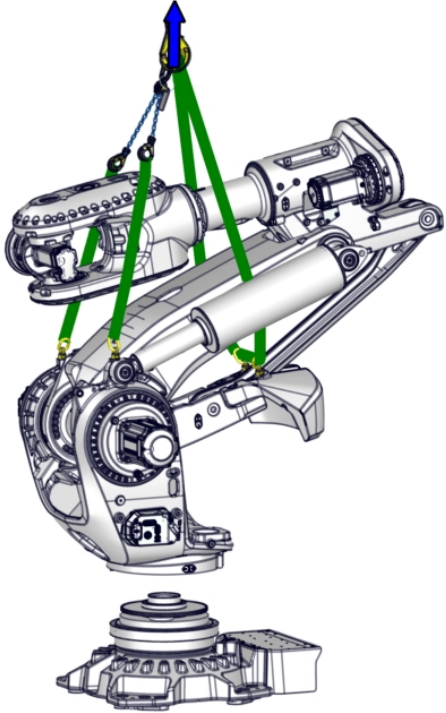
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>5</div> <div>Remove the two protection plugs or screws located on opposite sides of each other in the frame.</div>                                                                                               | <div><br/>xx2300001770</div> <div><br/>xx2300001771</div>         |
| <div>6</div> <div><div> <b>Tip</b></div><div>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the frame slide better.</div></div> | <div>Guide pin, M12x150 / Guide pin, M12x200:<br/>3HAC13056-2 / 3HAC13056-3<br/>Always use guide pins in pairs.</div> <div><br/>xx2300001795</div> |
| <div>7</div> <div>Verify that all attachment screws are loosened from the frame.</div>                                                                                                                                | <div><br/>xx2300001876</div>                                                                                                                       |

Continues on next page

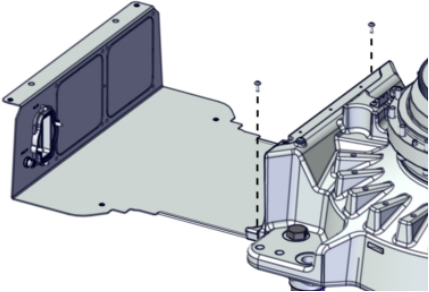
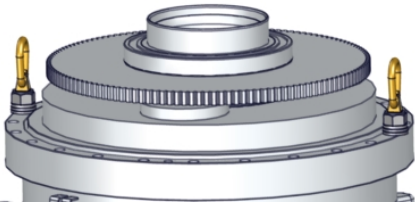
|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                    |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8  | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the complete arm system is 2,352 kg<br/>All lifting accessories must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                         |
| 9  | <p>Lift away the complete arm system.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When the arm system has left the guide pins it can move. Use caution in order to avoid injury or damage!</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>There will be some oil spill!</p> |  <p>xx2300001772</p> |
| 10 | Put down the arm system on the floor.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                         |
| 11 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>When the complete arm system is removed and resting by itself on the floor, make sure it is resting completely stable before removing the lifting accessories. Do not change the position of the axes from the position described earlier.</p>                                                  |                                                                                                         |

Continues on next page

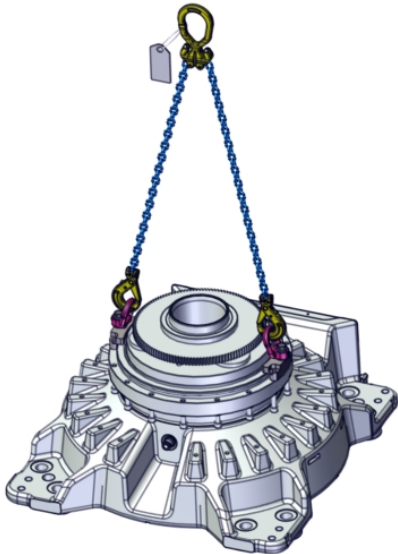
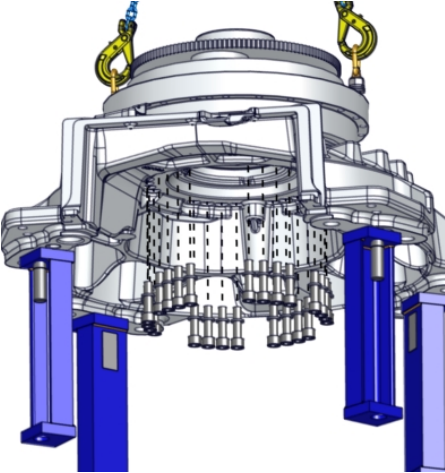
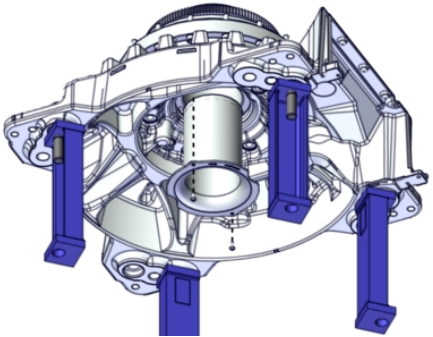
5 Repair

5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

Removing the axis-1 gearbox

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Remove the bottom plate by removing the two small screws and pulling the plate out.                                                                                                                  | <br>xx2000000411                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 2 Fit the lifting accessories in opposite holes in the gearbox.                                                                                                                                        | Lifting eye VLBG: 3HAC16131-1 M12, 2 pcs<br>Use M12 washers beneath the lifting eyes, if the lifting eyes need to be elevated somewhat not to damage the o-ring on the gearbox.<br><br>xx2300001773 |
| 3  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the gearbox is 142 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

Continues on next page

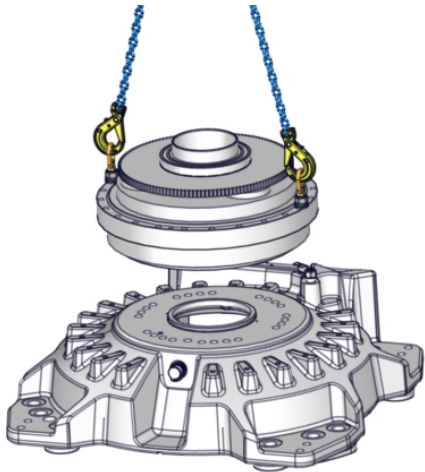
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                          |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Attach the lifting accessory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1<br><br>xx2100002818 |
| 5 | Remove the gearbox attachment screws, from underneath the base.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br><br>This procedure is best performed by two persons working together: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• one underneath the robot base making sure that the bit is being fitted into the screw head holes, all the way until they reach the bottom</li> <li>• one using the torque wrench, loosening the screws from beside the base.</li> </ul> | <br>xx2400000338                                           |
| 6 | Remove the protection tube from the base by removing the two attachment screws and pulling the tube downwards.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <br>xx2100001112                                          |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

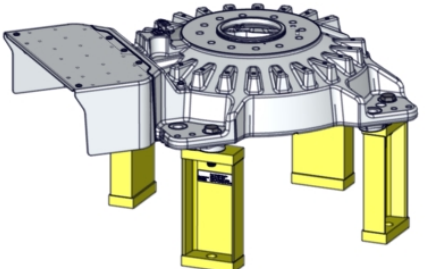
*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>7</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the gearbox is 142 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                        |
| <p>8</p> <p>Lift away the gearbox.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Approximately 0.5 l of oil residues will drip out during lifting of the gearbox.<br/>Make sure that protective gear like goggles and gloves are always worn.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Used oil is hazardous material and must be disposed of in a safe way. See <a href="#">Decommissioning on page 685</a> for more information.</p> |  <p>xx2400000335</p> |

### Refitting the gearbox

These procedures describe how to refit the axis-1 gearbox.

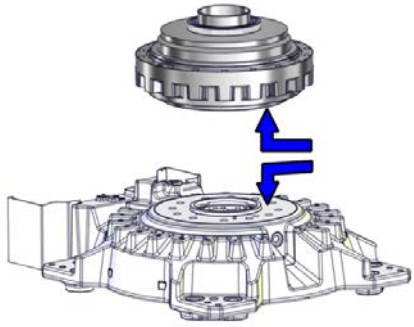
#### Preparations before refitting the axis-1 gearbox

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the base is 196 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>2</p> <p>If not already done, fit and secure the four support legs to the foundation. Then lift up and secure the base on top of the legs.</p>                                                                      | <p>Supporting pillars: 3HAC061213-001.<br/>Tightening torque: 325 Nm</p>  <p>xx2500001238</p> |

*Continues on next page*

## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

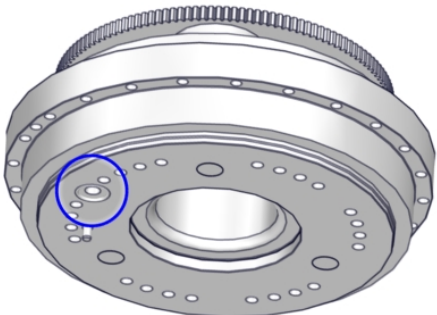
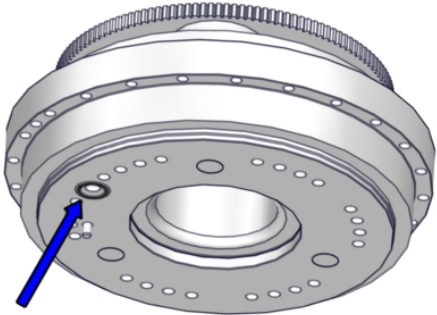
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Wipe the contact surfaces between gearbox and base clean from any contamination. Also wipe clean the threaded holes, if contaminated.</p>                                                                     | <p>Cleaning agent: Isopropanol</p>  <p>xx1700000567</p>                                                                                                                                                          |
| 4 | <p>Fit the lifting accessories in opposite holes in the gearbox.</p>                                                                                                                                             | <p>Lifting eye VLBG: 3HAC16131-1 M12, 2 pcs</p> <p>Use M12 washers beneath the lifting eyes, if the lifting eyes need to be elevated somewhat not to damage the o-ring on the gearbox.</p>  <p>xx2300001773</p> |
| 5 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the gearbox is 142 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

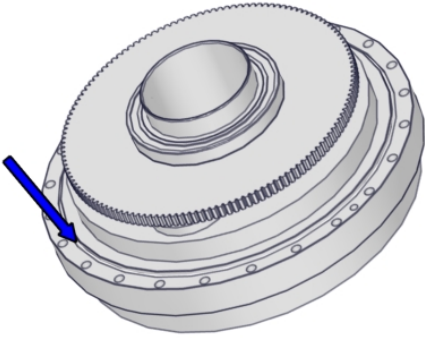
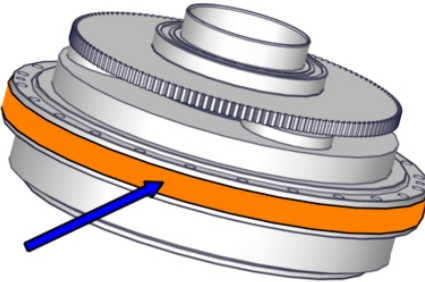
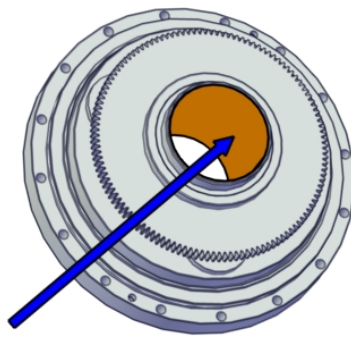
| Action                                                                                         | Note                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 Attach the lifting accessory and lift the gear-box.                                          | <p>Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1</p>  <p>xx2400000333</p>                                     |
| 7 Wipe clean the o-ring groove for the small o-ring beneath the gearbox.                       |  <p>xx2300001796</p>                                                                                   |
| 8 Clean the new o-ring, lubricate it with some grease and fit it in the groove in the gearbox. | <p>O-ring: 3HAC061327-033 (32x4).<br/>Grease, Shell Gadus S2: 3HAC042536-001.</p>  <p>xx2300001774</p> |

Continues on next page



## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

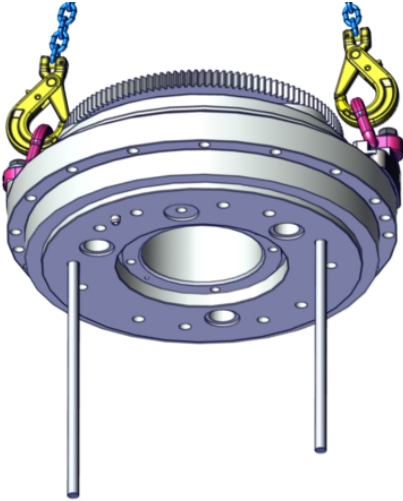
*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | Check the o-ring and lubricate.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                                                                                                              | <p>O-ring: 3HAC061327-105<br/>Grease, Shell Gadus S2: 3HAC042536-001.</p>  <p>xx2300001755</p>                           |
| 10 | Apply rust preventive to the gearbox surface shown in the figures.                                                                                                                                  | <p>Rust preventive: 3HAC034903-001 (Mercialsol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.)</p>  <p>xx2300001756</p>  |
| 11 | <p>Wipe clean the inner surfaces of the hole in axis-1 gearbox.</p> <p><i>Protection type Foundry Plus:</i><br/>Apply rust preventive to the inner surface of the hole, as shown in the figure.</p> | <p>Rust preventive: 3HAC034903-001 (Mercialsol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.)</p>  <p>xx2100001169</p> |

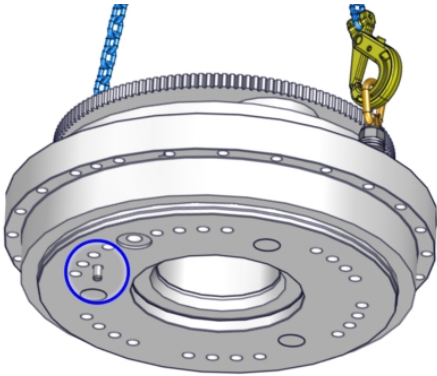
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>12</div> <div>Fit guide pins in opposite holes in the gear-box.</div> <div> <b>Tip</b><br/>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the gearbox/gear slide better.</div> | <div>Guide pin, M16x200: 3HAC13120-3<br/>Always use guide pins in pairs.</div> <div></div> <div>xx2100002821</div> |

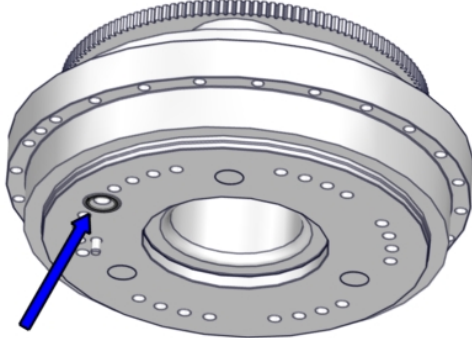
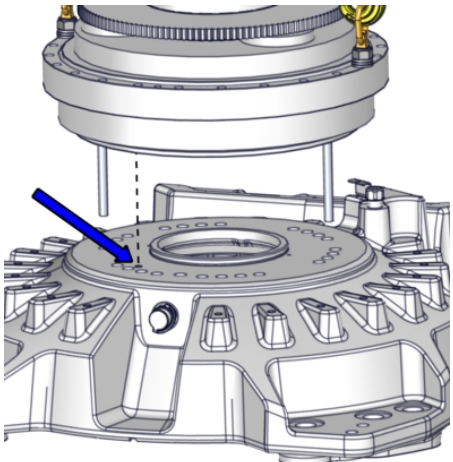
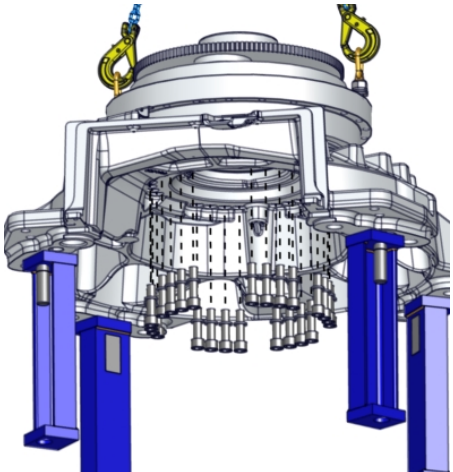
Refitting the axis-1 gearbox to the base

| Action                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>1</div> <div>Verify that the locating pin in the gearbox will match the hole in the base.</div> | <div></div> <div>xx2400000336</div> |

Continues on next page

## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>2 Lower the gearbox against the base with guidance from the guide pins and locating pin.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Verify that the small o-ring underneath the gearbox, stays fitted correctly when the gearbox is being fitted.</p>  <p>xx2300001774</p> |  <p>xx2400000337</p>                                                                          |
| <p>3 Lower the lifting accessory so that the chain is no longer stretched.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <p>4 Fit the attachment screws that secure the gearbox to the base, from underneath.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Attachment screws: M16x60 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (24 pcs).</p>  <p>xx2400000338</p> |
| <p>5 Remove the guide pins and fit the two remaining screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                 |

*Continues on next page*

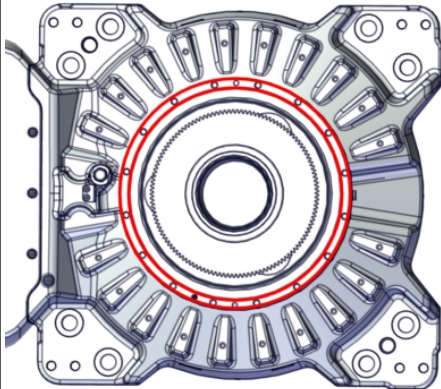
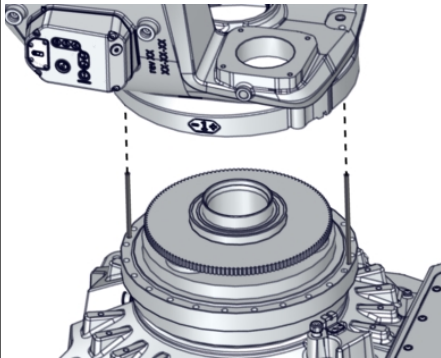
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

Continued

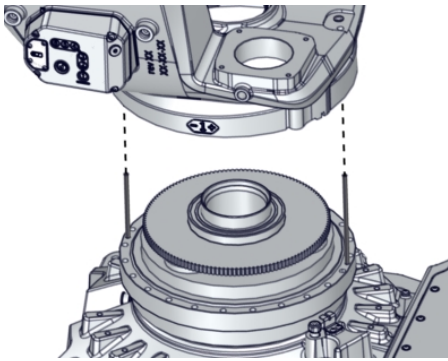
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                                              |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Secure the attachment screws cross-wise.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>This procedure is best performed by two persons working together:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• one underneath the robot base making sure that the bit is being fitted into the screw head holes, all the way until they reach the bottom</li> <li>• one using the torque wrench, tightening the screws from beside the base.</li> </ul> | <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 300 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p> |

#### Preparations before refitting the arm system

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Wipe clean the contact surfaces from any contamination.                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 2 | <p><i>Protection type Foundry Plus:</i></p> <p>Apply flange sealant to the mounting interface on the gearbox, both inside and outside of the screw holes.</p>                                                                                         | <p>Flange sealant: Loctite 5800</p>  <p>xx2100002225</p>                                                                               |
| 3 | <p>Apply some grease on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the edge around the gearbox.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 4 | <p>Apply guide pins in the guide pin holes in the gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the frame slide better.</p> | <p>Guide pin, M12x150 / Guide pin, M12x200: 3HAC13056-2 / 3HAC13056-3</p> <p>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2300001775</p> |

Continues on next page

## Refitting the arm system

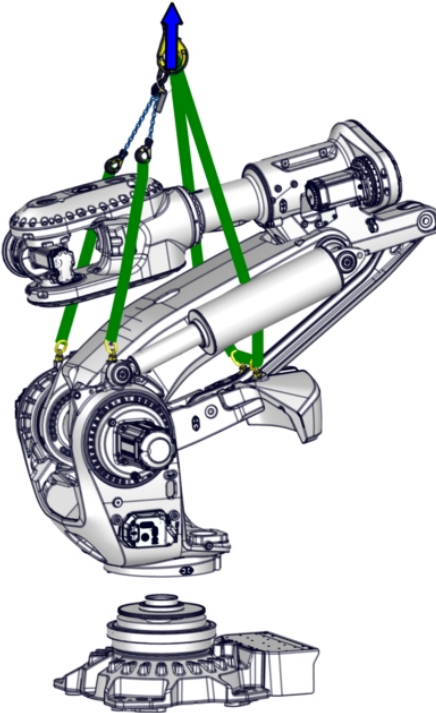
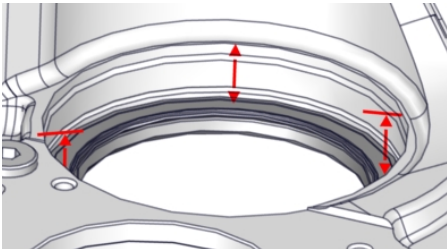
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The weight of the complete arm system is 2,352 kg<br>All lifting accessories must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                     |
| 2 | Make sure that all lifting accessories still is fitted correctly on the arm system.                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                     |
| 3 | Lift the arm system up, to be able to reach the contact surfaces underneath the frame.                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                     |
| 4 | Wipe clean the contact surfaces from any remaining contamination.                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                     |
| 5 | Lubricate the radial sealing.                                                                                                                                                                               | Grease, Shell Gadus S2: 3HAC042536-001.                                                             |
| 6 | Lift the arm system to mounting position, verify that the hole pattern match and that the guide pins are installed in the correct holes.                                                                    | <br>xx2300001775 |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

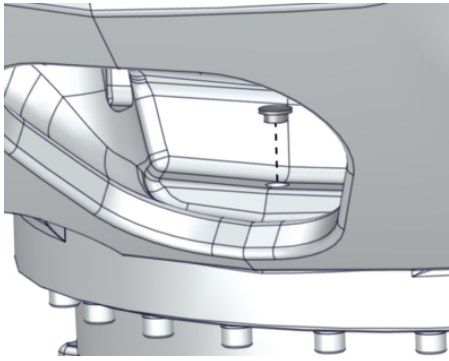
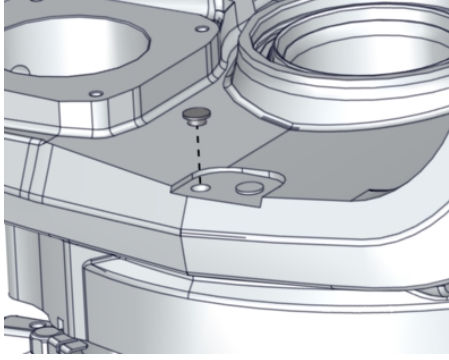
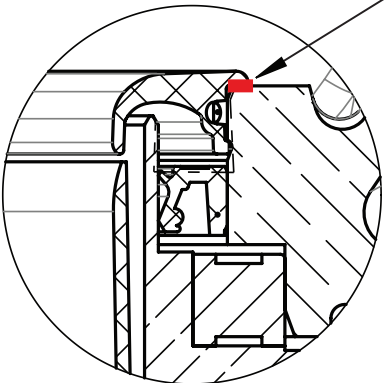
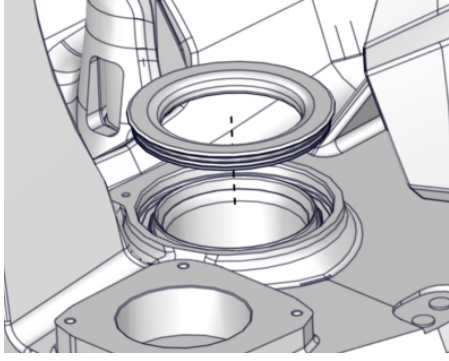
Continued

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7  | <p>Lift the complete arm system and lower it slowly down over the guide pins, until it is possible to insert the attachment screws manually.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not lower the arm system completely at this stage! The attachment screws must be fitted in two steps. If not, the complete arm system will risk resting on the attachment screws in the wrong position!</p> |  <p>xx2300001772</p>                                                                         |
| 8  | <p>Fit the attachment screws manually as far as possible. Lower the complete arm system slowly in steps, all the way down.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M12x70 12.9<br/>Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (24 pcs)</p>                                                                                               |
| 9  | <p>Make sure that the complete arm system is lowered all the way down.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| 10 | <p>Measure the distance from the edge of the frame to the radial sealing at three different locations (same locations as before removing the arm system).<br/>Compare to the measurements made prior the arm system was refitted to the base.<br/>Adjust alignment of the sealing if needed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                           |  <p>xx2200001611</p>                                                                        |
| 11 | <p>Secure all screws now possible to reach.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>A bits holder is needed to be able to reach the attachment screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Bit holder and hexagon bit SW10<br/>Bit holder dimension: 5/16" (14x18 mm)<br/>Tightening torque: standard torque 120 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>)</p> |
| 12 | <p>If required, manually rotate axis-1 to a position where the remaining attachment screw at the axis-1 synchronization plate can be secured.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                 |

Continues on next page



## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>13 Remove the guide pins and refit the two plastic protection plugs.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  <p>xx2300001770</p>  <p>xx2300001771</p> |
| <p>14 Refit the protection ring. Verify that the o-ring is undamaged and placed in its groove on the protection ring.<br/>Replace if damaged.<br/><i>Protection type Foundry Plus:</i><br/>Apply flange sealant under the protection ring flange.</p>  <p>xx2500000073</p> | <p>Sealant (grey), Sikaflex 521FC:<br/>3HAC026759-001.<br/>O-ring: 3HAB3772-57</p>  <p>xx2300001764</p>                    |

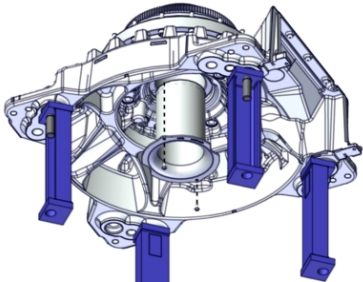
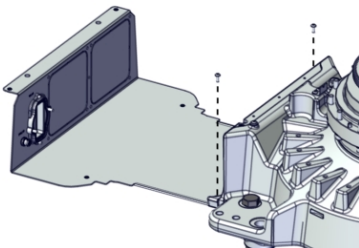
Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Refitting the protection tube

|   | Action                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check the protection tube for damages.<br>Replace if damaged.             | <br><br>xx1700001374                                                                                                                                                           |
| 2 | Wipe the surfaces of the protection tube clean from any contamination.    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 3 | Refit the protection tube to the base. Secure with the attachment screws. | Torx pan head screw: M6x16<br>Stainless steel A2-70 (2 pcs).<br>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.<br><br><br>xx2100001112<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243) |
| 4 | Refit the back plate and secure with two screws.                          | Tightening torque: 10 Nm<br>Torx pan head screw: M6x16<br>Stainless steel A2-70 (2 pcs)<br><br><br>xx2000000411                                                              |

#### Preparations prior to refitting motor

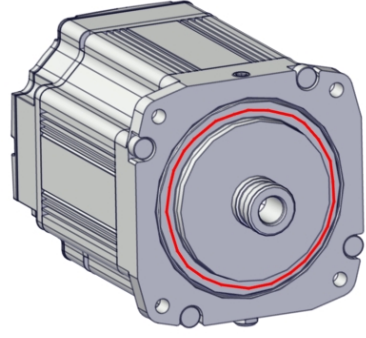
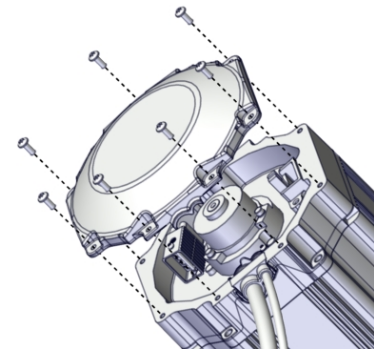
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

*Continues on next page*

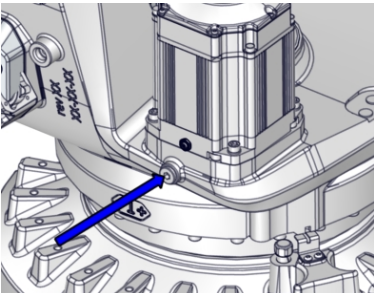


### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                        |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface.</p> | <p>Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063</p>                                                                                           |
| 3 | <p>Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.</p>                                                              | <p>Flange sealant: Loctite 5800</p>  <p>xx2100000520</p> |
| 4 | <p>Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  <p>xx2100000596</p>                                   |

#### Floor-mounted robot: Refitting the axis-1 motor

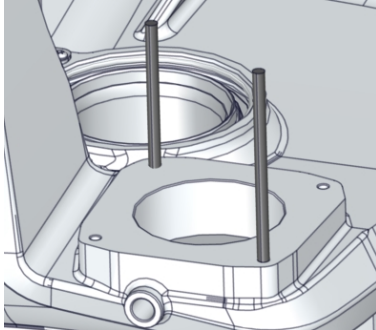
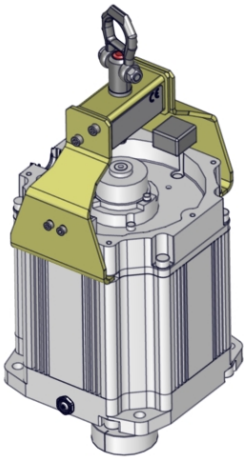
|   | Action                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Remove the plug from the venting hole. This is done to evacuate air during refitting of the motor.</p> |  <p>xx2300001600</p> |

*Continues on next page*

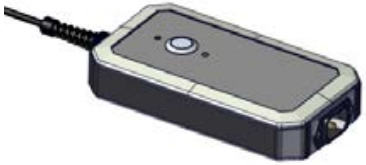
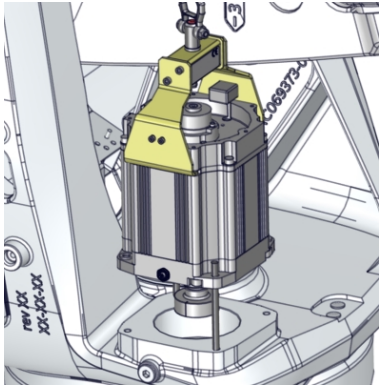
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Fit guide pins in opposite holes.                                                                                                                                                                       | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2</p> <p>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2300001801</p> |
| 3 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><p>The weight of the motor is 23 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 4 | Apply the lifting accessory.                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Lifting accessory, motor:<br/>3HAC076550-001</p>  <p>xx2400000493</p>                         |
| 5 | Fit the rotation tool.                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Rotation tool M4: 3HAB7887-1</p>                                                                                                                                                   |

*Continues on next page*

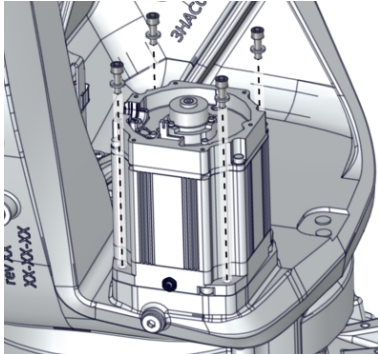
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 7 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 8 | <p>Lower the motor into position.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear in the gearbox.</li> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> <li>• Make sure that the direction of the cable gland exit is facing the correct way.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  <p>xx2400000492</p>                                                                                              |

Continues on next page

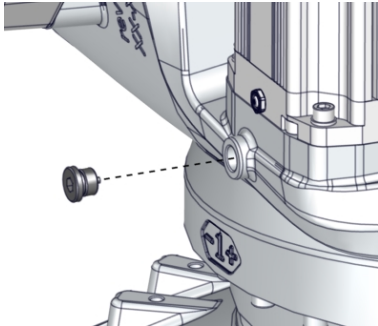
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | Secure the motor with its attachment screws and washers.<br>Use a bits extender to reach the screws. | Hex socket head cap screw:<br>M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br>500 (4 pcs)<br>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br>Tightening torque: 50 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001721 |
| 10 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 11 | Perform a leak-down test.                                                                            | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                 |

### Refilling oil in the gearbox

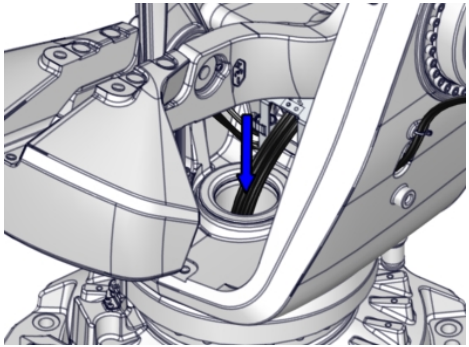
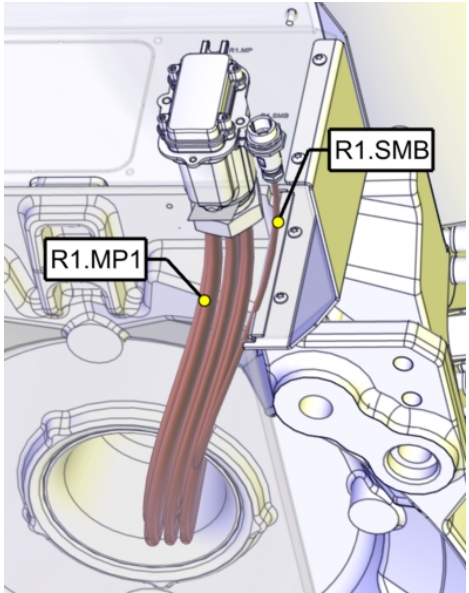
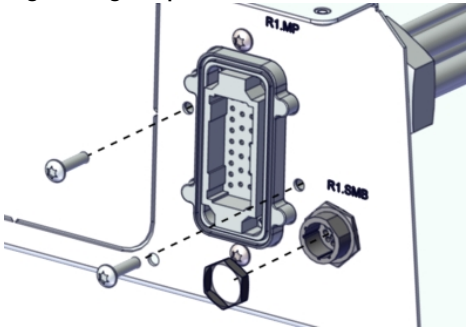
|   | Action                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refill oil in the gearbox.                             | See <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-1 gearbox on page 155</a> .                                                                                                 |
| 2 | Refit the oil plug.<br>Replace the o-ring, if damaged. | O-ring, G 1/2": 3HAC061327-059<br>Tightening torque: 24 Nm.<br><br>xx2300001686 |

*Continues on next page*

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

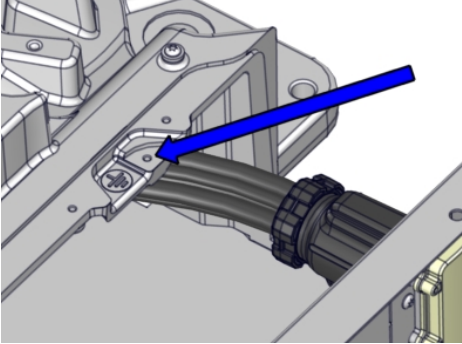
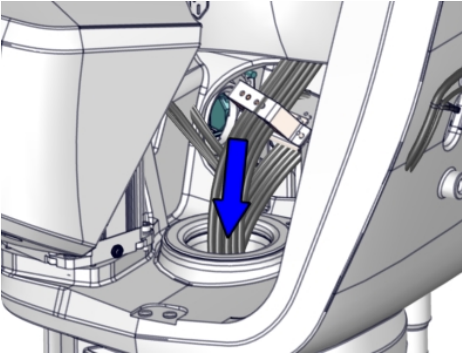
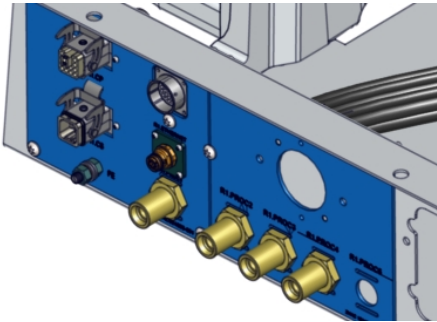
#### Refitting the cable harness in the base

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Run the robot cable harness through the frame recess and down through the protection tube.                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2400000195</p>                                                                                                                                                       |
| 2 | Run the cabling through the base. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure that the cables are not twisted. Each cable must be in line with its position on the base plate.</li> <li>Make sure that the R1.SMB cable will run on the correct side of the R1.MP1, see the figure.</li> </ul> |  <p>xx1300000736</p>                                                                                                                                                      |
| 3 | Make sure that the markings on the cables are facing the base cover, when connected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 4 | Connect connectors R1.MP and R1.SMB.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Screw dimension for R1.MP: M6x25 A2-70<br/>           Tightening torque for R1.MP: 6 Nm.<br/>           Tightening torque for R1.SMB: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2100001109</p> |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

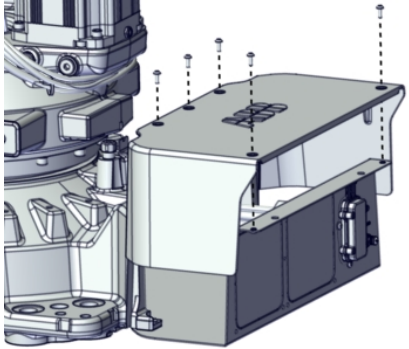
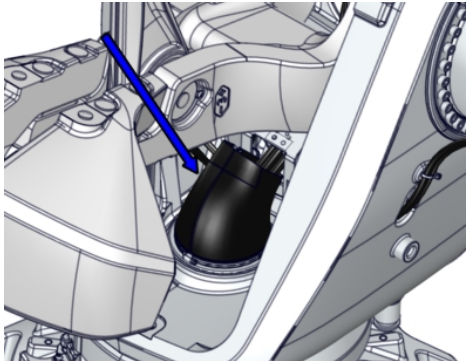
5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Connect the earth cable.                                                                                                                                                | <p>Screw dimension: M6x16.<br/>Washer dimension: 6.4x17x3.<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001790</p> |
| 6 | <p>If used, run the DressPack cables through the protection tube in the base.</p> <p>If necessary, lubricate the cables with grease to make them run more smoothly.</p> |  <p>xx2400000196</p>                                                                                             |
| 7 | <p>If used, run the DressPack hoses through the protection tube in the base.</p> <p>Make sure that the hoses are running correctly and are not twisted!</p>             |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 8 | If used, connect the DressPack cable package on the base plate.                                                                                                         |  <p>xx2300001093</p>                                                                                            |

Continues on next page

## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | Refit the base cover.                                                     | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 Stainless steel A2-70 (5 pcs)<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2100000981</p> |
| 10 | <i>Protection type Foundry Plus</i><br>Refit the axis-1 cable protection. |  <p>xx2300001954</p>                                                                                              |

## Connecting the axis-1 motor cables

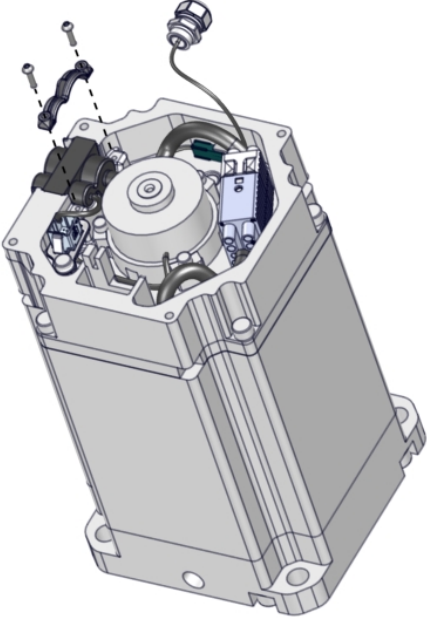
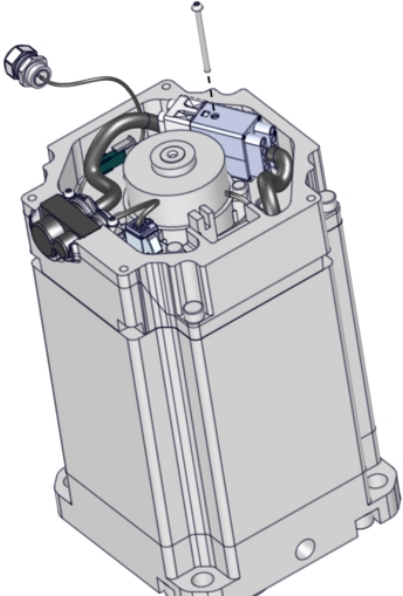
|   | Action                                        | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |      |

*Continues on next page*



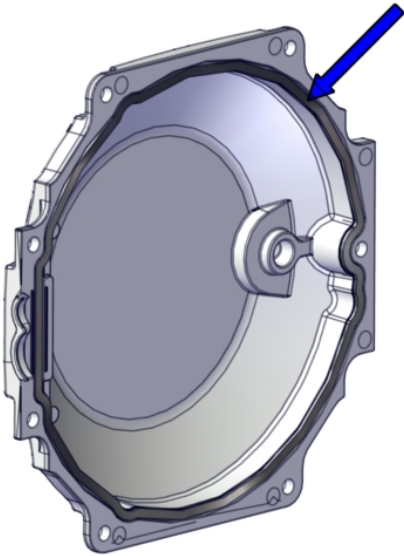
5 Repair

5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | Connect the motor cables.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | Fit a screw to the power connector.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms. | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p>                        |

Continues on next page

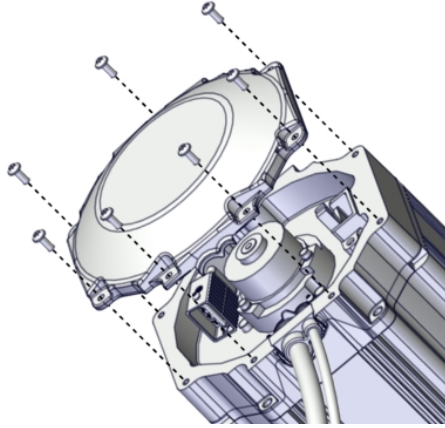


|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.</p> <p>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.</p>                                                                                                                   | <p>Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:</p> <p>3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)</p> <p>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)</p> <p>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)</p> <p>Axis-4:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:</p> <p>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2100000600</p> |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid. | Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70<br>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.<br><br>xx2100000596 |

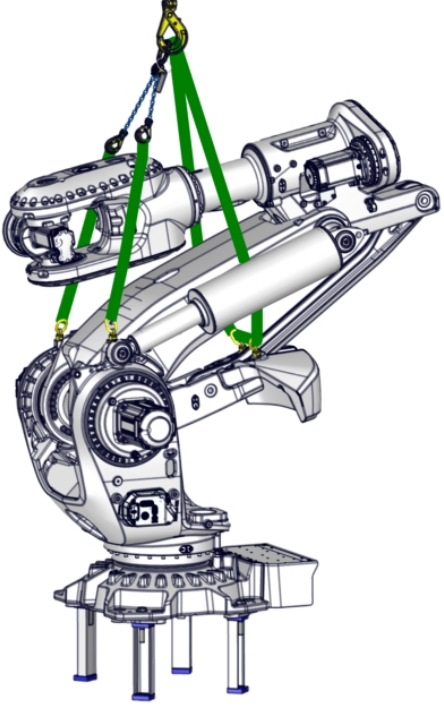
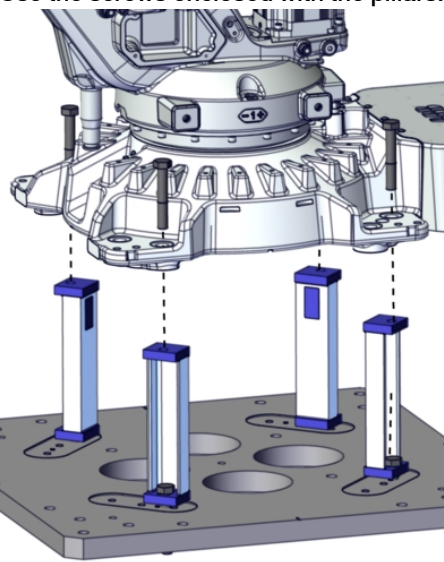
Securing the floor mounted robot to the foundation

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The weight of the IRB 7720 robot is 2,590 - 2,690 kg (depending on robot variant)<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |      |

Continues on next page

## 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Attach the lifting accessories to the robot, if removed.                                                     | <p>See <a href="#">Attaching the lifting accessories to the arm system on page 504</a>.</p>  <p>xx2300001803</p> |
| 3 | Stretch the lifting accessories enough to secure the robot, but without taking the full weight of the robot. |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 4 | Unscrew the screws that secure the base to the support legs and lift the robot.                              | <p>Use the screws enclosed with the pillars.</p>  <p>xx2100001113</p>                                           |
| 5 | Remove the support legs.                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 6 | Lower the robot to the foundation.                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

*Continues on next page*

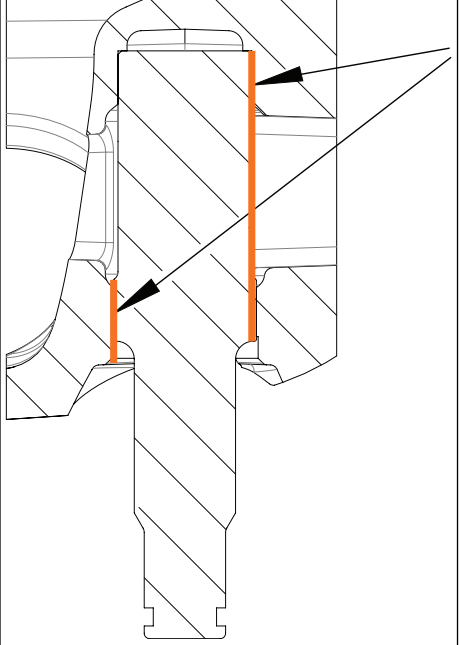
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                              | Note                                                                                                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Secure the robot to the foundation. | M24 x 100 (12 pcs)<br>550 Nm (screws lubricated with Molykote 1000)<br>600-725 Nm, typical 650 Nm (screws none or lightly lubricated) |

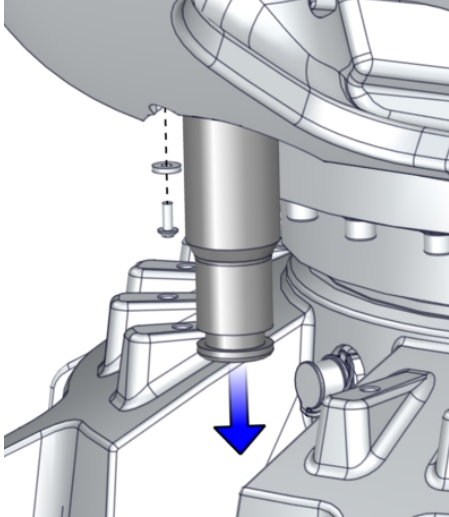
#### Refitting the mechanical stop

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check if the axis-1 is in a position where it will be possible to refit the mechanical stop pin.<br><br>If not, turn on the power, and jog axis-1 to that position. |                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 2 | <i>Protection type Foundry Plus</i><br>Clean and apply rust preventive on the surfaces shown in the figure, on stop pin and in the hole as shown in the figure.     | Rust preventive: 3HAC034903-001 (Mercial 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.)<br><br>xx2300001757 |

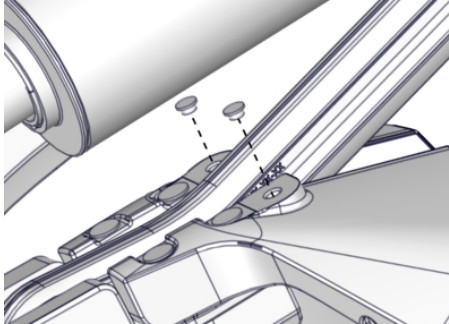
*Continues on next page*

### 5.11.1 Replacing the axis-1 gearbox

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>3 Refit the mechanical stop pin and secure it with the attachment screw and washer. Apply locking liquid on the screw.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Do not overtighten the attachment screw, use specified tightening torque.</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M6x16 A4-80<br/>Plain washer, large: 6.4x17x3, Steel-mZn12c<br/>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)<br/>Tightening torque: 10 Nm</p>  <p>xx2300001711</p> |

#### Concluding procedure

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Remove the lifting accessories.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                      |
| 2 Refit the plastic plugs in the lifting eye holes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>Protection plug: 3HAC4836-21 (2 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300001714</p> |
| 3 Calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> .                                                                                                        |
| <p>4  <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p> |                                                                                                                                                      |

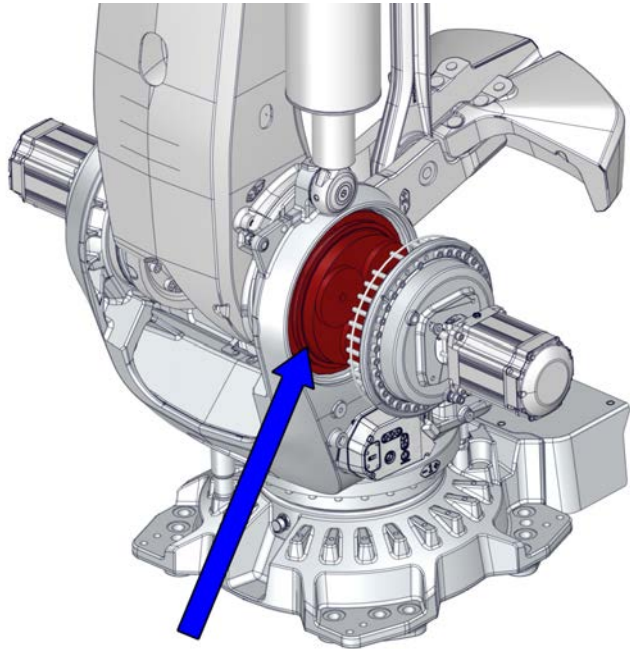
5 Repair

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

Location of the gearbox

The gearbox is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001597

Summary of the replacement procedure

This is a brief summary of the replacement procedure, containing the major actions to be performed.

- 1 Drain the axis-2 gearbox.
- 2 Lock the arm system with a lock screw.
- 3 Unload the balancing device pressure.
- 4 Remove the axis-2 motor.
- 5 Replace the axis-2 gearbox.

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.ics.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part | Article number | Note                           | Level |
|------------|----------------|--------------------------------|-------|
| Gearbox    | 3HAC074200-006 | Includes o-ring 3HAC061327-067 | L2    |

Continues on next page

## Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                               | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lock screw, M16x80                      | -                           | Used to secure lower arm / movable arm structure.                                                                       |
| Screw, M12 x minimum 50 mm              | -                           | 2 pcs.<br>Used to neutralize the spring force of the balancing device.                                                  |
| Guide pin, M12x150                      | 3HAC13056-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Brake release tool                      | 3HAC081310-001              | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                           |
| Bits extender                           | 3HAC12342-1                 | 300 mm, bits 1/2"                                                                                                       |
| Guide pin, M10x150                      | 3HAC15521-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Removal tool motor M12                  | 3HAC14631-1                 | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                         |
| Lifting accessory, motor                | 3HAC15534-1                 | Lifting instruction 3HAC15640-2 enclosed.                                                                               |
| Lifting accessory (chain)               | 3HAC15556-1                 | Lifting instruction 3HAC15880-2 enclosed.                                                                               |
| Guide pin, M12x200 / Guide pin, M12x250 | 3HAC13056-3                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Screws M12x100, fully threaded          | -                           | Used to push out and push in the gearbox, if necessary.                                                                 |
| Lifting accessory for gear              | 3HAC081585-001              | For lifting the gearbox                                                                                                 |
| Adjustment tool for gear                | 3HAC080331-001              | Used to rotate the gear for matching hole pattern with frame.                                                           |
| Rotation tool M4                        | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M4.                                                                       |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration   | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                        | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

## Required service parts

| Consumable | Article number | Note                                                                   |
|------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| O-ring     | 3HAC061327-067 | On gearbox.<br>Included in gearbox spare part, but replace if damaged. |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover FS180 with gasket | 3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-2 motor<br>A threaded connection is required for cooling fan option. |
| O-ring                                 | 3HAB3772-160                                                                                                                                                               | On motor flange.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                             |
| O-ring, G 1/2"                         | 3HAC061327-059                                                                                                                                                             | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                                                               |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Isopropanol                                                                                         |
| Rust preventive                        | 3HAC034903-001                                                                                                                                                             | Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.                                              |
| Grease                                 | 3HAC042536-001                                                                                                                                                             | Shell Gadus S2                                                                                      |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7200                                                                                        |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7063                                                                                        |
| Flange sealant                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 5800                                                                                        |
| Lubricating oil                        | -                                                                                                                                                                          | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gear-boxes on page 153</a> .                                 |

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |

*Continues on next page*



| Action                                                                                                                              | Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:<br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. |      |

### Removing the gearbox

Use these procedures to remove the axis-2 gearbox.



#### DANGER

Never remove both the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes at the same time.

One side must always be attached when the gearbox on the other side is removed.  
If not, there is a potential risk that a severe accident will happen.



#### Note

The gearbox attachment screws are arranged in three areas. It will not be possible to reach all screws with the robot in only one position.

Removal and refitting must be performed with the robot in several positions, which are described in the procedures.

### Preparations

|   | Action                                                                                                         | Note                                                          |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure. |                                                               |
| 2 | Remove any tool or other equipment fitted on the turning disc.                                                 |                                                               |
| 3 | Drain the axis-2 gearbox.                                                                                      | See <a href="#">Draining the axis-2 gearbox on page 161</a> . |

### The three areas of screws that secure axis-2 gearbox to lower arm

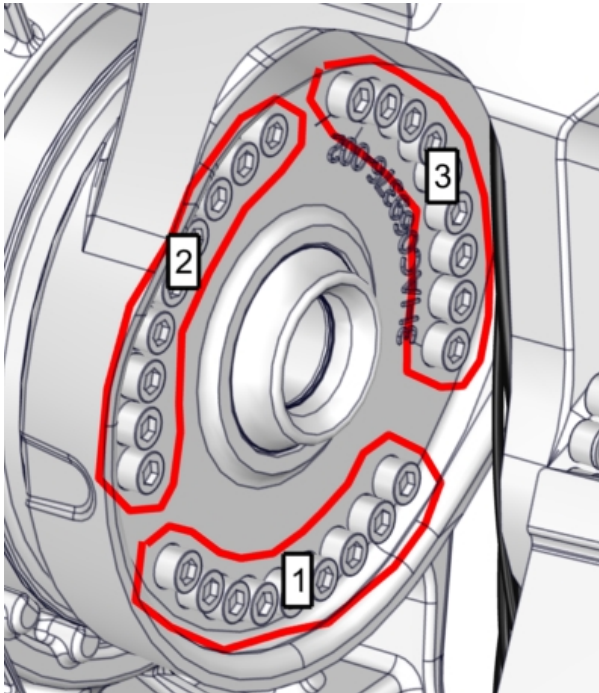
The axis-2 gearbox is attached to the lower arm with attachment screws arranged in three areas. Use this figure to understand the position of the three areas, when

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

performing this procedure. The figure shows the location of the areas when the robot stands in calibration position.



xx2300001851

The order when removing the attachment screws: area 1, then area 2, and last area 3.

The order when attaching the axis-2 gearbox to the lower arm is reversed: area 3, then area 2, and last area 1.

Robot position when removing screws in area 1

With the robot in this position it is possible to reach the screws in area 1 of screws that secure the axis-2 gearbox to the lower arm.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot into position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Axis 1: no significance</li><li>• Axis 2: -65°</li><li>• Axis 3: 0°</li><li>• Axis 4: 0°</li><li>• Axis 5: no significance</li><li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li></ul> | <p>xx2400000339</p> |

Continues on next page

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

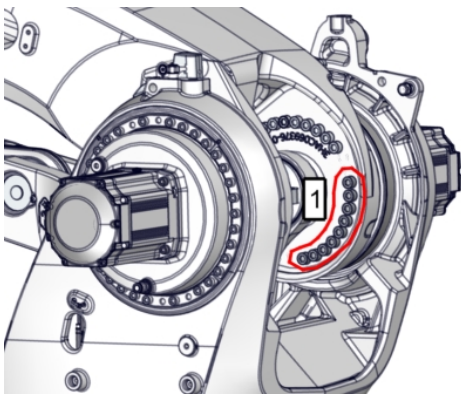
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |      |

## Removing the axis-2 gearbox screws in area 1

**Note**

The gearbox attachment screws are arranged in three areas. It will not be possible to reach all screws with the robot in only one position.

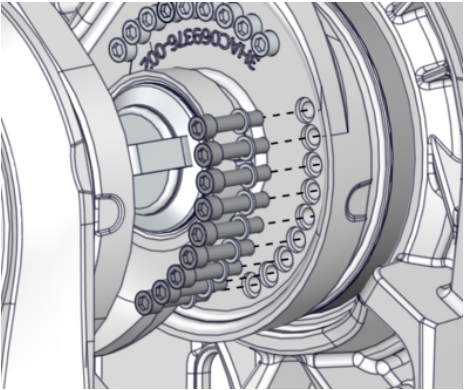
This procedure describes how to reach the screws in area 1.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Never remove the screws on both axis-2 and axis-3 at the same time.<br>One side must always be attached when the gearbox on the other side is removed.<br>If not, there is a potential risk that a severe accident will happen. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Find area 1.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Do not remove screws in area 2 or area 3 at this point.                                                                                                                                                          | <br>xx2300001852 |

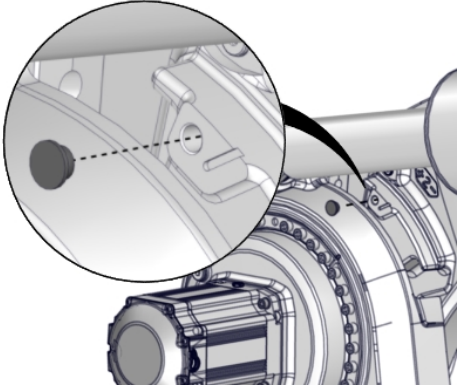
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                       | Note                                                                                               |
|---|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Remove the screws in area 1. | <br>xx2300001853 |

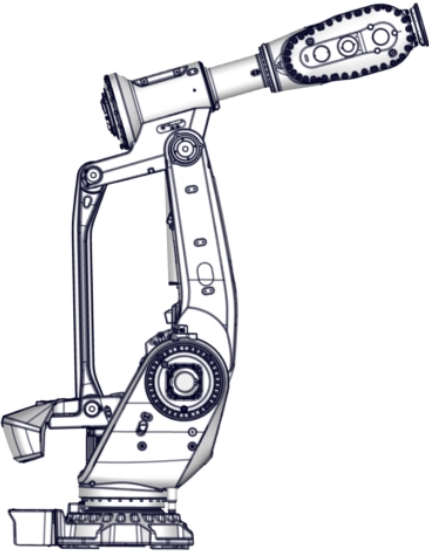
Removing the plastic plug of axis-2 lock screw hole

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Remove the plastic plug that covers the axis-2 lock screw hole.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>Keep the plastic plugs. They must be refitted after the work is done.</p> | <br>xx2400001682 |

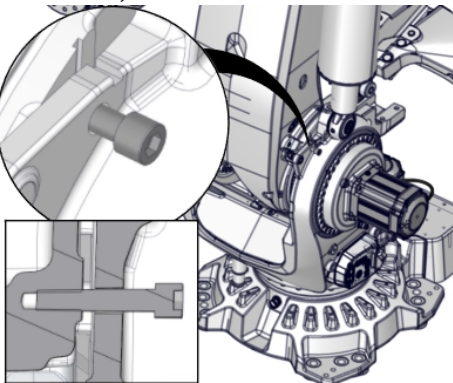
Continues on next page

Robot position for continued procedure

Put the robot in this position for the continued procedures.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                   |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 3: -17°</li> <li>• Axis 4: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul> |  <p>xx2400000340</p> |

Locking the axis-2 position

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Insert the lock screw into the axis-2 lock screw hole. Do not tighten. If needed, adjust the position of the robot to make it possible to insert the lock screw.</p> <p>The lock screw is used to secure the weight of the movable arm structure, in order to avoid accidents or damage.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not insert the screw fully, leave space underneath the screw head.</p> <p>Inserting the screw all the way will result in tension in the arm system which may cause damage to the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes.</p> | <p>Lock screw, M16x80</p>  <p>xx2300001881</p> |
| 2 | <p>Release the brakes on axis-2 using the brake release button, and let the axis rest on the lock screw.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                    |
| 3 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                    |

Continues on next page

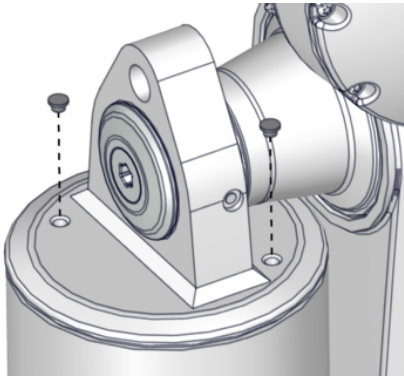
# 5 Repair

## 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

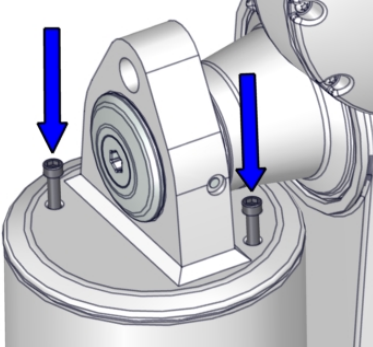
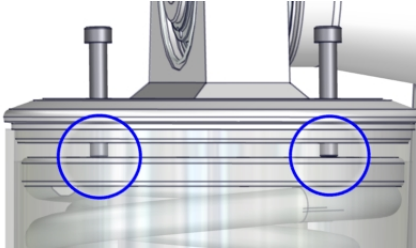
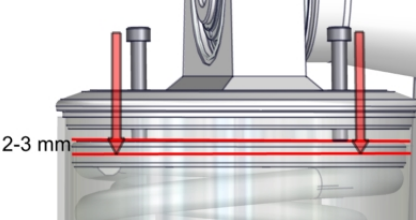
Continued

### Unloading the balancing device springs and locking the position

Use this procedure to unload and lock the balancing device in unloaded position.

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>1</div> <div> <b>DANGER</b></div> <div>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</div>                                   |                                                                                                                        |
| <div>2</div> <div>Remove the plastic plugs in the upper end of the balancing device.</div> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <div>Save the protection screws, to refit after the work is done.</div> | <div></div> <div>xx2300001643</div> |

Continues on next page

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| <p>3 Neutralize the spring force with two screws:<br/>Screw, M12 x minimum 50 mm (2 pcs)<br/>1 Insert two screws.</p>  <p>xx2300001644</p> <p>2 Screw in the screws until they have contact with the cylinder inside.</p>  <p>xx2400000506</p> <p>3 Then, alternately little by little, tighten the screws by hand according to the image.<br/>Screw in the screws by 1-2 turns, approximately 2-3 mm.</p>  <p>xx2400000507</p> <p>The length of the cylinder is now locked and the balancing device is unloaded.<br/>Check that the device is unloaded by trying to rotate it. It should rotate with ease.</p> |      |

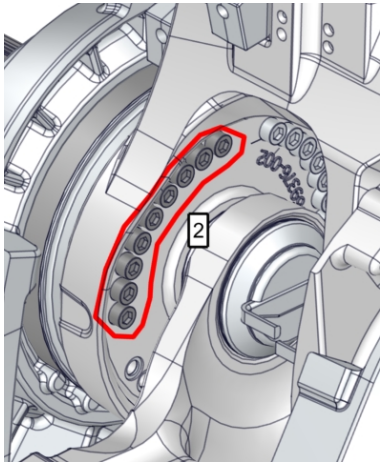
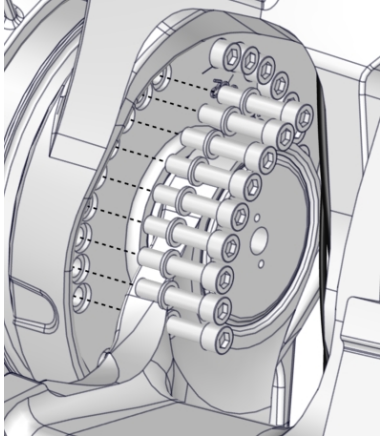
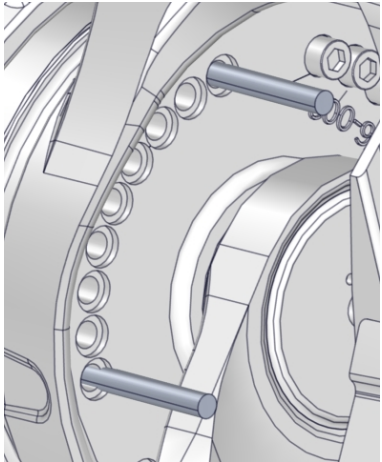
Continues on next page



5 Repair

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

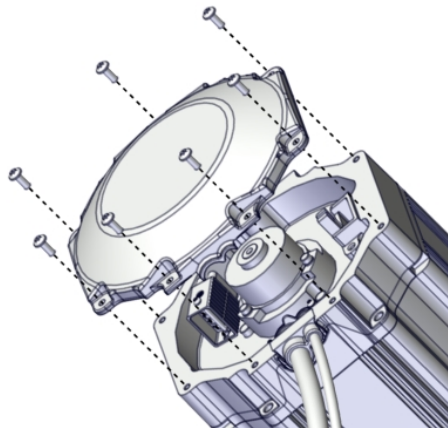
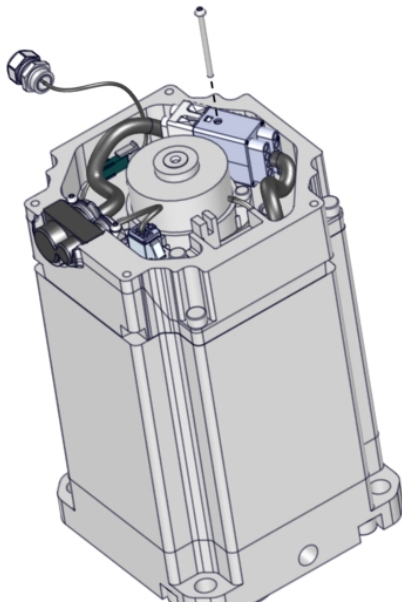
Removing the axis-2 gearbox screws in area 2

|   | Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Find area 2.                                             | <br>xx2300001860                                                                         |
| 2 | Remove the attachment screws in area 2.                  | <br>xx2300001861                                                                        |
| 3 | Attach two guide pins in the holes of the area 2 screws. | Guide pin, M12x150: 3HAC13056-2<br>Always use guide pins in pairs.<br><br>xx2300001862 |

Continues on next page



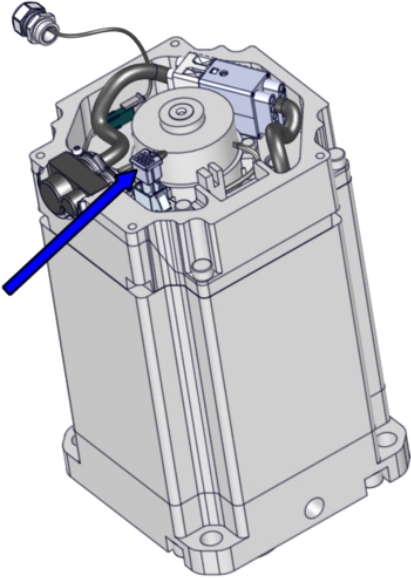
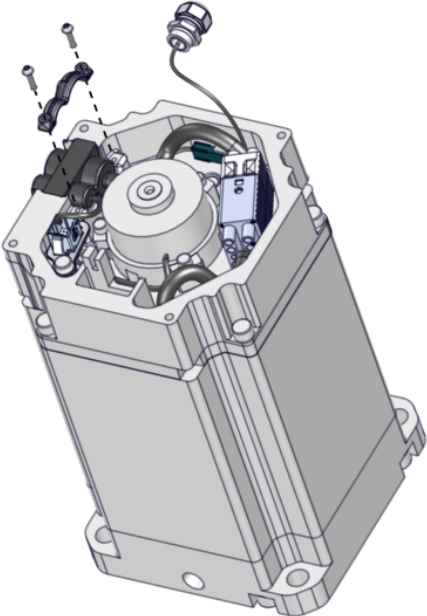
## Disconnecting the axis-2 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                                                                                                                            | <br>xx2100000596  |
| 3 | Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector.                                                                                               | <br>xx2200001736 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

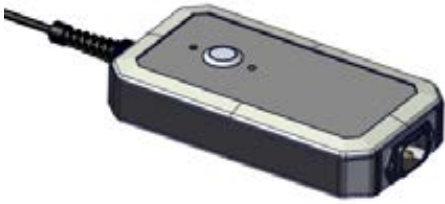
5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out. | <br><br>xx2200001737  |
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.         | <br><br>xx2200001738 |
| 6 | Remove the motor cables from the motor.                  |                                                                                                         |

Removing the axis-2 motor

|   | Action                                                                       | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Before removing the motor, make sure that the gearbox is completely drained. |      |

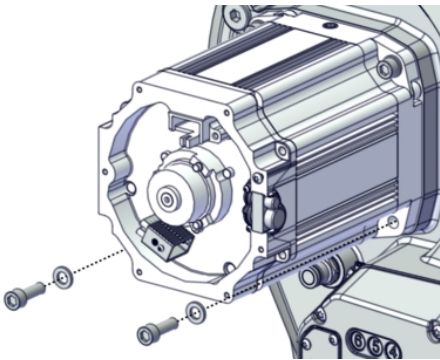
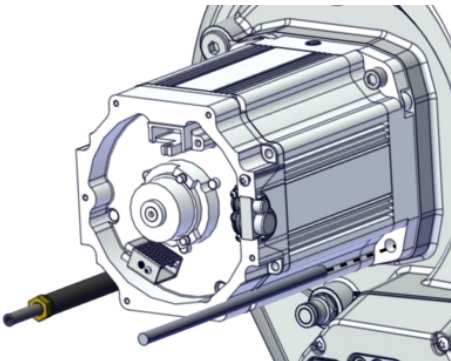
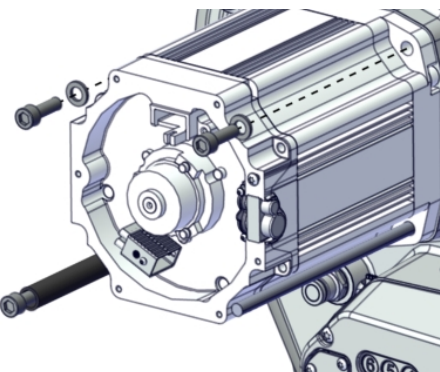
Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>When releasing the holding brakes of the motor, the lower arm will be movable and may fall down if not secured. Verify that the lower arm is secured as previously described, before continuing.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 3 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Releasing the brakes on the axis-2 or axis-3 motor results in weight transfer of upper and lower arm weight to the inserted lock screw in the lower arm or to the attached lifting accessories (whichever is used). If lifting accessories are used, verify that the lifting chains and roundslings are stretched by raising the overhead crane, before releasing the brakes.</p> <p>Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool, to unload the weight:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br/>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |

Continues on next page

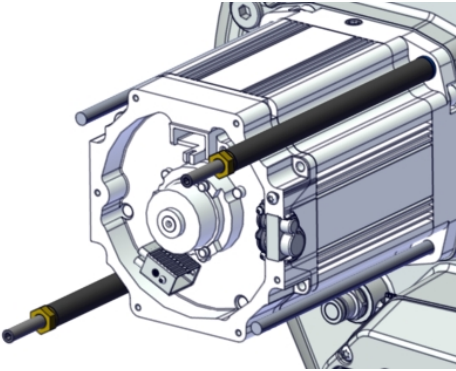
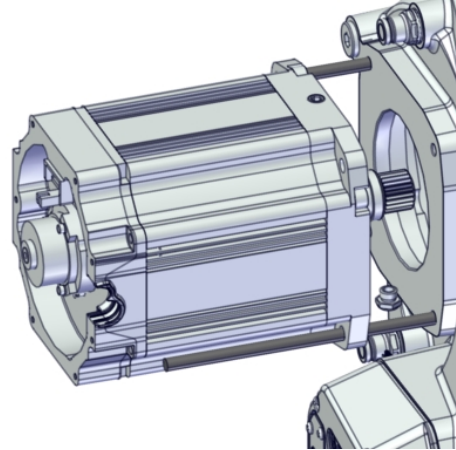
5 Repair

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 Remove the two lower screws.<br>Use a bits extender in order to reach the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                          | Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2000000468                                              |
| 5 Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br><br>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the motor slide better. | Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1<br><br>xx2000000456 |
| 6 Remove the remaining two screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2200001150                                            |

Continues on next page

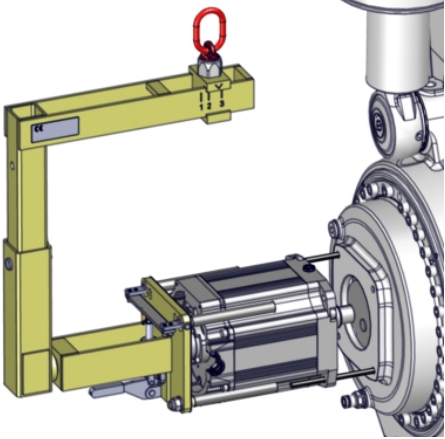
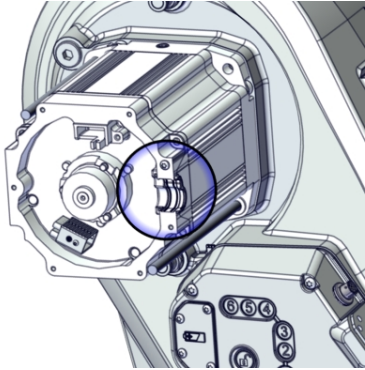
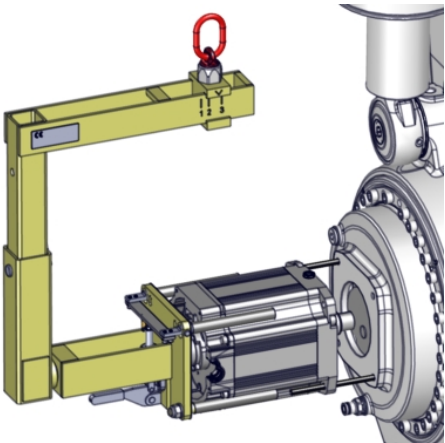
5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7  | <p>Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br/>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the motor slide better.</p> | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1</p>  <p>xx2300000043</p> |
| 8  | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 9  | <p>Activate the brake release tool again (release the brakes).</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>The power is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p>                                                                                                                    |
| 10 | <p>Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.<br/>Remove the removal tools.</p>                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br/>Always use removal tools in pairs.</p>                                                                                               |
| 11 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 24 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 12 | <p>Carefully lift the motor out on the guide pins, in order to get the pinion away from the gear and let it rest on the guide pins.</p>                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx20000000457</p>                                                                             |
| 13 | <p>Disconnect the brake release tool.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

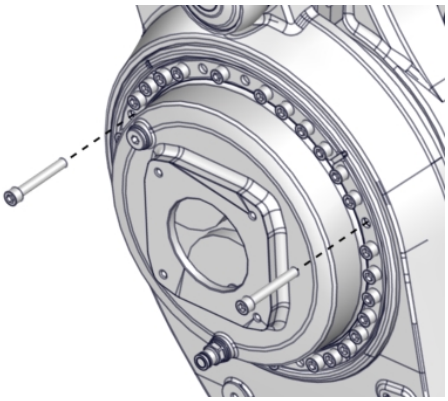
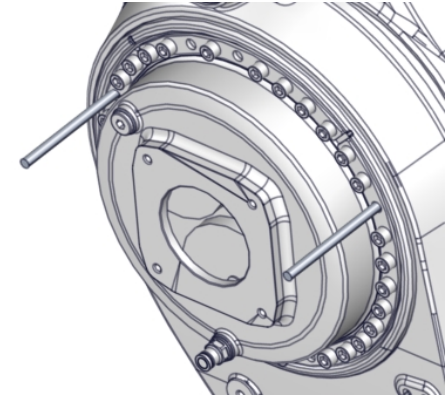
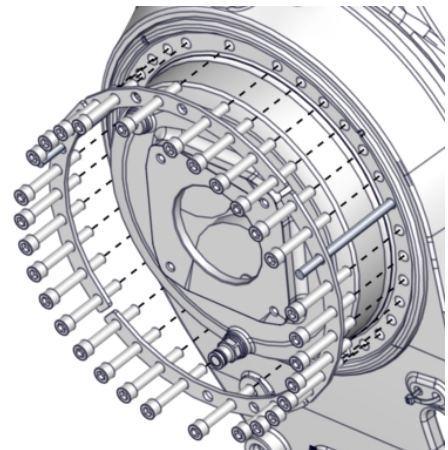
5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>14 Fasten the lifting accessory. Attach the lifting chain to the accessory and an over-head crane.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Lifting accessory, motor: 3HAC15534-1<br/>Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1</p>  <p>xx2400000263</p> |
| <p>15 Remove the motor by sliding it out on the guide pins and lift it off.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make a note in which direction the cable gland hole is facing. The motor shall be refitted in the same position.</p>  <p>xx2100000595</p> |  <p>xx2400000263</p> <p>Make sure the pinion is not damaged.</p>                                            |

Continues on next page



## Removing the motor flange

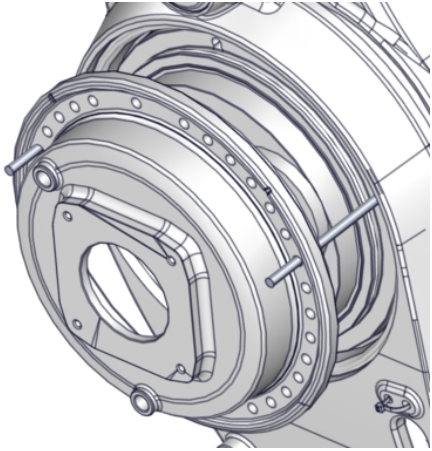
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove two attachment screws in opposite holes.                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2300001863</p>                                                              |
| 2 | Fit guide pins in the holes.                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Guide pin, M12x200 / Guide pin, M12x250, 3HAC13056-3</p>  <p>xx2300001864</p> |
| 3 | Remove the remaining attachment screws and the washers.                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx2300001865</p>                                                            |
| 4 |  <b>Note</b><br>There will be some oil spill when the motor flange is removed. Put some paper (or similar) to absorb the surplus oil. |                                                                                                                                                                     |

Continues on next page

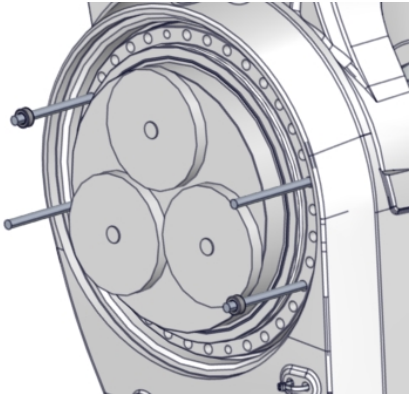
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                           | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Remove the motor flange.         | <br>xx2300001866   |
| 6 | Make sure the o-ring is present. | <br>xx2300001867 |

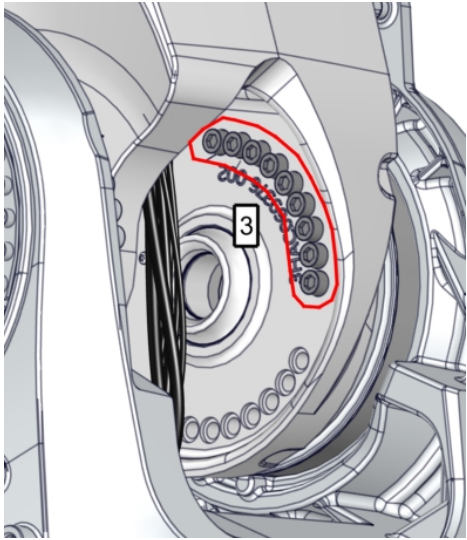
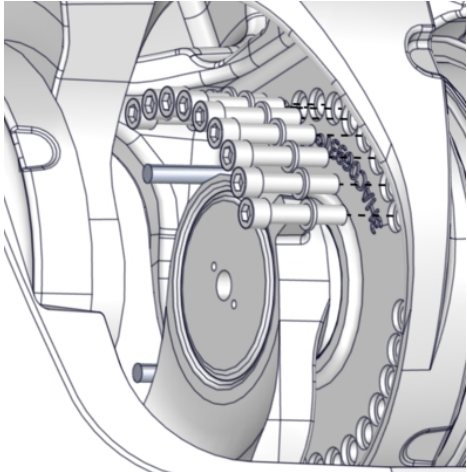
#### Installing guide pins

|   | Action                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Attach two additional guide pins in opposite holes, below the present ones.<br>Fasten set collars on two of the guide pins. | Guide pin, M12x200 / Guide pin, M12x250, 3HAC13056-3<br><br>xx2400000343 |

*Continues on next page*



## Removing the axis-2 gearbox screws in area 3

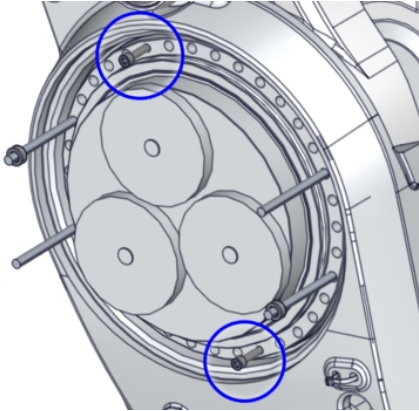
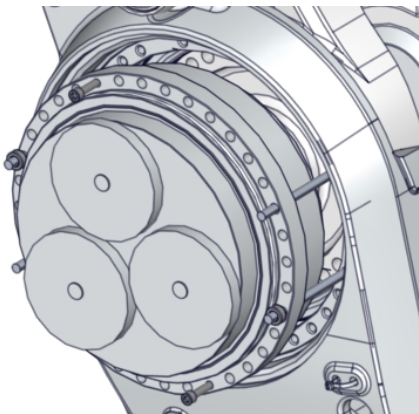
|   | Action                                                                           | Note                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Find area 3.                                                                     | <br>xx2300001868  |
| 2 | Remove the attachment screws that secure the gearbox to the lower arm in area 3. | <br>xx2300001869 |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

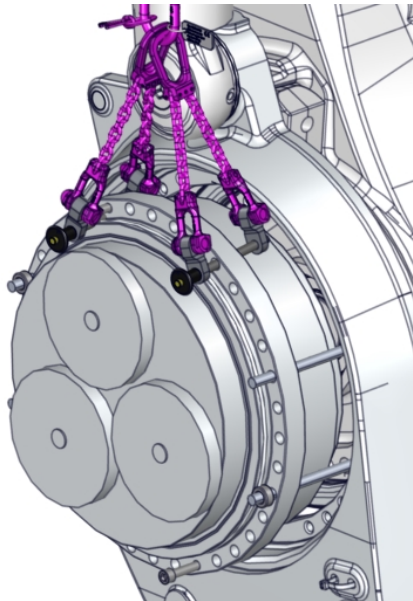
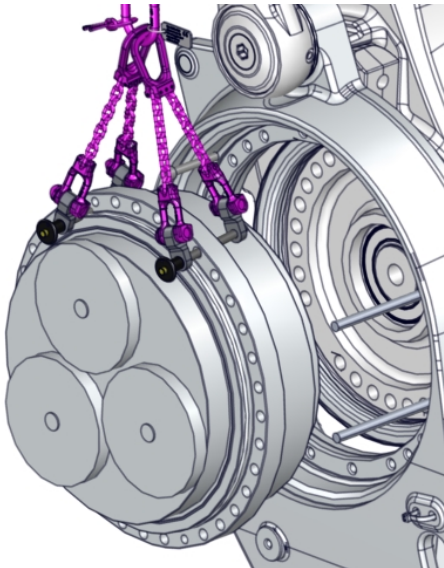
5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

Removing the axis-2 gearbox

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Attach two screws and screw them in to push out the gearbox.                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Screws M12x100, fully threaded: Used to push out and push in the gearbox, if necessary.</p>  <p>xx2400000344</p> |
| 2 | After the gearbox has been pushed out, screw out the screws enough to use them to pull the gearbox further out.                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 3 | Pull and slide the gearbox out on the four guide pins, just enough to be able to attach the lifting accessories.                                                                                                    |  <p>xx2400000345</p>                                                                                              |
| 4 | <div> <b>CAUTION</b></div> <p>The weight of the gearbox is 98 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

Continues on next page

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Attach the lifting accessories to the gearbox.                  | <p>Lifting accessory for gear: 3HAC081585-001</p>  <p>xx2400000346</p> |
| 6 | Remove the stoppers from the guide pins and remove the gearbox. |  <p>xx2400000388</p>                                                                             |

**Refitting the gearbox**

Use these procedures to refit the axis-2 gearbox.

**DANGER**

Never remove both the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes at the same time.  
One side must always be attached when the gearbox on the other side is removed.  
If not, there is a potential risk that a severe accident will happen.

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

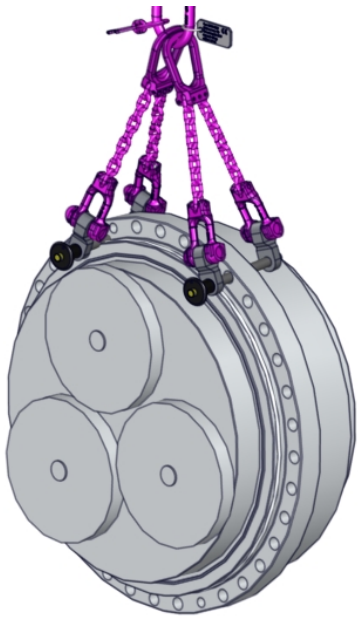


#### Note

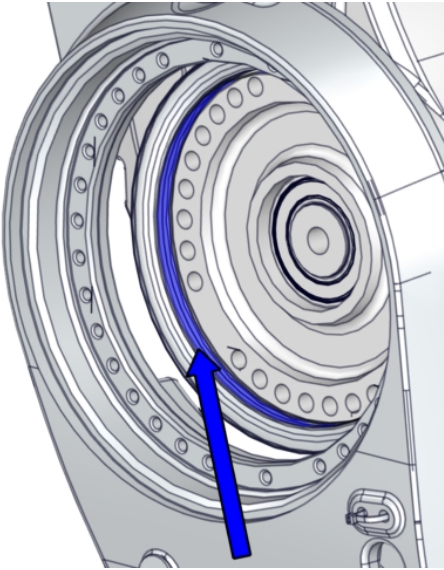
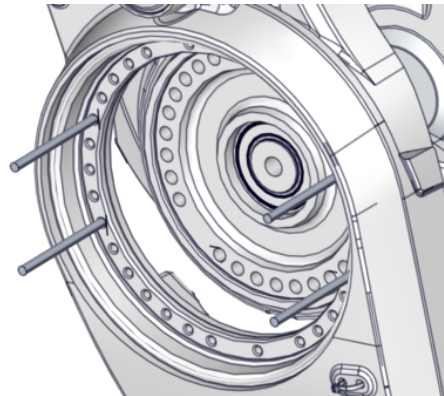
The gearbox attachment screws are arranged in three areas. It will not be possible to reach all screws with the robot in only one position.

Removal and refitting must be performed with the robot in several positions, which are described in the procedures.

#### Preparations before refitting the gearbox

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The weight of the gearbox is 98 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                                           |
| 2 | Attach the lifting accessory and lift the gearbox.                                                                                                                                                    | Lifting accessory for gear: 3HAC081585-001<br><br><br><br>xx2400000347 |
| 3 | Wipe the contact surfaces between gearbox and frame clean from any contamination.                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                           |

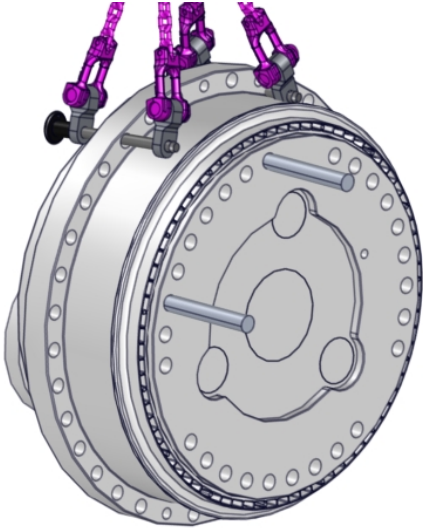
*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Apply some grease on the thin chamfer on the lower arm.                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Grease: 3HAC042536-001 (Shell Gadus S2)</p>  <p>xx2400000389</p>                                                               |
| 5 | <p>Fit guide pins in the frame.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the gearbox/gear slide better.</p> | <p>Guide pin, M12x200 / Guide pin, M12x250, 3HAC13056-3 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2300001870</p> |

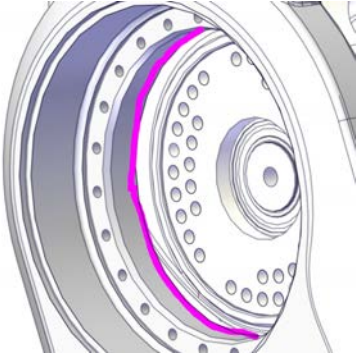
Continues on next page

5 Repair

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Fit guide pins to the back of the gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the gearbox/gear slide better.</p> | <p>Guide pin, M12x150: 3HAC13056-2 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2300001871</p> |

Refitting the axis-2 gearbox to frame

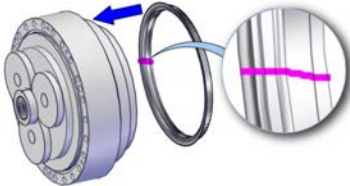
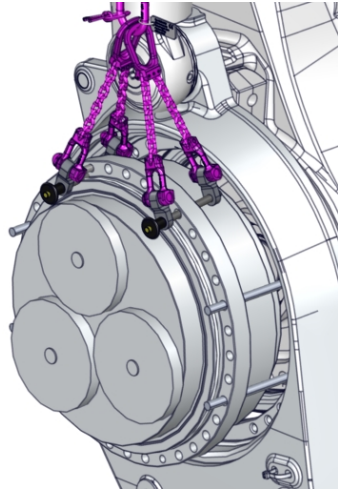
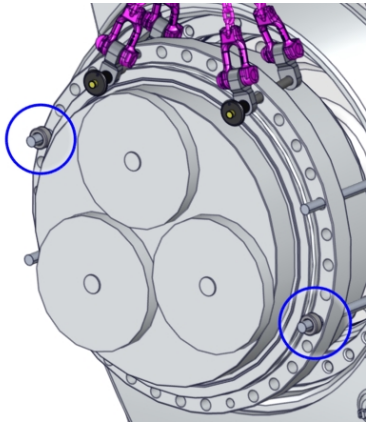
|   | Action                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Apply Mercasol (40 mm from the lower arm side) on the contact surface.</p> | <p>Mercasol</p>  <p>xx1500002349</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Area where to apply Mercasol, 40 mm wide, from the lower arm side.</p> |

Continues on next page



## 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

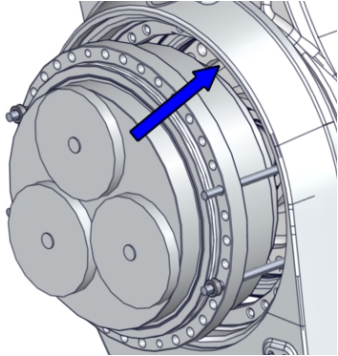
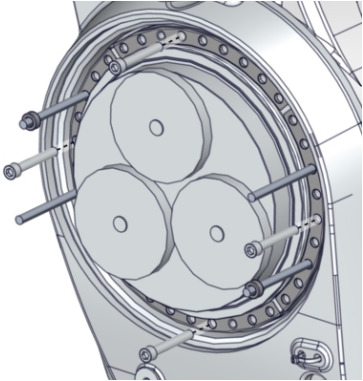
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Apply Mercasol on the surface of the sealing ring and attach it on the gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure that the sealing ring is attached correctly on the gearbox.</p> | <p>Mercasol</p>  <p>xx1500002350</p> |
| 3 | Lift the gearbox onto the guide pins.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  <p>xx2400000349</p>                |
| 4 | Fasten set collars on two of the guide pins.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  <p>xx2400000350</p>               |
| 5 | If the hole pattern does not match, use the adjustment tool to turn the gear to find the hole pattern.                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>Adjustment tool for gear:<br/>3HAC080331-001</p>                                                                     |

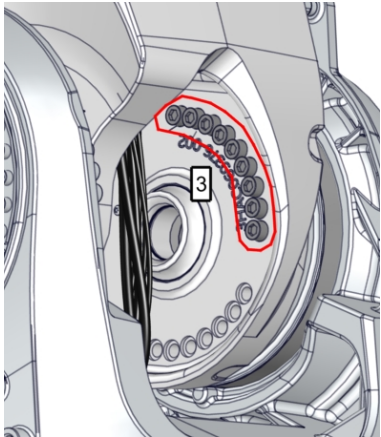
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | Remove the lifting accessories and push in the gearbox into the frame.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <br>xx2400000351                                                                                                              |
| 7 | Attach four attachment screws with nine-hole washers underneath, in a square and use them alternately to press the gearbox into position.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>The six-hole washers are needed for protection of the gearbox surface, when the screws are attached. | Tightening torque: 100 Nm<br>Hex socket head cap screw:<br>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br>500 (4 pcs)<br><br>xx2400000352 |

Refitting the axis-2 gearbox screws in area 3

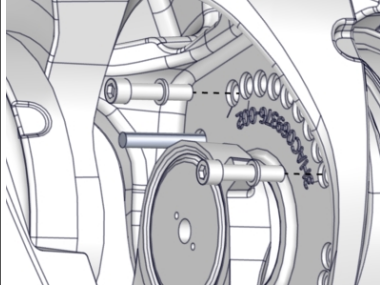
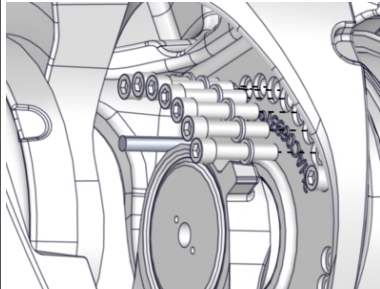
|   | Action       | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Find area 3. | <br>xx2300001868 |

Continues on next page

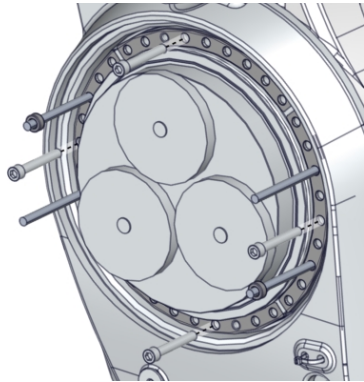


### 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p>Begin by fitting the screws and washers in the outermost holes.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make sure that the hole pattern match. If needed, use the adjustment tool in the gearbox to find the hole pattern.</p> | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br/>500 (2 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300001872</p>  |
| 3 | <p>Then attach the remaining screws with washers, in area 3.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Do not torque the screws at this point.</p>                                                                                 | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br/>500 (7 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300001873</p> |

#### Refitting the motor flange

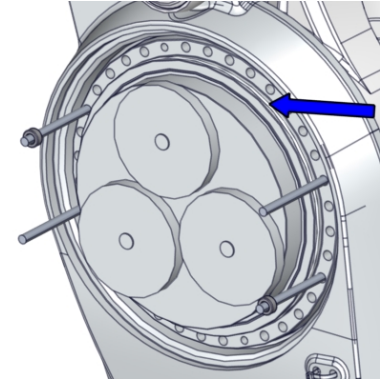
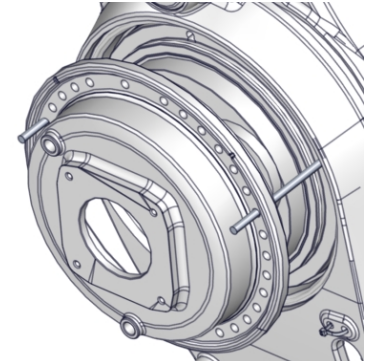
|   | Action                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the four attachment screws and nine-hole washers, previously attached in a square. |  <p>xx2400000352</p> |
| 2 | Clean the contact surfaces on gearbox and motor flange.                                   |                                                                                                           |

*Continues on next page*

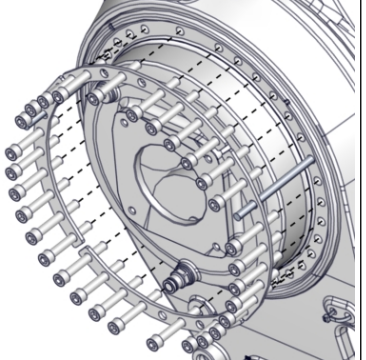
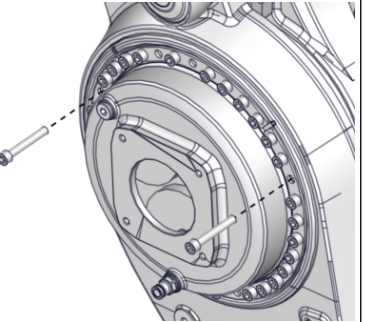
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                         |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Clean the o-ring and the o-ring groove on gearbox.                                                   | <br>xx2400000353                          |
| 4 | Lubricate the o-ring and fit to the gearbox.<br>Replace if damaged.                                  | Grease, Shell Gadus S2:<br>3HAC042536-001.<br>O-ring: 3HAC061327-067                                                         |
| 5 | Check the motor flange o-ring.<br>Replace if damaged.<br>Clean the motor flange from debris, if any. | O-ring: 3HAB3772-160<br><br>xx2300001867 |
| 6 | Lift the motor flange onto the guide pins.                                                           | <br>xx2300001866                        |
| 7 | Make sure the o-rings are in position and slide the motor flange into position.                      |                                                                                                                              |

*Continues on next page*

|    | Action                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8  | Fit the attachment screws with the four six-hole washers. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500</p>  <p>xx2300001865</p> |
| 9  | Remove the guide pins and attach the remaining screws.    |  <p>xx2300001863</p>                                                                     |
| 10 | Tighten all motor flange screws.                          | <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 120 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p>                                                                            |

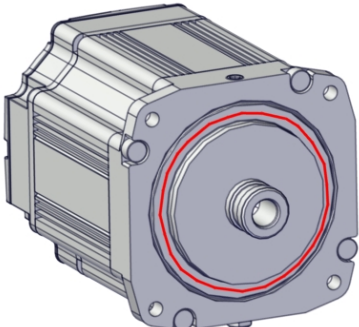
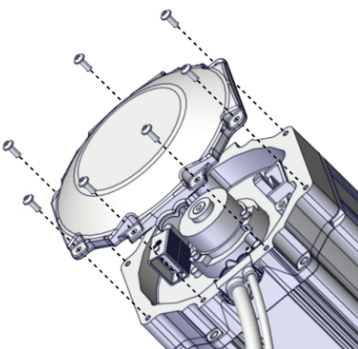
## Preparations prior to refitting motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                              |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p>                                                                                                                                                |                                                   |
| 2 | <p>Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.</p>  <b>Tip</b><br><p>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface.</p> | <p>Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063</p> |

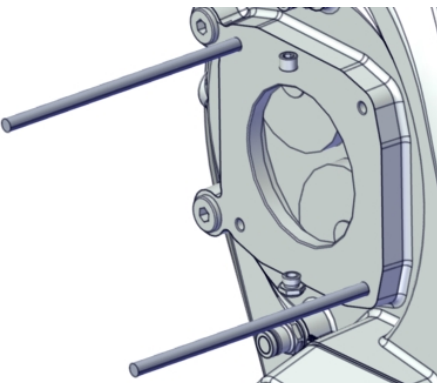
Continues on next page

5 Repair

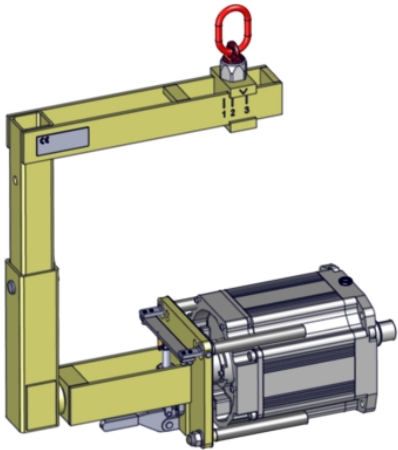
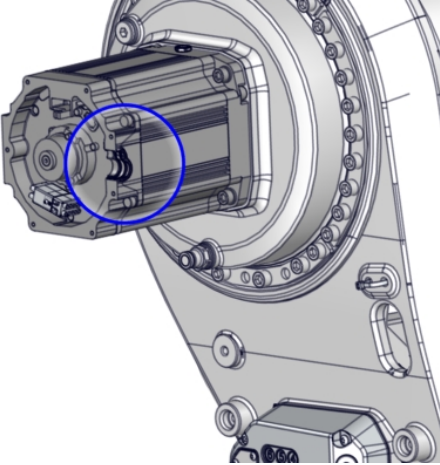
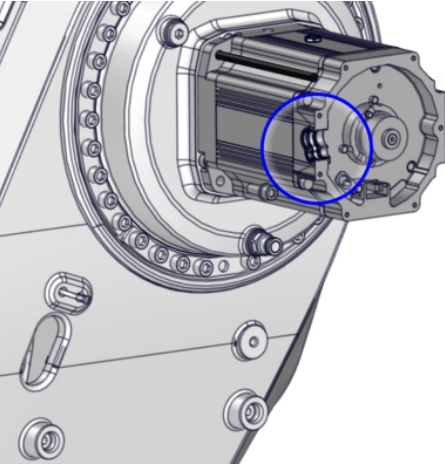
5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | <p>Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.</p> | <p>Flange sealant: Loctite 5800</p>  <p>xx2100000520</p> |
| 4 | <p>Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2100000596</p>                                    |

Refitting the axis-2 motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Fit guide pins in opposite holes.</p>                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2100000593</p> |
| 2 | <div> <b>CAUTION</b></div> <p>The weight of the motor is 24 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                     |

Continues on next page

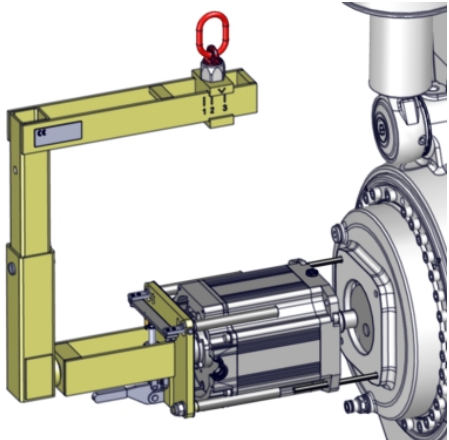
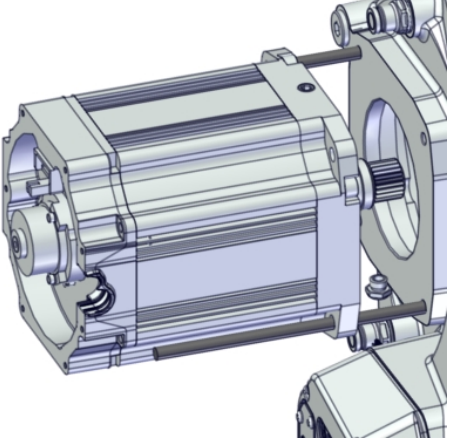
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Apply the lifting accessory.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Lifting accessory, motor: 3HAC15534-1<br/>Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1</p>  <p>xx2400000264</p>                                                                                                                                          |
| 4 | <p></p> <p><b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure the cable gland opening is turned the correct way.</p> | <p><b>Axis-2 motor:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000265</p> <p><b>Axis-3 motor:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000266</p> |

Continues on next page

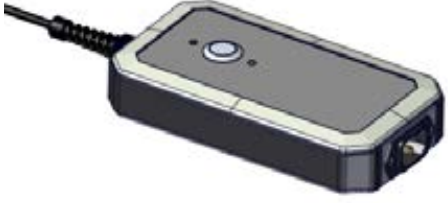
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Lift the motor and put it on the guide pins as close as possible to its final position without pushing the motor pinion into the gear. | <br>xx2400000263  |
| 6 | Remove the lifting accessory and allow the motor to rest on the guide pins.                                                            | <br>xx2000000457 |

*Continues on next page*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | <p>Release the brakes of the motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 8 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 9 | <p>Apply the rotation tool.</p> <p>Use caution and fit the motor in its final position while at the same time rotating the motor pinion slightly using the rotation tool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear of the gearbox.</li> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> <li>• Make sure that the direction of the cable exit is facing the correct way.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Rotation tool M4: 3HAB7887-1</p>                                                                                                                                                                   |

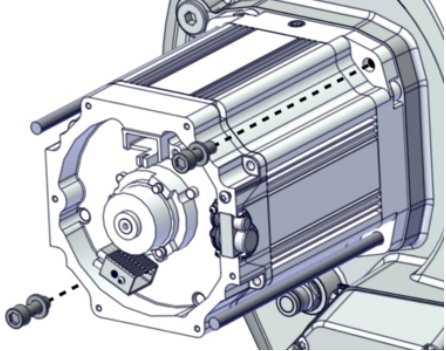
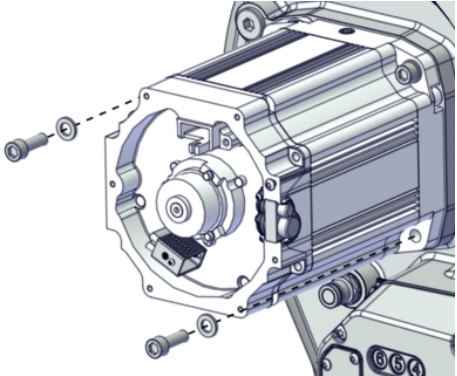
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

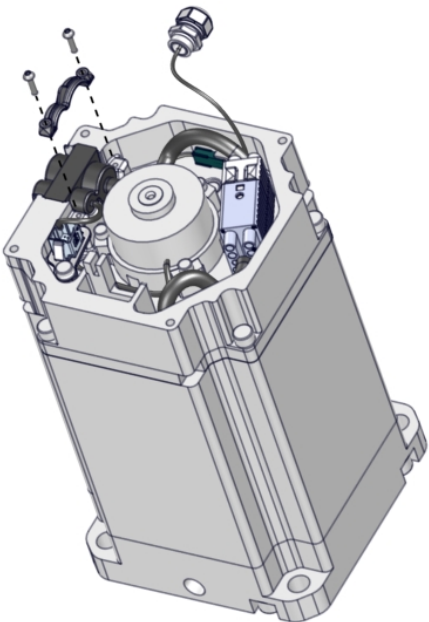
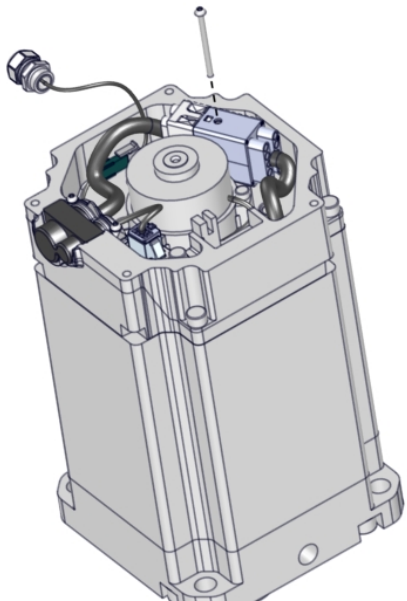
| Action |                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10     | Fit two of the attachment screws and washers.<br>Use a bits extender in order to reach the screws. | Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9<br>Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)<br>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2000000467 |
| 11     | Remove the guide pins and refit the remaining attachment screws.                                   | Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9<br>Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)<br><br>xx2300000044                              |
| 12     | Tighten the screws.                                                                                | Tightening torque: 50 Nm.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 13     | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 14     | Perform a leak-down test.                                                                          | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                |

#### Connecting the motor cables

| Action |                                               | Note |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| 1      | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |      |

*Continues on next page*

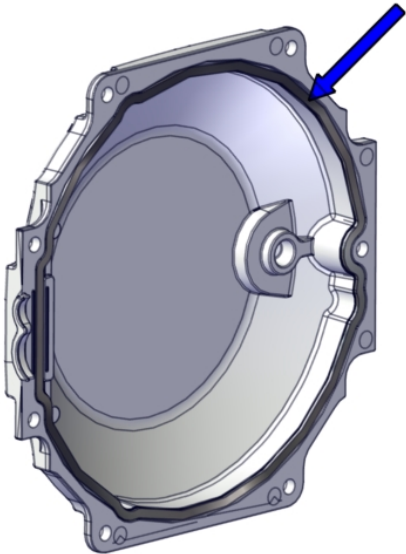


|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | Connect the motor cables.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | <p>Fit a screw to the power connector.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms.</p> | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p>                        |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

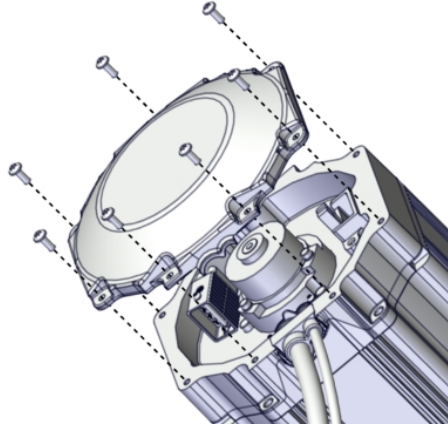
5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5<br>Inspect the gasket.<br>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.                                                                                                                   | Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:<br>Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:<br>3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)<br>Axis-4:<br>Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:<br>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)<br><br>xx2100000600 |
| 6<br> <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

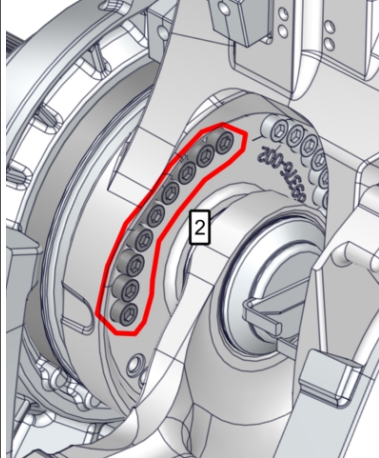
Continues on next page

## 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid. | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p> <p>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2100000596</p> |

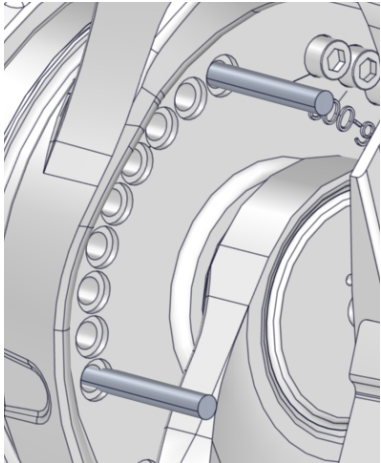
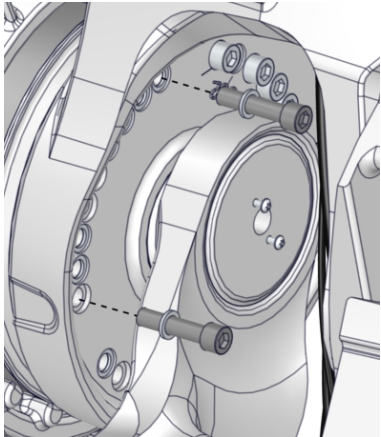
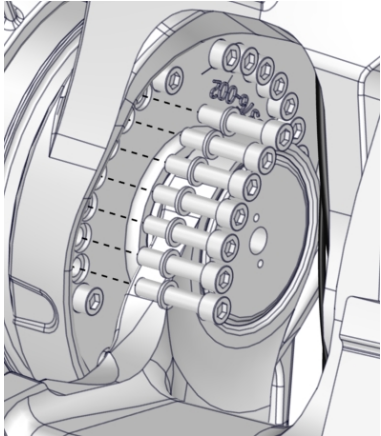
## Refitting the axis-2 gearbox screws in area 2

|   | Action       | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Find area 2. |  <p>xx2300001860</p> |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

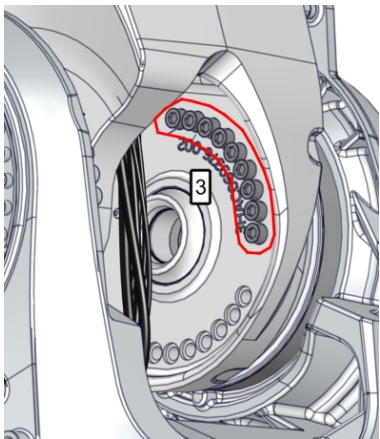
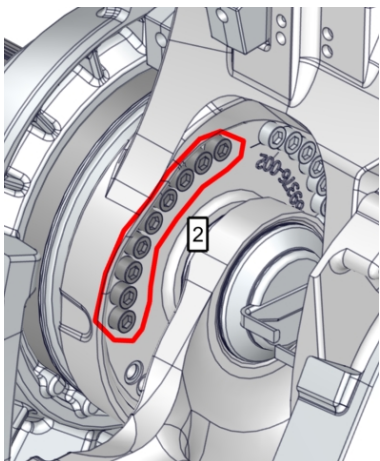
5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the guide pins.                                                                                                                                                                                      | <br>xx2300001862                                                                                  |
| 3 | Begin by fitting the screws and washers in the outermost holes.                                                                                                                                             | Hex socket head cap screw:<br>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br>500 (2 pcs)<br><br>xx2300001874  |
| 4 | Then attach the remaining screws with washers, in area 2.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>Do not torque the screws at this point. | Hex socket head cap screw:<br>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br>500 (7 pcs)<br><br>xx2300001875 |

Continues on next page

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

## Securing the axis-2 gearbox screws in areas 2 and 3

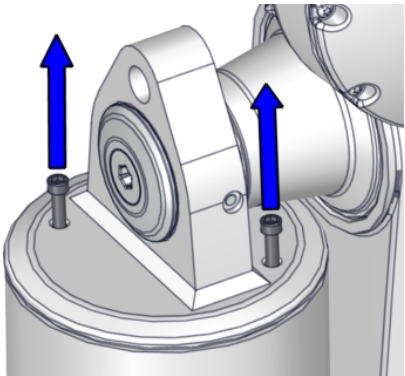
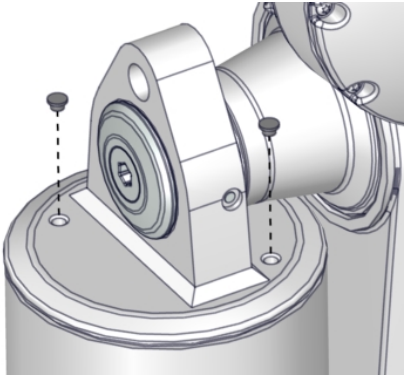
|   | Action                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Tighten the attachment screws in area 3. | <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 300 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p>  <p>xx2300001868</p>   |
| 2 | Tighten the attachment screws in area 2. | <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 300 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p>  <p>xx2300001860</p> |

Continues on next page

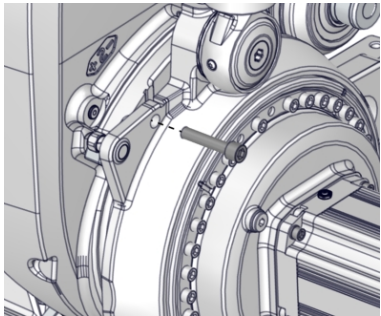
5 Repair

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

Restoring the pressure of the balancing device

|   | Action                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Restore the pressure of the balancing device by unscrewing the two screws alternately little by little. | <br>xx2300001855  |
| 2 | Remove the screws.                                                                                      |                                                                                                      |
| 3 | Refit the plastic plugs in the holes on top of the balancing device.                                    | <br>xx2300001643 |

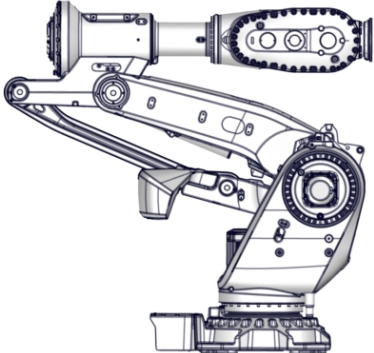
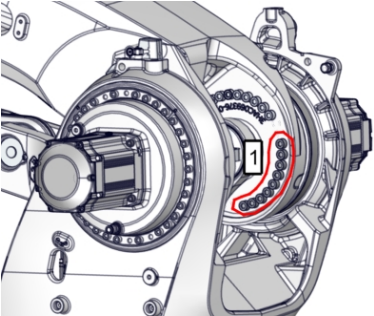
Removing the lock screw

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <div>Remove the axis-2 lock screw.</div> <div> <b>Note</b><br/>If the screw is jammed, turn on the power to the robot temporarily and carefully jog axis 2, until it is possible to unscrew the lock screw completely.</div> | <br>xx2400000355 |

Continues on next page

5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox  
Continued

Refitting the axis-2 gearbox screws in area 1

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                      |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: -65°</li> <li>• Axis 3: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 4: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul>                                                                            |  <p>xx2400000339</p>   |
| 2 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p> |                                                                                                           |
| 3 | Find area 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  <p>xx2300001852</p> |

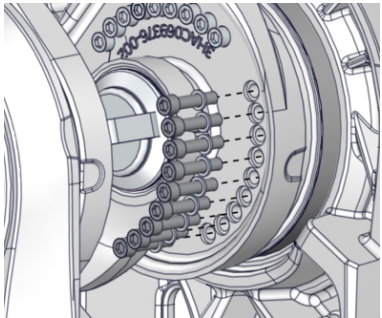
Continues on next page



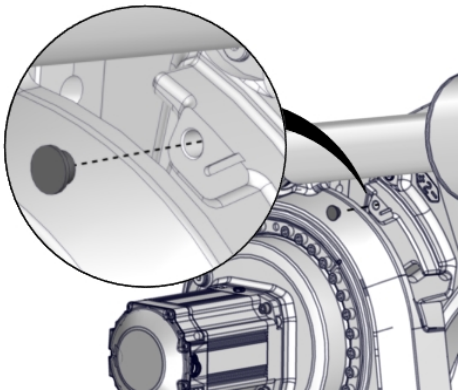
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.2 Replacing the axis-2 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Refit and tighten the screws in area 1.    | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br/>500 (9 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: standard torque<br/>300 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p>  <p>xx2300001853</p> |
| 5 | Examine that all screws have been torqued. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

#### Refitting the plastic plug to the axis-2 lock screw hole

|   | Action                                                | Note                                                                                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refit the plastic plug to the axis-2 lock screw hole. |  <p>xx2400001682</p> |

#### Concluding procedure

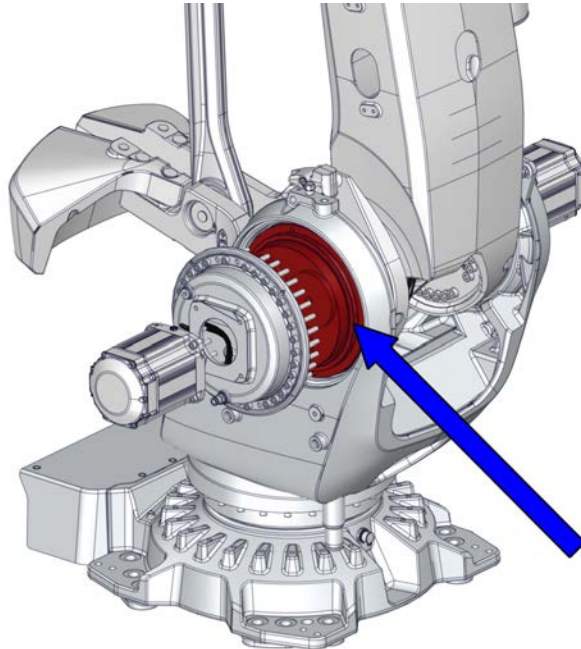
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note                                                                 |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refill the gearbox with oil.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | See <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-2 gearbox on page 160</a> . |
| 2 | Calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> .                        |
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><p>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a>.</p> |                                                                      |



### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

#### Location of the gearbox

The gearbox is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001598

#### Summary of the replacement procedure

This is a brief summary of the replacement procedure, containing the major actions to be performed.

- 1 Drain the axis-3 gearbox.
- 2 Lock the arm system with a lock screw.
- 3 Remove the axis-3 motor.
- 4 Replace the axis-3 gearbox.

#### Required spare parts



#### Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part | Article number | Note                           | Level |
|------------|----------------|--------------------------------|-------|
| Gearbox    | 3HAC074200-006 | Includes o-ring 3HAC061327-067 | L2    |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                               | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lock screw, M16x80                      | -                           | Used to secure lower arm / movable arm structure.                                                                       |
| Guide pin, M12x150                      | 3HAC13056-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Brake release tool                      | 3HAC081310-001              | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                           |
| Bits extender                           | 3HAC12342-1                 | 300 mm, bits 1/2"                                                                                                       |
| Guide pin, M10x150                      | 3HAC15521-2                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Removal tool motor M12                  | 3HAC14631-1                 | Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br>Always use removal tools in pairs.                                         |
| Lifting accessory, motor                | 3HAC15534-1                 | Lifting instruction 3HAC15640-2 enclosed.                                                                               |
| Lifting accessory (chain)               | 3HAC15556-1                 | Lifting instruction 3HAC15880-2 enclosed.                                                                               |
| Guide pin, M12x200 / Guide pin, M12x250 | 3HAC13056-3                 | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Screws M12x100, fully threaded          | -                           | Used to push out and push in the gearbox, if necessary.                                                                 |
| Lifting accessory for gear              | 3HAC081585-001              | For lifting the gearbox                                                                                                 |
| Adjustment tool for gear                | 3HAC080331-001              | Used to rotate the gear for matching hole pattern with frame.                                                           |
| Rotation tool M4                        | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion.<br>Add screw M4.                                                                       |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration   | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                        | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

#### Required service parts

| Consumable | Article number | Note                                                                   |
|------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| O-ring     | 3HAC061327-067 | On gearbox.<br>Included in gearbox spare part, but replace if damaged. |

*Continues on next page*

| Consumable                             | Article number                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Connection box cover FS180 with gasket | 3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)<br>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)<br>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection) | Replace if damaged.<br>On axis-3 motor<br>A threaded connection is required for cooling fan option. |
| O-ring                                 | 3HAB3772-160                                                                                                                                                               | On motor flange.<br>Replace if damaged.                                                             |
| O-ring, G 1/2"                         | 3HAC061327-059                                                                                                                                                             | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                                                               |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Isopropanol                                                                                         |
| Rust preventive                        | 3HAC034903-001                                                                                                                                                             | Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.                                              |
| Grease                                 | 3HAC042536-001                                                                                                                                                             | Shell Gadus S2                                                                                      |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7200                                                                                        |
| Cleaning agent                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 7063                                                                                        |
| Flange sealant                         | -                                                                                                                                                                          | Loctite 5800                                                                                        |
| Lubricating oil                        | -                                                                                                                                                                          | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gear-boxes on page 153</a> .                                 |

### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li> <li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li> </ul>                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                              | Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:<br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot. |      |

#### Removing the gearbox

Use these procedures to remove the axis-3 gearbox.



#### **DANGER**

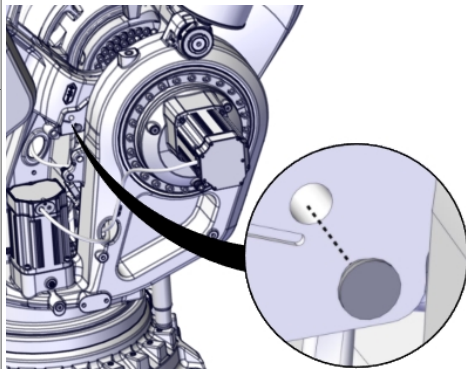
Never remove both the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes at the same time.  
One side must always be attached when the gearbox on the other side is removed.  
If not, there is a potential risk that a severe accident will happen.



#### **Note**

The gearbox attachment screws are arranged in three areas. It will not be possible to reach all screws with the robot in only one position.  
Removal and refitting must be performed with the robot in several positions, which are described in the procedures.

#### Preparations

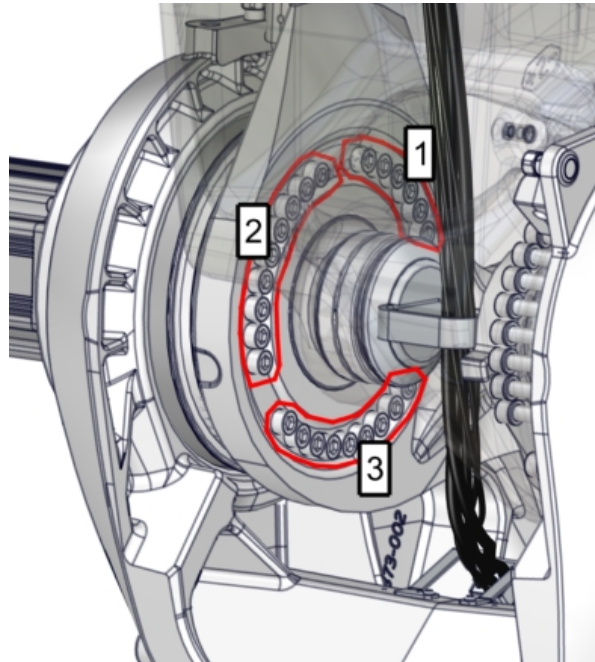
| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                      |
| 2 Remove any tool or other equipment fitted on the turning disc.                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                      |
| 3 Drain the axis-3 gearbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | See <a href="#">Draining the axis-3 gearbox on page 166</a> .                        |
| 4 Jog axis-3 to a position where the plastic plug for the axis-3 lock screw hole is accessible.                                                                                                                                                   |  |
| 5 Remove the plastic plug that covers the axis-3 lock screw hole.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>Keep the plastic plugs. They must be refitted after the work is done. |                                                                                      |

The three areas of screws that secure axis-3 gearbox to parallel arm

The axis-3 gearbox is attached to the parallel arm with attachment screws arranged in three areas. Use this figure to understand the position of the three areas, when

*Continues on next page*

performing this procedure. The figure shows the location of the areas when the robot stands in calibration position.



xx2400000356

The order when removing the attachment screws: area 1, then area 2, and last area 3.

The order when attaching the axis-2 gearbox to the lower arm is reversed: area 3, then area 2, and last area 1.

#### Robot position for access to screws in area 1

With the robot in this position it is possible to reach the screws in area 1 of screws that secure the axis-3 gearbox to the parallel arm.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note             |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot into position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: +45°</li> <li>• Axis 3: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 4: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul> | <br>xx2400000357 |

*Continues on next page*

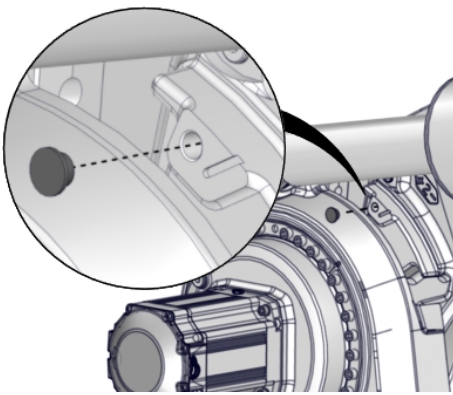
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |      |

#### Removing the plastic plug of axis-2 lock screw hole

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the plastic plug that covers the axis-2 lock screw hole.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>Keep the plastic plugs. They must be refitted after the work is done. | <br><br>xx2400001682 |

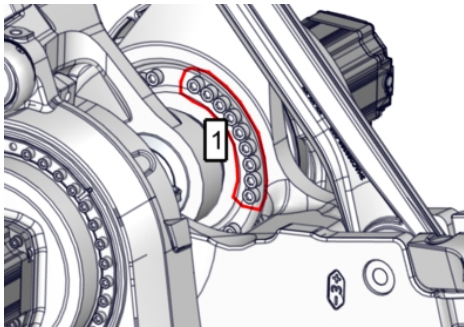
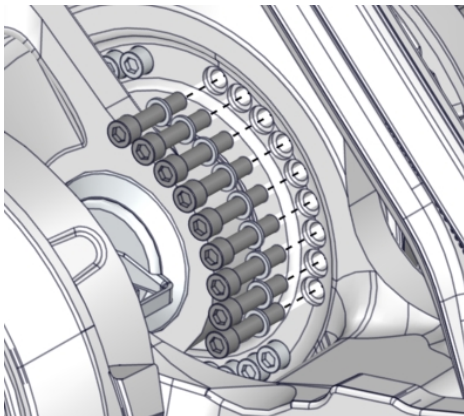
#### Removing the axis-3 gearbox screws in area 1

|  <b>Note</b><br><br>The gearbox attachment screws are arranged in three areas. It will not be possible to reach all screws with the robot in only one position.<br><br>This procedure describes how to reach the screws in area 1. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note |
| 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Never remove the screws on both axis-2 and axis-3 at the same time.<br><br>One side must always be attached when the gearbox on the other side is removed. If not, there is a potential risk that a severe accident will happen. |      |

*Continues on next page*

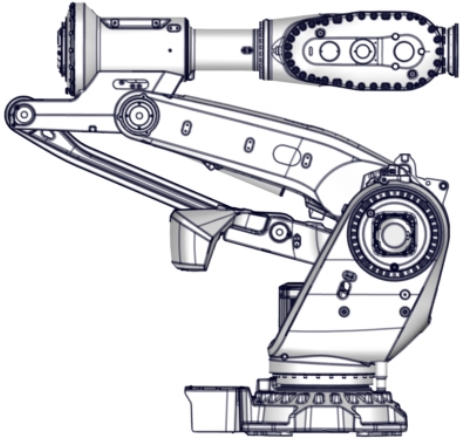
### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>2 Find area 1.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Do not remove screws in area 2 or area 3 at this point.</p> |  <p>xx2400000358</p>  |
| <p>3 Remove the screws in area 1.</p>                                                                                                                                                     |  <p>xx2400000359</p> |

#### Robot position for access to screws in area 2

With the robot in this position it is possible to reach the screws in area 2 of screws that secure the axis-3 gearbox to the parallel arm.

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1 Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: -65°</li> <li>• Axis 3: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 4: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul> |  <p>xx2400000339</p> |

*Continues on next page*

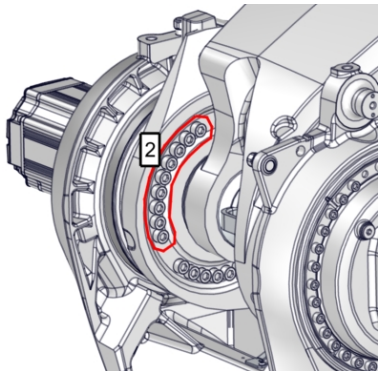
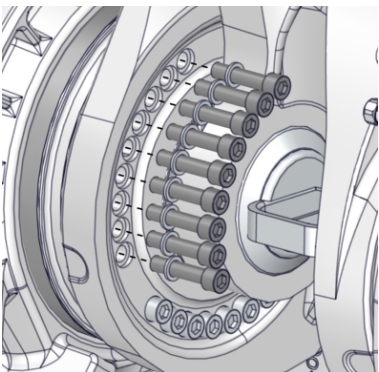


5 Repair

5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 2 | <div> <b>DANGER</b></div> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p> |      |

Removing the axis-3 gearbox screws in area 2

|   | Action                                  | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Find area 2.                            | <br>xx2400000360  |
| 2 | Remove the attachment screws in area 2. | <br>xx2400000361 |

Continues on next page

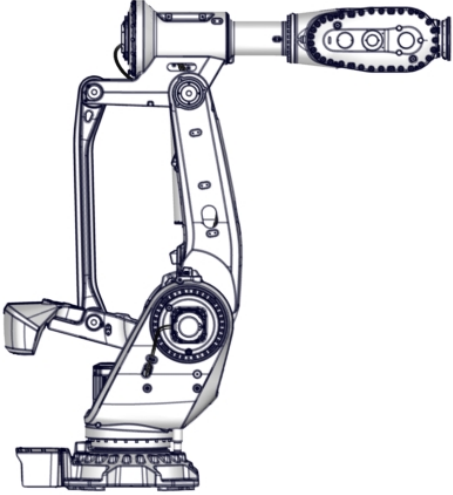


### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

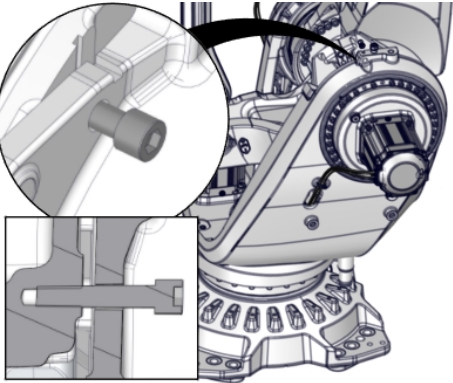
*Continued*

Robot position for continued procedure

Put the robot in this position for the continued procedures.

|   | Action                                 | Note                                                                                                   |
|---|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot to calibration position. |  <p>xx2300001691</p> |

Locking the axis-3 position

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Insert the lock screw into the axis-3 lock screw hole. Do not tighten. If needed, adjust the position of the robot to make it possible to insert the lock screw.</p> <p>The lock screw is used to secure the weight of the movable arm structure, in order to avoid accidents or damage.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not insert the screw fully, leave space underneath the screw head.</p> <p>Inserting the screw all the way will result in tension in the arm system which may cause damage to the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes.</p> | <p>Lock screw, M16x80</p>  <p>xx2400000236</p> |
| 2 | Release the brakes on axis-3 using the brake release button, and let the axis rest on the lock screw.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                    |
| 3 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                    |

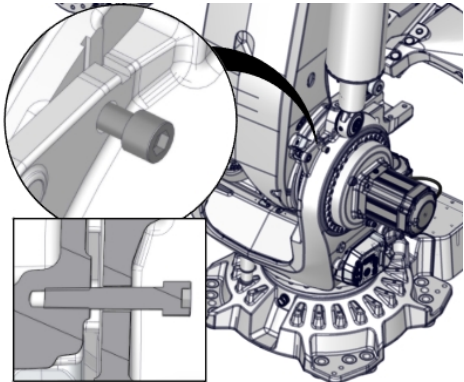
*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Locking the axis-2 position

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                             |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Insert the lock screw into the axis-2 lock screw hole. Do not tighten. If needed, adjust the position of the robot to make it possible to insert the lock screw.</p> <p>The lock screw is used to secure the weight of the movable arm structure, in order to avoid accidents or damage.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Do not insert the screw fully, leave space underneath the screw head.</p> <p>Inserting the screw all the way will result in tension in the arm system which may cause damage to the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes.</p> | <p>Lock screw, M16x80</p>  <p>xx2300001881</p> |
| 2 | <p>Release the brakes on axis-2 using the brake release button, and let the axis rest on the lock screw.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                  |
| 3 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• electric power supply</li><li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>• air pressure supply</li></ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                  |

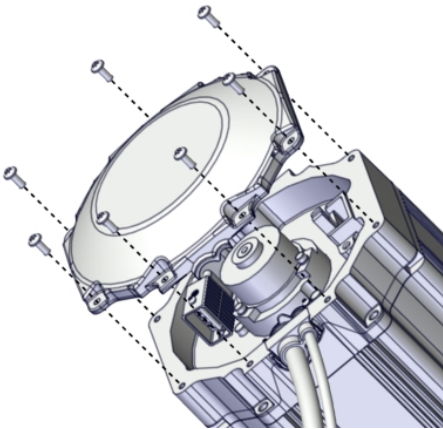
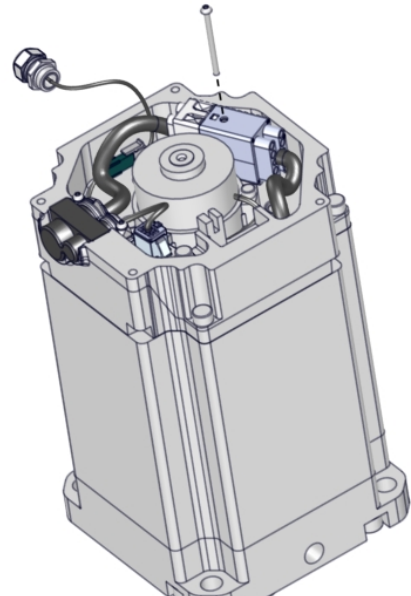
#### Disconnecting the axis-3 motor cables

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.</p> |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

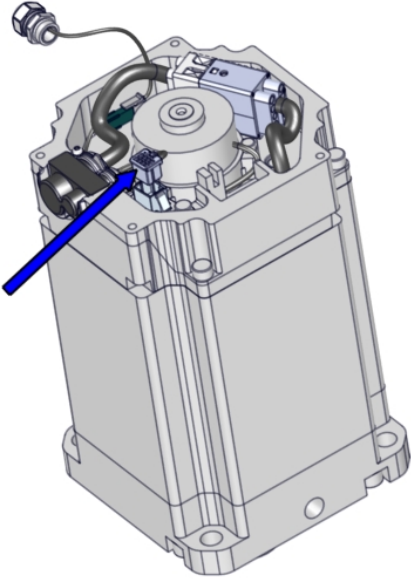
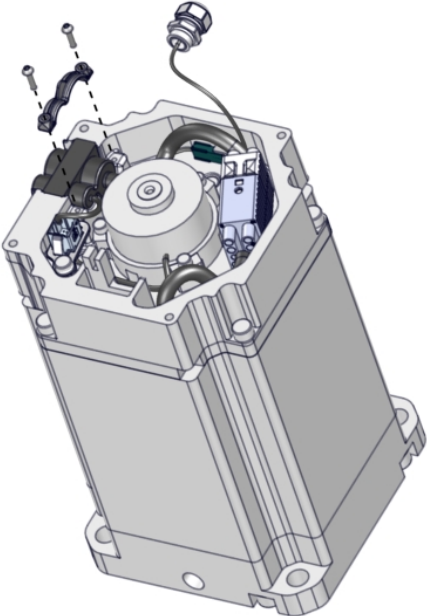
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Remove the motor cover by removing the screws.                                                              | <br>xx210000596   |
| 3 | Disconnect the power cable connector by first removing the attachment screw and then parting the connector. | <br>xx2200001736 |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

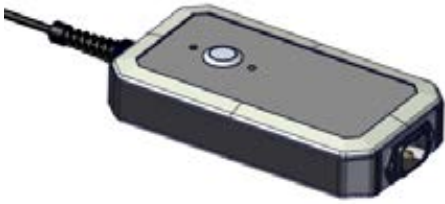
5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                   | Note                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Disconnect the signal cable connector by pulling it out. | <br><br>xx2200001737  |
| 5 | Remove the cable bracket by removing the screws.         | <br><br>xx2200001738 |
| 6 | Remove the motor cables from the motor.                  |                                                                                                         |

Removing the axis-3 motor

|   | Action                                                                       | Note |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Before removing the motor, make sure that the gearbox is completely drained. |      |

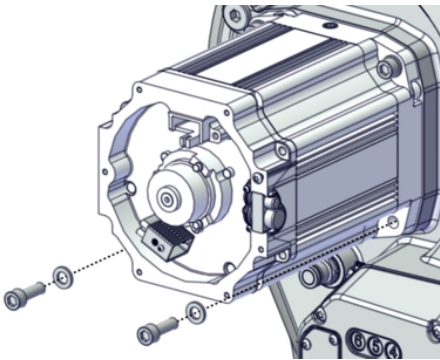
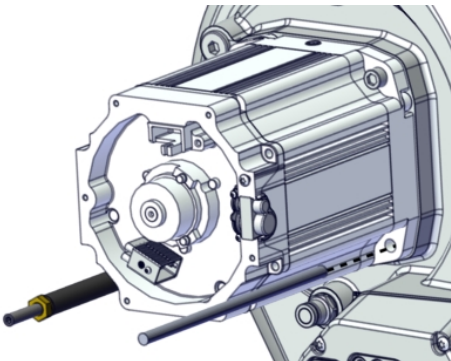
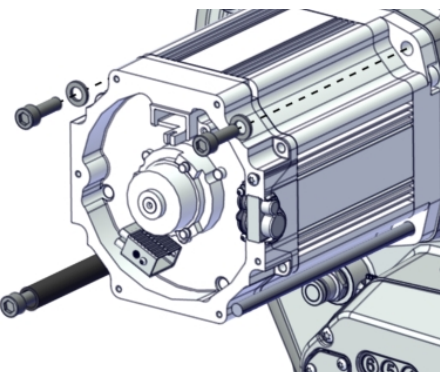
Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>When releasing the holding brakes of the motor, the lower arm will be movable and may fall down if not secured. Verify that the lower arm is secured as previously described, before continuing.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 3 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Releasing the brakes on the axis-2 or axis-3 motor results in weight transfer of upper and lower arm weight to the inserted lock screw in the lower arm or to the attached lifting accessories (whichever is used). If lifting accessories are used, verify that the lifting chains and roundslings are stretched by raising the overhead crane, before releasing the brakes.</p> <p>Release the brakes on the motor with the brake release tool, to unload the weight:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br/>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

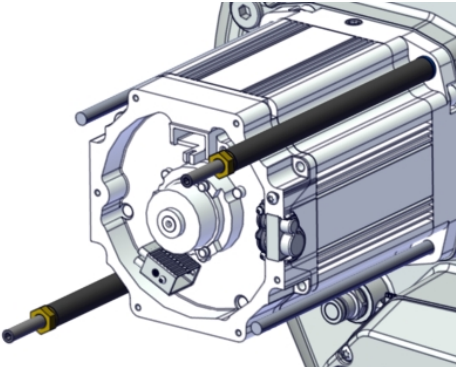
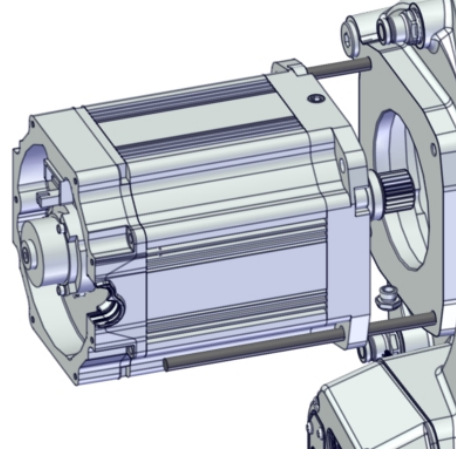
5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 Remove the two lower screws.<br>Use a bits extender in order to reach the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                          | Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2000000468                                              |
| 5 Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br><br>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the motor slide better. | Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1<br><br>xx2000000456 |
| 6 Remove the remaining two screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1<br><br>xx2200001150                                            |

Continues on next page

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

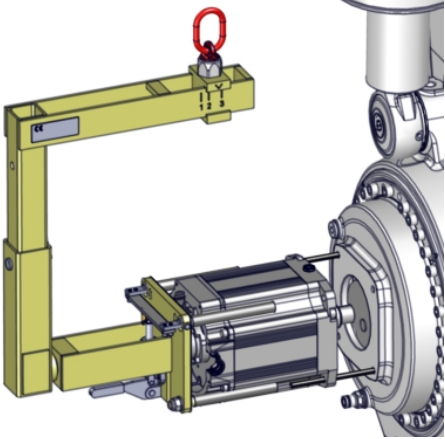
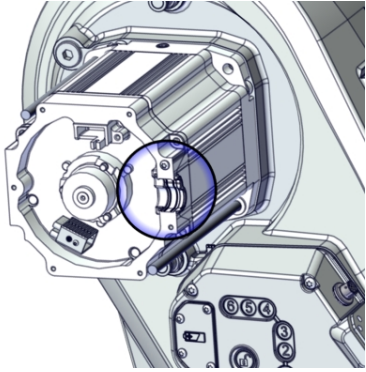
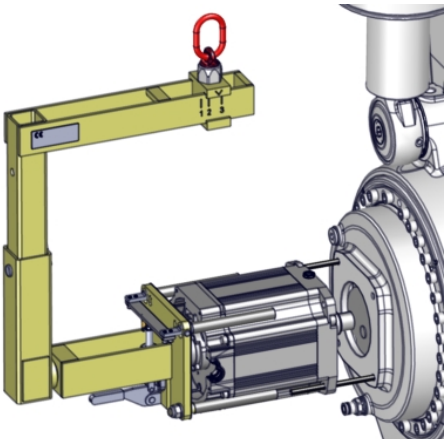
|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7  | <p>Fit a guide pin in the non-threaded hole.<br/>Fit a removal tool in the threaded hole.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the motor slide better.</p> | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Removal tool motor M12: 3HAC14631-1</p>  <p>xx2300000043</p> |
| 8  | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 9  | <p>Activate the brake release tool again (release the brakes).</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>The power is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p>                                                                                                                    |
| 10 | <p>Press the motor out of its position by using the removal tools.<br/>Remove the removal tools.</p>                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Used to push out the motor, if necessary.<br/>Always use removal tools in pairs.</p>                                                                                               |
| 11 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the motor is 24 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 12 | <p>Carefully lift the motor out on the guide pins, in order to get the pinion away from the gear and let it rest on the guide pins.</p>                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx20000000457</p>                                                                             |
| 13 | <p>Disconnect the brake release tool.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*



5 Repair

5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>14 Fasten the lifting accessory. Attach the lifting chain to the accessory and an over-head crane.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Lifting accessory, motor: 3HAC15534-1<br/>Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1</p>  <p>xx2400000263</p> |
| <p>15 Remove the motor by sliding it out on the guide pins and lift it off.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make a note in which direction the cable gland hole is facing. The motor shall be refitted in the same position.</p>  <p>xx2100000595</p> |  <p>xx2400000263</p> <p>Make sure the pinion is not damaged.</p>                                            |

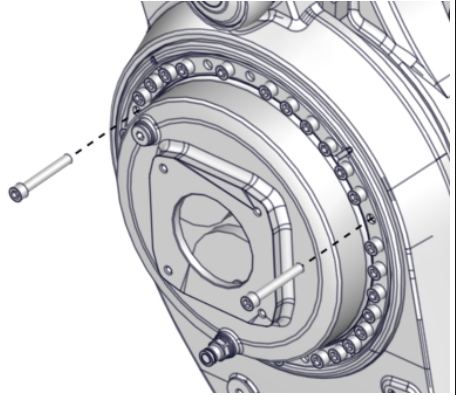
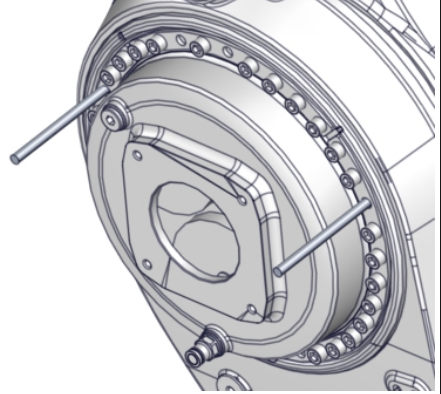
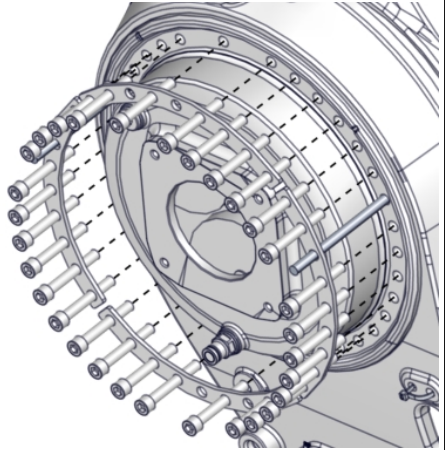
Continues on next page



### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Removing the motor flange

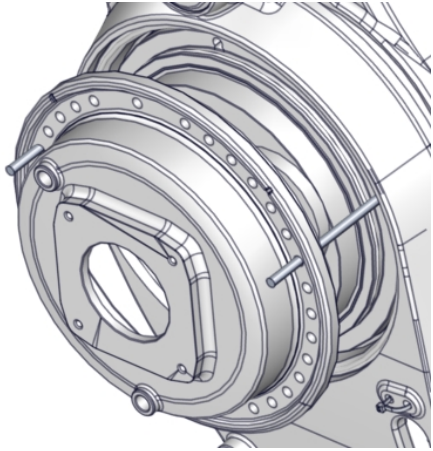
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove two attachment screws in opposite holes.                                                                                                                                                                          | <br>xx2300001863                                                               |
| 2 | Fit guide pins in the holes.                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Guide pin, M12x200 / Guide pin, M12x250, 3HAC13056-3</p> <br>xx2300001864 |
| 3 | Remove the remaining attachment screws and the washers.                                                                                                                                                                  | <br>xx2300001865                                                             |
| 4 |  <b>Note</b><br>There will be some oil spill when the motor flange is removed. Put some paper (or similar) to absorb the surplus oil. |                                                                                                                                                                  |

*Continues on next page*

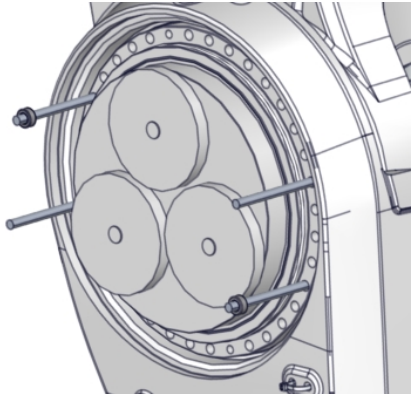
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

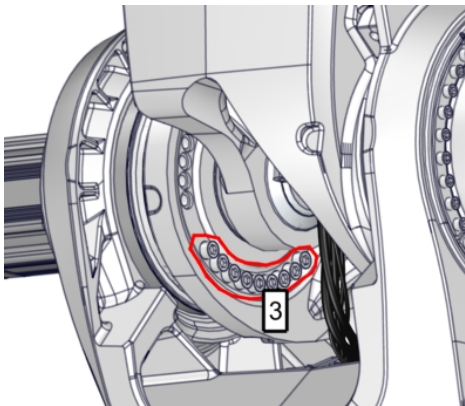
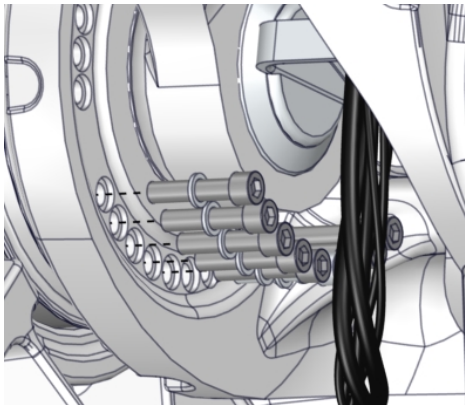
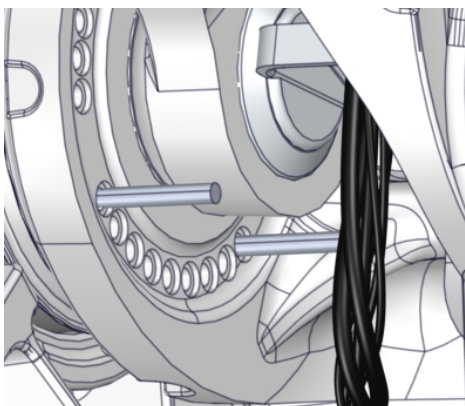
|   | Action                           | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Remove the motor flange.         | <br>xx2300001866   |
| 6 | Make sure the o-ring is present. | <br>xx2300001867 |

#### Installing guide pins

|   | Action                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                         |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Attach two additional guide pins in opposite holes, below the present ones.<br>Fasten set collars on two of the guide pins. | Guide pin, M12x200 / Guide pin, M12x250, 3HAC13056-3<br><br>xx2400000343 |

*Continues on next page*

## Removing the axis-3 gearbox screws in area 3

|   | Action                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Find area 3.                                                                        | <br>xx2400000363                                                                              |
| 2 | Remove the attachment screws that secure the gearbox to the parallel arm in area 3. | <br>xx2400000364                                                                             |
| 3 | Attach two guide pins in the holes of the area 3 screws.                            | <p>Guide pin, M12x150: 3HAC13056-2<br/>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p> <br>xx2400000362 |

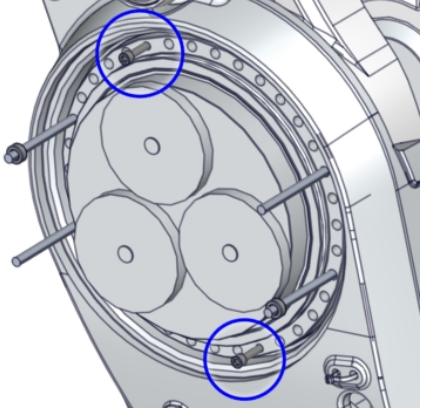
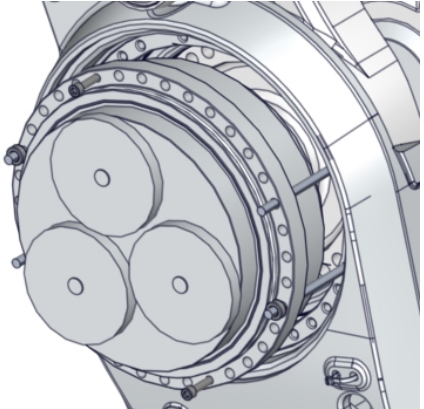
Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

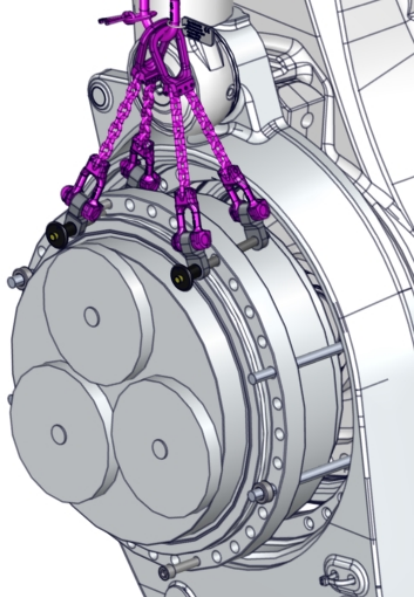
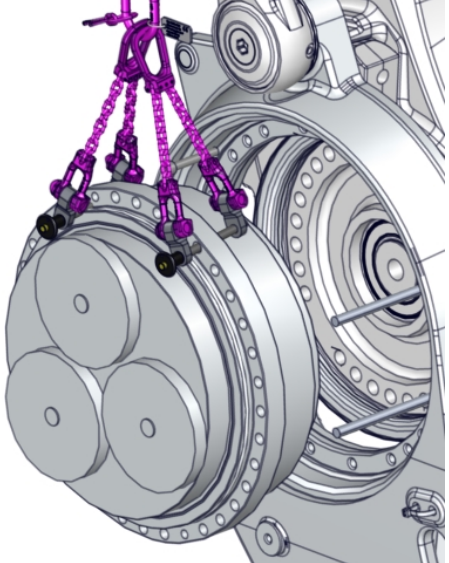
*Continued*

#### Removing the axis-3 gearbox

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Attach two screws and screw them in to push out the gearbox.                                                                                                                                                    | <p>Screws M12x100, fully threaded: Used to push out and push in the gearbox, if necessary.</p>  <p>xx2400000344</p> |
| 2 | After the gearbox has been pushed out, screw out the screws enough to use them to pull the gearbox further out.                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 3 | Pull and slide the gearbox out on the four guide pins, just enough to be able to attach the lifting accessories.                                                                                                |  <p>xx2400000345</p>                                                                                              |
| 4 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the gearbox is 98 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

*Continues on next page*

5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | Attach the lifting accessories to the gearbox.                  | <p>Lifting accessory for gear: 3HAC081585-001</p>  <p>xx2400000346</p> |
| 6 | Remove the stoppers from the guide pins and remove the gearbox. |  <p>xx2400000388</p>                                                                             |

**Refitting the gearbox**

Use these procedures to refit the axis-3 gearbox.

**DANGER**

Never remove both the axis-2 and axis-3 gearboxes at the same time.  
One side must always be attached when the gearbox on the other side is removed.  
If not, there is a potential risk that a severe accident will happen.

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

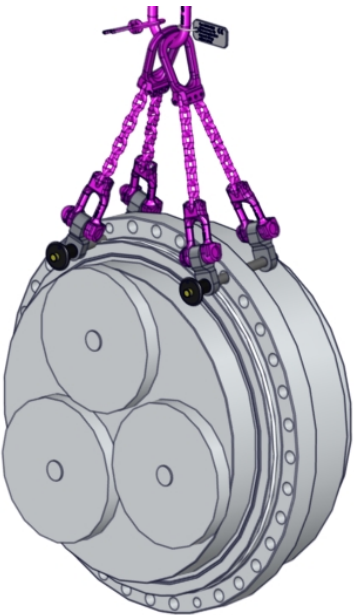
5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
Continued



Note

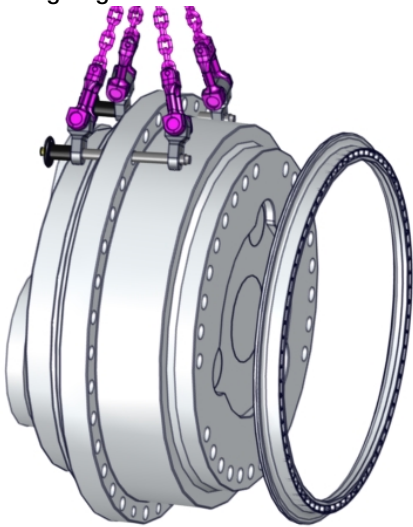
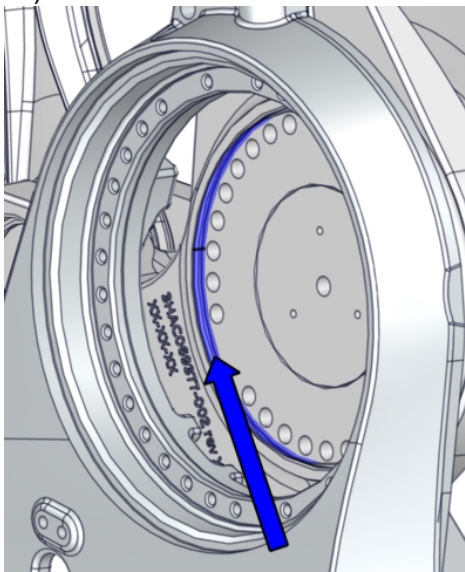
The gearbox attachment screws are arranged in three areas. It will not be possible to reach all screws with the robot in only one position.  
Removal and refitting must be performed with the robot in several positions, which are described in the procedures.

Preparations before refitting the gearbox

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><br>The weight of the gearbox is 98 kg<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2 | Attach the lifting accessory and lift the gearbox.                                                                                                                                                    | Lifting accessory for gear: 3HAC081585-001<br><br><br><br>xx2400000347 |

Continues on next page



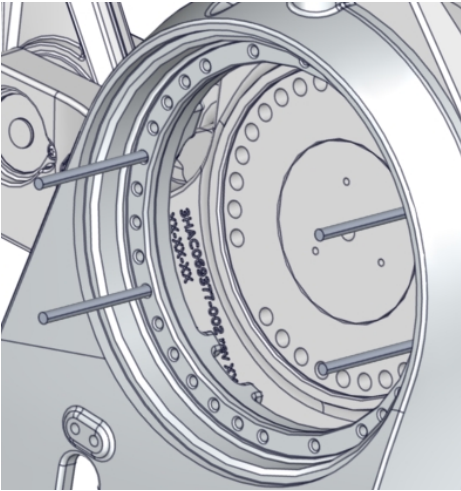
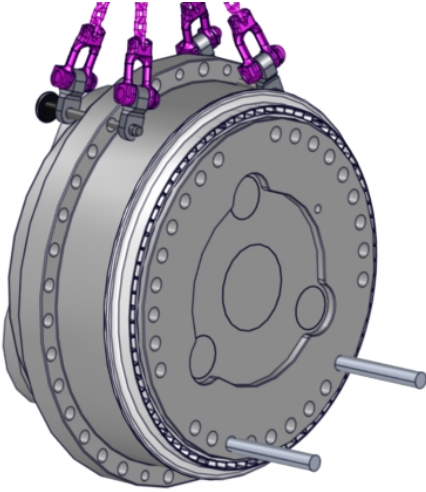
|   | Action                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Fit the sealing ring.<br>Replace if damaged.                                      | <p>Sealing ring: -</p>  <p>xx2400000348</p>                               |
| 4 | Wipe the contact surfaces between gearbox and frame clean from any contamination. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 5 | Apply some grease on the thin chamfer on the parallel arm.                        | <p>Grease: 3HAC042536-001 (Shell Gadus S2)</p>  <p>xx2400000390</p> |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Fit guide pins in the frame.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the gearbox/gear slide better.</p>                 | <p>Guide pin, M12x200 / Guide pin, M12x250, 3HAC13056-3 (4 pcs)</p> <p>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2400000391</p> |
| 7 | <p>Fit guide pins to the back of the gearbox.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Lubricate the guide pins with some grease to make the gearbox/gear slide better.</p> | <p>Guide pin, M12x150: 3HAC13056-2 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2400000392</p>                    |

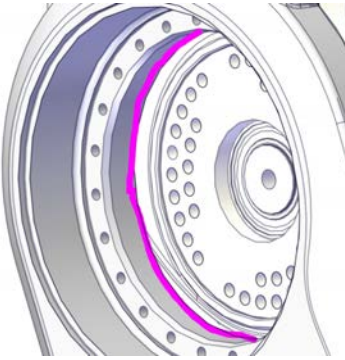
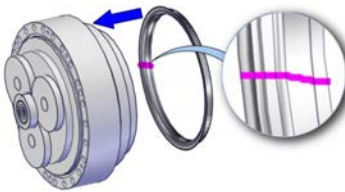
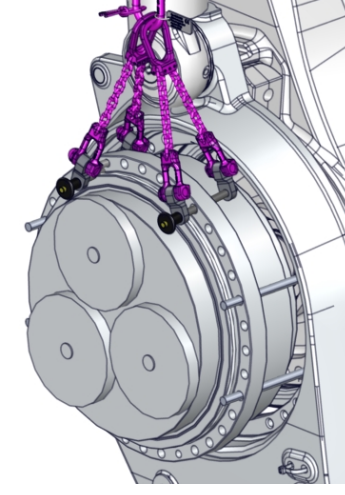
*Continues on next page*



### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Refitting the axis-3 gearbox to frame

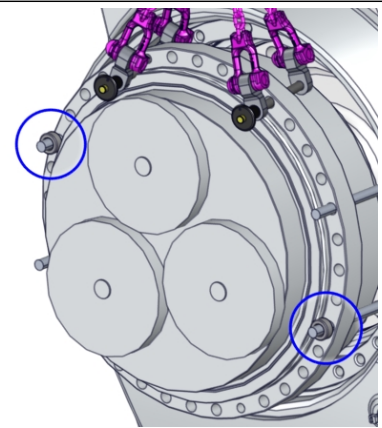
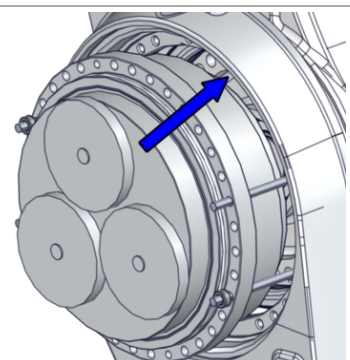
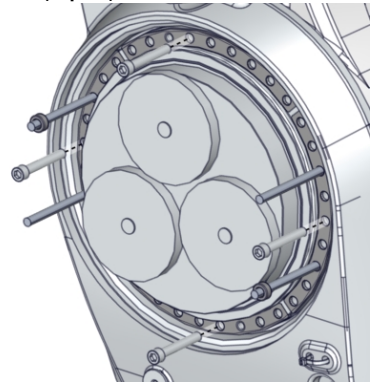
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Apply Mercasol (40 mm from the lower arm side) on the contact surface.                                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>Mercasol</p>  <p>xx1500002349</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Area where to apply Mercasol, 40 mm wide, from the lower arm side.</p> |
| 2 | Apply Mercasol on the surface of the sealing ring and attach it on the gearbox. <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Make sure that the sealing ring is attached correctly on the gearbox.</p> | <p>Mercasol</p>  <p>xx1500002350</p>                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 3 | Lift the gearbox onto the guide pins.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  <p>xx2400000349</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

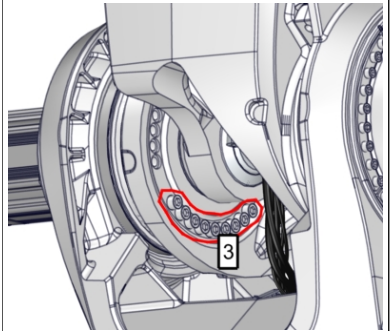
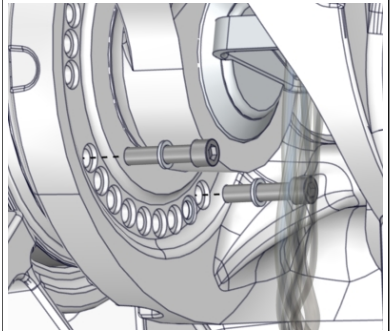
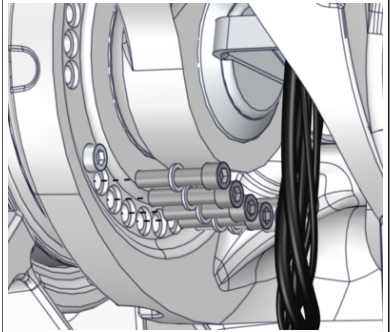
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Fasten set collars on two of the guide pins.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <br>xx2400000350                                                                                                            |
| 5 | If the hole pattern does not match, use the adjustment tool to turn the gear to find the hole pattern.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Adjustment tool for gear:<br>3HAC080331-001                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6 | Remove the lifting accessories and push in the gearbox into the frame.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <br>xx2400000351                                                                                                           |
| 7 | Attach four attachment screws with nine-hole washers underneath, in a square and use them alternately to press the gearbox into position. <div> </div> <b>Note</b><br>The six-hole washers are needed for protection of the gearbox surface, when the screws are attached. | Tightening torque: 100 Nm<br>Hex socket head cap screw:<br>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br>500 (4 pcs) <br>xx2400000352 |

*Continues on next page*

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Refitting the axis-3 gearbox screws in area 3

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Find area 3.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <br>xx2400000363                                                                                    |
| 2 | <p>Begin by fitting the screws and washers in the outermost holes.</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Make sure that the hole pattern match. If needed, use the adjustment tool in the gearbox to find the hole pattern.</p> | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)</p> <br>xx2400000365  |
| 3 | <p>Then attach the remaining screws with washers, in area 3.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Do not torque the screws at this point.</p>                                                                               | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (7 pcs)</p> <br>xx2400000366 |

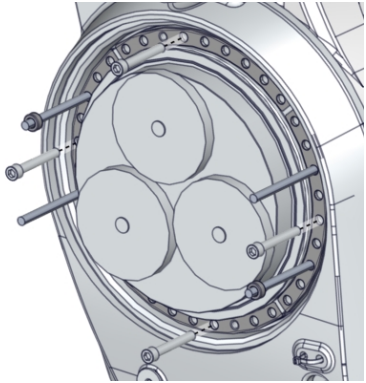
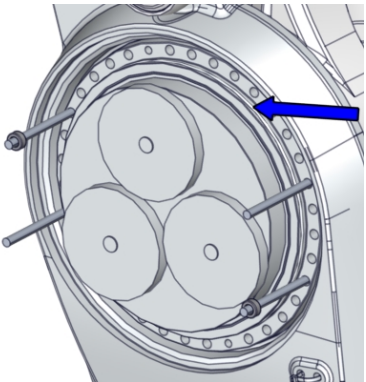
*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

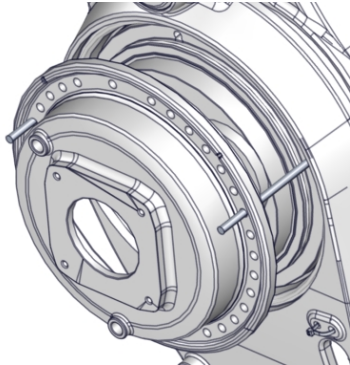
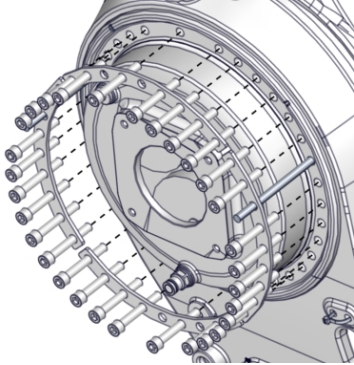
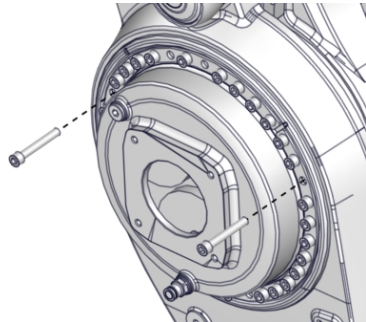
#### Refitting the motor flange

|   | Action                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                          |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the four attachment screws and nine-hole washers, previously attached in a square.            | <br>xx2400000352                           |
| 2 | Clean the contact surfaces on gearbox and motor flange.                                              |                                                                                                                               |
| 3 | Clean the o-ring and the o-ring groove on gearbox.                                                   | <br>xx2400000353                          |
| 4 | Lubricate the o-ring and fit to the gearbox.<br>Replace if damaged.                                  | Grease, Shell Gadus S2:<br>3HAC042536-001.<br>O-ring: 3HAC061327-067                                                          |
| 5 | Check the motor flange o-ring.<br>Replace if damaged.<br>Clean the motor flange from debris, if any. | O-ring: 3HAB3772-160<br><br>xx2300001867 |

*Continues on next page*

## 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6  | Lift the motor flange onto the guide pins.                                      | <br>xx2300001866                                                                           |
| 7  | Make sure the o-rings are in position and slide the motor flange into position. |                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 8  | Fit the attachment screws with the four six-hole washers.                       | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500</p> <br>xx2300001865 |
| 9  | Remove the guide pins and attach the remaining screws.                          | <br>xx2300001863                                                                         |
| 10 | Tighten all motor flange screws.                                                | <p>Tightening torque: standard torque<br/>120 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p>                                                                         |

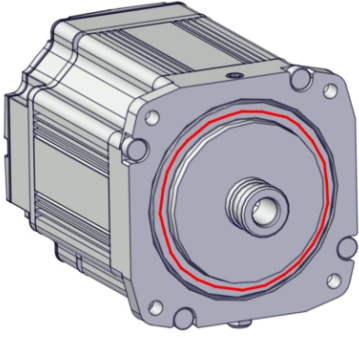
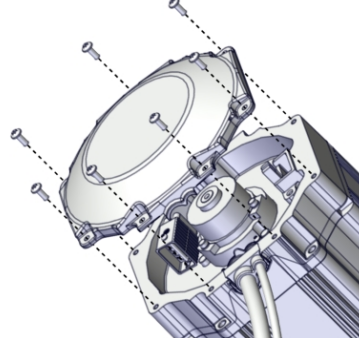
*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

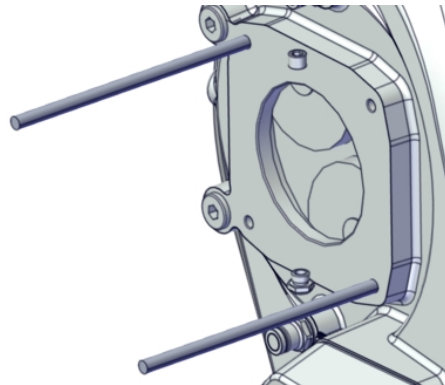
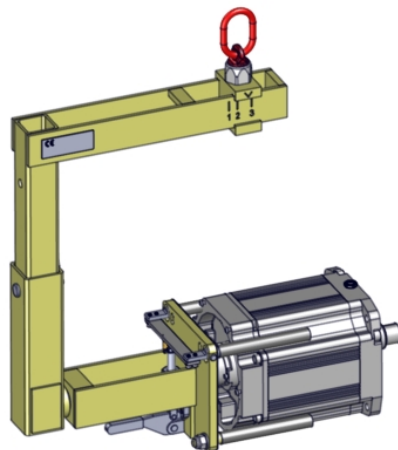
*Continued*

#### Preparations prior to refitting motor

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                         |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off.                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                              |
| 2 | Remove any old paint or flange sealant residues or other contamination from the contact surfaces on both the motor and the mating parts.<br><br> <b>Tip</b><br>Remove flange sealant residues with Loctite 7200. Then use Loctite 7063 for cleaning the mating surface. | Cleaning agent: Loctite 7200, Loctite 7063                                                                                                   |
| 3 | Apply a continuous bead of flange sealant, 1-2 mm wide, inside of the groove on the motor contact surface.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br>The purpose of the groove is to catch excess sealant. No o-ring is used.                                                             | Flange sealant: Loctite 5800<br><br><br><br>xx2100000520 |
| 4 | Remove the cover, if fitted to the new spare part motor.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <br><br>xx2100000596                                    |

*Continues on next page*

## Refitting the axis-3 motor

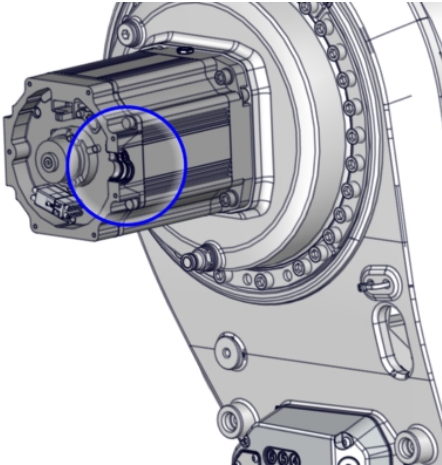
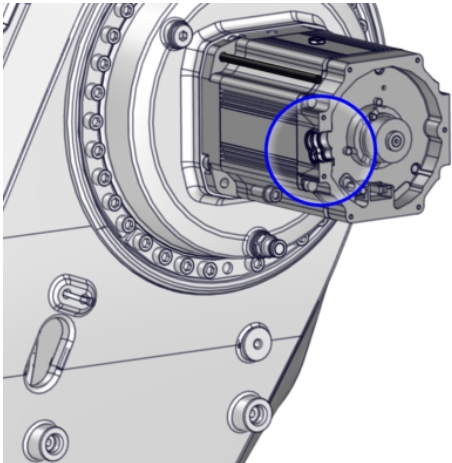
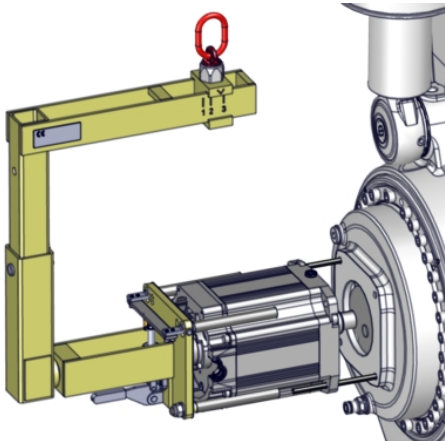
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Fit guide pins in opposite holes.                                                                                                                                                                       | <p>Guide pin, M10x150: 3HAC15521-2<br/>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2100000593</p>                 |
| 2 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br><p>The weight of the motor is 24 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 3 | Apply the lifting accessory.                                                                                                                                                                            | <p>Lifting accessory, motor: 3HAC15534-1<br/>Lifting accessory (chain): 3HAC15556-1</p>  <p>xx2400000264</p> |

Continues on next page



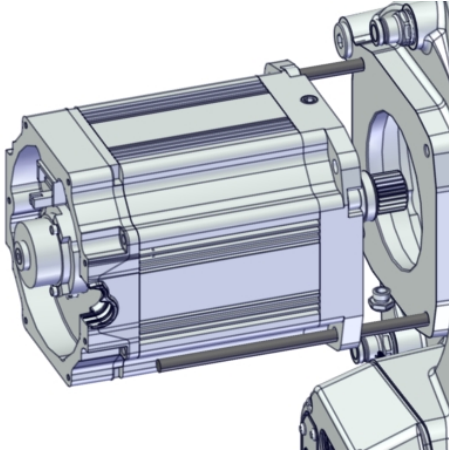
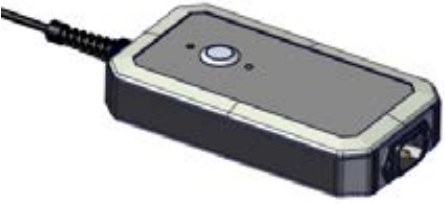
5 Repair

5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <div>4</div> <div><div></div><div><b>Note</b><br/>Make sure the cable gland opening is turned the correct way.</div></div> | <div>Axis-2 motor:</div> <div></div> <div>xx2400000265</div> <div>Axis-3 motor:</div> <div></div> <div>xx2400000266</div> |
| <div>5</div> <div>Lift the motor and put it on the guide pins as close as possible to its final position without pushing the motor pinion into the gear.</div>                                              | <div></div> <div>xx2400000263</div>                                                                                                                                                                        |

Continues on next page



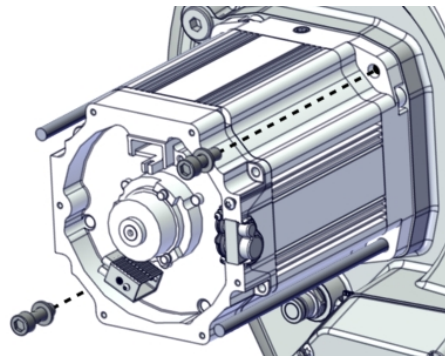
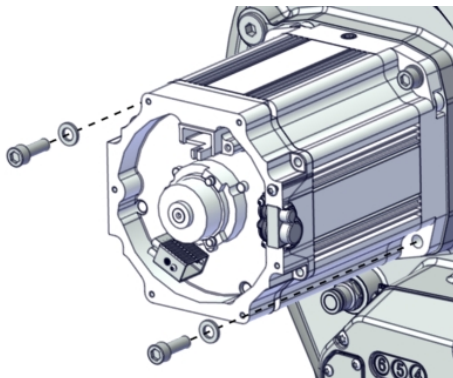
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 6 | <p>Remove the lifting accessory and allow the motor to rest on the guide pins.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  <p>xx2000000457</p>                                                                                              |
| 7 | <p>Release the brakes of the motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br/>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 8 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

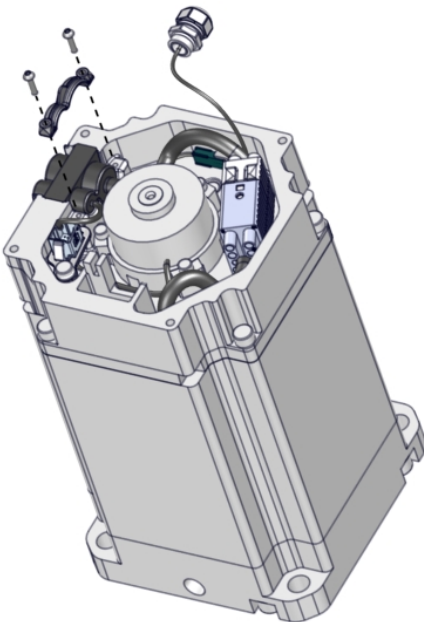
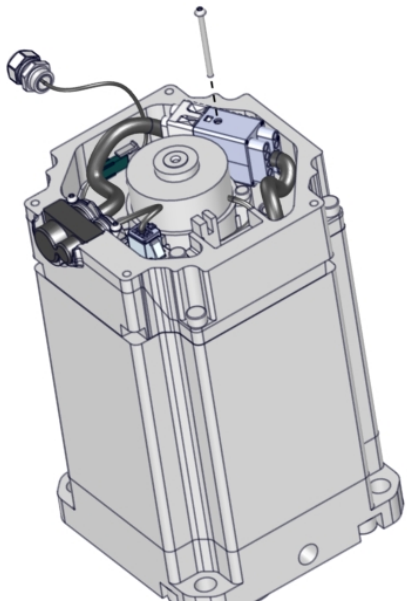
*Continued*

|    | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9  | <p>Apply the rotation tool.</p> <p>Use caution and fit the motor in its final position while at the same time rotating the motor pinion slightly using the rotation tool.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear of the gearbox.</li> <li>• Make sure that the motor pinion does not get damaged.</li> <li>• Make sure that the direction of the cable exit is facing the correct way.</li> </ul> | Rotation tool M4: 3HAB7887-1                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 10 | <p>Fit two of the attachment screws and washers.</p> <p>Use a bits extender in order to reach the screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)</p> <p>Bits extender: 3HAC12342-1</p>  <p>xx2000000467</p> |
| 11 | <p>Remove the guide pins and refit the remaining attachment screws.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500 (2 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2300000044</p>                                  |
| 12 | Tighten the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Tightening torque: 50 Nm.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 13 | Disconnect the brake release tool.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 14 | Perform a leak-down test.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                          |

#### Connecting the motor cables

|   | Action                                        | Note |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Put the motor cables in place in the opening. |      |

*Continues on next page*

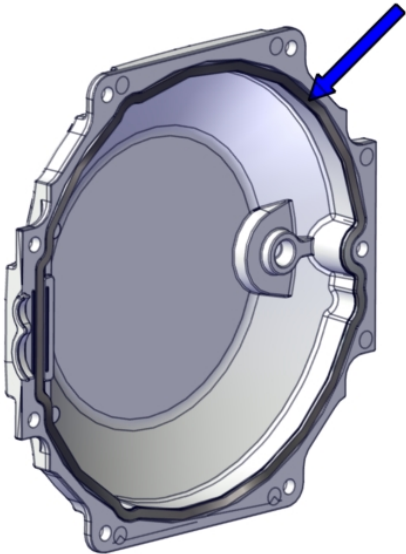
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Refit the cable bracket with the screws.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Torx pan head screw: M3x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001738</p> |
| 3 | Connect the motor cables.<br> <b>Note</b><br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4 | Fit a screw to the power connector.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms. | <p>Tightening torque: 1 Nm</p>  <p>xx2200001736</p>                        |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

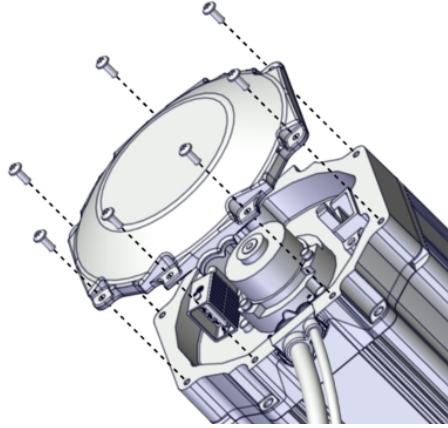
*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>Inspect the gasket.</p> <p>Replace the complete cover if the gasket is damaged.</p>                                                                                                                   | <p>Axis-1, axis-2 and axis-3:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS180 with gasket:</p> <p>3HAC072864-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC072864-005 (ABB Orange)</p> <p>3HAC074336-004 (Graphite White, threaded connection)</p> <p>3HAC074336-005 (ABB Orange, threaded connection)</p> <p>Axis-4:</p> <p>Connection box cover FS130 with gasket:</p> <p>3HAC072863-003 (Graphite White)</p> <p>3HAC072863-005 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2100000600</p> |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

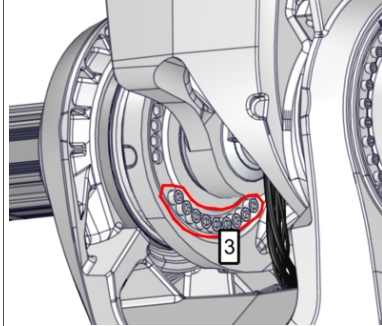
*Continues on next page*

## 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Refit the motor cover with its attachment screws.<br>Use locking liquid. | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p> <p>Locking liquid: Loctite 2400 (or equivalent Loctite 243)</p> <p>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2100000596</p> |

## Securing the axis-3 gearbox screws in area 3

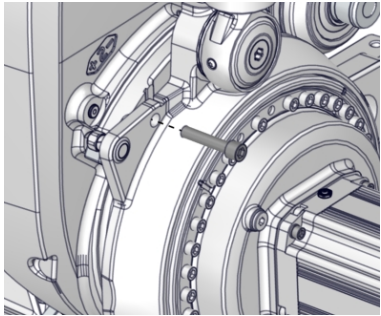
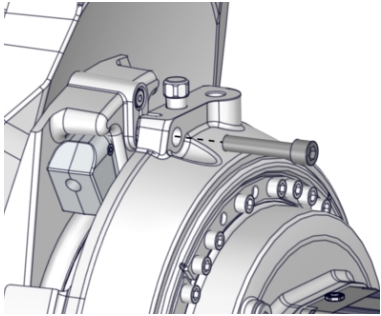
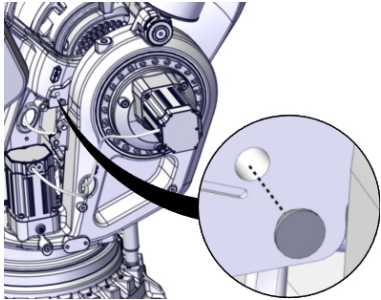
|   | Action                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Tighten the attachment screws in area 3. | <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 300 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>).</p>  <p>xx2400000363</p> |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
Continued

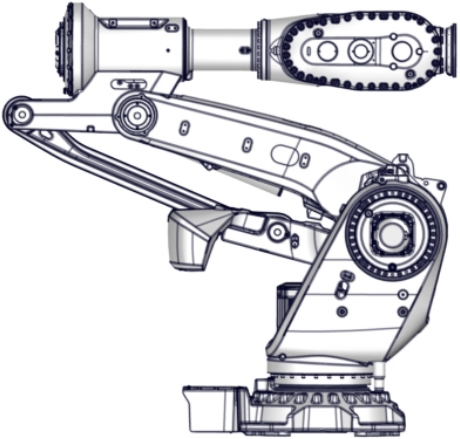
Removing the lock screws

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <p>Remove the axis-2 and the axis-3 lock screws.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>If the screws are jammed, turn on the power to the robot temporarily and carefully jog the axes 2 and 3, until it is possible to unscrew the lock screws completely.</p> |  <p>xx2400000355</p>  <p>xx2400000369</p> |
| 2 | <p>Jog axis-3 to be able to attach the plastic plug.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  <p>xx1500002366</p>                                                                                                        |

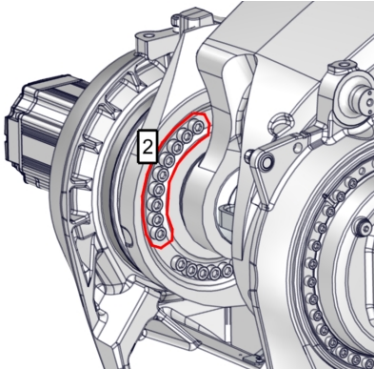
Continues on next page

## Robot position for access to screws in area 2

With the robot in this position it is possible to reach the screws in area 2 of screws that secure the axis-3 gearbox to the parallel arm.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot into position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: -65°</li> <li>• Axis 3: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 4: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul>                                                                   | <br>xx2400000339 |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                                                                    |

## Refitting the axis-3 gearbox screws in area 2

|   | Action       | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Find area 2. | <br>xx2400000360 |

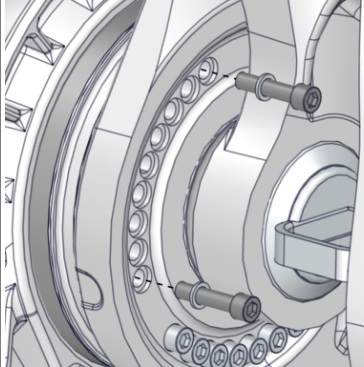
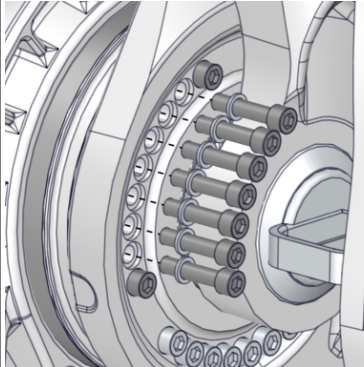
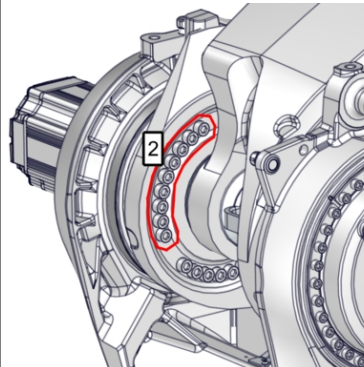
Continues on next page



## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

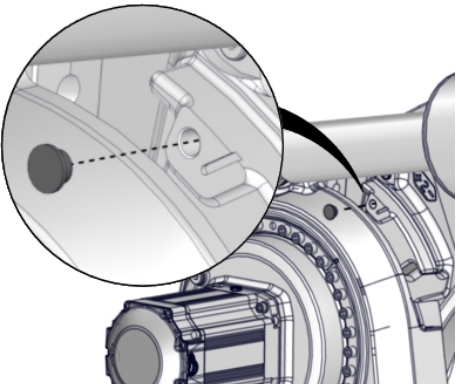
|   | Action                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Begin by fitting the screws and washers in the outermost holes. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br/>500 (2 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2400000367</p>                        |
| 3 | Then attach the remaining screws with washers, in area 2.       | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br/>500 (7 pcs)</p>  <p>xx2400000368</p>                       |
| 4 | Tighten the attachment screws in area 2.                        | <p>Tightening torque: standard torque<br/>300 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on<br/>page 697</a>).</p>  <p>xx2400000360</p> |

*Continues on next page*

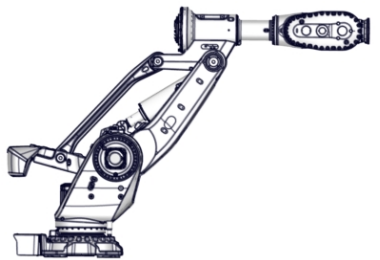
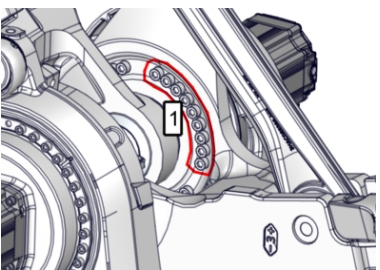


5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox  
Continued

Refitting the plastic plug to the axis-2 lock screw hole

|   | Action                                                | Note                                                                                               |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refit the plastic plug to the axis-2 lock screw hole. | <br>xx2400001682 |

Refitting the axis-3 gearbox screws in area 1

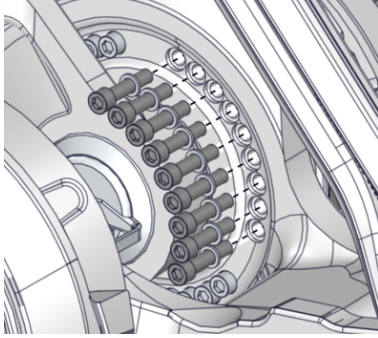
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Note                                                                                                  |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Jog the robot into position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1: no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2: +45°</li> <li>• Axis 3: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 4: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5: 0°</li> <li>• Axis 6: no significance.</li> </ul>                                                                                | <br>xx2400000357  |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> to the robot, before entering the safeguarded space. |                                                                                                       |
| 3 | Find area 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <br>xx2400000358 |

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.3 Replacing the axis-3 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Refit and tighten the screws in area 1.    | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M12x80 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet<br/>500 (9 pcs)</p> <p>Tightening torque: standard torque<br/>300 Nm (<a href="#">Tightening torque on<br/>page 697</a>).</p>  <p>xx2400000359</p> |
| 5 | Examine that all screws have been torqued. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

#### Concluding procedure

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note                                                                     |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Refill the gearbox with oil.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | See <a href="#">Changing the oil in axis-3 gearbox on<br/>page 165</a> . |
| 2 | Calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> .                            |
| 3 |  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met<br>when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test<br/>run after installation, maintenance, or repair<br/>on page 94</a> . |                                                                          |

#### 5.11.4 Replacing the axis-4 gearbox and gear

---

##### L3 spare part

The axis-4 gearbox and the cylindrical gear Z3 are classified as L3 spare parts. The repair procedure is not described in the product manual. Contact ABB Service for replacement.

See [Spare part level on page 202](#).

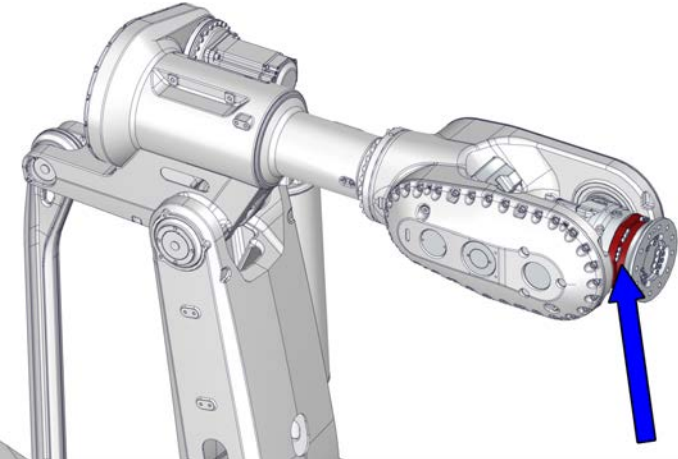
5 Repair

5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

Location of the gearbox

The gearbox is located as shown in the figure.



xx2300001599

Required spare parts



Note

The spare part numbers that are listed in the table can be out of date. See the latest spare parts of the IRB 7720 via ABB Robotics One, <https://one.robots.abb.com/en/knowledge-hub>.

| Spare part | Article number                  | Note                                                                            | Level |
|------------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Gearbox    | IRB 7720-620/2.9                | Includes o-ring                                                                 | L2    |
|            | IRB 7720-530/3.1                | IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID: |       |
|            | IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID            | 3HAB3772-148                                                                    |       |
|            | IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:           | IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID: |       |
|            | 3HAC076988-002 (Graphite White) | 3HAC061327-078                                                                  |       |
|            | 3HAC076988-003 (ABB Orange)     |                                                                                 |       |
|            | IRB 7720-510/3.3                |                                                                                 |       |
|            | IRB 7720-450/3.5                |                                                                                 |       |
|            | IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID            |                                                                                 |       |
|            | IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:           |                                                                                 |       |
|            | 3HAC075792-002 (Graphite White) |                                                                                 |       |
|            | 3HAC075792-003 (ABB Orange)     |                                                                                 |       |

Continues on next page

## Required service parts

| Consumable                                | Article number                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Note                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| O-ring                                    | IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:<br>3HAB3772-148<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:<br>3HAC061327-078                                                   | Replace if damaged.                                                 |
| Gasket / Connection box cover with gasket | IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:<br>3HAC033489-001<br>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:<br>3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br>3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange) |                                                                     |
| O-ring, G 1/4"                            | 3HAC061327-060                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Used on oil plug. Replace if damaged.                               |
| Cleaning agent                            | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Isopropanol                                                         |
| P-80 rubber lubrication gel               | 3HAC074427-001                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | P-80 Emulsion IFC                                                   |
| Flange sealant                            | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Loctite 5800                                                        |
| Rust preventive                           | 3HAC034903-001                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.              |
| Lubricating oil                           | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | See <a href="#">Type of lubrication in gear-boxes on page 153</a> . |

## Required tools and equipment

| Equipment                             | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Guide pin, M6x100                     | 3HAC041574-001              | Always use guide pins in pairs.                                                                                         |
| Brake release tool                    | 3HAC081310-001              | User instructions are enclosed with the tool.                                                                           |
| Rotation tool M3                      | 3HAB7887-1                  | Used to rotate the motor pinion. Add screw M3.                                                                          |
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |
| Standard toolkit                      | -                           | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .                                            |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

Continues on next page

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

*Continued*

#### Deciding calibration routine

Decide which calibration routine to be used, based on the information in the table. Depending on which routine is chosen, action might be required prior to beginning the repair work of the robot, see the table.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use for calibrating the robot. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Reference calibration. External cable packages (DressPack) and tools can stay fitted on the robot.</li><li>Fine calibration. All external cable packages (DressPack) and tools must be removed from the robot.</li></ul>                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with reference calibration:</b><br>Find previous reference values for the axis or create new reference values. These values are to be used after the repair procedure is completed, for calibration of the robot.<br>If no previous reference values exist, and no new reference values can be created, then reference calibration is not possible. | Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.<br>Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot.<br>Read more about reference calibration for Axis Calibration in <a href="#">Reference calibration routine on page 662</a> . |
|   | <b>If the robot is to be calibrated with fine calibration:</b><br>Remove all external cable packages (DressPack) and tools from the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

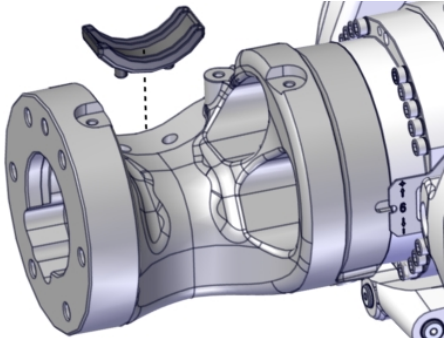
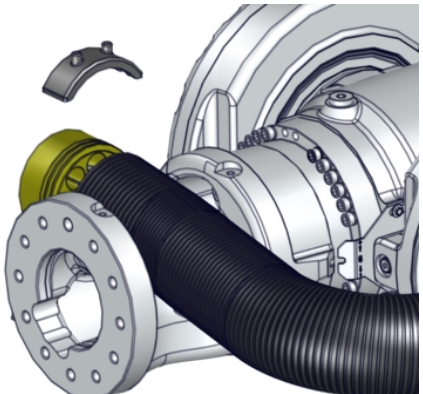
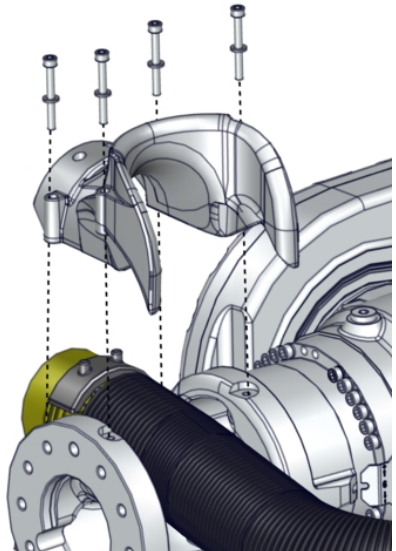
#### Removing the gearbox

Use these procedures to remove the axis-6 gearbox.

#### Preparations before removing the axis-6 gearbox

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                          |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Decide which calibration routine to use, and take actions accordingly prior to beginning the repair procedure.                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                               |
| 2 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Turn off all: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>electric power supply</li><li>hydraulic pressure supply</li><li>air pressure supply</li></ul> to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space. |                                                               |
| 3 | Drain the gearbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | See <a href="#">Draining the axis-6 gearbox on page 185</a> . |
| 4 | Remove all equipment fitted on the turning disc.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                               |

*Continues on next page*

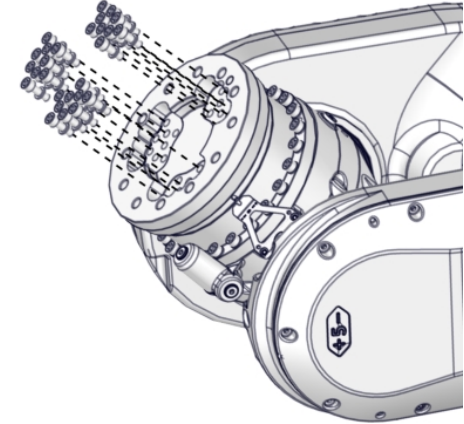
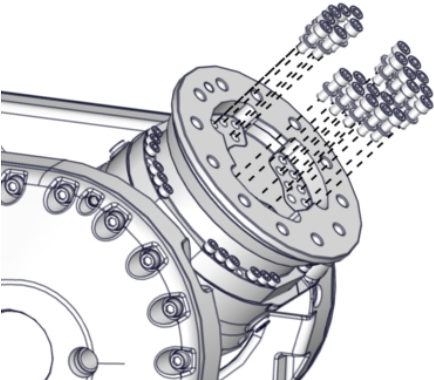
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <p>If used, open the DressPack axis-6 cable support and remove the DressPack cable package from the process turning disk.</p> <p> <b>Note</b></p> <p>Use caution not to lose the two clamp jaws on either side of the DressPack cable package.</p>  <p>xx2100002712</p> |  <p>xx2300001210</p>  <p>xx2300001211</p> |
| 6 | <p>Jog the robot into position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Axis 1 = no significance</li> <li>• Axis 2 = suitable working position to replace axis-6 gearbox</li> <li>• Axis 3 = suitable working position to replace axis-6 gearbox</li> <li>• Axis 4 = 0°</li> <li>• Axis 5 = -55°</li> <li>• Axis 6 = 0°</li> </ul>                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 7 | <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Turn off all:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• electric power supply</li> <li>• hydraulic pressure supply</li> <li>• air pressure supply</li> </ul> <p>to the robot, before entering the safe-guarded space.</p>                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

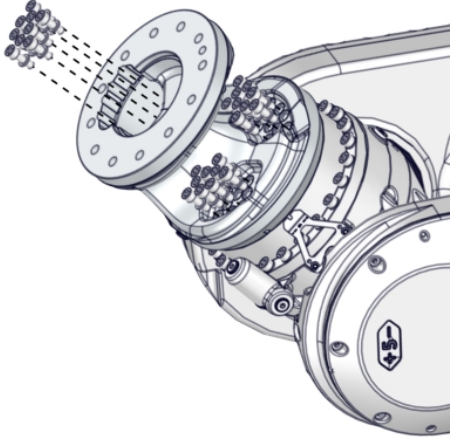
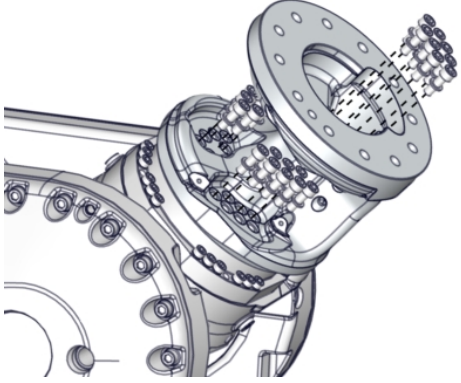
5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox  
Continued

Removing the turning disc

|   | Action                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the screws and washers, that secure the turning disc. | <div><div><p>IRB 7720-620/2.9<br/>IRB 7720-530/3.1:</p></div><div><p>xx2400000168</p><p>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br/>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</p></div><div><p>xx2400000167</p><p>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br/>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</p></div></div> |

Continues on next page

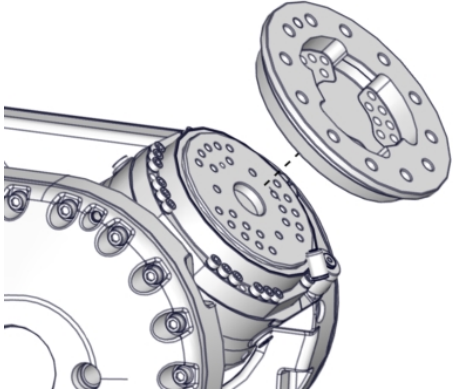
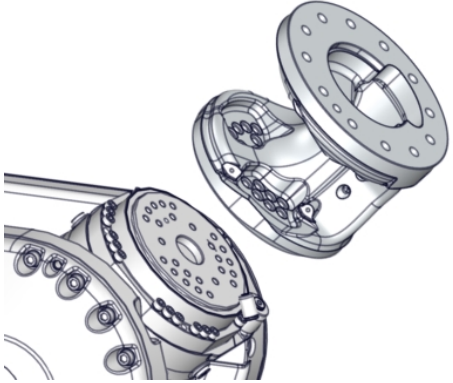


| Action | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        |  <p>xx2400000173</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000172</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

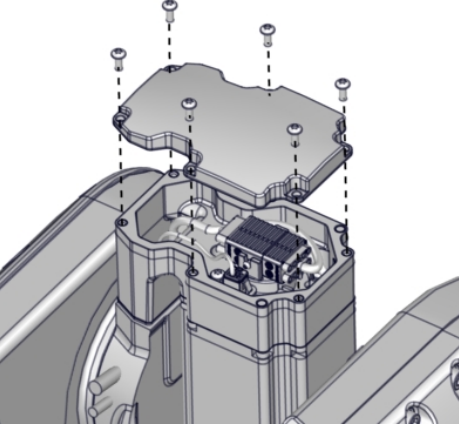
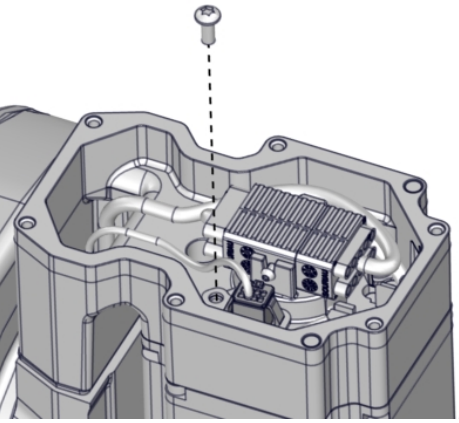
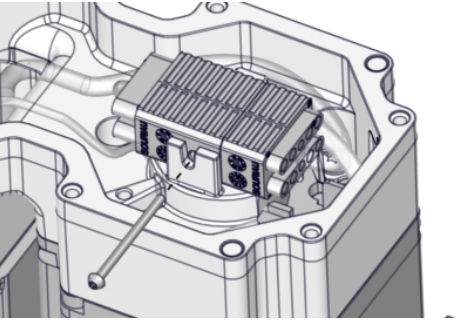
5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                     | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 Remove the turning disc. | <div>IRB 7720-620/2.9<br/>IRB 7720-530/3.1<br/>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br/>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</div> <div></div> <div>xx2400000174</div> <div>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br/>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</div> <div></div> <div>xx2400000176</div> |

Disconnecting the axis-6 motor cables

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |      |

Continues on next page

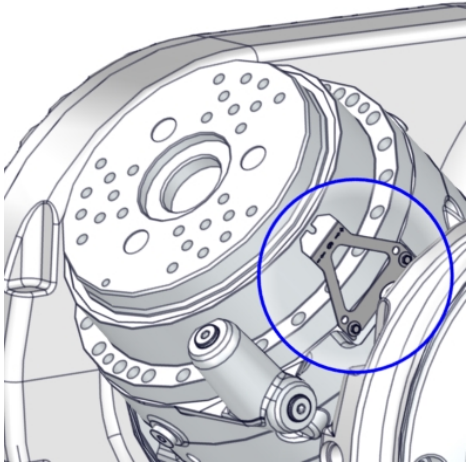
|   | Action                                                    | Note                                                                                                 |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Unscrew the attachment screws and remove the motor cover. | <br>xx2200001434   |
| 3 | Remove the connector bracket.                             | <br>xx2200001730  |
| 4 | Remove the connector screw.                               | <br>xx2200001731 |
| 5 | Disconnect the motor cables.                              |                                                                                                      |

Continues on next page

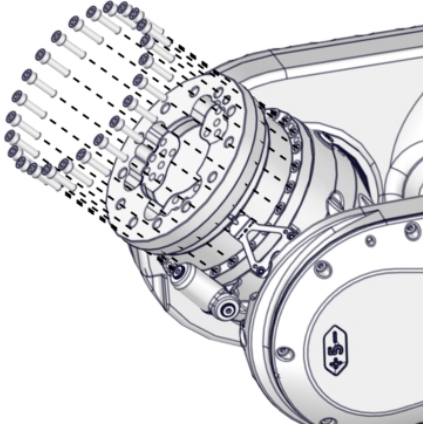
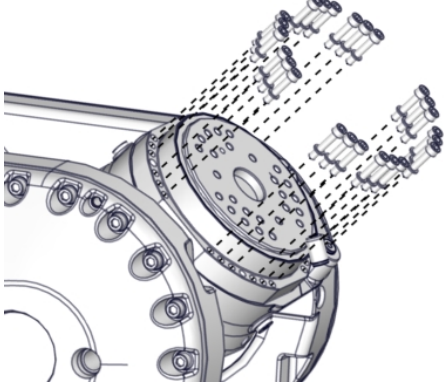
5 Repair

5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox  
Continued

Removing the axis-6 gearbox

|   | Action                                   | Note                                                                                               |
|---|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the axis-6 synchronization plate. | <br>xx2400000372 |

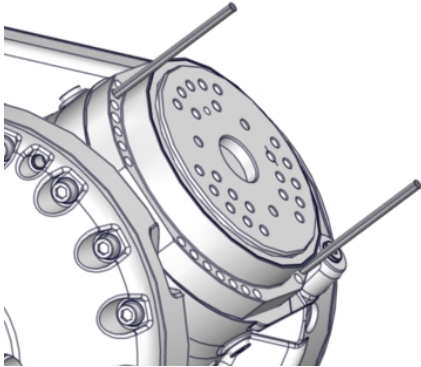
Continues on next page

|   | Action                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2 | Unscrew the attachment screws that secure the axis-6 gearbox. | <p>IRB 7720-620/2.9<br/>IRB 7720-530/3.1<br/>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br/>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</p>  <p>xx2400000371<br/>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br/>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</p>  <p>xx2400000370</p> |

Continues on next page

5 Repair

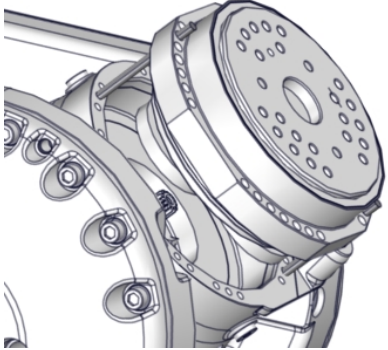
5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Fit guide pins.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>Guide pin, M6x100: 3HAC041574-001<br/>Always use guide pins in pairs.</p>  <p>xx2400000373</p>                 |
| 4 | <p>Release the brakes on the axis-6 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li><li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li><li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li></ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001<br/>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 5 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Whenever parting/mating motor and gearbox, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 6 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the gearbox is 28 kg<br/>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

Continues on next page

### 5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Remove the gearbox.<br>If required fit two attachment screws and press out the gearbox. |  <p>xx2400000374</p> |

#### Refitting the gearbox

Use these procedures to refit the gearbox.

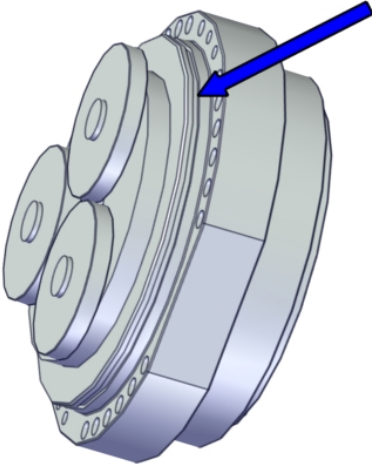
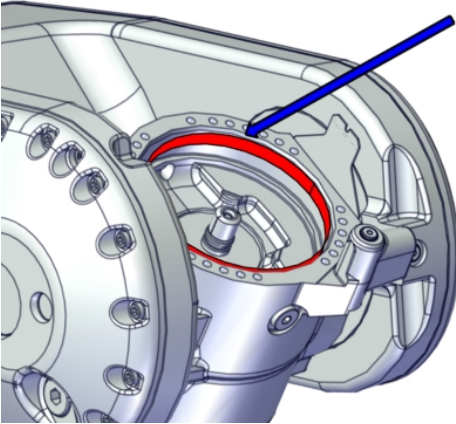
#### Preparations before refitting the axis-6 gearbox

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                        |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure that all supplies for electrical power, hydraulic pressure, and air pressure are turned off. |                             |
| 2 | Wipe clean the contact surfaces of both gearbox and wrist from any contamination.                                                                                                                           | Cleaning agent: Isopropanol |

*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox  
Continued

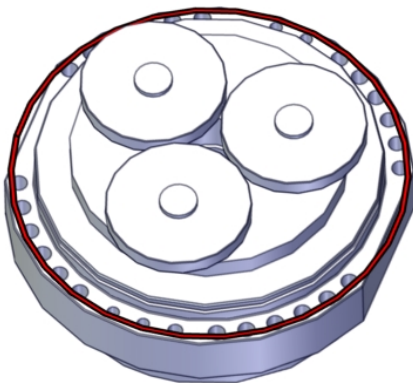
| Action                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3<br>Check the o-ring.<br>Replace if damaged.                    | <p>O-ring:<br/>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID: 3HAB3772-148<br/>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID: 3HAC061327-078</p>  <p>xx2100002258</p> |
| 4<br>Lubricate the contact surface inside the wrist with grease. | <p>P-80 rubber lubrication gel: 3HAC074427-001</p>  <p>xx2100002791</p>                                                                                                                                                                |

Continues on next page

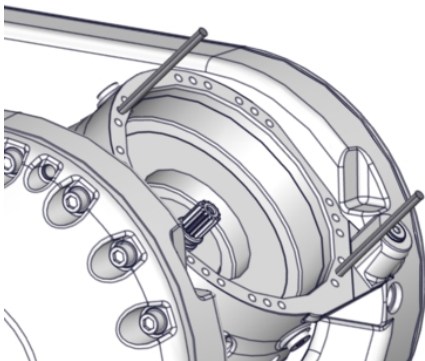


## 5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                       |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5 | <b>Protection type Foundry Plus:</b><br>Apply flange sealant on the surface shown in the figure. | Flange sealant: Loctite 5800<br><br><br><br>xx2100002233 |

## Refitting the axis-6 gearbox

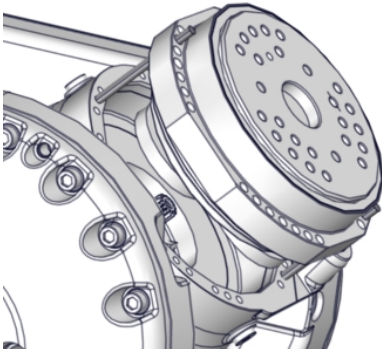
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>Whenever parting/mating motor and gear-box, the gears may be damaged if excessive force is used. |                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 2 | Fit guide pins.                                                                                                                                                                                      | Guide pin, M6x100: 3HAC041574-001<br>Always use guide pins in pairs.<br><br><br><br>xx2400000375 |
| 3 | Apply the rotation tool to the motor.                                                                                                                                                                | Rotation tool M3: 3HAB7887-1                                                                                                                                                         |

*Continues on next page*

## 5 Repair

### 5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

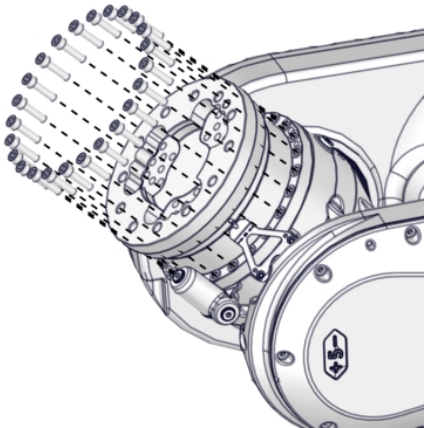
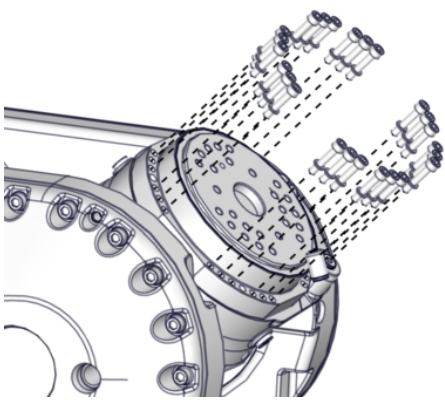
Continued

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Release the brakes on the axis-6 motor with the brake release tool.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Turn off the brake release tool.</li> <li>2 Connect the tool to the motor power connector (MP).</li> <li>3 Release the brakes by turning on the brake release tool and pressing the brake release button on the tool.</li> </ol> <p>The power for brake release is only applied for 180 seconds after activation.</p> <p> <b>DANGER</b></p> <p>Handling the tool incorrectly will cause serious injury.</p> <p>Read and follow enclosed user instructions for the tool.</p> <p> <b>WARNING</b></p> <p>Electrical damage to the motor may occur if 24V is supplied to the motor connector for more than 30 seconds. Use the specified brake release tool to eliminate the risk.</p> | <p>Brake release tool: 3HAC081310-001</p> <p>User instructions are enclosed with the tool.</p>  <p>xx2100000666</p> |
| 5 | <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The weight of the gearbox is 28 kg</p> <p>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 6 | <p>Fit the gearbox while at the same time rotating the motor pinion slightly using the rotation tool.</p> <p>Make sure that the motor pinion is properly mated to the gear of the gearbox.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Be careful not to damage motor pinion or gears!</p> <p> <b>Tip</b></p> <p>Verify that the oil plug is removed so the air can be pressed out during fitting of the gearbox.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx2400000374</p>                                                                                              |

Continues on next page

## 5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

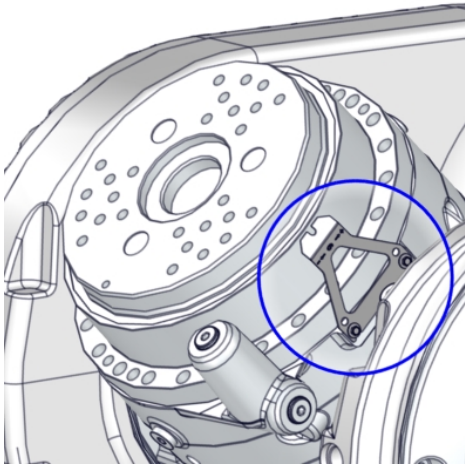
*Continued*

|   | Action                                         | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 | Secure the gearbox with its attachment screws. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw: M10x40 12.9<br/>Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500<br/>Washer: 3HAC045621-001, 24 pcs<br/>Tightening torque: standard torque 35 Nm<br/>(<a href="#">Tightening torque on page 697</a>)<br/>IRB 7720-620/2.9<br/>IRB 7720-530/3.1<br/>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br/>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</p>  <p>xx2400000371</p> <p>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br/>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</p>  <p>xx2400000370</p> |
| 8 | Disconnect the brake release tool.             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 9 | Perform a leak-down test.                      | See <a href="#">Performing a leak-down test on page 203</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

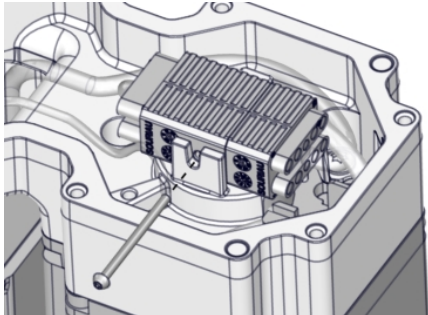
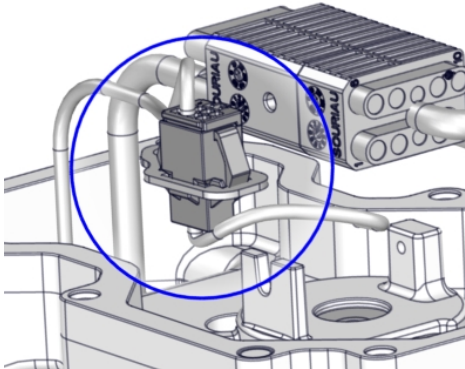
*Continues on next page*

5 Repair

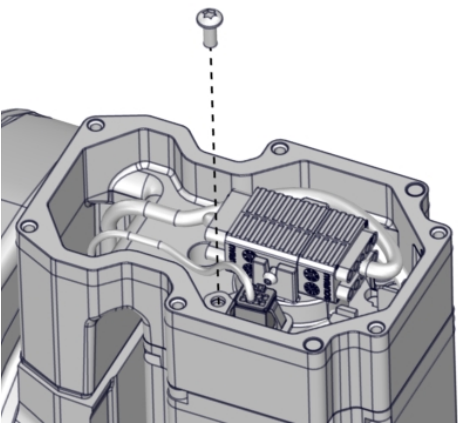
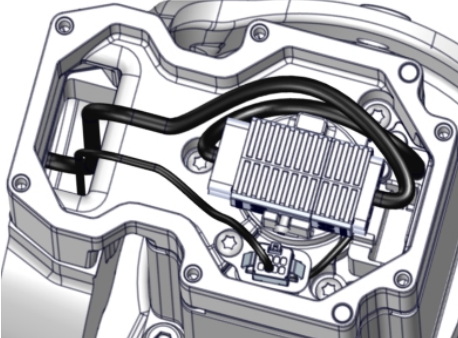
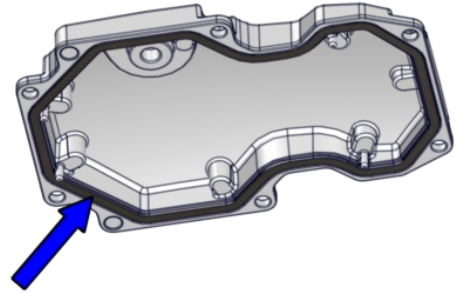
5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox  
Continued

| Action                                     | Note                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10 Refit the axis-6 synchronization plate. | <br>xx2400000372 |

Connecting the axis-6 motor cables

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Note                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Connect the motor cables.<br>Connect in accordance with the markings on the connectors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                 |
| 2 Position the power connector to the bracket with a screw.<br><br> <b>Note</b><br><br>The purpose of the screw is to secure the mating of the connectors and the positioning of the connector in the connection box. It is normal that the connector can be moved back and forth after the screw has been tightened according to the torque specification and, in some connection boxes, that the screw is not even fully inserted when it bottoms. | Tightening torque: 1 Nm<br><br>xx2200001731 |
| 3 Snap the signal connectors to each other in the bracket.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <br>xx2200001921                            |

Continues on next page

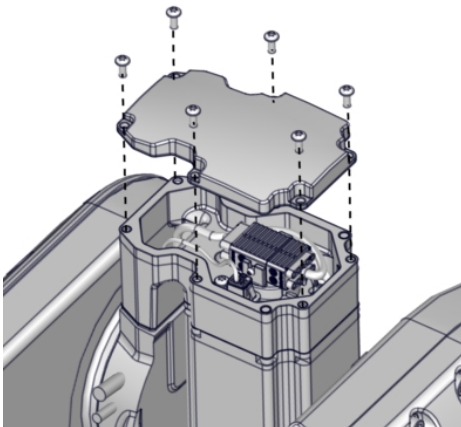
|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | <p>Refit the connector bracket assembly to the motor.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>The cabling is sensitive to mechanical damage. Handle it with care to avoid damage to the cabling or the connector, avoid any kind of tilt or skew.</p> | <p>Torx pan head screw: M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70</p>  <p>xx2200001730</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 5 | <p>Verify correct cable layout as shown in the figure.</p> <p> <b>CAUTION</b></p> <p>Route the signal cabling correctly to avoid cable damage.</p>                                                                                         |  <p>xx2300000920</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6 | <p>Inspect the gasket.<br/>Replace if damaged.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Gasket / Connection box cover with gasket:<br/> <b>IRB 7720-620/2.9, IRB 7720-530/3.1, IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID, IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b><br/>           3HAC033489-001<br/> <b>IRB 7720-510/3.3, IRB 7720-450/3.5, IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID, IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br/>           3HAC079381-003 (Graphite White)<br/>           3HAC079381-004 (ABB Orange)</p>  <p>xx2200001922</p> |

Continues on next page

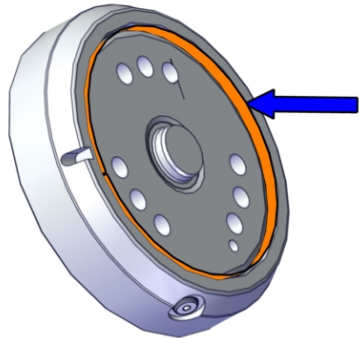
## 5 Repair

### 5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>When fitting the motor cover, make sure that none of the cables inside will be damaged. |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 8 | Refit the motor cover.                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>Torx pan head screw, M5x12 Stainless steel A2-70, 6 pcs<br/>Tightening torque: 6 Nm.</p>  <p>xx2200001434</p> |

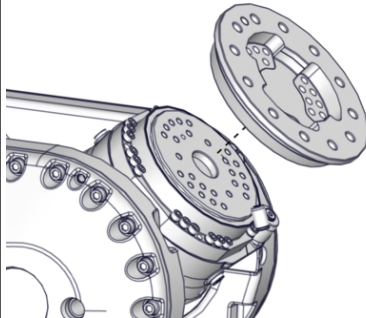
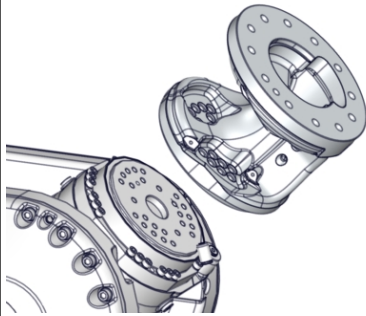
### Refitting the turning disc

|   | Action                                                                                            | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Wipe clean the contact surfaces.                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 2 | <i>Protection type Foundry Plus:</i><br>Apply rust preventive to the surface shown in the figure. | <p>Rust preventive: 3HAC034903-001 (Mercasol 3110 Waxcoat. Recommended drying time is 24h.)</p>  <p>xx2100002232</p> |

*Continues on next page*

## 5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox

*Continued*

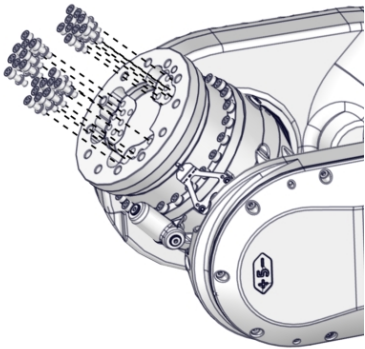
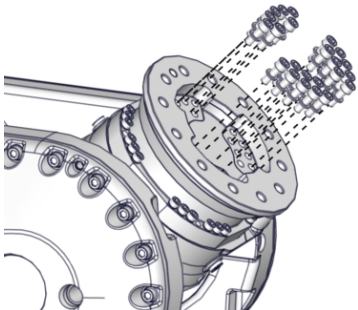
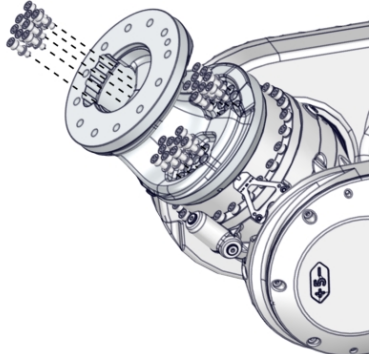
|   | Action                                                                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | Fit the turning disc to the wrist.<br>Orient the disc according to the synchronization marks. | <p>IRB 7720-620/2.9<br/>IRB 7720-530/3.1<br/>IRB 7720-510/3.3<br/>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</p>  <p>xx2400000174</p> <p>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID<br/>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID<br/>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</p>  <p>xx2400000176</p> |

*Continues on next page*



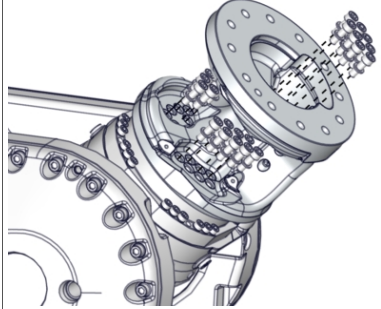
5 Repair

5.11.5 Replacing the axis-6 gearbox  
Continued

|   | Action                                                          | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 4 | Secure the turning disc with its attachment screws and washers. | <p>Hex socket head cap screw:<br/>M10x30 12.9 Gleitmo 603+Geomet 500</p> <p>Washers: Steel 11x17x2</p> <p>Tightening torque: standard torque 70 Nm (<i>Tightening torque for lubricated screws (Molykote, Gleitmo or equivalent) with allen head screws on page 698</i>)..</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-620/2.9</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-530/3.1:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000168</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-510/3.3</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-450/3.5:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000167</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-560/2.9 LID</b><br/><b>IRB 7720-480/3.1 LID:</b></p>  <p>xx2400000173</p> <p><b>IRB 7720-400/3.3 LID</b></p> |

Continues on next page



| Action | Note                                                                                                                                |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|        | <b>IRB 7720-400/3.5 LID:</b><br><br>xx2400000172 |

## Concluding procedure

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Note                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Jog axis-5 to horizontal position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                       |
| 2 Refill oil in the gearbox.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | See <a href="#">Filling oil into the axis-6 gearbox on page 186</a> . |
| 3 Calibrate the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | See <a href="#">Calibration on page 653</a> .                         |
| 4  <b>DANGER</b><br>Make sure all safety requirements are met when performing the first test run. See <a href="#">Test run after installation, maintenance, or repair on page 94</a> . |                                                                       |

**This page is intentionally left blank**

## 6 Calibration

### 6.1 Introduction to calibration

#### 6.1.1 Introduction and calibration terminology

##### Calibration information

This chapter includes general information about the recommended calibration methods and also the detailed procedures for updating the revolution counters, checking the calibration position etc.

Detailed instructions of how to perform Axis Calibration are given on the FlexPendant during the calibration procedure. To prepare calibration with Axis Calibration method, see [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 661](#).

##### Calibration terminology

| Term                      | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Calibration method        | A collective term for several methods that might be available for calibrating the ABB robot. Each method contains calibration routines.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Synchronization position  | Known position of the complete robot where the angle of each axis can be checked against visual synchronization marks.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Calibration position      | Known position of the complete robot that is used for calibration of the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Standard calibration      | A generic term for all calibration methods that aim to move the robot to calibration position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Fine calibration          | A calibration routine that generates a new zero position of the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Reference calibration     | <p>A calibration routine that in the first step generates a reference to current zero position of the robot. The same calibration routine can later on be used to recalibrate the robot back to the same position as when the reference was stored.</p> <p>This routine is more flexible compared to fine calibration and is used when tools and process equipment are installed.</p> <p>Requires that a reference is created before being used for recalibrating the robot.</p> <p>Requires that the robot is dressed with the same tools and process equipment during calibration as during creation of the reference values.</p> |
| Update revolution counter | A calibration routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Synchronization mark      | Visual marks on the robot axes. When marks are aligned, the robot is in synchronization position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

## 6 Calibration

### 6.1.2 Calibration methods

### 6.1.2 Calibration methods

#### Overview

This section specifies the different types of calibration and the calibration methods that are supplied by ABB.

#### Types of calibration

| Type of calibration                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Calibration method |
|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
| Standard calibration                     | The calibrated robot is positioned at calibration position.<br>Standard calibration data is found on the SMB (serial measurement board) or EIB in the robot.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Axis Calibration   |
| Absolute accuracy calibration (optional) | Based on standard calibration, and besides positioning the robot at synchronization position, the Absolute accuracy calibration also compensates for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Mechanical tolerances in the robot structure</li><li>Deflection due to load</li></ul> Absolute accuracy calibration focuses on positioning accuracy in the Cartesian coordinate system for the robot.<br>Absolute accuracy calibration data is found on the serial measurement board (SMB) or other robot memory.<br>A robot calibrated with Absolute accuracy has the option information printed on its name plate (OmniCore).<br>To regain 100% Absolute accuracy performance, the robot must be recalibrated for absolute accuracy after repair or maintenance that affects the mechanical structure. | CalibWare          |
| Optimization                             | Optimization of TCP reorientation performance. The purpose is to improve reorientation accuracy for continuous processes like welding and gluing.<br>Wrist optimization will update standard calibration data for axes 4 and 5.<br> <b>Note</b><br>For advanced users, it is also possible to do the wrist optimization using the RAPID instruction <code>WristOpt</code> , see <i>Technical reference manual - RAPID Instructions, Functions and Data types</i> .<br>This instruction is only available for OmniCore robots.                                                                                                                                                                                     | Wrist Optimization |

#### Brief description of calibration methods

##### Axis Calibration method

Axis Calibration is a standard calibration method for calibration of IRB 7720. It is the recommended method in order to achieve proper performance.

*Continues on next page*

The following routines are available for the Axis Calibration method:

- Fine calibration
- Update revolution counters
- Reference calibration

The calibration equipment for Axis Calibration is delivered as a toolkit.

An introduction to the calibration method is given in this manual, see [Calibrating with Axis Calibration method on page 661](#).

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

#### Wrist Optimization method

Wrist Optimization is a method for improving reorientation accuracy for continuous processes like welding and gluing and is a complement to the standard calibration method.

The actual instructions of how to perform the wrist optimization procedure is given on the FlexPendant.

#### CalibWare - Absolute Accuracy calibration

The CalibWare tool guides through the calibration process and calculates new compensation parameters. This is further detailed in the *Application manual - CalibWare Field*.

If a service operation is done to a robot with the option Absolute Accuracy, a new absolute accuracy calibration is required in order to establish full performance. For most cases after replacements that do not include taking apart the robot structure, standard calibration is sufficient.

The Absolute Accuracy option varies according to the robot mounting position. This is printed on the robot name plate for each robot. The robot must be in the correct mounting position when it is recalibrated for absolute accuracy.

---

#### References

Article numbers for the calibration tools are listed in the section [Special tools on page 702](#).

### 6.1.3 When to calibrate

---

#### When to calibrate

The system must be calibrated if any of the following situations occur.

#### The resolver values are changed

If resolver values are changed, the robot must be re-calibrated using the calibration methods supplied by ABB. Calibrate the robot carefully with standard calibration, according to information in this manual.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it is also recommended, but not always necessary to calibrate for new absolute accuracy.

The resolver values will change when parts affecting the calibration position are replaced on the robot, for example motors or parts of the transmission.

#### The revolution counter memory is lost

If the revolution counter memory is lost, the counters must be updated. See [Updating revolution counters on page 660](#). This will occur when:

- The battery is discharged
- A resolver error occurs
- The signal between a resolver and measurement board is interrupted
- A robot axis is moved with the control system disconnected

The revolution counters must also be updated after the robot and controller are connected at the first installation.

#### The robot is rebuilt

If the robot is rebuilt, for example, after a crash or when the reachability of a robot is changed, it needs to be re-calibrated for new resolver values.

If the robot has *absolute accuracy* calibration, it needs to be calibrated for new absolute accuracy.

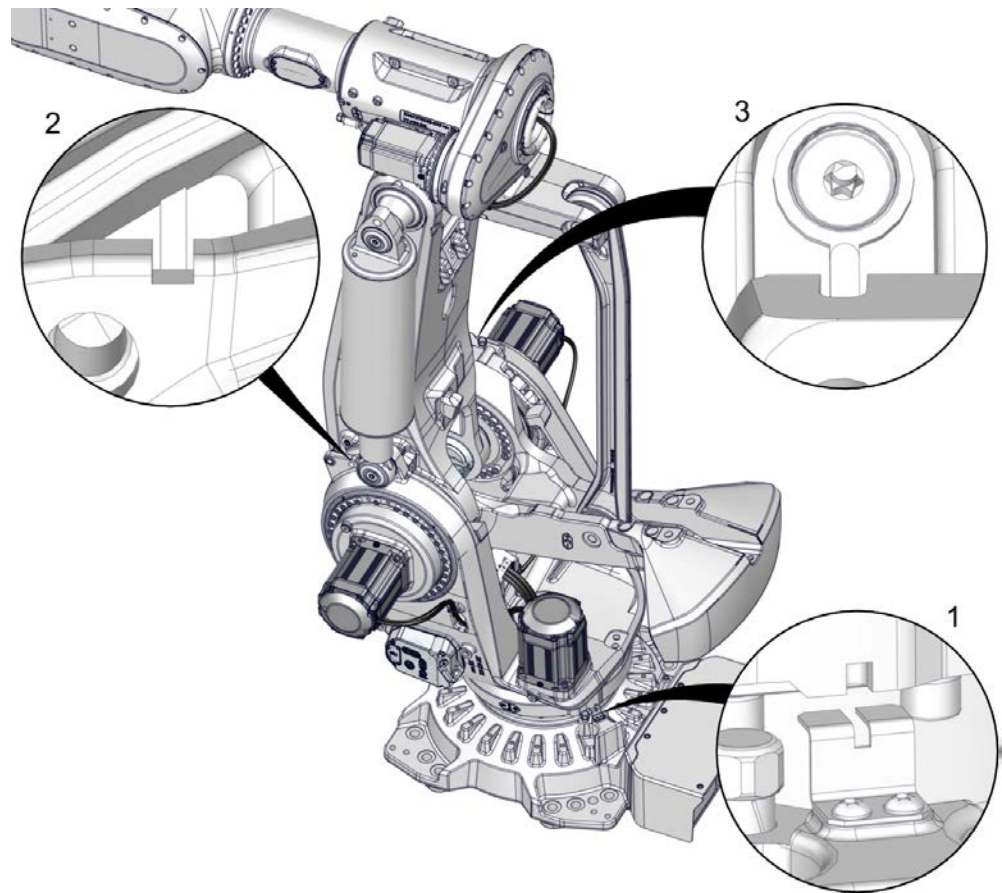
## 6.2 Synchronization marks and axis movement directions

### 6.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

#### Introduction

This section shows the position of the synchronization marks and the synchronization position for each axis.

#### Synchronization marks, IRB 7710, IRB 7720



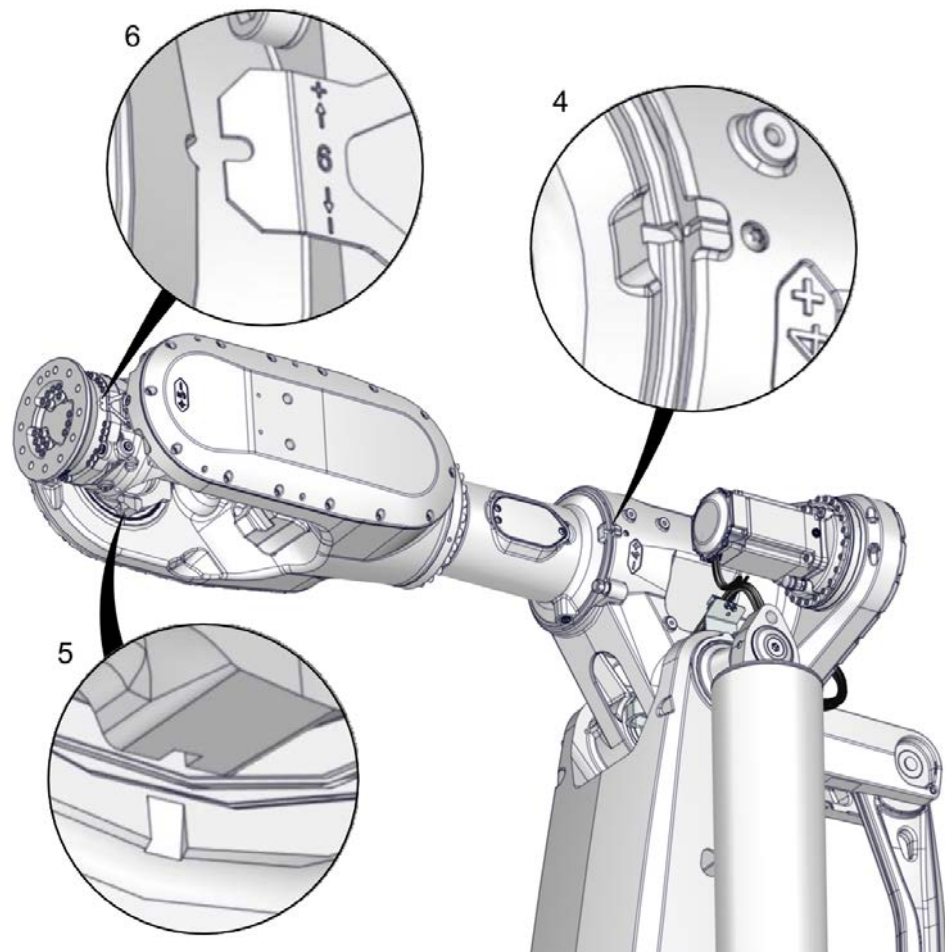
xx2400000017

*Continues on next page*

## 6 Calibration

### 6.2.1 Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes

*Continued*



xx2400000018



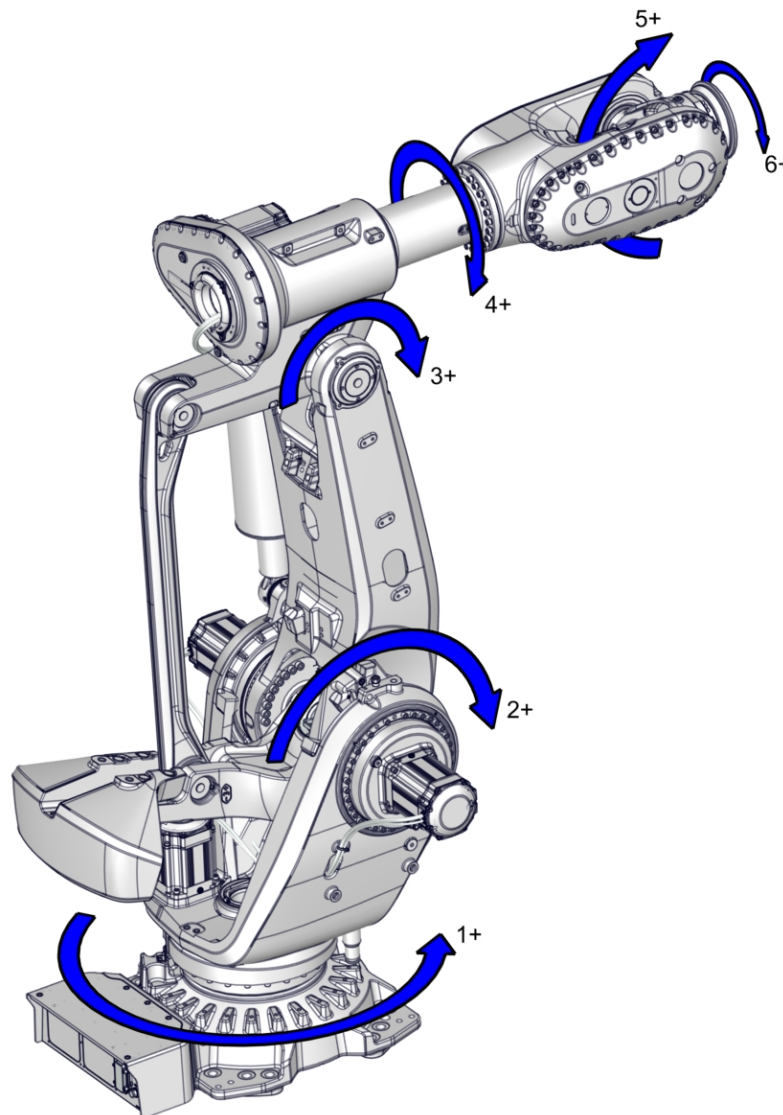
## 6.2.2 Calibration movement directions for all axes

### Overview

When calibrating, the axis must consistently be run towards the calibration position in the same direction in order to avoid position errors caused by backlash in gears and so on. Positive directions are shown in the graphic below.

Calibration service routines will handle the calibration movements automatically and these might be different from the positive directions shown below.

### Manual movement directions



xx2300001518

## 6 Calibration

### 6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

## 6.3 Updating revolution counters

### 6.3.1 Updating revolution counters on OmniCore robots

#### Introduction

This section describes how to do a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

#### Step 1 - Manually running the manipulator to the synchronization position

Use this procedure to manually run the manipulator to the synchronization position.

|   | Action                                                       | Note                                                                                          |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Select axis-by-axis motion mode.                             |                                                                                               |
| 2 | Jog the manipulator to align the synchronization marks.      | See <a href="#">Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657</a> . |
| 3 | When all axes are positioned, update the revolution counter. | <a href="#">Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant on page 660</a> .   |

#### Step 2 - Updating the revolution counter with the FlexPendant

Use this procedure to update the revolution counter with the FlexPendant (OmniCore).

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | On the start screen, tap <b>Calibrate</b> .<br>The calibration summary page for the mechanical unit is displayed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2 | In the <b>Calibration Methods</b> menu, select <b>Revolution Counters</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 3 | In the <b>Selection</b> column select the axes for which revolution counters need to be updated.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 4 | Tap <b>Update</b> .<br>A dialog box is displayed warning that the updating operation cannot be undone.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 5 | Tap <b>OK</b> to update the revolution counter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 6 | <div> <b>CAUTION</b></div> <p>If a revolution counter is incorrectly updated, it will cause incorrect manipulator positioning, which in turn may cause damage or injury!</p> <p>Check the synchronization position very carefully after each update. See <a href="#">Checking the synchronization position on page 677</a>.</p> |

## 6.4 Calibrating with Axis Calibration method

### 6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

#### Instructions for Axis Calibration procedure given on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

This manual contains a brief description of the method, additional information to the information given on the FlexPendant, article number for the tools and images of where to fit the calibration tools on the robot.

#### Overview of the Axis Calibration procedure

The Axis Calibration procedure applies to all axes, and is performed on one axis at the time. The robot axes are both manually and automatically moved into position, as instructed on the FlexPendant.

A fixed calibration pin/bushing is installed on each robot axis at delivery.

The Axis Calibration procedure described roughly:

- 1 A removable calibration tool is inserted by the operator into a calibration bushing on the axis chosen for calibration, according to instructions on the FlexPendant.



#### WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.



#### WARNING

The calibration tool must be fully inserted into the calibration bushing, until the steel spring ring snaps into place.

- 2 During the calibration procedure, RobotWare moves the robot axis chosen for calibration so that the calibration tools get into contact. RobotWare records values of the axis position and repeats the coming-in-contact procedure several times to get an exact value of the axis position.



#### WARNING

Risk of pinching! The contact force for large robots can be up to 150 kg. Keep a safe distance to the robot.

- 3 The axis position is stored in RobotWare with an active choice from the operator.

*Continues on next page*

## 6 Calibration

---

### 6.4.1 Description of Axis Calibration

*Continued*

---

#### Routines in the calibration procedure

The following routines are available in the Axis Calibration procedure, given at the beginning of the procedure on the FlexPendant.

##### Fine calibration routine

Choose this routine to calibrate the robot when there are no tools, process cabling or equipment fitted to the robot.

##### Reference calibration routine

Choose this routine to create reference values and to calibrate the robot when the robot is dressed with tools, process cabling or other equipment.



#### Note

When calibrating the robot with the reference calibration routine, the robot must be dressed with the same tools, process cabling and any other equipment as when the reference values were created.



#### Note

When using reference calibration with some tools, typically large or flexible tools, oscillations in the robot can cause issues leading to failure of the calibration.

If calibrating the robot with reference calibration there must be reference values created before repair is made to the robot, if values are not already available. Creating new values requires possibility to move the robot. The reference values contain positions of all axes, torque of axes and technical data about the tool installed. A benefit with reference calibration is that the current state of the robot is stored and not the state when the robot left the ABB factory. The reference value will be named according to tool name, date etc.

Follow the instructions given in the reference calibration routine on the FlexPendant to create reference values.

When reference calibration is performed, the robot is restored to the status given by the reference values.

##### Update revolution counters

Choose this routine to make a rough calibration of each manipulator axis by updating the revolution counter for each axis, using the FlexPendant.

##### Validation

In the mentioned routines, it is also possible to validate the calibration data.

---

#### Position of robot axes

The robot axes should be positioned close to 0 degrees before commencing the calibration program. The axis chosen for calibration is then automatically run by the calibration program to its exact calibration position during the calibration procedure.

It is possible to position some of the other axes in positions different from 0 degrees. Information about which axes are allowed to be jogged is given on the FlexPendant.

*Continues on next page*

These axes are marked with **Unrestricted** in the FlexPendant window. Also the following table shows the dependencies between the axes.

Requirements for axis positioning during calibration

| Required position of axis | Axis to calibrate                                                            |        |        |        |        |        |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
|                           | Axis 1                                                                       | Axis 2 | Axis 3 | Axis 4 | Axis 5 | Axis 6 |
| Axis 1                    | -                                                                            | *      | *      | *      | *      | *      |
| Axis 2                    | 0                                                                            | -      | 0      | *      | *      | *      |
| Axis 3                    | 0                                                                            | 0      | -      | *      | *      | *      |
| Axis 4                    | *                                                                            | *      | *      | -      | *      | *      |
| Axis 5                    | *                                                                            | *      | *      | *      | -      | *      |
| Axis 6                    | *                                                                            | *      | *      | *      | *      | -      |
| -                         | Axis to be calibrated                                                        |        |        |        |        |        |
| *                         | Unrestricted. Axis is allowed to be jogged to other position than 0 degrees. |        |        |        |        |        |
| 0                         | Axis must be put in position 0 degrees.                                      |        |        |        |        |        |

#### System containing SafeMove

SafeMove will lose its synchronization to the controller if a new calibration is done. New calibration values have to be downloaded to SafeMove, and a new SafeMove calibration has to be done. Make sure that the user rights admit to change the safety settings and to synchronize SafeMove.

# 6 Calibration

## 6.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

### 6.4.2 Calibration tools for Axis Calibration

#### Calibration tool set

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.

The calibration tool will eventually break from fatigue after longer period of use and then needs to be replaced. There is no risk for bad calibrations as long as the calibration tool is in one piece.



#### WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration bushings may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

| Equipment, etc.                       | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools.<br>Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

#### Examining the calibration tool

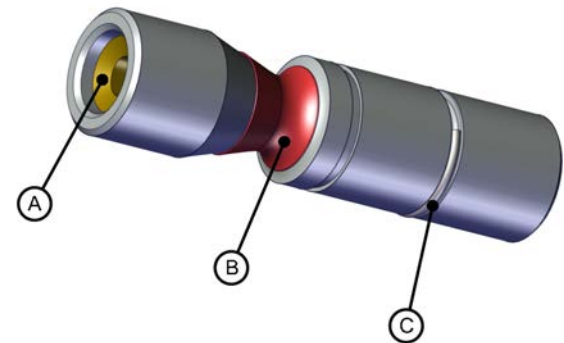
##### Check prior to usage

Before using the calibration tool, make sure that the tube insert, the plastic protection and the steel spring ring are present.



#### WARNING

If any part is missing or damaged, the tool must be replaced immediately.



xx1500001914

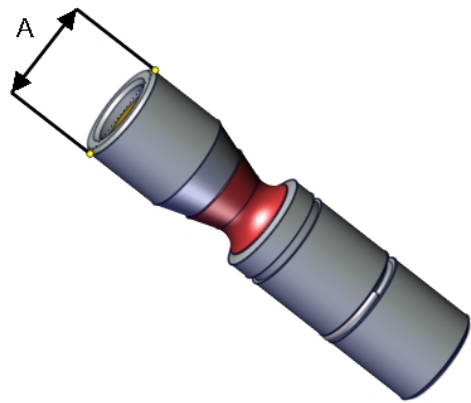
|   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| A | Tube insert        |
| B | Plastic protection |
| C | Steel spring ring  |

*Continues on next page*

Periodic check of the calibration tool

If including the calibration tool in a local periodic check system, the following measures should be checked.

- Outer diameter within Ø12g4 mm, Ø8g4 mm or Ø6g5 mm (depending on calibration tool size).
- Straightness within 0.005 mm.



xx1500000951

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
| A | Outer diameter |
|---|----------------|

Identifying the calibrating tools

It is possible to make the calibration tool identifiable with, for example, an RFID chip. The procedure of how to install an RFID chip is described below.

| <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The tool identifier is NOT delivered from ABB, it is a customized solution.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                               | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Note |
| 1                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>It is possible to use any RFID solution, with the correct dimensions. ABB has verified function on some suppliers fulfilling the requirements of NFC compatible devices (13.56 Mhz) according to ISO 14443 or ISO 15693.</p> <div> <b>Note</b></div> <p>The maximum dimensions on the RFID chip must not exceed Ø7.9 mm x 8.0 mm, Ø5.9 mm x 8.0 mm or Ø3.9 mm x 8.0 mm (depending on calibration tool size).</p> |      |
| 2                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>There is a cavity on one end of the calibration tool in which the RFID chip can be installed.</p> <p>Install the RFID chip according to supplier instructions.</p> <p>Install the chip in flush with the tool end.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |      |

## 6 Calibration

### 6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

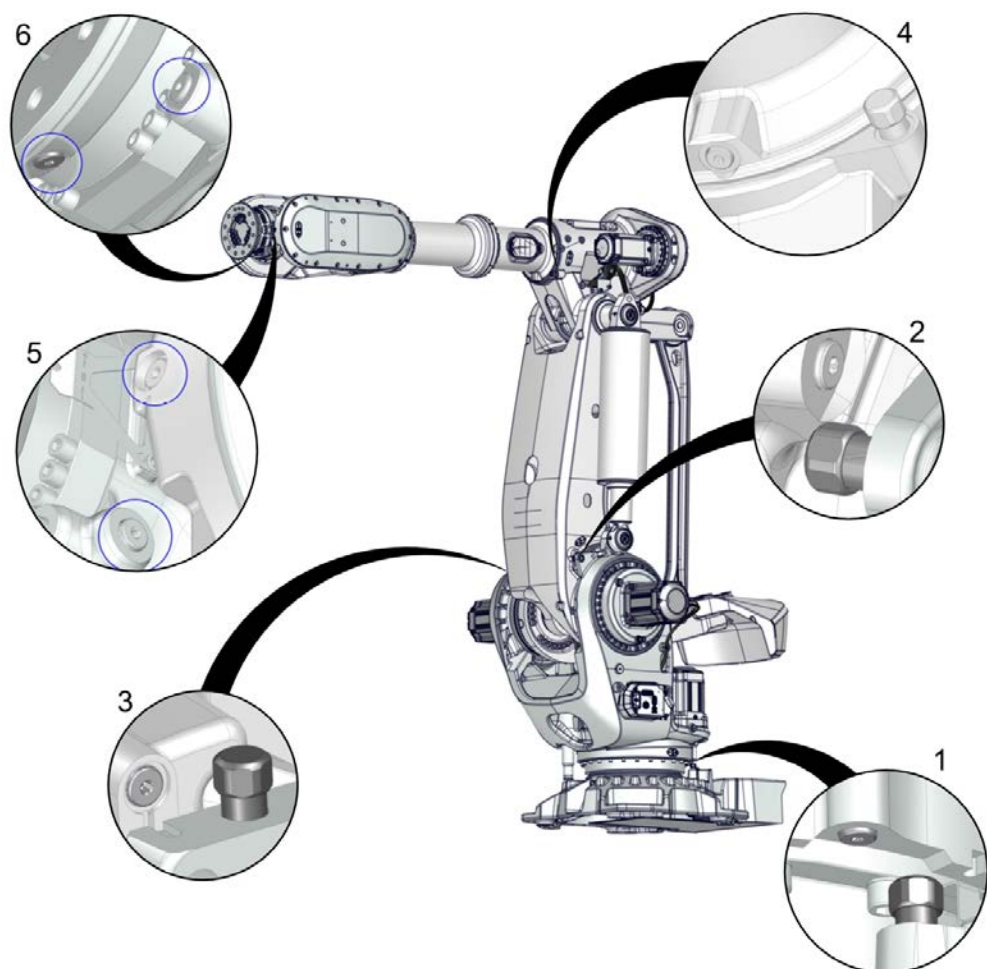
#### 6.4.3 Installation locations for the calibration tools

##### Location of fixed calibration items

This section shows how the robot is equipped with items for installation of calibration tools for Axis Calibration (fixed calibration pins and/or bushings). Installed calibration tools are not shown.

A fixed calibration pin and a bushing for the movable calibration tool are located on each axis as follows.

If there is not enough space on an axis to install a fixed calibration pin, the axis is equipped with two bushings instead, for installation of two calibration tools when calibration is carried out. This is shown in the figure.



xx2400000288

*Continues on next page*



**Spare parts**

When calibration is not being performed, a protective cover and an o-ring should always be installed on the fixed calibration pin as well as a protective plug, included a sealing, in the bushing. Replace damaged parts with new.

| Spare part                                   | Article number              | Note                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Calibration protection set, Axis Calibration | 3HAC056806-001 <sup>i</sup> | Contains protection caps for fixed pins and protective plugs for bushings. |

<sup>i</sup> Fits fixed pins and bushings for axes that use 12 mm calibration pins.

## 6 Calibration

### 6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

### 6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

#### Required tools

The calibration tools used for Axis Calibration are designed to meet requirements for calibration performance, durability and safety in case of accidental damage.



#### WARNING

Calibrating the robot with Axis Calibration requires special calibration tools from ABB. Using other pins in the calibration holes may cause severe damage to the robot and/or personnel.

| Equipment, etc.                       | Article number              | Note                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration | 3HAC074564-001 <sup>i</sup> | Delivered as a set of calibration tools. Required if Axis Calibration is the valid calibration method for the robot. |

<sup>i</sup> Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

#### Required consumables

| Consumable  | Article number | Note |
|-------------|----------------|------|
| Clean cloth | -              |      |

#### Spare parts

| Spare part                                   | Article number              | Note                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Calibration protection set, Axis Calibration | 3HAC056806-001 <sup>i</sup> | Contains protection caps for fixed pins and protective plugs for bushings. |

<sup>i</sup> Fits fixed pins and bushings for axes that use 12 mm calibration pins.

#### Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Use the following list to learn about the calibration procedure before running the RobotWare program on the FlexPendant. It gives you a brief overview of the calibration procedure.

After the calibration method has been started on the FlexPendant, the following sequence will be run.

- 1 Choose calibration routine. The routines are described in [Routines in the calibration procedure on page 662](#).
- 2 Choose which axis/axes to calibrate.
- 3 The robot moves to synchronization position.
- 4 Validate the synchronization marks.
- 5 The robot moves to preparation position.

*Continues on next page*

- 6 Remove the protective cover from the fixed pin and the protection plug from the bushing, if any, and install the calibration tool.
- 7 The robot performs a measurement sequence by rotating the axis back and forth.
- 8 Remove the calibration tool and reinstall the protective cover on the fixed pin and the protection plug in the bushing, if any.
- 9 The robot moves to verify that the calibration tool is removed.
- 10 Choose whether to save the calibration data or not.

Calibration of the robot is not finished until the calibration data is saved, as last step of the calibration procedure.

### Preparation prior to calibration

The calibration procedure is described in the FlexPendant while conducting it.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>DANGER</b><br>While conducting the calibration, the robot needs to be connected to power.<br>Make sure that the robot's working area is empty, as the robot can make unpredictable movements. |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| 2 | Wipe the calibration tool clean.<br> <b>Note</b><br>The calibration method is exact. Dust, dirt or color flakes will affect the calibration value.                                              | Use a clean cloth.                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 3 | Check if the standard calibration data for axes 4 or 5 are updated with wrist optimization.<br>This is shown in the calibration overview/summary window on the FlexPendant.                                                                                                        | If the data is optimized, the calibration routine <b>Wrist Optimization</b> must be re-run after standard calibration.<br>See <a href="#">Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method on page 674</a> . |

### Starting the calibration procedure

Use this procedure to start the Axis Calibration routine on the FlexPendant.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Note |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 | Tap the calibration icon and enter the calibration main page.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |      |
| 2 | All mechanical units connected to the system are shown with their calibration status.<br>Tap the mechanical unit in question.<br> <b>Note</b><br>For RobotWare 7 or later, the mechanical unit page is displayed only if there is more than one mechanical unit available. |      |

*Continues on next page*

## 6 Calibration

### 6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

*Continued*

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3 | The calibration method used at ABB factory for each axis is shown, as well as calibration method used for the robot during last field calibration.                                                                   | The FlexPendant will give all information needed to proceed with Axis Calibration.                                                                                      |
| 4 | <b>Valid for RobotWare 7 or later</b><br>Tap <b>Calibration Methods</b> on the right pane and then tap <b>Calibration</b> . The software will automatically call for the procedure for the valid calibration method. |                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 5 | Follow the instructions given on the FlexPendant.                                                                                                                                                                    | A brief overview of the sequence that will be run on the FlexPendant is given in <a href="#">Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant on page 668</a> . |

#### Restarting an interrupted calibration procedure

If the Axis Calibration procedure is interrupted before the calibration is finished, the RobotWare program needs to be started again. Use this procedure to take required action.

| Situation                                                                                      | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The three-position enabling device on the FlexPendant has been released during robot movement. | Press and hold the three-position enabling device and press <b>Play</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| The RobotWare program is terminated with <b>PP to Main</b> .                                   | Remove the calibration tool, if it is installed, and restart the calibration procedure from the beginning. See <i>Starting the calibration procedure</i> .<br><br>If the calibration tool is in contact the robot axis needs to be jogged in order to release the calibration tool. Jogging the axis in wrong direction will cause the calibration tool to break. Directions of axis movement is shown in <a href="#">Calibration movement directions for all axes on page 659</a> |

#### Axis Calibration with SafeMove option

To be able to run Axis Calibration, SafeMove needs to be unsynchronized. The Axis Calibration routine recognizes if the robot is equipped with SafeMove and will force SafeMove to unsynchronize automatically.

However, SafeMove may generate other warning messages anytime during the Axis Calibration routine. When a warning message is displayed, tap **Acknowledge** to confirm the unsynchronized state and continue Axis Calibration procedure.



#### CAUTION

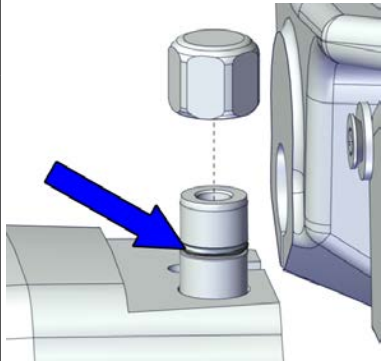
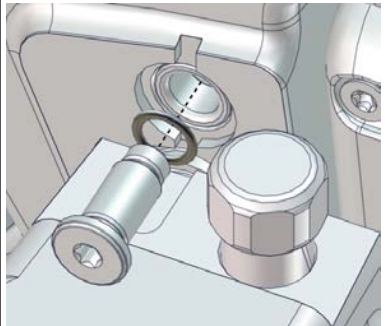
SafeMove must be synchronized after the calibration is completed.

*Continues on next page*

### 6.4.4 Axis Calibration - Running the calibration procedure

*Continued*

#### After calibration

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Note                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Check the o-ring on the fixed calibration pin.<br>Replace if damaged or missing.                                                                                                                                                            |  <p>xx1600002102</p> <p>Calibration protection set, Axis Calibration: 3HAC056806-001 <sup>i</sup>.</p>   |
| 2 | Reinstall the protective cover on the fixed calibration pin on each axis, directly after the axis has been calibrated.<br>Replace the cover with new spare part, if missing or damaged.                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 3 | Reinstall the protective plug and sealing in the bushing on each axis, directly after the axis has been calibrated. Ensure that the sealing is not damaged.<br>Replace the plug and the sealing with new spare part, if missing or damaged. |  <p>xx1500000952</p> <p>Calibration protection set, Axis Calibration: 3HAC056806-001 <sup>ii</sup>.</p> |
| 4 | If the standard calibration data for axes 4, 5 or 6 should be updated with wrist optimization, run the calibration routine <b>Wrist Optimization</b> .                                                                                      | See <a href="#">Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method on page 674</a> .                                                                                                                |

<sup>i</sup> Fits fixed pins and bushings for axes that use 12 mm calibration pins.

<sup>ii</sup> Fits fixed pins and bushings for axes that use 12 mm calibration pins.

#### 6.4.5 Reference calibration

---

##### Brief introduction to Reference Calibration

Reference calibration is a faster method compared to Fine calibration, as it refers to a previously made calibration.

- 1 Create a backup of the current robot system.
- 2 Check that the active calibration offset values corresponds to the values on the calibration label (located on the lower arm or the base).
- 3 Jog the manipulator so that all axes are in zero position (ex use MoveAbsJ instruction). Check that all axis scales are aligned with calibration marks.
- 4 If the scales differ from calibration marks it might depend on wrong turns of the revolution counters. Make a marker line on the corresponding axis to be able to validate the result of the calibration. If more than one motor revolutions are wrong, the calibration will fail.
- 5 Use a verification position. This is especially recommended if all axes were not aligned with the synchronization marks (step 3). Reuse an existing position that is suitable and accurate so it can be used to validate the repair. Use a position where a deviation in axis calibration gives a big deviation in positioning. Note! Check the position after each repair in one axis.
- 6 Use Reference calibration to save reference values for all axes that is to be replaced. Make sure that the values are saved in RobotStudio or FTP program. The files are located in "Active system folder name/HOME/RefCalibFiles".
- 7 Perform the repair.
- 8 Make sure that the tooling and process equipment are the same as when creating the reference. Use Reference calibration to update the system with new calibration offset value for the repaired axis.
- 9 Check the position against the verification position (step 5).
- 10 Proceed with the repair of the next axis, if necessary, and repeat (step 8-9) for every axis.
- 11 (For system containing SafeMove) Download new calibration values to SafeMove. Use Visual SafeMove in RobotStudio.
- 12 (For system containing SafeMove) Synchronize SafeMove to activate SafeMove.
- 13 Perform test run.
- 14 Update the calibration label with new resolver values (calibration values).

##### Manual tuning of calibration offset

Manual tuning of calibration offset is normally not needed, but can be useful in some situations. The requirement to do manual tuning is that there is a known accurate position, that worked accurately before the repair (step 5, see [Brief introduction to Reference Calibration on page 672](#)).

Example "Adjust axis 4":

- 1 Create a backup.

*Continues on next page*

- 2 Run the manipulator to the verification position. (The manipulator position is now deviating from the verification position.)
- 3 Read and note current axis 4 value in degrees (example: 96.3 degrees).
- 4 Manually jog, only axis 4, so that the manipulator is correctly positioned to the verification position.
- 5 Read and note current axis 4 value in degrees (example: 94.2 degrees).
- 6 Move the manipulator to its calibration position.
- 7 Calculate the angle difference (ie  $96.3 - 94.2 = 2.1$  degrees).
- 8 Manually jog axis 4 the calculated angle difference (-2.1). NOTE! The direction +/- shall be the same direction as the direction used when axis 4 was manually jogged to coincide with the verification process. In the example -2.1 degrees.
- 9 Make a new manual fine calibration of axis 4 with axis in -2.1 degrees position.
- 10 Check again against the verification position.
- 11 Repeat the manual tuning if needed.
- 12 Create a new reference if the intention is to use the reference in the future.

## 6.5 Calibrating with Wrist Optimization method

### When to run Wrist Optimization

Wrist Optimization routine is run to improve TCP reorientation performance.

Calibrating the robot with standard calibration method overwrites the optimized positions of axes 4, 5. Re-run the Wrist Optimization routine after standard calibration to re-achieve the optimized positions of the wrist axes.

### Overview of the calibration procedure on the FlexPendant

The actual instructions of how to perform the calibration procedure and what to do at each step is given on the FlexPendant. You will be guided through the calibration procedure, step by step.

Use the following list to learn about the calibration procedure before running the RobotWare program on the FlexPendant. It gives you a brief overview of the calibration procedure sequence.

After the calibration method has been called for on the FlexPendant, the following sequence will be run.

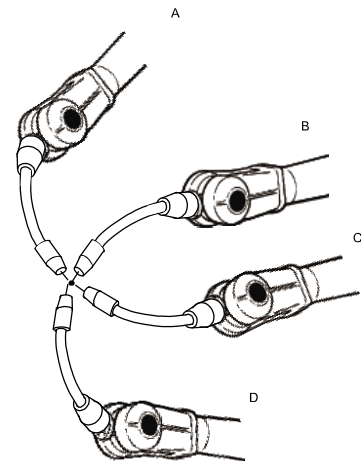
- 1 Choose calibration routine Wrist Optimization.
- 2 Modify targets for 4-point tool frame definition, in Wrist Optimization routine.



#### Tip

Select positions with large reorientations around the TCP. For best results, make sure that axis 4 and 5 have large movements.

- a Jog the robot to an appropriate position, A, for the first approach point.  
Use small increments to accurately position the tool tip as close to the reference point as possible.
- b Tap **Modify Position** to define the point.
- c Repeat for each approach point to be defined, positions B, C, and D.  
Jog away from the fixed world point to achieve the best result. Just changing the tool orientation will not give as good a result.



en0400000906

- 3 Improved calibration data to the wrist axes is identified and presented.
- 4 Optimized positions for the wrist axes are presented.
- 5 The robot moves to the optimized positions for the wrist axes and automatically overwrites previous calibration data.

*Continues on next page*





#### **WARNING**

Robot moves automatically when pressing **Calibrate**.

- 6 Wrist optimization is finished.
- 7 Redefine / verify TCP for all tools.

## 6 Calibration

---

### 6.6 Verifying the calibration

### 6.6 Verifying the calibration

---

#### Introduction

Always verify the results after calibrating *any* robot axis to verify that all calibration positions are correct.

---

#### Verifying the calibration

Use this procedure to verify the calibration result.

|   | Action                                                                                                                       | Note                                                                                                                  |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Run the calibration home position program twice.<br>Do not change the position of the robot axes after running the program!  | See <a href="#">Checking the synchronization position on page 677</a> .                                               |
| 2 | Adjust the <i>synchronization marks</i> when the calibration is done, if necessary.                                          | This is detailed in section <a href="#">Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657</a> . |
| 3 | Write down the values on a new label and stick it on top of the calibration label.<br>The label is located on the lower arm. |                                                                                                                       |

## 6.7 Checking the synchronization position

---

### Introduction

Check the synchronization position of the robot before beginning any programming of the robot system. This may be done:

- Using a MoveAbsJ instruction with argument zero on all axes.
- Using the **Jog** window on the FlexPendant.

*Continues on next page*

## 6 Calibration

### 6.7.1 Checking the synchronization position on OmniCore robots

#### 6.7.1 Checking the synchronization position on OmniCore robots

##### Using a MoveAbsJ instruction

Use this procedure to create a program that runs all the robot axes to their synchronization position.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                     | Note                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Tap <b>Code</b> .                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2 | Create a new program.                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3 | Use <b>MoveAbsJ</b> in the <b>Add Instruction</b> menu.                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 4 | Create the following program:<br><code>MoveAbsJ [[0,0,0,0,0,0],<br/>          [9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9,9E9]]<br/>          \NoEOffs, v1000, fine, tool0</code> |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 5 | Run the program in manual mode.                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 6 | Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolution counters.                                         | See <a href="#">Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657</a> and <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 660</a> . |

##### Using the jogging window

Use this procedure to jog the robot to the synchronization position of all axes.

|   | Action                                                                                                                                               | Note                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Tap <b>Jog</b> .                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 2 | From the <b>Mechanical unit</b> list select a mechanical unit.                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 3 | From the <b>Motion mode</b> section, select an axis-set that need to be jogged.<br>For example, to jog axis 2, select the axis set <b>Axis 1-3</b> . |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 4 | Follow the screen instruction on joystick movements to understand the direction of the axis that you want to move and move the joystick.             |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 5 | Manually run the robots axes to a position where the axis position value read on the FlexPendant, is equal to zero.                                  |                                                                                                                                                            |
| 6 | Check that the synchronization marks for the axes align correctly. If they do not, update the revolution counters.                                   | See <a href="#">Synchronization marks and synchronization position for axes on page 657</a> and <a href="#">Updating revolution counters on page 660</a> . |

# 7 Troubleshooting

## 7.1 Introduction to troubleshooting

### Introduction

The product manual and the circuit diagram contains information that can be good when troubleshooting.

For OmniCore, all event logs from the software can be seen on the FlexPendant, or in *Technical reference manual - Event logs*.



#### DANGER

Troubleshooting on the controller while powered on must be performed by personnel trained by ABB or by ABB field engineers.

Make sure to read through the section [Safety on page 15](#) before starting.



#### CAUTION

Make sure to use personal protective equipment, such as insulating gloves, when troubleshooting.

### Troubleshooting strategies

- 1 Isolate the fault to pinpoint the cause of the problem from consequential problems.
- 2 Divide the fault chain in two.
- 3 Check communication parameters and cables.
- 4 Check that the software version is compatible with the hardware.

### Work systematically

- 1 Take a look around to make sure that all screws, connectors, and cables are secured, and that the robot and other parts are clean, not damaged, and correctly fitted.
- 2 Replace one thing at a time.
- 3 Do not replace units randomly.
- 4 Make sure that there are no loose screws, turnings, or other unexpected parts remaining after work has been performed.
- 5 When the work is completed, verify that the safety functions are working as intended.

### Keep a track of history

- Make a historical fault log to keep track of problems over time.
- Consult those working with the robot when the problem occurred.

*Continues on next page*

## 7 Troubleshooting

---

### 7.1 Introduction to troubleshooting

*Continued*

---

#### Basic scenarios

What to look for during troubleshooting depends on when the fault occurred. Was the robot recently installed or was it recently repaired? The following table gives hints on what to look for in specific situations.

|                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The robot has recently been installed                                                 | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• the configuration files</li><li>• connectors</li><li>• options and their configuration</li><li>• changes in the robot working space/movements.</li></ul>     |
| The robot has recently been repaired                                                  | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• all connections to the replaced part</li><li>• power supplies</li><li>• that the correct part has been fitted</li><li>• the last repair documents.</li></ul> |
| The robot recently had a software upgrade                                             | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• software versions</li><li>• compatibilities between hardware and software</li><li>• options and their configuration</li></ul>                                |
| The robot has recently been moved from one site to another (an already working robot) | Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• connections</li><li>• software versions</li></ul>                                                                                                            |

## 7.2 Oil and grease stains on motors and gearboxes

### Description

The area surrounding the motor or gearbox shows signs of oil leaks. This can be at the base, closest to the mating surface, or at the furthest end of the motor at the resolver.

### Consequences

Besides the dirty appearance, in most cases there are no serious consequences if the leaked amount of oil is very small.

### Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- Leakage of rust preventives or mounting grease. This should be wiped off.
- Leaking sealing between gearbox and motor.
- Gearbox overfilled with oil.
- Gearbox oil too hot.

### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Info                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>Allow hot parts to cool down.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 2 | Wipe off the oil or grease, see <a href="#">Cleaning the IRB 7720 on page 196</a> .<br>Monitor the robot over time to see if new oil or grease occurs.                                                                                                                                                                               | If the oil spill is small, this step is sufficient.                                                                                                                                                   |
| 3 | Check the gearbox oil level.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 4 | Too hot gearbox oil may be caused by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Incorrect oil quality or level.</li> <li>• The robot work cycle runs a specific axis too hard. Investigate whether it is possible to program small "cooling periods" into the application.</li> <li>• Overpressure created inside gearbox.</li> </ul> | Robots performing certain, extremely heavy duty work cycles may be fitted with vented oil plugs. These are not fitted to normal duty robots, but can be purchased from your local ABB representative. |
| 5 | Inspect all sealings and gaskets between motor and gearbox. Replace broken parts.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

## 7 Troubleshooting

### 7.3 Mechanical noise or dissonance

### 7.3 Mechanical noise or dissonance

#### Description

Mechanical noise or dissonance that has not been observed before can indicate problems in bearings, motors, gearboxes, or similar. Be observant of changes over time.

A faulty bearing often emits scraping, grinding, or clicking noises shortly before failing.

#### Consequences

Failing bearings cause the path accuracy to become inconsistent, and in severe cases, the joint can seize completely.

#### Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- Worn bearings.
- Contaminations have entered the bearing grooves.
- Loss of lubrication in bearings.
- Loose heat sinks, fans, or metal parts.

If the noise is emitted from a gearbox, the following can also apply:

- Overheating.

#### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

|   | Action                                                                                                                              | Info |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| 1 |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>Allow hot parts to cool down. |      |
| 2 | Verify that the service is done according to the maintenance schedule.                                                              |      |
| 3 | If a bearing is emitting the noise, determine which one and make sure that it has sufficient lubrication.                           |      |
| 4 | If possible, disassemble the joint and measure the clearance.                                                                       |      |
| 5 | Bearings inside motors are not to be replaced individually, but the complete motor is replaced.                                     |      |
| 6 | Make sure the bearings are fitted correctly.                                                                                        |      |
| 7 | Tighten the screws if a heat sink, fan, or metal sheet is loose.                                                                    |      |



## 7.4 Troubleshooting too hot gearboxes

### Description

The robot reports event message 50263 *Duty factor is too high*.

### Consequences

The gearboxes become hot enough to cause burns when touched.  
The expected lifetime of the gearbox can be reduced.

### Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- Incorrectly defined ambient temperature for the robot.
- Too high duty cycles, with intensive motion (high average speed and/or high average torque and/or short wait time).
- Incorrectly defined payloads.

### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

|   | Action                                                                                            | Info                                                                                                                                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Run the add-in Mechanical Analysis in RobotStudio to get additional insights and recommendations. | The Gearbox Heat Estimation tool helps to estimate heat problems in the gearboxes.                                                                         |
| 2 | Verify that the maximum ambient temperature is correctly defined.                                 | The system parameters are configured in RobotStudio.<br>Topic <i>Motion</i> , type <i>Motion System</i> , parameter <i>Max Ambient Temperature Robot</i> . |
| 3 | Consider if the movement can be modified to reduce the average speed on the affected axis.        | The average speed has highest contribution to the gearbox temperature, but the average torque also contributes.                                            |
| 4 | Install a motor cooling fan on the affected axis.                                                 | If cooling fans are added, RobotWare 7.17 or later is required to enable SIS to supervise the temperature.                                                 |

## 7 Troubleshooting

---

### 7.5 Manipulator collapses on power down

### 7.5 Manipulator collapses on power down

---

#### Description

The manipulator is able to work correctly while Motors ON is active, but when Motors OFF is active, one or more axes drops or collapses under its own weight. The holding brakes (normally one in each motor), is not able to hold the weight of the manipulator arm.

---

#### Consequences

For a heavy robot, the collapse can cause severe injury to personnel working in the area or severe damage to the robot and/or surrounding equipment.  
For a small robot, the collapse can cause injury to personnel working close to the robot or damage to the robot and/or surrounding equipment.

---

#### Possible causes

The symptom can be caused by:

- Faulty brake.
- Faulty power supply to the brake.

---

#### Recommended actions

The following actions are recommended:

|   | Action                                                                                         | Info                                                            |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Determine which motor(s) causes the robot to collapse.                                         |                                                                 |
| 2 | Check the brake power supply to the collapsing motor during the Motors OFF state.              | See the circuit diagram.                                        |
| 3 | Remove the resolver or resolver cover of the motor to see if there are any signs of oil leaks. | If found faulty, the motor must be replaced as a complete unit. |
| 4 | Remove the motor from the gearbox to inspect it from the drive side.                           | If found faulty, the motor must be replaced as a complete unit. |

## 8 Decommissioning

### 8.1 Introduction to decommissioning

---

#### Introduction

This section contains information to consider when taking a product, robot or controller, out of operation.

It deals with how to handle potentially dangerous components and potentially hazardous materials.



#### Note

The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

---

#### Disposal of materials used in the robot

All used grease/oils and dead batteries **must** be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and the control unit are installed.

If the robot or the control unit is partially or completely disposed of, the various parts **must** be grouped together according to their nature (which is all iron together and all plastic together), and disposed of accordingly. These parts **must** also be disposed of in accordance with the current legislation of the country in which the robot and control unit are installed.

See also [Environmental information on page 686](#).

---

#### Transportation

Prepare the robot or parts before transport, this to avoid hazards.

# 8 Decommissioning

## 8.2 Environmental information

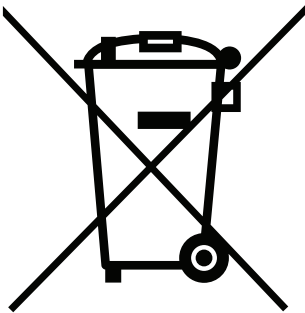
### 8.2 Environmental information

#### Introduction

ABB robots contain components in different materials. During decommissioning, all materials shall be dismantled, recycled, or reused responsibly, according to the relevant laws and industrial standards. Robots or parts that can be reused or upcycled helps to reduce the usage of natural resources.

#### Disposal symbol

The following symbol indicates that the product must not be disposed of as common garbage. Handle each product according to local regulations for the respective content (see table below).



xx1800000058

#### Materials used in the product

The table specifies some of the materials in the product and their respective use throughout the product.

Dispose components properly according to local regulations to prevent health or environmental hazards.

| Material               | Example application                                                                                  |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Aluminium              | Wrist house, covers, motor flange, motor house                                                       |
| Batteries, Lithium     | Serial measurement board                                                                             |
| Brass, zink alloys     | Calibration protection cap and plug and couplings, connectors and nuts in cable harnesses            |
| Cast iron/nodular iron | Base, frame, lower arm, arm house, tilt house, tube shaft, parallel arm, parallel bar, counterweight |
| Circuit boards         | Serial measurement unit, brake release unit                                                          |
| Copper                 | Motor wiring, cables, pins and sockets                                                               |
| Dysprosium             | Motor magnets                                                                                        |
| Lithium                | Battery                                                                                              |
| Neodymium              | Motor magnets                                                                                        |
| Nickel                 | Coating on protection caps                                                                           |

*Continues on next page*

| Material                                                   | Example application                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil, grease                                                | Gearboxes                                                                                   |
| Steel                                                      | Gears, shafts, turning discs, spring, bearings, motors, screws, washers                     |
| Thermo plastics (ETFE, PA, PC, PE, PET, POM, PP, PVC, TPE) | Protection tubes, protection covers, plugs, cable jackets, cable filler, connectors, labels |
| Thermo setting polymers (CR, Epoxy, FKM, NBR, PUR)         | Motor winding, cable jackets, hoses, clamps, dampers, o-rings, sealings and gaskets         |

---

**Oil and grease**

Where possible, arrange for oil and grease to be recycled. Dispose of via an authorized person/contractor in accordance with local regulations. Do not dispose of oil and grease near lakes, ponds, ditches, down drains, or onto soil. Incineration must be carried out under controlled conditions in accordance with local regulations.

Also note that:

- Spills can form a film on water surfaces causing damage to organisms. Oxygen transfer could also be impaired.
- Spillage can penetrate the soil causing ground water contamination.

## 8 Decommissioning

---

### 8.3 Scrapping of robot

### 8.3 Scrapping of robot



#### Note

The decommissioning process shall be preceded by a risk assessment.

---

#### Important when scrapping the robot



#### DANGER

The risk assessment should consider hazards arising in the decommissioning, such as, but not limited to:

- Always remove all batteries. If a battery is exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, it will explode.
- Always remove all oil/grease in gearboxes. If exposed to heat, for example from a blow torch, the oil/grease will catch fire.
- When motors are removed from the robot, the robot will collapse if it is not properly supported before the motor is removed.
- A used robot does not have the same performance as on delivery. Springs, brakes, bearings, and other parts might be worn or broken.

## 8.4 Decommissioning of balancing device

### General

There is much energy stored in the balancing device. Therefore a special procedure is required to disassemble it. The coil springs inside the balancing device exert a potentially lethal force unless disassembled properly.

The device must be disassembled by a decommissioning company.

### Required equipment

| Equipment                                                                                                              | Article number | Note                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Standard toolkit                                                                                                       | -              | Content is defined in section <a href="#">Standard toolkit on page 701</a> .   |
| Protective clothing that also covers face and hands                                                                    | -              | Must protect against spatter of sparks and flames.                             |
| Cutting torch with a long shaft                                                                                        | -              | For opening housing and cutting coils. The long shaft is a safety requirement. |
| Other tools and procedures may be required. See references to these procedures in the step-by-step instructions below. |                | These procedures include references to the tools required.                     |



### DANGER

*Do not*, under any circumstances, deal with the balancing device in any other way than that detailed in the product documentation! For example, attempting to open the balancing device is potentially lethal!

### Action on field, decommissioning

The procedure below details the actions to perform on field, when the balancing device is to be decommissioned.

|   | Action                                        | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | Remove the balancing device from the robot.   | Detailed in section <a href="#">Replacing the balancing device and balancing device bearings on page 241</a> .                                                                                                                                                    |
| 2 | Send the device to a decommissioning company. | Make sure the decommissioning company is well informed about the stored energy built up by high tensioned compression springs and that the device contains some grease and plastic.<br>The following procedure contains useful information about decommissioning. |

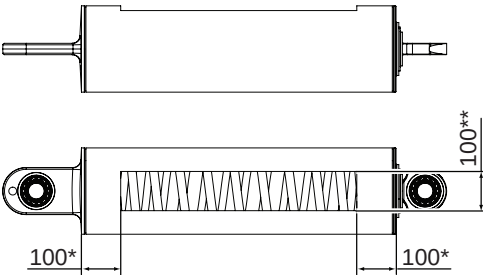
*Continues on next page*

8 Decommissioning

8.4 Decommissioning of balancing device  
Continued

Decommissioning at decommissioning company, balancing device

The instruction below details how to decommission the balancing device. Contact ABB Robotics for further consultation.

| Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Note                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>There is stored energy built up by high tensioned compression springs inside the balancing device! When a coil is cut the released tension creates a spatter of sparks and flames.<br><br>The working area must be free of flammable materials. Position the balancing device so that the spatter will be directed away from personnel. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 2 Clamp the device at the working location. Place the device at ground level so that the hole and spring coils are cut from a safe distance and somewhat from above.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 3  <b>WARNING</b><br><br>There is some grease and a plastic layer inside the balancing device. When opening a hole in the device, the cutting torch will cause the plastic and the grease to start to burn.<br><br>Wear protective clothing! Make sure that the working area is well ventilated!                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 4  <b>DANGER</b><br><br>The hole must be cut as specified in the figure. Pieces of the spring can be thrown out from the cylinder at high speed if the hole is cut larger than specified!                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 5 Cut a hole in the housing as shown in the figure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Use a cutting torch with a long shaft.<br><br>xx1100000098<br>* Minimum measure, in millimeters.<br>** Maximum measure, in millimeters. |

Continues on next page



|   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Note                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 6 | Cut the coils of the springs inside the housing as specified below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Outer spring: cut at least eight coils!</li><li>• Inner spring: cut at least eight coils!</li></ul> | Use a cutting torch with a long shaft. |
| 7 | Double-check the number of coils cut and make sure all the tension in the springs is removed.                                                                                                                   |                                        |

**This page is intentionally left blank**

## 9 Reference information

### 9.1 Introduction

---

**General**

This chapter includes general information, complementing the more specific information in the different procedures in the manual.

## 9 Reference information

### 9.2 Applicable standards

### 9.2 Applicable standards

#### General

This product is designed according to the global product standard ISO 10218-1:2025, *Robots for industrial environments - Safety requirements - Part 1 Robots*, In case of deviation from ISO 10218-1:2025, these are listed in the declaration of incorporation. The declaration of incorporation is part of the delivery.

#### Robot standards

| Standard | Description                                                                    |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ISO 9283 | Manipulating industrial robots – Performance criteria and related test methods |
| ISO 9787 | Robots and robotic devices – Coordinate systems and motion nomenclatures       |
| ISO 9946 | Manipulating industrial robots – Presentation of characteristics               |

#### Other standards used in design

| Standard      | Description                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ISO 9283      | Manipulating industrial robots - Performance criteria and related test methods                                                                                        |
| ISO 9787      | Robots and robotic devices -- Coordinate systems and motion nomenclatures                                                                                             |
| ISO 9946      | Manipulating industrial robots - Presentation of characteristics                                                                                                      |
| IEC 61000-6-2 | Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-2: Generic standards – Immunity standard for industrial environments                                                     |
| IEC 61000-6-4 | Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) – Part 6-4: Generic standards – Emission standard for industrial environments                                                     |
| IEC 61326-3-1 | Immunity requirements for safety-related systems and for equipment intended to perform safety-related functions (functional safety) – General industrial applications |

#### Region specific standards

| Standard                              | Description                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UL 1740 (option)<br>CSA Z434 (option) | Standards For Safety - Robots and Robotic Equipment<br>Industrial robots and robot Systems - General safety requirements<br>Valid for USA and Canada. |

9.3 Unit conversion

Converter table

Use the following table to convert units used in this manual.

| Quantity | Units |              |          |
|----------|-------|--------------|----------|
| Length   | 1 m   | 3.28 ft.     | 39.37 in |
| Weight   | 1 kg  | 2.21 lb.     |          |
| Weight   | 1 g   | 0.035 ounces |          |
| Pressure | 1 bar | 100 kPa      | 14.5 psi |
| Force    | 1 N   | 0.225 lbf    |          |
| Moment   | 1 Nm  | 0.738 lbf-ft |          |
| Volume   | 1 L   | 0.264 US gal |          |

## 9 Reference information

### 9.4 Screw joints

### 9.4 Screw joints

#### General

This section describes how to tighten the various types of screw joints on ABB robots.

The instructions and torque values are valid for screw joints comprised of metallic materials and do *not* apply to soft or brittle materials.



#### Tip

During maintenance and repair, screws must be retained and kept in order. When loosening screws, ensure they are sorted so that each screw can be correctly refitted.

#### UNBRAKO screws

UNBRAKO is a special type of screw recommended by ABB for certain screw joints. It features special surface treatment (Gleitmo as described below) and is extremely resistant to fatigue.

Whenever used, this is specified in the instructions, and in such cases, *no other type of replacement screw* is allowed. Using other types of screws will void any warranty and may potentially cause serious damage or injury.

#### Gleitmo treated screws

Gleitmo is a special surface treatment to reduce the friction when tightening the screw joint. It is recommended by ABB for M6-M20 screw joints. Screws treated with Gleitmo may be reused 3-4 times before the coating disappears. After this the screw must be discarded and replaced with a new one.

When handling screws treated with Gleitmo, protective gloves of **nitrile rubber** type should be used.

Generally, screws are lubricated with *Gleitmo 603* mixed with *Geomet 500* or *Geomet 702* in proportion 1:3. *Geomet* thickness varies according to screw dimensions, refer to the following.

| Dimension                         | Lubricant                              | Geomet thickness |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------|
| M6-M20 (any length except M20x60) | <i>Gleitmo 603</i> + <i>Geomet 500</i> | 3-5 µm           |
| M6-M20 (any length except M20x60) | <i>Gleitmo 603</i> + <i>Geomet 702</i> | 3-5 µm           |
| M20x60                            | <i>Gleitmo 603</i> + <i>Geomet 500</i> | 8-12 µm          |
| M20x60                            | <i>Gleitmo 603</i> + <i>Geomet 702</i> | 6-10 µm          |

#### Screws lubricated in other ways

Screws lubricated with Molykote 1000 or Molykote P1900 should *only* be used when specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions.

In such cases, proceed as follows:

- 1 Apply lubricant to the screw thread.

*Continues on next page*

- 2 Apply lubricant between the plain washer and screw head.
- 3 Screw dimensions of M8 or larger must be tightened with a torque wrench. Screw dimensions of M6 or smaller may be tightened without a torque wrench if this is done by trained and qualified personnel.

| Lubricant                                     | Article number |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Molykote 1000 (molybdenum disulphide grease)  | 3HAC042472-001 |
| Molykote P1900 (molybdenum disulphide grease) | 3HAC070875-001 |

Tightening torque

Before tightening any screw, note the following:

- Determine whether a **standard** tightening torque or **special** torque is to be applied. The **standard torques** are specified in the following tables. Any **special torques** are specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure descriptions. **Any special torque specified overrides the standard torque!**
- Use the *correct tightening torque* for each type of screw joint.
- Only use *correctly calibrated* torque keys.
- *Always tighten the joint by hand*, and never use pneumatic tools.
- Use the *correct tightening technique*, that is *do not* jerk. Tighten the screw in a slow, flowing motion.
- Maximum allowed total deviation from the specified value is **10%**!

Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *oil-lubricated screws with slotted or cross-recess head screws*.

 **Note**

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

Tightening torque for oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *oil-lubricated screws with allen head screws*.

 **Note**

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

| Dimension | Tightening torque (Nm)<br>Class 8.8, oil-lubricated | Tightening torque (Nm)<br>Class 10.9, oil-lubricated | Tightening torque (Nm)<br>Class 12.9, oil-lubricated |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| M4        | -                                                   | 4                                                    | 5                                                    |
| M5        | 6                                                   | 8                                                    | 10                                                   |
| M6        | 10                                                  | 14                                                   | 17                                                   |

Continues on next page

## 9 Reference information

### 9.4 Screw joints

Continued

| Dimension | Tightening torque (Nm)<br>Class 8.8, oil-lubricated | Tightening torque (Nm)<br>Class 10.9, oil-lubricated | Tightening torque (Nm)<br>Class 12.9, oil-lubricated |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| M8        | 24                                                  | 34                                                   | 40                                                   |
| M10       | 47                                                  | 67                                                   | 80                                                   |
| M12       | 82                                                  | 115                                                  | 140                                                  |
| M16       | 200                                                 | 290                                                  | 340                                                  |
| M20       | 400                                                 | 560                                                  | 670                                                  |
| M24       | 680                                                 | 960                                                  | 1150                                                 |

Tightening torque for lubricated screws (Molykote, Gleitmo or equivalent) with allen head screws

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *screws lubricated with Molykote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent with allen head screws*.



#### Note

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

| Dimension | Tightening torque (Nm)<br>Class 10.9, lubricated <sup>i</sup> | Tightening torque (Nm)<br>Class 12.9, lubricated <sup>i</sup> |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| M5        |                                                               | 8                                                             |
| M6        |                                                               | 14                                                            |
| M8        | 28                                                            | 35                                                            |
| M10       | 55                                                            | 70                                                            |
| M12       | 96                                                            | 120                                                           |
| M16       | 235                                                           | 300                                                           |
| M20       | 460                                                           | 550                                                           |
| M24       | 790                                                           | 950                                                           |

<sup>i</sup> Lubricated with Molykote 1000, Gleitmo 603 or equivalent

### Water and air connectors

The following table specifies the recommended standard tightening torque for *water and air connectors*.



#### Note

A special torque specified in the repair, maintenance or installation procedure overrides the standard torque.

| Dimension | Material   | Tightening torque<br>Nm - Nominal                 | Tightening torque<br>Nm - Min. | Tightening torque<br>Nm - Max. |
|-----------|------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ALL       | Mixed      | The lower tightening torque of the two materials. |                                |                                |
| 1/8       | Brass only | 12                                                | 8                              | 15                             |
| 1/4       | Brass only | 15                                                | 10                             | 20                             |

Continues on next page



| Dimension | Material                | Tightening torque<br>Nm - Nominal | Tightening torque<br>Nm - Min. | Tightening torque<br>Nm - Max. |
|-----------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 3/8       | Brass only              | 20                                | 15                             | 25                             |
| 1/2       | Brass only              | 40                                | 30                             | 50                             |
| 1/2       | Stainless<br>steel only | 49                                | 47                             | 59                             |
| 3/4       | Brass only              | 70                                | 55                             | 90                             |

## 9 Reference information

---

### 9.5 Weight specifications

### 9.5 Weight specifications

---

#### Definition

In installation, repair, and maintenance procedures, weights of the components handled are sometimes specified. All components exceeding 22 kg (50 lbs) are highlighted in this way.

To avoid injury, ABB recommends the use of a lifting accessory when handling components with a weight exceeding 22 kg. A wide range of lifting accessories and devices are available for each manipulator model.

#### Example

Following is an example of a weight specification in a procedure:

|  | Action                                                                                                                                                                               | Note |
|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|  |  <b>CAUTION</b><br>The arm weighs 25 kg.<br>All lifting accessories used must be sized accordingly. |      |

## 9.6 Standard toolkit

### General

All service (repairs, maintenance, and installation) procedures contains lists of tools required to perform the specified activity.

All special tools required are listed directly in the procedures while all the tools that are considered standard are gathered in the standard toolkit and defined in the following table.

This way, the tools required are the sum of the standard toolkit and any tools listed in the instruction.

### Contents, standard toolkit

| Qty | Tool                                                   | Rem.                     |
|-----|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1   | Ring-open-end spanner 8-19 mm                          |                          |
| 1   | Socket head cap 2.5-17 mm                              |                          |
| 1   | Torx socket no: 20-60                                  |                          |
| 1   | Box spanner set                                        |                          |
| 1   | Torque wrench 10-100 Nm                                |                          |
| 1   | Torque wrench 75-400 Nm                                |                          |
| 1   | Ratchet head for torque wrench 1/2                     |                          |
| 2   | Hexagon-headed screw M10x100                           |                          |
| 1   | Hexagon-headed screw M16x90                            |                          |
| 1   | Hex bit socket head cap no. 14 socket 40 mm L=100 mm   |                          |
| 1   | Hex bit socket head cap no. 14 socket 40 mm L=20 mm    | To be shortened to 12 mm |
| 1   | Hex bit socket head cap no. 6 socket 40 mm L=145 mm    |                          |
| 1   | Hex bit socket head cap no. 6 socket 40mm bit L=220 mm |                          |
| 1   | Plastic mallet                                         |                          |

## 9 Reference information

---

### 9.7 Special tools

### 9.7 Special tools

---

#### General

All service instructions contain lists of tools required to perform the specified activity. The required tools are a sum of standard tools, defined in the section [Standard toolkit on page 701](#), and of special tools, listed directly in the instructions and also gathered in this section.

#### Special tools

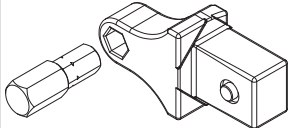
---



#### Note

If the replacing procedure is not listed in the table below, only standard tools are needed for the procedure.

*Continues on next page*

| Tools and equipment with spare part number:<br>(These tools can be ordered from ABB) |                                             |                                                                                                      | Axis-1 motor | Axis-2 motor | Axis-3 motor | Axis-4 motor | Axis-4 motor flange | Axis-5 motor | Axis-6 motor | Axis-4 cassette sealing<br>(including arm house cover) | Axis-1 gearbox | Axis-2 gearbox | Axis-3 gearbox | Axis-6 gearbox | Balancing device and<br>balancing device bearings | Counter balancing weight | Parallel rod | Wrist | Axis-5 support shaft<br>including bearing |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|-------|-------------------------------------------|
| Removal/refitting tools                                                              |                                             |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC079878-001                                                                       | Replacement tool for arm house cover        | <br>xx2100002289   |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              | 1                                                      |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC093483-001                                                                       | Press tools, parallel rod shaft and bearing |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          | 1            |       |                                           |
| 3HAC14631-1                                                                          | Removal tool motor M12                      |                                                                                                      | 2            | 2            | 2            | 2            | 2                   | 2            |              |                                                        | 2              | 2              | 2              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC14972-1                                                                          | Removal tool motor M10                      |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              | 2            |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Screws M12x100, fully threaded              |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                | 2              | 2              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Screws M8x85, fully threaded                |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       | 2                                         |
| -                                                                                    | Screw, M12 x minimum 75 mm                  |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       | 3                                         |
| 3HAC12342-1                                                                          | Bits extender                               |                                                                                                      | 1            | 1            | 1            | 1            | 1                   | 1            |              |                                                        | 1              | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
|                                                                                      | Bit holder and hexagon bit SW10             | <br>xx2200001085 |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              | 1     |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Screw, M12 x minimum 50 mm                  |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                | 1              | 1              |                | 1                                                 |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Hydraulic pump                              |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          | 1            |       |                                           |
| 3HAC071378-001                                                                       | Hydraulic cylinder                          |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          | 1            |       |                                           |
| Lifting accessories                                                                  |                                             |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain     |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Roundsling and adjustable lifting chain     |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Roundsling                                  |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Roundsling, 1 m                             |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          | 1            | 1     |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Roundsling, 2 m                             |                                                                                                      |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          | 1            |       |                                           |
| 3HAC076550-001                                                                       | Lifting accessory, motor                    |                                                                                                      | 1            |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC15534-1                                                                          | Lifting accessory, motor                    |                                                                                                      |              | 1            | 1            |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |

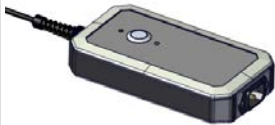
Continues on next page

9 Reference information

9.7 Special tools

| Tools and equipment with spare part number:<br>(These tools can be ordered from ABB) |                                        |                                                                                                     | Axis-1 motor | Axis-2 motor | Axis-3 motor | Axis-4 motor | Axis-4 motor flange | Axis-5 motor | Axis-6 motor | Axis-4 cassette sealing<br>(including arm house cover) | Axis-1 gearbox | Axis-2 gearbox | Axis-3 gearbox | Axis-6 gearbox | Balancing device and<br>balancing device bearings | Counter balancing weight | Parallel rod | Wrist | Axis-5 support shaft<br>including bearing |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|-------|-------------------------------------------|
| 3HAC081585-001                                                                       | Lifting accessory for gear             | <br>xx2100002415   |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Fender washer                          |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          | 1            |       |                                           |
| 3HAC15556-1                                                                          | Lifting accessory (chain)              | <br>xx1200001241  |              | 1            | 1            |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   | 1                        |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC16131-1                                                                          | Lifting eye VLBG                       | <br>xx1200001242 |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 2 <sup>i</sup> |                |                |                |                                                   |                          | 1            |       |                                           |
| 3HAC14457-4                                                                          | Lifting eye M16                        |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   | 1                        |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Swivel eye bolt M20                    |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 4              |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC054236-001                                                                       | Lifting accessory for balancing device |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                | 1                                                 |                          |              |       |                                           |
| Guide pins                                                                           |                                        |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC041574-001                                                                       | Guide pin, M6x100                      |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                | 2              |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC15520-2                                                                          | Guide pin, M8x150                      |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              | 2            |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC15521-2                                                                          | Guide pin, M10x150                     |                                                                                                     | 2            | 2            | 2            | 2            | 2                   | 2            |              |                                                        | 2              | 2              | 2              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC13056-2                                                                          | Guide pin, M12x150                     |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              | 2              | 2              |                |                                                   |                          |              | 2     |                                           |
| 3HAC13056-3                                                                          | Guide pin, M12x200                     |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC13056-4                                                                          | Guide pin, M12x250                     |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| Brake release                                                                        |                                        |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |

Continues on next page

| Tools and equipment with spare part number:<br>(These tools can be ordered from ABB) |                                       |                                                                                                     | Axis-1 motor | Axis-2 motor | Axis-3 motor | Axis-4 motor | Axis-4 motor flange | Axis-5 motor | Axis-6 motor | Axis-4 cassette sealing<br>(including arm house cover) | Axis-1 gearbox | Axis-2 gearbox | Axis-3 gearbox | Axis-6 gearbox | Balancing device and<br>balancing device bearings | Counter balancing weight | Parallel rod | Wrist | Axis-5 support shaft<br>including bearing |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------|-------|-------------------------------------------|
| 3HAC081310-001                                                                       | Brake release tool                    | <br>xx2100000666  | 1            | 1            | 1            | 1            | 1                   | 1            | 1            |                                                        | 1              | 1              | 1              | 1              |                                                   |                          | 1            | (1)   |                                           |
| Calibration tools                                                                    |                                       |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC074564-001 ii                                                                    | Calibration toolbox, Axis Calibration |                                                                                                     | 1            | 1            | 1            | 1            | 1                   | 1            | 1            |                                                        | 1              | 1              | 1              | 1              |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| Adjustment and fixing tools                                                          |                                       |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAB7887-1                                                                           | Rotation tool M4                      |                                                                                                     | 1            | 1            | 1            | 1            | 1                   | 1            |              |                                                        | 1              | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAB7887-1                                                                           | Rotation tool M3                      |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              | 1            |                                                        |                |                |                | 1              |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC080331-001                                                                       | Adjustment tool for gear              |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Lock screw, M16x80                    |                                                                                                     |              | 1            | 1            |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                | 1              | 1              |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Screw, M6 x minimum 70 mm             |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              | 2                                                      |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| -                                                                                    | Screw, M10 x minimum 80 mm            |                                                                                                     |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        |                |                |                |                |                                                   |                          | 2            |       |                                           |
| 3HAC061213-001                                                                       | Supporting pillars                    | <br>xx2500001397 |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 4              |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |
| 3HAC043870-009                                                                       | Guide for reduction gear              | <br>xx1700002195 |              |              |              |              |                     |              |              |                                                        | 1              |                |                |                |                                                   |                          |              |       |                                           |

i Use M12 washers beneath the lifting eyes, if the lifting eyes need to be elevated somewhat not to damage the o-ring on the gearbox.  
ii Contains calibration pins with diameter 12 mm.

## 9 Reference information

---

### 9.8 Lifting accessories and lifting instructions

### 9.8 Lifting accessories and lifting instructions

---

#### General

Many repair and maintenance activities require different pieces of lifting accessories, which are specified in each procedure.

The use of each piece of lifting accessories is *not* detailed in the activity procedure, but in the instruction delivered with each piece of lifting accessories.

The instructions delivered with the lifting accessories should be stored for later reference.



# Index

## A

Absolute Accuracy, calibration, 655  
 allergenic material, 26  
 aluminum  
   disposal, 686  
 ambient humidity  
   operation, 39  
   storage, 39  
 ambient temperature  
   operation, 39  
   storage, 39  
 assembly instructions, 55  
 assessment of hazards and risks, 26  
 axis-6 gearbox  
   changing oil, 184  
   replacing, 630  
 axis-6 motor  
   replacing, 486  
 axis-5 gearbox  
   changing oil, 179  
 axis-5 motor  
   replacing, 473  
 axis-4 gearbox  
   changing oil, 174  
 axis-4 motor  
   replacing, 459  
 axis-4 motor flange  
   replacing, 296  
 axis-4 primary gearbox  
   changing oil, 170  
 axis-3 gearbox  
   changing oil, 165  
   replacing, 587  
 axis-3 motor  
   replacing, 439  
 axis-2 gearbox  
   changing oil, 160  
   replacing, 544  
 axis-2 motor  
   replacing, 439  
 axis-1 gearbox  
   changing oil, 155  
   replacing, 498  
 axis-1 motor  
   replacing, 424  
 Axis Calibration, 661  
   calibration tool  
     article number, 664, 668  
     examining, 664  
     installation position, 666  
   overview of method, 661  
   procedure on FlexPendant, 668  
   protective cover and protection plug, 666, 668

## B

balancing device  
   decommissioning, 689  
   inspection, 116  
   lubrication of front eye bearing, 192  
   replacing, 241  
 balancing device bearing  
   replacing, 241  
 base plate, 60  
 batteries

  disposal, 686  
 bearing  
   balancing device front eye, 192  
 Brake power supply, faulty, 684  
 brake release unit  
   replacing, 411  
 brake releasing, 75  
 brakes  
   testing function, 34

## C

cabinet lock, 27  
 cable harness  
   inspecting, 122  
   refitting, 382  
   removing, 359  
 cabling between robot and controller, 106  
 calibrating  
   robot, 661  
   roughly, 660  
 calibrating robot, 661, 674  
 calibration  
   Absolute Accuracy type, 654  
   rough, 660  
   standard type, 654  
   verification, 676  
   when to calibrate, 656  
 calibration, Absolute Accuracy, 655  
 calibration manuals, 655  
 calibration marks, 657  
 calibration position  
   jogging to, 678  
   scales, 657  
 calibration scales, 657  
 CalibWare, 654  
 carbon dioxide extinguisher, 27  
 cassette sealing axis 4  
   replacing, 266  
 cast iron  
   disposal, 686  
 changing oil  
   axis-6 gearbox, 184  
   axis-5 gearbox, 179  
   axis-4 gearbox, 174  
   axis-4 gearbox (primary), 170  
   axis-3 gearbox, 165  
   axis-2 gearbox, 160  
   axis-1 gearbox, 155  
 circuit boards  
   disposal, 686  
 cleaning, 196  
 climbing on robot, 30  
 connecting the robot and controller, cabling, 106  
 cooling fan, motor  
   installing, 88  
 copper  
   disposal, 686  
 counter balancing weight  
   replacing, 211

## D

damaged bearings, 682  
 damper  
   inspecting, 125  
 decommissioning  
   balancing device, 689  
 dimensions

- robot, 81
- direction of axes, 659
- dysprosium
  - disposal, 686

## E

- environmental information, 686
- EPS, 104
- equipment, robot, 81
- ESD
  - damage elimination, 54
  - sensitive equipment, 54
- expected lifetime, 113
- extended working range, 104
- extended working range, axis 1, 104
- extra equipment, 81

## F

- faulty brake, 684
- fire extinguishing, 27
- fitting, equipment, 81
- FlexPendant
  - jogging to calibration position, 678
  - MoveAbsJ instruction, 678
  - updating revolution counters, 660
- foundation
  - requirements, 39

## G

- gearbox
  - inspecting oil level axis 1, 132
  - inspecting oil level axis 2, 135
  - inspecting oil level axis 3, 138
  - inspecting oil level axis 4, 144
  - inspecting oil level axis 4 (primary), 141
  - inspecting oil level axis 5, 147
  - inspecting oil level axis 6, 150
- gearboxes
  - location of, 153
- grease, 30
  - disposal, 687
- guide ring, balancing device
  - replacing, 261

## H

- hanging
  - installed hanging, 26
- hazard levels, 17
- hazardous material, 686
- height
  - installed at a height, 26
- hot gearbox oil, 681–682
- hot surfaces, 30
- HRA, 26
- humidity
  - operation, 39
  - storage, 39

## I

- information labels
  - inspecting, 127
- inspecting
  - cable harness, 122
  - damper, 125
  - information labels, 127
  - mechanical stop, 130
  - motor seal, 114

- inspecting balancing device, 116
- inspecting oil levels
  - axis 1, 132
  - axis 2, 135
  - axis 3, 138
  - axis 4, 144
  - axis 4 primary, 141
  - axis 5, 147
  - axis 6, 150
- installation
  - equipment, 81
- installation procedure, 59
- installing
  - cooling fan, motor, 88
- instructions for assembly, 55
- integrator responsibility, 26
- intervals for maintenance, 111

## L

- labels
  - robot, 19
- leak-down test, 203
- leaking sealing, 681
- lifetime, 113
- lifting
  - manipulator, 69–70
- lifting accessory, 700
- lifting accessory, manipulator, 69
- limitation of liability, 15
- limiting robot motion, 26
- lithium
  - disposal, 686
- Lithium
  - disposal, 686
- loads on foundation, 38
- lock and tag, 27
- lubricants, 30
- lubricating
  - spherical roller bearing, 192
- lubrication
  - amount in gearboxes, 153
  - type of lubrication, 153

## M

- magnesium
  - disposal, 686
- maintenance intervals, 111
- maintenance schedule, 111
- manipulator
  - lifting with fork lift, 69
  - lifting with roundsling, 70
- mechanical limiting, 26
- mechanical stop
  - inspecting, 130
- motor seal
  - inspecting, 114
- mounting, equipment, 81
- movable mechanical stop, 100
- MoveAbsJ instruction, 678

## N

- national regulations, 26
- negative directions, axes, 659
- neodymium
  - disposal, 686
- nodular iron
  - disposal, 686

noise, 682

## O

oil, 30

- amount in gearboxes, 153
- disposal, 687
- type of oil, 153

oil leaks, 681

oil level

- gearbox axis 1, 132
- gearbox axis 2, 135
- gearbox axis 3, 138
- gearbox axis 4, 144
- gearbox axis 4 (primary), 141
- gearbox axis 5, 147
- gearbox axis 6, 150

operating conditions, 39

option

- Extended working range, 104

original spare parts, 15

overfilled gearbox, 681

## P

parallel rod

- replacing, 219

pedestal

- installed on pedestal, 26

personnel

- requirements, 16

positive directions, axes, 659

PPE, 16

product standards, 694

protection classes, 40

protection type, 40

protective equipment, 16

protective wear, 16

## R

recycling, 686

refitting

- cable harness, 382

regional regulations, 26

release brakes, 33

removing

- cable harness, 359

replacements, report, 201

replacing

- axis-6 gearbox, 630
- axis-6 motor, 486
- axis-5 motor, 473
- axis-4 motor, 459
- axis-4 motor flange, 296
- axis-3 gearbox, 587
- axis-3 motor, 439
- axis-2 gearbox, 544
- axis-2 motor, 439
- axis-1 gearbox, 498
- axis-1 motor, 424
- balancing device, 241
- balancing device bearing, 241
- brake release unit, 411
- cassette sealing axis 4, 266
- counter balancing weight, 211
- guide ring, balancing device, 261
- parallel rod, 219
- SMB battery, 189
- SMB unit, 418

turning disc, 350

wrist, 314

report replacements, 201

requirements on foundation, 39

responsibility and validity, 15

restricting

- working range axis 1, 104

revolution counters

- storing on FlexPendant, 660

updating, 660

risk of burns, 30

risk of tipping, 57

robot

- dimensions, 81

equipment, fitting, 81

labels, 19

protection class, 40

protection types, 40

symbols, 19

technical data, 37

working range, 41

## S

safety

- brake testing, 34

ESD, 54

fire extinguishing, 27

release robot axes, 33

signals, 17

signals in manual, 17

symbols, 17

symbols on robot, 19

test run, 94

safety devices, 27

safety signals

- in manual, 17

safety standards, 694

scales on robot, 657

schedule of maintenance, 111

screw joints, 696

securing, robot, 77

securing the robot to foundation, attachment screws, 77

sensitive protective equipment, SPE, 27

separation distance, 26

shipping, 685

signals

- safety, 17

SMB battery

- replacing, 189

SMB unit

- replacing, 418

software-based limiting, 26

stability, 57

standards, 694

steel

- disposal, 687

storage conditions, 39

symbols

- safety, 17

synchronization position, 660

sync marks, 657

system integrator requirements, 26

## T

technical data

- robot, 37

temperatures

- operation, 39
- storage, 39
- testing
  - brakes, 34
- thermo plastics
  - disposal, 687
- thermo setting polymers
  - disposal, 687
- torques on foundation, 38
- transportation, 685
- troubleshooting
  - safety, 35
- turning disc
  - replacing, 350
- turning radius, 49

## U

- upcycling, 686
- updating revolution counters, 660
- users
  - requirements, 16

## V

- validity and responsibility, 15
- verifying calibration, 676

## W

- weight, 37
  - axis-1 gearbox, 518, 520–521, 564, 566, 606, 608, 640, 644
  - axis-1 motor, 302, 308, 430, 433, 448, 451, 465, 467, 479, 481, 490, 511, 532, 559, 574, 601, 617
  - balancing device, 245, 247, 249, 255
  - base, 520
  - complete arm system, 517, 527
  - counter balancing weight, 213, 216
  - parallel rod, 227, 232
  - robot, 72, 78, 223, 505, 540
  - upper arm, complete, 221
  - wrist, 323
- working range, 52
  - robot, 41
- wrist
  - replacing, 314
- Wrist Optimization
  - overview of method, 674
- Wrist Optimization Calibration
  - procedure on FlexPendant, 674

## Z

- zero position
  - checking, 677





**ABB Robotics Sweden AB**  
**S-721 71 VÄSTERÅS, Sweden**  
Telephone +46 10-732 50 00

**ABB Robotics Norway AS**  
**Nordlysvegen 7, N-4340 BRYNE, Norway**  
Box 265, N-4349 BRYNE, Norway  
Telephone: +47 22 87 2000

**ABB Robotics (Shanghai) Limited**  
No. 39, 99 Miaoqiao Road,  
Pudong New Area,  
Shanghai, 201315, China  
Telephone: +86 21 6105 6666

**ABB Robotics LLC**  
**1250 Brown Road**  
Auburn Hills, MI 48326  
USA  
Telephone: +1 248 391 9000

**[abb.com/robotics](http://abb.com/robotics)**